Owner's Manual

Golf GTI, Golf R

Edition 07/2021

United States version, model year 2022

Teile-Nr.: 5H0012723SE
Print status: 14.04.2021
English USA: 2021.07
V1, R1, USA, en_US

Vehicle-specific information can be entered below:

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)															

Vehicle information	
Engine output (kW)	
Engine code	
Transmission code	
Paint number	

Recommended engine oil	

PR number	Vehicle service type

Notes

Delivery inspection was performed on:	Date of delivery/first approval (whichever occurs first):
Volkswagen dealer stamp	Volkswagen dealer stamp

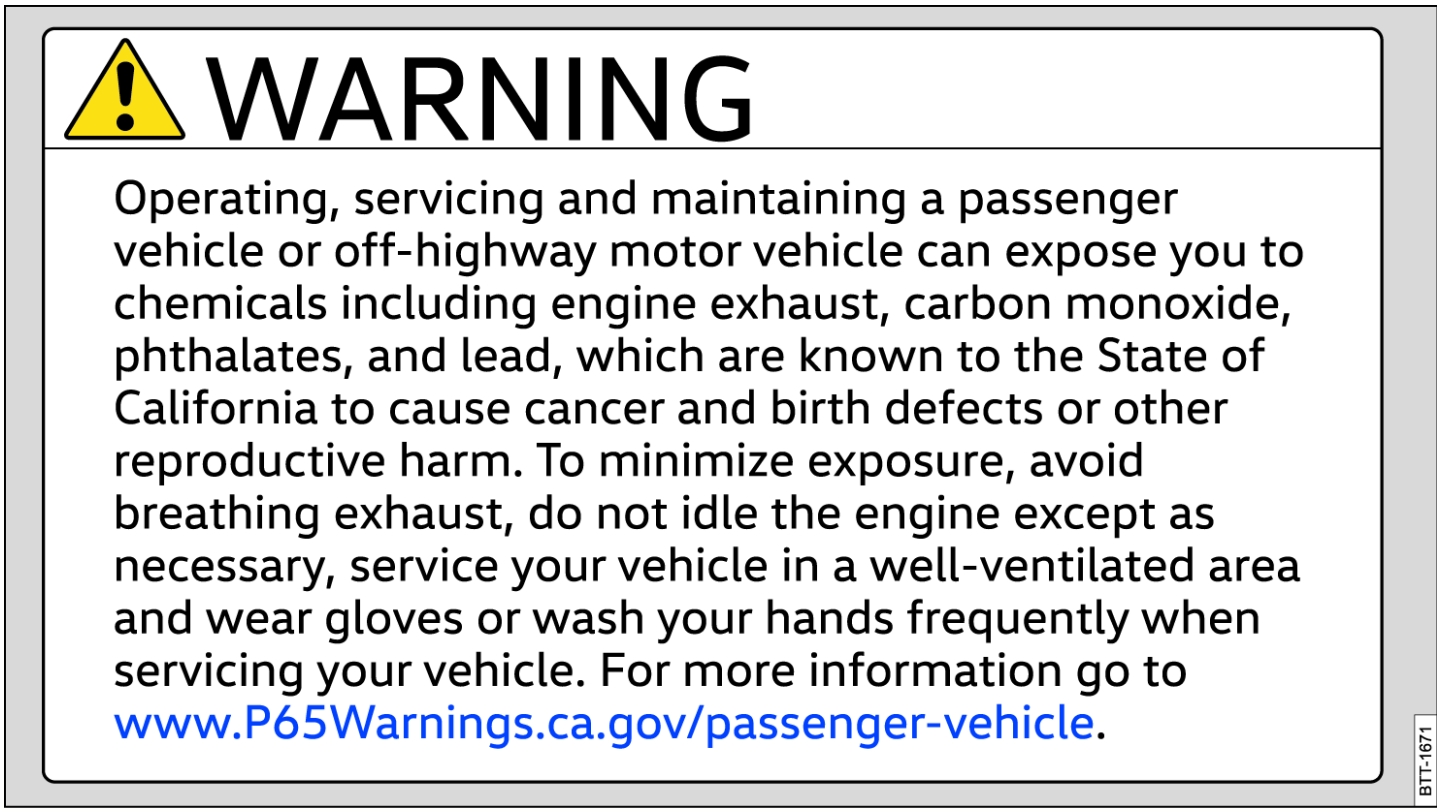


Fig. 1

Volkswagen AG works constantly to improve all of its products. Due to ongoing vehicle development, changes in design, equipment, and technology are possible a any time. The information regarding equipment, appearance, performance, dimensions, weights, fuel consumption, standards, and functions of the vehicle is the information that was available at the time of the editorial deadline for this manual. Some of the equipment and functions may not be available until later or may be available only in certain countries. Contact your local authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility for more information.

The vehicle shown may be equipped with optional equipment for an additional price and is only offered in certain markets. An authorized Volkswagen dealer can inform you about differences in your particular country. Subject to change. No legal obligations or commitments may be derived from the information, illustrations, and descriptions in this manual.

No reprint, reproduction, or translation of this Manual is permitted, even in excerpts, without the express written consent of Volkswagen AG.

Volkswagen AG expressly reserves all rights under applicable copyright law. Subject to change.

© 2021 Volkswagen AG

We thank you for buying a Volkswagen vehicle

This Volkswagen vehicle is equipped with advanced technology incorporating a number of convenience features for you to enjoy in your daily driving.

Please carefully read and follow the information in this Owner's Manual. It will help you to become more familiar with your vehicle and to be able to recognize and avoid hazardous situations for you and others.

If you have questions about your vehicle or if you believe that the manual is not complete, please contact your authorized Volkswagen dealer or your authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Authorized Volkswagen dealers and authorized Volkswagen Service Facilities always welcome your questions, suggestions, and constructive criticism.

We hope you enjoy driving your vehicle and we wish you safe and pleasant motoring.

⚠ WARNING

Please note the important safety information about using a child restraint system in the front passenger seat ⇒ 🕮 *Introduction*

About this Owner's Manual

This Owner's Manual is valid for all models and versions of your Volkswagen model and model year. The Owner's Manual describes all equipment and models without indicating special equipment or model versions. This may include descriptions of equipment that your vehicle may not have or that may only be available in some countries. You can find details of your actual vehicle equipment in your sales documentation or by contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

This Owner's Manual describes a passenger vehicle.

All information in this Owner's Manual was correct at the time of printing. Due to continuous vehicle development, there may be differences between your vehicle and the information in this Owner's Manual. No legal commitment can be derived from the information, illustrations, or descriptions in this manual.

An alphabetically ordered keyword index as well as a list of abbreviations that explains technical abbreviations and designations are included to assist with orientation and understanding of the printed manual.

Brief definitions are placed in front of some sections in a different color to summarize the topic in question. Detailed information about the systems and equipment along with their properties, conditions, and system limitations is included in the associated sections.

Owner's Manual materials:

Due to legal and technical requirements, the vehicle may be provided with different Owner's Manual variants depending on the country:

- Printed Owner's Manual.

  Technical modifications to the vehicle or safety-critical matters that may have occurred after the print date will be included in a supplement to the Manual.

Make sure that the printed documents are in the vehicle if you wish to sell or lend the car. Volkswagen also recommends resetting the Infotainment system to its factory settings in order to delete all personal data.

Explanations

The following section explains phrasings and terms found in the Owner's Manual to help understanding.

Directions

Directions (left, right, front, back) are in reference to the driving direction unless noted otherwise.

Units and speeds

The display in miles instead of kilometers or mph instead of km/h is determined by the versions of the instrument cluster and Infotainment system that are installed, which varies depending on the country where the vehicle is sold.

Illustrations

Illustrations are only for orientation and are simply used to provide a visual display of descriptions and instructions. The illustrations may differ from your vehicle.

This Owner's Manual was created for left-hand drive vehicles. For *vehicles with right-hand drive steering*, controls are sometimes arranged differently from what is shown in the illustrations or described in the text.

Form of address

To improve readability, plural pronouns are used here to refer to a singular subject of any gender. This applies to all genders equally. The use of abbreviations are for editorial purposes and do not contain any evaluation.

Terms used and their meanings:

Sunroof The term "power sunroof" is used as a synonym for all variants of the tilting and sliding panoramic sunroof depending on the vehicle equipment.

Authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility Authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility refers to workshops with instructed or trained personnel that specialize in servicing passenger vehicles. A qualified professional can be an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility or an independent workshop.

Authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility Authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility refers to workshops that have a contractual relationship with Volkswagen. This contractual relationship means that they have access to more information as well as a direct line of communication to the manufacturer.

Contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility In some situations, it is necessary for you to drive your vehicle to an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility so that it can be checked.

Contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility for assistance If it is no longer possible to continue driving your vehicle, it is necessary to have it checked directly where it is. A decision regarding whether the vehicle can continue to be driven following inspection or whether it needs to be towed will then be made depending on the circumstances.

Explanation of symbols

	Indicates a reference to a section within a chapter containing important information and safety warnings ⚠ that should always be heeded.
	The arrow indicates the end of a section.
	This symbol indicates situations where the vehicle must be stopped as quickly as possible.
TM	The symbol means “Trademark” and indicates a recognized but not (yet) officially registered trademark. However, the absence of this symbol does not constitute a waiver of any rights associated with intellectual property.
®	This symbol indicates a registered trademark. However, the absence of this symbol does not constitute a waiver of any rights associated with intellectual property.
⇒ ⚠ ⇒ ⚠ ⇒ ⚠	Symbols of this type refer to warnings in the same section or on the specified page, pointing out possible risks that can cause accidents and personal injuries and how to help prevent them.
⇒ ⓘ	Cross-reference to a warning of potential property damage, in the same section or on the specified page.

⚠ DANGER

Texts with this symbol contain information regarding hazardous situations which will cause death or severe injuries if ignored.

⚠ WARNING

Texts with this symbol contain information regarding hazardous situations which could cause death or severe injuries if ignored.

⚠ CAUTION

Texts with this symbol contain information regarding hazardous situations which could cause minor to moderate injuries if ignored.

ⓘ NOTICE

Texts with this symbol contain information regarding situations which could cause vehicle damage if ignored.

Texts with this symbol contain information about the environment and how you can help to protect it.

Texts with this symbol contain supplementary information.

Vehicle overviews

View from the front

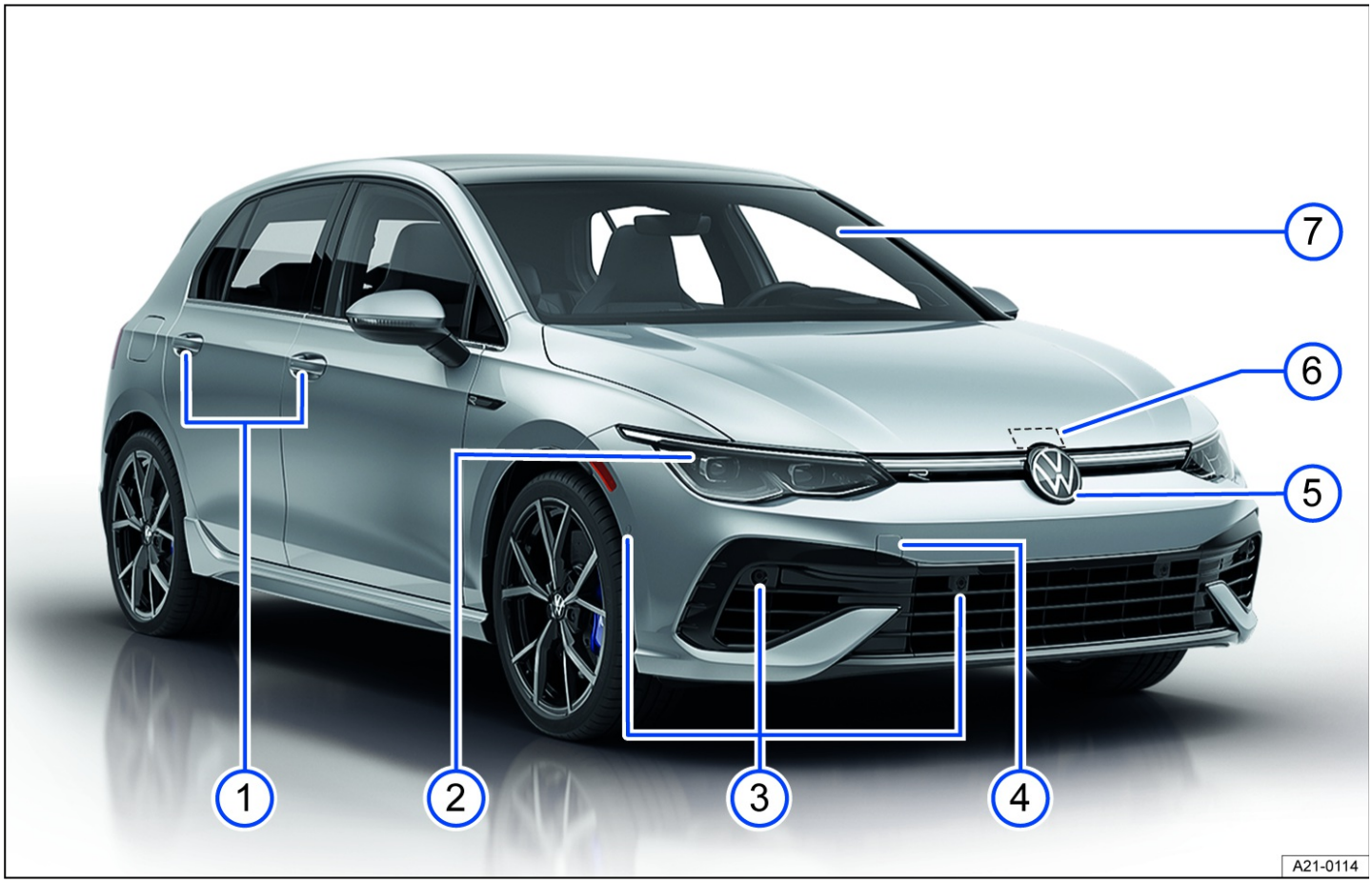


Fig. 2 Overview of vehicle from the front.

(1) Door handles ⇒ *Doors and central locking button*

(2) Headlights ⇒ *Exterior lighting*

(3) Sensors for assistance systems ⇒ *Exterior care and cleaning*

(4) Behind a cover: mount for towing eye ⇒ *Towing*

(5) Behind the Volkswagen emblem: radar sensor for assistance systems ⇒ *Exterior care and cleaning*

(6) Opening lever for the hood ⇒ *Opening and closing the hood*

(7) Windshield:

- With VIN ⇒ *Technical data*
- With windshield wipers ⇒ *Operating the windshield wiper lever*
- With camera window for assistance systems ⇒ *Exterior care and cleaning*
- With rain/light sensor in the interior rearview mirror area ⇒ *Rain/light sensor*, ⇒ *Exterior care and cleaning*

Rear view

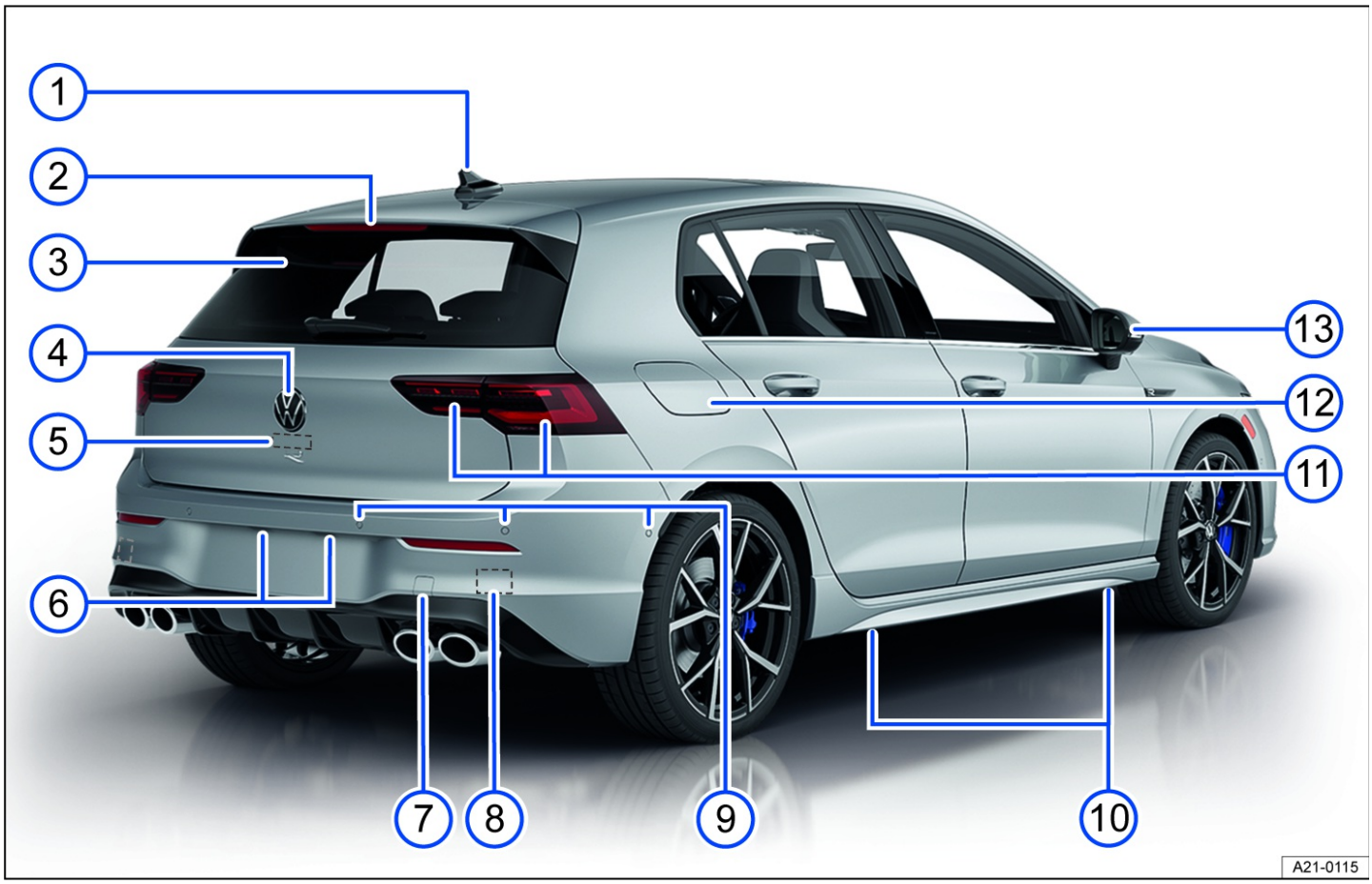


Fig. 3 Rear vehicle overview.

(1) Roof antenna ⇒ *Infotainment system and aerials*

(2) High-mounted brake light

(3) Rear window:

- With rear window defroster ⇒ *Heating, ventilation, and air conditioning*
- With rear window wiper ⇒ *Operating the windshield wiper lever*
- With window antenna ⇒ *Infotainment system and aerials*

(4) Volkswagen emblem for opening the trunk lid ⇒ *Trunk lid*

(5) Parking systems camera area ⇒ *Rear View Camera*, ⇒ *Exterior care and cleaning*

(6) Number plate light ⇒ *Exterior lighting*

(7) Behind a cover: mount for towing eye ⇒ *Towing*

(8) Behind the bumper: radar sensor for assistance systems ⇒ *Exterior care and cleaning*

(9) Sensors for assistance systems ⇒ *Exterior care and cleaning*

(10) Mounting points for the vehicle jack ⇒ *Wheel change*

(11) Taillights ⇒ *Exterior lighting*

(12) Fuel filler flap ⇒ *Fuel types and refueling*

(13) Outside mirrors ⇒ *Outside mirrors*

- with Lane Change System (Side Assist) display ⇒ *Lane Change System*
- with exit warning system indicator ⇒ *Exit warning system*

Driver door

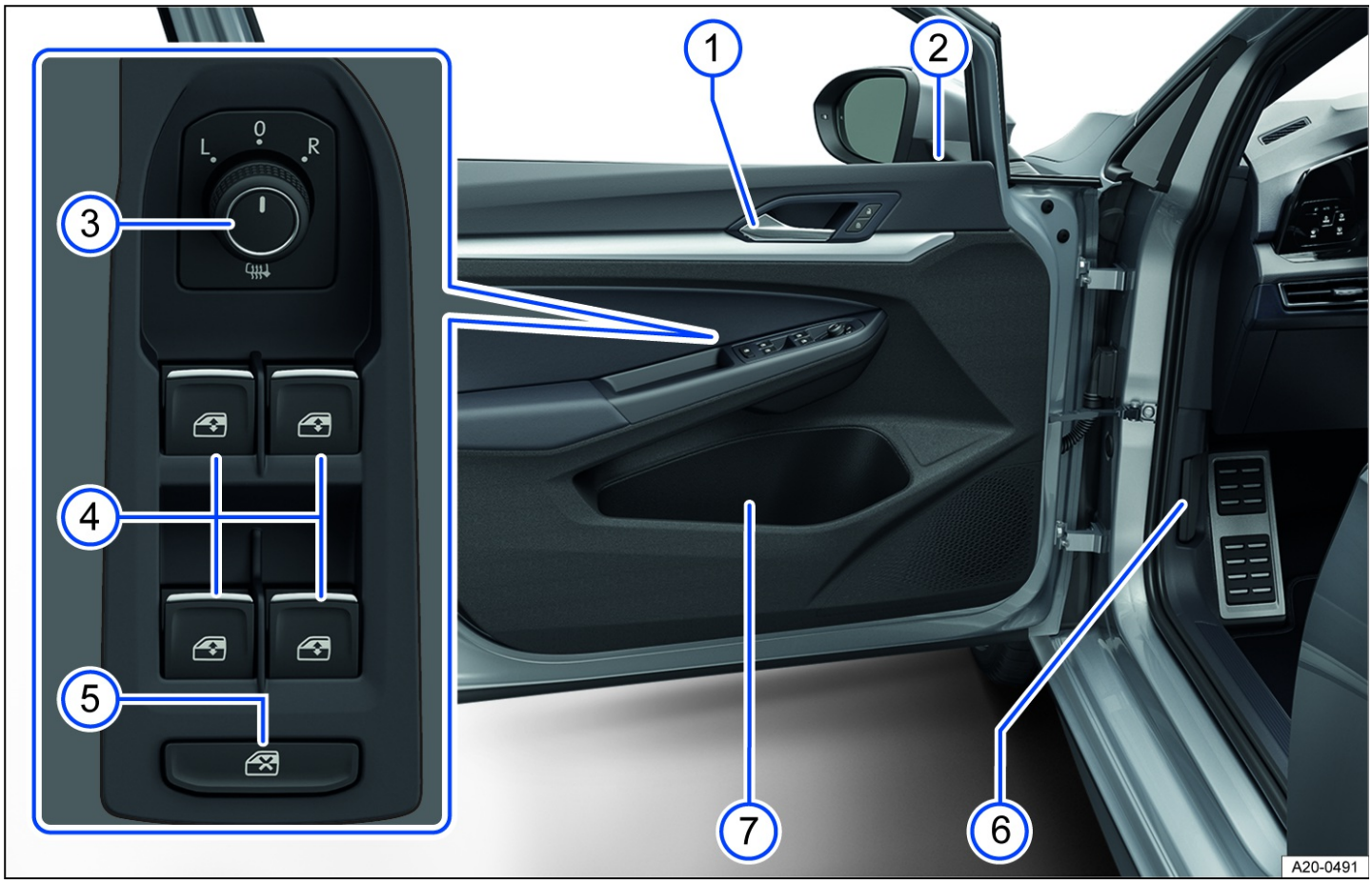


Fig. 4 Driver door: Controls.

(1) Door handle

(2) Central locking indicator light ⇒ *Indicator light in the driver's door*

(3) Knob for outside mirror position and functions ⇒ *Outside mirrors*

(4) Buttons for operating the power windows ⇒ *Opening and closing the windows*

(5) Button for deactivating the power window buttons in the rear doors ⇒ *Opening and closing the windows*

(6) Hood release lever ⇒ *Opening and closing the hood*

(7) Storage compartment:

- With cup holder
- With storage option for a reflective vest ⇒ *Emergency equipment*

Driver side

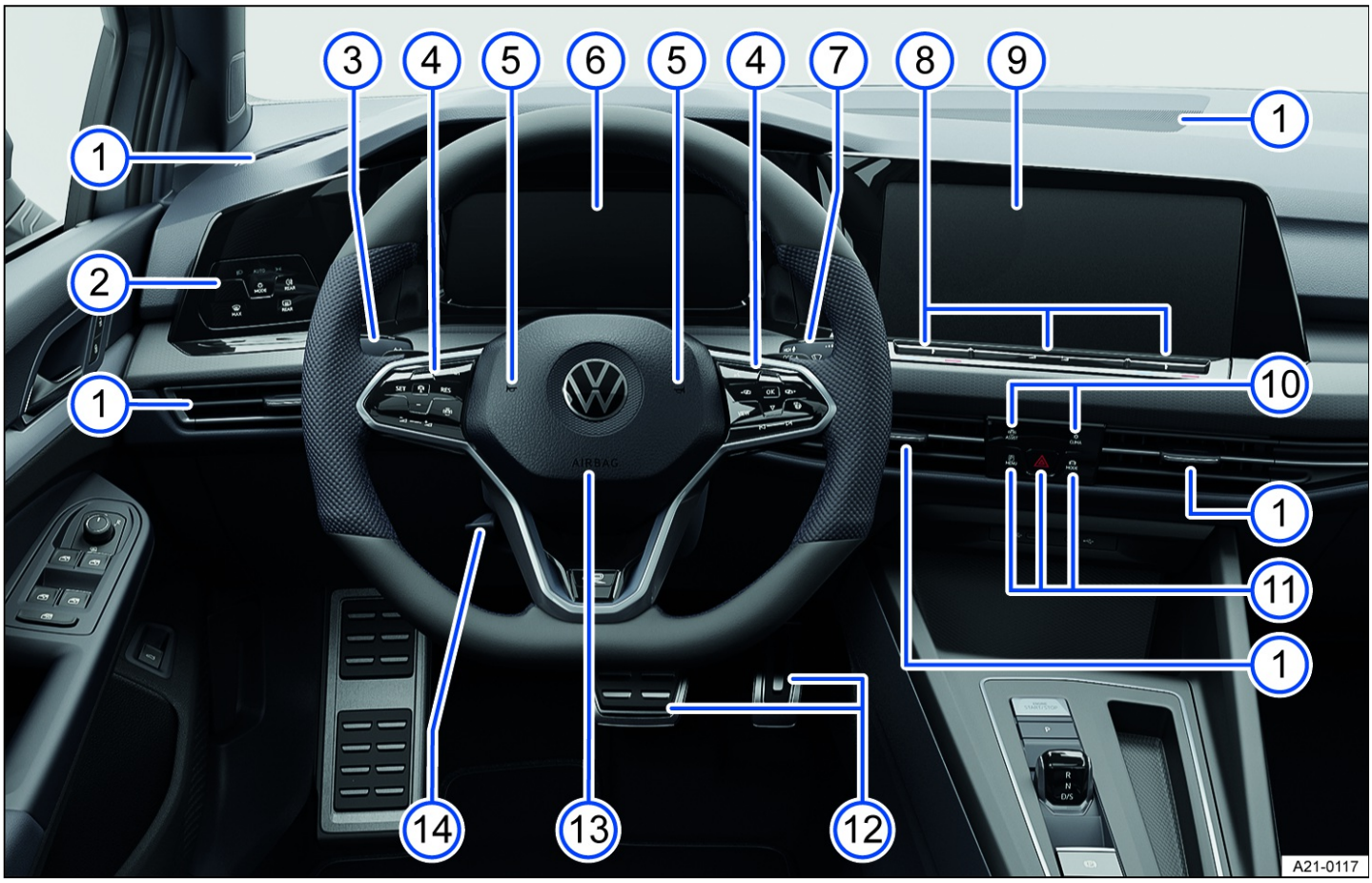


Fig. 5 Driver's side overview.

(1) Vent ⇒ *Heating, ventilation, and air conditioning*

(2) Control panel:

- For light functions ⇒ *Headlights*
- For window heating and ventilation ⇒ *Heating, ventilation, and air conditioning*

(3) Turn signal and high beam lever ⇒ *Switching the turn signals on and off*, ⇒ *Switching the high beam headlights on and off*

- With switch and buttons for driver assistance systems ⇒ *Driver assistance systems*

(4) Multi-function steering wheel controls:

- For driver assistance systems ⇒ *Driver assistance systems*
- For menu selection ⇒ *Operating the Volkswagen Digital Cockpit*
- For accepting telephone calls OK
- For audio, navigation ⏮ ⏭ , ⇒ *Infotainment system*, ⇒ *Navigation*
- For adjusting the volume
- For voice operation activation (may not function depending on the equipment) ⇒ *Voice control*
- In order to switch between the current and previous menus VIEW ⇒ *Operating the Volkswagen Digital Cockpit*

(5) Horn

(6) Instrument cluster ⇒ *Overview*

- With warning and indicator lights ⇒ *Symbols in the instrument cluster*

(7) Windshield wiper/washer lever ⇒ *Window wipers*

- With buttons for menu operation ⇒ *Operating the Volkswagen Digital Cockpit*

(8) Controls:

- For setting the temperature of the air conditioning system ⇒ *Heating, ventilation, and air conditioning*
- For adjusting the volume

(9) Infotainment system ⇒ *Infotainment system*

(10) Controls:

- For the air conditioning system ⇒ *Heating, ventilation, and air conditioning*
- For Driving Mode Selection ⇒ *Driving Mode Selection*

(11) Controls:

- For driver assistance systems ⇒ *Driver assistance systems*
- Button for switching the emergency flashers on or off ⚠ ⇒ *In case of an emergency*
- For parking and maneuvering assist systems P MENU ⇒ *Parking and maneuvering*

(12) Pedals ⇒ *Pedals*

(13) Installation location of driver's front airbag ⇒ *Airbag system*

(14) Lever for adjusting the steering wheel position ⇒ *Steering wheel*

Bottom section of the center console

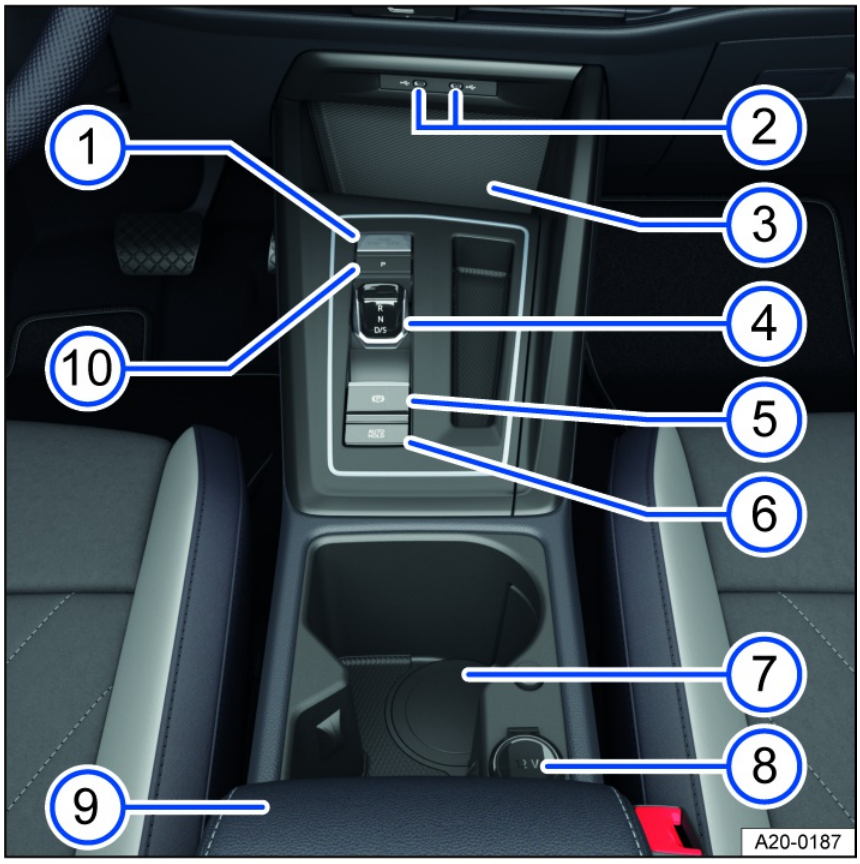


Fig. 6 Overview of the lower section of the center console in vehicles with a DSG automated transmission.

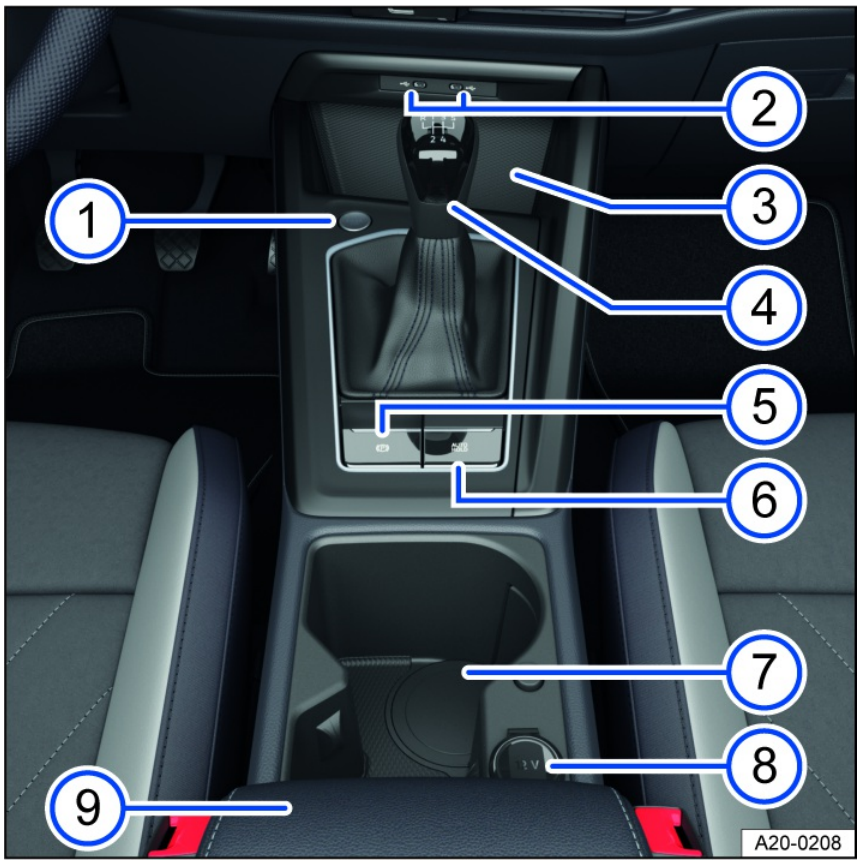


Fig. 7 Overview of the lower section of the center console for vehicles with manual transmission.

(1) Button to start and stop the engine (Keyless Access with push-button start) ⇒ *Starting and stopping the engine*

(2) USB sockets ⇒ *Wired and wireless connections*

(3) Storage compartment with function for wireless charging according to QI standard ⇒ *Wireless charging function*

(4) Lever or knob:

- For DSG® automated transmission ⇒ *Automatic transmission*
- or manual transmission ⇒ *Manual transmission*

(5) Electronic parking brake ⇒ *Electronic parking brake*

(6) Button for Auto Hold function ⇒ *Auto Hold*

(7) Storage compartment with cup holder

(8) 12 V socket ⇒ *Sockets*

(9) Center armrest with storage compartment

(10) Parking lock P in vehicles with DSG ® automated transmission ⇒ *Automatic transmission: Selecting a position*

Passenger's side

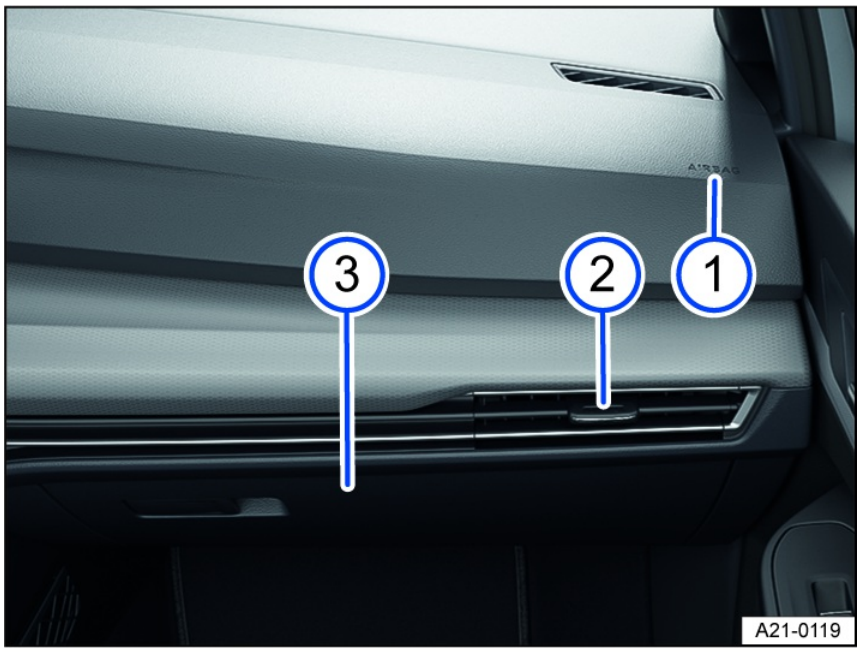


Fig. 8 Passenger's side: instrument panel overview

(1) Installation location of the front passenger's airbag in the instrument panel ⇒ *Airbag system*

(2) Adjustable vent ⇒ *Heating, ventilation, and air conditioning*

(3) Glove compartment with handle

Controls and displays in the headliner

Symbol	Meaning
OFF	Buttons for interior/reading lights ⇒ *Interior/reading lights, ambient lighting*.
	Sunroof switch ⇒ *Sunroof*.
SOS	Buttons for Emergency Call Service, Information Call and Roadside Assistance ⇒ *Information Call, Roadside Assistance Call and Emergency Call Service*.

Driver information

Symbols in the instrument cluster

The warning and indicator lights can turn on individually or in combination with each other and indicate warnings, malfunctions and certain functions. Some warning and indicator lights come on when you switch the ignition on and must turn off after some time.

Indicator lights that turn on in the light switch are described in the “Lights” chapter ⇒ *Switching the lights on and off*.

⚠ WARNING

Failure to respond to illuminated warning lights and messages may result in a vehicle breakdown, accidents and serious injuries.

- Never ignore illuminated warning lights and messages.
- Stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

	STOP Do not continue driving! Central warning light ⇒ *Priority 1 warning message*
	Fasten safety belt ⇒ *Warning light*
	Electronic parking brake ⇒ *Using the electronic parking brake*
	Brake system malfunction ⇒ *Brake system malfunction*
	STOP Do not continue to drive! Electromechanical brake booster failed ⇒ *Electromechanical brake booster failure*
	STOP Do not continue to drive! Electromechanical brake booster failed ⇒ *Electromechanical brake booster failure*
	STOP Do not continue driving! Brake fluid level too low ⇒ *Brake fluid level*
	Check brake system ⇒ *Brake pad wear indicator*
	Take over steering and be ready to brake. ⇒ 🕮 *Introduction*
	Engine oil level too low ⇒ *Engine oil level very low*
	STOP Do not continue to drive! Engine oil pressure too low ⇒ *Engine oil pressure too low*
	STOP Do not continue to drive! Engine coolant system malfunction ⇒ *Checking and filling engine coolant*, ⇒ *Engine coolant*
	STOP Do not continue driving! Steering malfunction ⇒ *Steering malfunction*
	Engine control is malfunctioning ⇒ *Engine control malfunction*, ⇒ *The engine no longer starts automatically*
	STOP Do not continue to drive! 12 V vehicle battery ⇒ *12 V vehicle battery*
	Collision warning ⇒ *Warning levels and braking support*

	Take over the steering immediately ⇒ *Take over the steering*
	Central warning light ⇒ *Priority 2 warning message*
	Airbag system or safety belt pretensioner malfunction ⇒ *Airbag system or safety belt pretensioners malfunction*
	Airbag system or safety belt pretensioner deactivated with diagnostic equipment ⇒ *Airbag system or safety belt pretensioners deactivated with diagnostic equipment*
	Front passenger's airbag disabled ⇒ *Front passenger's front airbag disabled*
	Front passenger's airbag enabled ⇒ *Front passenger's front airbag enabled*
	Emergency Call System malfunctioning ⇒ *Emergency Call Service malfunctioning*
	Emergency Call System limited ⇒ *Emergency Call Service limited*
	Electronic parking brake malfunction ⇒ *Electronic parking brake malfunction*
	Flashes: Electronic Stability Control (ESC) or Anti-slip regulation (ASR) in operation ⇒ *Electronic Stability Control (ESC)*, ⇒ *Anti-Slip Regulation (ASR)*
	Comes on: Electronic Stability Control (ESC) malfunction ⇒ *ESC malfunction*
	Anti-Slip Regulation (ASR) switched off ⇒ *ASR*
	ESC Sport switched on ⇒ *ESC Sport*
	Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC) switched off ⇒ *ESC Off*
	Anti-Lock Braking System (ABS) malfunction ⇒ *ABS failure or malfunction*
	Anti-Lock Braking System (ABS) malfunction ⇒ *ABS failure or malfunction*
	Engine oil level too low ⇒ *Engine oil level too low*
	Engine oil level too high ⇒ *Engine oil level too high*
	Engine oil system malfunction ⇒ *Engine oil system malfunction*
	Engine oil system malfunction ⇒ *Engine oil system malfunction*
	Tank almost empty ⇒ *Fuel tank almost empty*
	Travel Assist not available ⇒ *Comfort drive Travel Assist is not available or is not working as expected*
	Tank cap not closed ⇒ *Fuel tank cap open*
	Driving light failure ⇒ *Exterior lighting malfunction*
	Rain/light sensor malfunction ⇒ *Rain/light sensor malfunction*, ⇒ *Rain/light sensor malfunction*

	Windshield wiper malfunction ⇒ *Windshield wiper malfunction*
	Washer fluid level too low ⇒ *Washer fluid level too low*
	Steering malfunction ⇒ *Steering malfunction*
	STOP Do not continue to drive! Tire pressure low ⇒ *Tire pressure low*
	STOP Do not continue to drive! Tire Pressure Monitoring System faulty ⇒ *Tire Pressure Monitoring System malfunction*
	Engine control is malfunctioning ⇒ *Engine control malfunction*
	Autonomous Emergency Braking not available ⇒ *Autonomous Emergency Braking*
	Front Assist is switched off ⇒ *Using Front Assist*
	Adaptive cruise control (ACC) not available ⇒ *ACC is not available*
	Emergency Assist not available ⇒ *Semi-automatic vehicle control in a medical emergency*
	Lane Keeping System (Lane Assist) not available ⇒ *Lane Assist is not available*
	Lane Assist in control ⇒ *Driving with Lane Assist*
	Semi-automatic vehicle control in a medical emergency (Emergency Assist) is functioning ⇒ *Semi-automatic vehicle control in a medical emergency (Emergency Assist)*
	Side Assist malfunction ⇒ *Lane change system malfunctioning*
	Rear Traffic Alert brakes ⇒ *Rear Traffic Alert*
	Rear Traffic Alert malfunction ⇒ *Rear Traffic Alert*
	Exhaust system malfunction ⇒ *Exhaust-related malfunction*
	Particulate filter clogged with soot ⇒ *Particulate filter clogged with soot*
	Engine speed limited ⇒ *Engine speed limited*
	12 Volt vehicle battery ⇒ *12 V vehicle battery*
	Transmission malfunction ⇒ *Clutch "slips"*, ⇒ *Transmission overheating*
	Adaptive chassis control (DCC) malfunction ⇒ *Adaptive chassis control malfunction*
	All-wheel drive (4MOTION) ⇒ *Malfunction in the all-wheel drive*
	Press the brake pedal. ⇒ *The engine is not starting*
AUTO HOLD	Vehicle is kept stationary ⇒ *Auto Hold*

	Turn signals ⇒ *Turn signal indicator light*
	Lane Assist active ⇒ *Driving with Lane Assist*
	Comfort drive Travel Assist active ⇒ 🕮 *Introduction*
	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) regulates, no vehicle driving ahead is detected ⇒ *Switching ACC on and off*
	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) regulates, vehicle driving ahead is detected ⇒ *Switching ACC on and off*
	High beams or headlight flasher ⇒ *Switching the high beam headlights on and off*
	Outside temperature is below +39 °F (+4 °C) ⇒ *Information displays*
	Start/Stop system active ⇒ *Start-stop system*
	Start/Stop system not available ⇒ *Start-stop system*
	Economical driving condition ⇒ *Information displays*
	Service due ⇒ *Service interval display*
	Travel Assist active, Adaptive Cruise Control active and adaptive lane guidance inactive ⇒ 🕮 *Introduction*
	High beam control active ⇒ *Switching on Light Assist*
	Take over the steering ⇒ *Take over the steering*
	Autonomous Emergency Braking starts ⇒ *Autonomous Emergency Braking starts*
	Distance warning ⇒ *Warning levels and braking support*
	Eco driving mode ⇒ *Driving mode properties*
	Comfort driving mode ⇒ *Driving mode properties*
	Individual driving mode ⇒ *Driving mode properties*
	Sport driving mode ⇒ *Driving mode properties*
	Drift driving mode ⇒ *Driving mode properties*
	Race driving mode ⇒ *Driving mode properties*
	Special driving mode ⇒ *Driving mode properties*
	Mobile phone battery charge level ⇒ *Information displays*
	Note about information in the Owner's Manual ⇒ *Note about information in the Owner's Manual*

Warning and information texts

The status of some functions inside the vehicle and vehicle components are checked when the ignition is switched on or while driving. Malfunctions are indicated b
red and yellow warning symbols in the instrument cluster display and may also be signaled audibly in some cases. The appearance of texts and symbols may vary

depending on the instrument cluster version.

Any malfunctions currently occurring can also be manually called up. To do this, open the Vehicle status or Vehicle menu ⇒ *Vehicle settings menu*.

Priority 1 warning message

The red central warning light flashes or comes on, in some cases together with warning tones or additional symbols. **Do not continue driving!** There is a haza Check the malfunction. Contact a suitably qualified professional if necessary. Volkswagen recommends contacting your Volkswagen dealership.

Priority 2 warning message

The yellow central warning light flashes or comes on, in some cases together with warning tones or additional symbols. Malfunctions or insufficient operating fluids can cause vehicle damage and vehicle malfunctions. Check the malfunction as soon as possible. Contact a suitably qualified professional if necessary. Volkswager recommends contacting your Volkswagen dealership.

Note about information in the Owner's Manual

You can find more information about the existing warning message in the Owner's Manual.

Informational text

Information about various processes in the vehicle.

If there are multiple warning messages, the symbols will appear consecutively for several seconds. The symbols will appear until the malfunction is corrected.

If warning messages about malfunctions appear when the ignition is switched on, settings or information displays may not appear as described. If this is the case, have malfunctions corrected by suitably qualified professionals. Volkswagen recommends contacting your Volkswagen dealership.

Introduction to the instrument cluster

The vehicle is equipped with a Volkswagen Digital Cockpit. The instrument cluster shows essential information, such as speed.

In addition, the following functions, among others, are available depending on the equipment:

- Various menus, such as for the assistance systems.
- Status displays for the driver assistance systems.
- Display messages.
- Warning and indicator lights.
- Information about economy and range.

Content can be individually adapted and settings can be changed in the menus.

WARNING

If the driver is distracted while driving, accidents and serious injuries can occur.

- Never operate the instrument cluster while driving.
- Only adjust any settings in the instrument cluster or Infotainment system when the vehicle is stationary.

WARNING

Risk of an accident in the event of a Volkswagen Digital Cockpit malfunction. If the display malfunctions or there is a fault, functional limitations for safety-relevant systems cannot be recognized. The operational safety of your vehicle may be impaired.

- Continue driving with caution.
- Seek assistance from suitably qualified professionals and have the vehicle checked. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

After starting the engine when the 12 V vehicle battery is severely drained or when it has been replaced or jump-started, the system settings, e.g. personal convenience settings and programming, and user profiles may be changed or erased. Check and correct the settings after the 12 V vehicle battery is sufficiently recharged.

Digital Instrument cluster

Overview

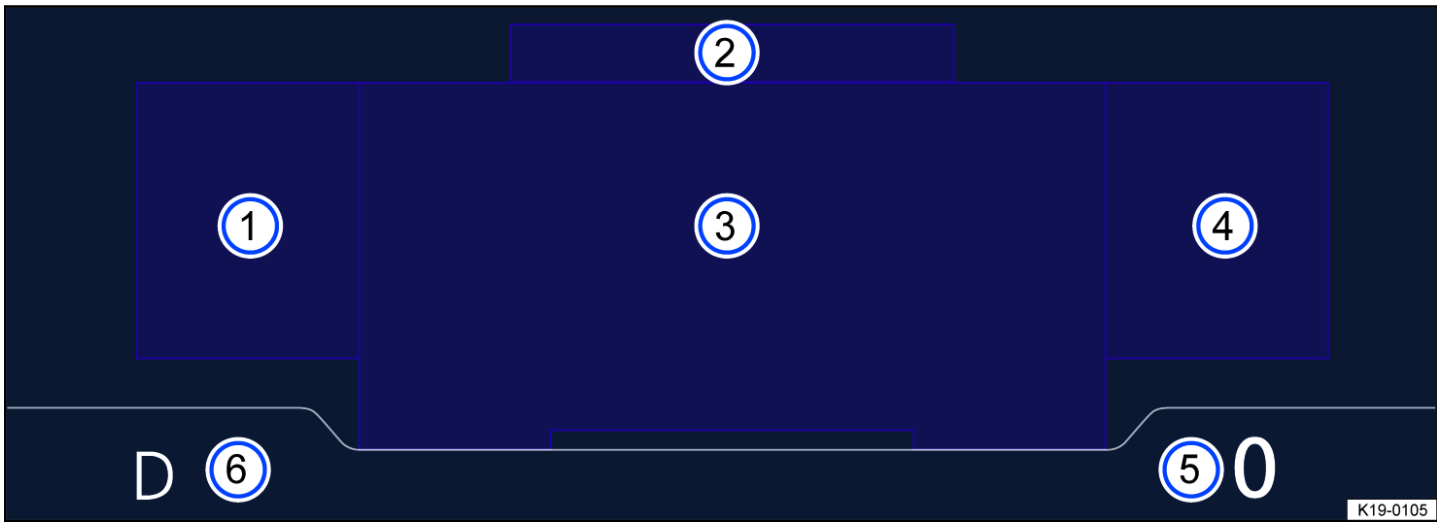


Fig. 9 Digital instrument cluster in the instrument panel (general example).

1 Secondary displays.

2 Pop-ups.

3 Main display area.

4 Secondary displays.

5 Digital speed display.

6 Currently engaged gear or selector lever level.

The Digital Cockpit is a digital instrument cluster with a high-resolution TFT color display. By selecting different secondary displays, other displays can be shown in addition to the standard dials, such as the tachometer. The term "Volkswagen Digital Cockpit" is also used to refer to the digital instrument cluster in the following.

Operating the Volkswagen Digital Cockpit



Fig. 10 Right side of the multi-function steering wheel: Buttons for operating the menus and information displays in the instrument cluster (version 1).



Fig. 11 Right side of the multi-function steering wheel: Buttons for operating the menus and information displays in the instrument cluster (version 2).

Menus cannot be accessed when a priority 1 warning message is displayed ⇒ *Warning and information texts*. You can confirm and hide some messages using the OK button on the multi-function steering wheel.

Views in the display

The main display can be changed by pressing the VIEW button ⇒ *Overview*. The following views can be shown in the display area:

Summary Before establishing and after ending drive-ready mode: display with information on the vehicle status, e.g. total mileage.

Classic Classic display of dials.

Navigation Navigation map and route guidance information.

Driver assistance systems Display of the active driver assistance systems.

Special Depending on vehicle equipment, it may be possible to display alternative displays here, e.g. sport displays.

Situation-related messages, such as navigation information, are shown as pop-ups.

Selecting secondary displays

To select the secondary displays, proceed as follows ⇒ *Digital Instrument cluster*, ⇒ *Information displays*:

1. Select the right or left secondary display area using the or buttons.
2. Select the required secondary display using the or arrow buttons.
3. Confirm your selection with the OK button.

Press and hold the VIEW button to show or hide secondary displays.

Configuring secondary displays

1. Select the right or left secondary display area using the or buttons.
2. Use the or arrow keys to navigate to the Settings menu and select your preferred secondary display.
3. Press the OK button to apply changes.

A check mark ☑ indicates whether the secondary display is activated.

4. To return to the menu selection, press the ⧉ or ⧉ button.

The secondary displays can be configured or hidden independently of each other.

Navigation map in the digital instrument cluster

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the digital instrument cluster may display a detailed navigation map. To do so, select the Navigation display area in the digital instrument cluster by pressing the VIEW button.

The size of the navigation map can be adjusted continuously. To select the desired map size, proceed as follows:

- Press the △ or ▽ arrow buttons on the multi-function steering wheel to zoom in or out.
- Press and hold the VIEW button on the multi-function steering wheel to show or hide the secondary displays.

If warning messages about malfunctions appear when the ignition is switched on, settings or information displays may not appear as described. If this is the case, have malfunctions corrected by suitably qualified professionals. Volkswagen recommends contacting your Volkswagen dealership.

⚠ WARNING

If the driver is distracted while driving, accidents and serious injuries can occur.

- Never operate the instrument cluster while driving.
- Only adjust any settings in the instrument cluster or Infotainment system when the vehicle is stationary.

Information displays

Possible displays in the main display area of the digital instrument cluster

Depending on the vehicle equipment, different information may be shown in the main display of the digital instrument cluster ⇒ *Overview*:

- Open doors, hood and trunk lid.
- Warning and information texts ⇒ *Warning and information texts*.
- Range ⇒ *Digital fuel gauge*.
- Time and date ⇒ *Time and date*.
- Radio and navigation information.
- Outside temperature.
- Selector lever position for automatic transmission.
- Gear recommendation ⇒ *Gear recommendation*.
- Service interval display ⇒ *Service interval display*.
- Speed warning for winter tires.
- Detected road sign from the traffic sign recognition ⇒ *Dynamic Road Sign Display*.
- Depending on the vehicle equipment: Status display for Active Cylinder Management (ACT) ⇒ *Eco tips*.
- Fuel-efficient driving eco.
- Engine code ().
- Driver assistance systems display ⇒ *Driver assistance systems*.
- Radiator fan run-on.

Open doors, hood and trunk lid

If the doors and hood or trunk lid are open after unlocking the vehicle and while driving, this will be shown in the instrument cluster display and may also be indicate audibly.

Selector lever position for automatic transmission

The selector lever position and, depending on the driving mode, the gear that is engaged, are shown on the selector lever and in the instrument cluster display. The gear shift pattern is displayed when the brake or the selector lever in the instrument cluster are actuated.

Outside temperature display

When outside temperatures are colder than approximately +4°C (+39°F), a snowflake symbol also appears on the outside temperature display ❄. This symbol remains on until the outside temperature rises above +43 °F (+6 °C).

In the following situations, the temperature displayed may be higher than the actual outside temperature due to heat radiating from the engine:

- When the vehicle is stationary

- When the driving speed is very low

The measurement range is from -45 °C (-49 °F) to +169 °F (+76 °C)

⚠ WARNING

Streets and bridges may be icy when outside temperatures are above the freezing point.

- The ❄ snowflake symbol indicates a possible risk of black ice.
- Black ice may also be present when outside temperatures are above +39 °F (+4 °C) when the ❄ snowflake symbol is not displayed.
- Never rely solely on the outside temperature display.

Gear recommendation

A recommendation to select a fuel-saving gear may be displayed while driving ⇒ *Gear recommendation*.

Speed warning for winter tires

If the set maximum speed is exceeded, this is indicated.

Settings for the speed warning can be adjusted in the vehicle settings in the Infotainment system ⇒ *Vehicle settings menu*.

Fuel-efficient driving eco

If the vehicle is driving in a fuel-efficient manner, this will be indicated while driving eco.

Engine code

1. Open the service menu ⇒ *Service menu*.
2. Select the Engine code () menu item.

Radiator fan run-on

This indicator appears after drive-ready mode has been ended, if the radiator fan continues to run.

The radiator fan may continue running due to:

- Exhaust gas post-treatment, through particulate filter regeneration, for example.
- Active brake cooling after descent.
- Dissipation of engine heat after high load, e.g. trailer mode.

Possible secondary displays in the Volkswagen Digital Cockpit

In the secondary display area of the digital instrument cluster, other views can be configured and displayed via a configuration menu, depending on the vehicle equipment ⇒ *Overview*:

- Driving data menus, e.g. Travel time/distance driven.
- Operating temperatures.
- Time and date ⇒ *Time and date*.
- Phone information.
- Compass display.
- Destination information.
- Navigation information.
- Torque splitter.
- Charge pressure.
- Output.

Operating temperatures

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the following operating temperatures are shown in the Operating temperatures auxiliary display:

- Engine oil.
- Engine coolant.
- Transmission.

Phone

If the Phone auxiliary display is activate and a cell phone is connected via Bluetooth®, the Bluetooth® symbol will be displayed in the digital instrument cluster display. The 🔋 symbol also indicates the charge level of the mobile device.

An arrow behind the entry in the configuration menu indicates a submenu. In the submenu, a list of the most recent phone calls is shown and you have the option t

call the displayed contacts back.

Compass display

If the Compass secondary display is activated, the direction in which you are currently driving is shown (blue arrow) using a depiction of the vehicle and a compass

Destination information

When route guidance is activated, the Destination information secondary display shows the predicted journey time and distance from the destination in miles or km

Navigation information

When route guidance is activated, the Navigation instruction auxiliary display shows the direction of travel as an arrow.

An arrow behind the entry in the configuration menu indicates a submenu.

The submenu lists your home address and a list of your most recent destinations. Route guidance can be started here by pressing the OK button.

Torque splitter

In the Torque splitter secondary display, the current torque for each wheel is displayed.

There are different instrument clusters; therefore the versions and appearances of the displays may vary. Malfunctions will only be indicated by indicator lights if the display does not have warning or information texts.

Some indicators in the instrument cluster display can be hidden due to events that occur suddenly, for example if there is an incoming phone call.

Depending on the equipment, some settings and displays may also appear in the Infotainment system.

If there are multiple warning messages, the symbols will appear consecutively for several seconds. The symbols will appear until the malfunction is corrected.

If warning messages about malfunctions appear when the ignition is switched on, settings or information displays may not appear as described. If this is the case, have malfunctions corrected by suitably qualified professionals. Volkswagen recommends contacting your Volkswagen dealership.

Tachometer

The start of the red area on the tachometer indicates the maximum permissible engine speed for all gears when the engine is run in and at operating temperature.

Before reaching the red area, shift to the next highest gear, select the selector lever position D/S or take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

NOTICE

- Avoid high engine speeds, full acceleration and heavy engine loads when the engine is cold.
- To prevent engine damage, the tachometer indicator may only be in the red area of the scale briefly.

Shifting up early helps save fuel and reduce operating noises.

Fuel gauge

Digital fuel gauge

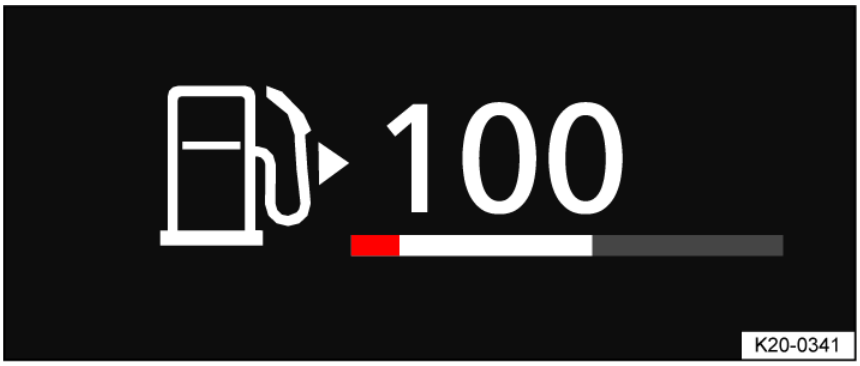


Fig. 12 Fuel gauge on the Volkswagen Digital Cockpit (general example).

Troubleshooting

Fuel tank almost empty

The yellow indicator light turns on. The reserve supply (red marking) is being used.

1. Refuel at the next opportunity.

Fuel tank cap open

The yellow indicator light turns on.

1. Close the fuel tank cap.

WARNING

Driving with low fuel level that is too low can lead to a vehicle breakdown in traffic, accidents, and serious injuries.

- If the fuel level is too low, this can result in irregular fuel supply to the engine, particularly when going uphill or downhill.
- The steering, all driver assistance systems and brake support systems will not work if the engine is “sputtering” or cuts out due to fuel shortage or irregular fuel supply.
- To prevent vehicle breakdown due to low fuel, always refill the fuel tank once it reaches a fill level of 1/4.

NOTICE

Never drive with a completely empty fuel tank. Irregular fuel supply can result in misfiring and unburnt fuel entering the exhaust system.

The small arrow next to the fuel pump symbol on the fuel gauge indicates which side of the vehicle the fuel filler flap is on.

Head-up display (HUD)

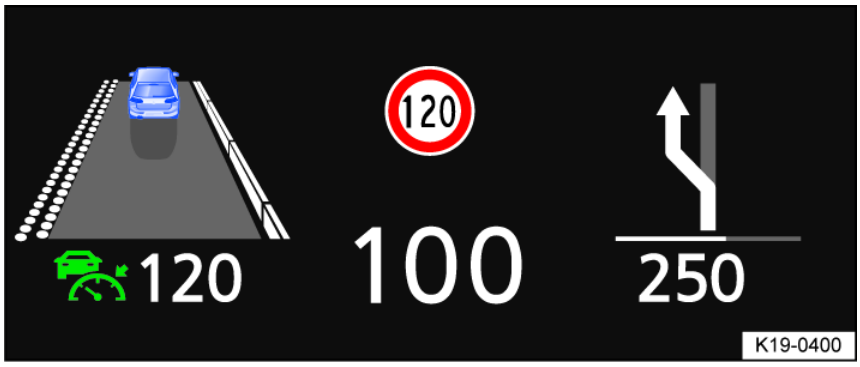


Fig. 13 In the driver's field of vision: sample indicators on the head-up display.

The head-up display projects selected information displays or warning messages from assist systems or from the Infotainment system in the visual range of drivers.

Switching the head-up display on and off

The head-up display (HUD) *fig. 13* can be switched on and off using the vehicle settings in the Infotainment system.

Height adjustment

To individually adapt the angle of view, set the head-up display in the corresponding menu in the Infotainment system vehicle settings.

1. Setting the optimal seat position.
2. Set your preferred position and inclination of the head-up display with the function keys or the buttons on the multi-function steering wheel.

The rotation can also be adjusted in the vehicle settings of the Infotainment system.

Settings in the Infotainment system

Additional settings for the head-up display can be adjusted in the Vehicle menu in the Infotainment system.

1. In the Vehicle menu, select the Inner view.
2. Tap the Head-up display function key.

The following setting options are available:

- Setting the display brightness and the color scheme of the head-up display.
- Selection of the display contents for the head-up display, e.g. driver assist system or Infotainment system displays. Some display contents cannot be hidden, such as warning messages.

The brightness of the display reduces automatically as the ambient brightness decreases. The basic brightness is set together with the instrument illumination ⇒ *Instrument and switch illumination*.

An alternative color scheme can be selected in the vehicle settings in the Infotainment system for the head-up display for poor weather conditions, such as

snowfall.

Sunglasses with polarization filters can negatively influence the readability.

Reflections are possible due to unfavorable sunlight.

The optimal readability of the head-up display depends on the position of the seat and the height adjustment of the head-up display.

Driving data menu

Driving data menus

Multiple driving data displays are available in the auxiliary display area ⇒ *Digital Instrument cluster*, ⇒ *Information displays*.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, various driving data can be displayed. The displayed driving data is dependent on the current driving style, the vehicle status, e.g. particle filter regeneration, and the current driving situation, e.g. city traffic. The driving data is determined as an average value over sections of different distances and the currently displayed value may therefore differ from the actual average value.

Reset driving data menus

1. Press the ⟲ or ⟳ button.
2. Select the corresponding driving data menu in the configuration menu with the △ or ▽ arrow buttons.

   An arrow behind the entry in the configuration menu indicates a submenu.
3. In the submenu, select Reset data and confirm by pressing the OK button.

If the trip is interrupted for more than two hours, the From start memory is reset. The From refueling memory is reset after refueling. The Long-term memory is not automatically reset.

The memory collects the driving data up to 19 hours and 59 minutes or 99 hours and 59 minutes driving time or 1999.9 miles (km) or 9999.9 miles (km) distance driven. If one of these maximum thresholds is met, the memory is erased. The maximum thresholds may vary depending on the version of the instrument cluster.

Sport displays

Lap timer in the instrument cluster

The lap timer offers the option to measure and save the individual lap times on a race course manually in the vehicle as well as compare these times to the best times previously recorded.

Depending on the equipment, the lap timer can be displayed in the instrument cluster.

The following main menus can be displayed:

- Lap timer.
- Lap (with current lap specification).
- Statistics.

Switching between menus

1. Press the △ or ▽ button on the multi-function steering wheel.

For example, the following list will show the layout of the menus in the instrument cluster display. The actual scope of the menus and the names of individual menu items depend on the instrument cluster version and the vehicle electronics.

Menu displays and functions

Lap timer menu:

Start The time measurement of a lap is started.

Since start The time measurement begins when the vehicle begins to drive. If it is already moving, the time measurement starts when the vehicle comes to a stop in the meantime.

Statistics An overview of the laps previously recorded is displayed.

Lap menu:

Stop The active time measurement is paused. The lap is not finished.

Resume The paused time measurement is resumed.

Split time A split time is displayed for approximately five seconds. The active time measurement continues to run simultaneously.

New lap The time of the current lap is stopped and a new lap is started. The time for the finished lap is transferred to the statistics.

Cancel lap The time measurement is stopped and discarded. The current lap will not be recorded in the statistics.

End The time measurement is finished. The lap will be recorded in the statistics.

Statistics menu:

Back The display switches back to the previous menu.

Reset All saved statistics data is reset.

The previously driven lap times are displayed in the Statistics menu. If the maximum lap number of 99 laps or the maximum total duration of 99 hours, 59 minutes and 59 seconds is reached, a new time measurement can be started before the statistics are reset.

⚠ WARNING

Driver distraction can cause accidents and injuries.

- Only adjust lap timer presets and open the statistics when the vehicle is stationary.
- Only operate the lap timer while driving if the driving situation is easy to control and monitor.

Service

Service menu

Depending on the equipment, settings can be applied in the service menu.

Opening the service menu

1. Select the Travel time/distance driven information profile in the secondary display.
2. Press and hold the or button on the multi-function steering wheel for approximately six seconds.
3. Use the arrow buttons and to navigate the menu.
4. You can now navigate in the menu as usual using the buttons on the multi-function steering wheel.

Resetting the service interval display

Select the Service menu and follow the instructions on the instrument cluster display.

Resetting the oil change service

Select the Reset oil change service menu and follow the instructions on the instrument cluster display.

Engine code

Select the Engine code menu. The engine code () is shown on the instrument cluster display.

Setting the time

Select the Time menu and set the correct time using the or arrow buttons.

Copyright

Select the Copyright menu to access the copyright information.

Service interval display

Displays about service events appear in the instrument cluster display and in the Infotainment system.

Service appointments at Volkswagen are divided into oil change services and inspections. The service interval display informs the driver about the next service appointment which includes an engine oil change and about the next inspection.

There are different versions of the instrument cluster and Infotainment system; therefore, the versions and appearances of the displays may vary.

The service intervals are specified for vehicles with the fixed oil change service interval.

Intervals are determined individually on vehicles with the flexible oil change service interval. Oil change services only need to be performed if the vehicle requires it The specific operating conditions and the personal driving style are also taken into consideration. The service early warning message is first displayed 30 days prio to the calculated oil change service due date. The displayed remaining distance to be traveled is always rounded to 100 miles (km) and the remaining time is rounded to whole days.

Service notification

If a service or an inspection is due in the near future, a service notification will be displayed when the ignition is switched on.

The specified mileage or time is the distance or time until the next service can be completed.

Service event

When an oil change service or an inspection service is due, a chime will sound when switching on the ignition and you can then see a wrench symbol for a fe seconds in the instrument cluster display together with one of the following displays:

- Inspection now!
- Oil change now!
- Oil change service and inspection now!

Checking a service due date

When the ignition is on, the engine is off, and the vehicle is stationary, the current service due date can be viewed at any time:

1. Tap the Vehicle function key.
2. Select the Status menu item and tap the Service function key to display the service information.

The service due date can also be checked via the service menu ⇒ *Service menu*.

Resetting the service interval display

If the service interval display was not reset after the service or inspection service, the display can be reset as follows:

The service interval display can only be reset through the service menu ⇒ *Service menu*.

Do not reset the service interval display between service intervals or incorrect information will be displayed.

If the oil change service interval was manually reset, the service interval display then also switches to a fixed service interval, even on vehicles with the flexible oil change service interval.

The service message disappears after a few seconds when the engine is running or when the OK button on the multi-function steering wheel is pressed.

If the 12 V vehicle battery in a vehicle with the flexible service interval has been disconnected for an extended period, the time for the next oil change service cannot be calculated. Therefore, the service interval displays may show incorrect calculations. If this is the case, follow the maximum permissible maintenance intervals.

Time and date

Setting the time and date via the Infotainment system

1. Tap the Settings function key ⇒ *Vehicle settings menu*.
2. Select the Time and date menu item to set the time and date.
3. Select time source:
   - Automatic.
   - Manual.

The time and date are only displayed in the Infotainment system.

Setting the time using the digital instrument cluster

1. Open the service menu ⇒ *Service menu*.
2. Select the Time menu.
3. Set the time with the △ and ▽ arrow buttons.

Driver Alert System

Introduction



Fig. 14 Driver Alert System symbol on the instrument cluster display.

The Driver Alert System tells you if your driving behavior suggests that you are tired.

At the beginning of your journey, the Driver Alert System observes your driving behavior and uses this observation to assess how tired you are. It continually compares its initial assessment with your current driving behavior. If the system detects that you are tired, it issues an audible warning, as well as visually alerting you by displaying a symbol and accompanying message on the instrument cluster display *fig. 14*. The message will remain on the instrument cluster display for approximately five seconds, and will be repeated once if necessary. The system saves the message that was most recently issued.

When is it active?

Your driving behavior will only be evaluated when you are traveling at speeds of more than approximately 37 mph (approximately 60 km/h), up to approximately 125 mph (approximately 200 km/h).

⚠ WARNING

The Driver Alert System's intelligent technology cannot overcome the natural laws of physics and it can only operate within its own limits. Do not allow the increased convenience provided by the Driver Alert System to tempt you into taking risks. On longer journeys, take regular breaks and make sure that you feel adequately rested before setting off again.

- It is always your responsibility to make sure that you are fit to drive.
- Never drive a vehicle when tired.
- The system is not guaranteed to detect tiredness every time without fail. Familiarize yourself with the information in the section entitled Functional limitations.
- In certain situations, the system may incorrectly interpret a deliberate driving maneuver as driver tiredness.
- Please note that the system is not configured to issue an immediate warning in the event that you doze off momentarily.
- Pay attention to indicators in the instrument cluster display and respond to the prompts accordingly.

The Driver Alert System is designed exclusively for driving on highways and good road surfaces.

In the event of a malfunction, have the system checked by suitably qualified professionals. Volkswagen recommends contacting your Volkswagen dealership.

Limits of the Driver Alert System

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ ⚠ *Introduction*.

The Driver Alert System has certain limitations. The following conditions may limit the effectiveness of the Driver Alert System or prevent it from working at all:

- Speeds of less than approximately 37 mph (approximately 60 km/h).
- Speeds of over approximately 125 mph (approximately 200 km/h).
- Winding roads.
- Poor road surfaces.
- Inclement weather.
- Construction sites.
- Sporty driving.
- If you are very distracted.

The Driver Alert System will be reset in the following situations:

- When the ignition has been switched off.
- When you have taken off your safety belt and opened the driver door.
- When the vehicle is stationary for more than approximately 15 minutes.

On long, slow journeys when traveling at less than approximately 37 mph (approximately 60 km/h), the system automatically resets its assessment of how tired you are. If you then start driving faster, it will start assessing your driving behavior once again.

Operating the Driver Alert System

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ ⚠ *Introduction*.

Hiding a message

The message in the instrument cluster display can be hidden as follows:

1. Press the OK button on the multi-function steering wheel.

Switching on and off

You can switch the Driver Alert System on and off using the Assistance menu in the Infotainment system. When activating the vehicle's drive system, the Driver Ale System is always activated ⇒ *Vehicle settings menu*.

Dynamic Road Sign Display

Introduction

The Dynamic Road Sign Display detects standard road signs using a camera in the interior rearview mirror base and informs the driver of detected speed limits and passing restrictions. Within the system limits, the system also displays an additional sign to indicate special restrictions. The system may also continue to display the valid speed limit on roads without signs.

The traffic signs recorded by the Dynamic Road Sign Display are shown in the instrument cluster. Depending on the Infotainment system installed in the vehicle, th road signs may also be displayed there.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, a display may also appear in the head-up display (HUD).

Dynamic Road Sign Display is always active when the ignition is started.

Road sign display

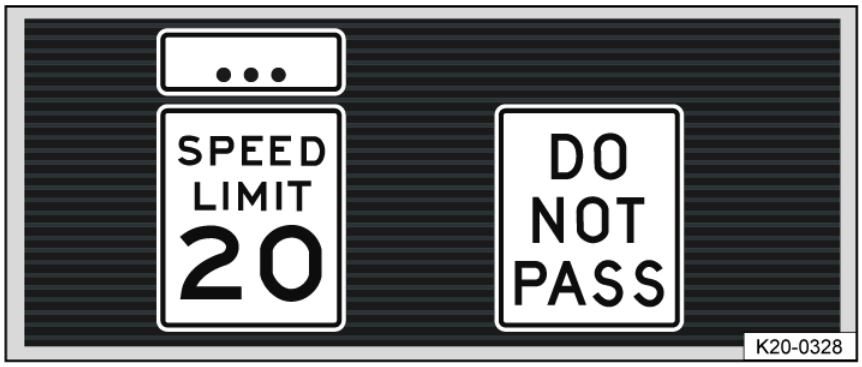


Fig. 15 In the instrument cluster display: Example of detected speed limits.

After checking and evaluating the information from the camera, the Infotainment system, and the current vehicle data, the Dynamic Road Sign Display function displays up to two valid traffic signs and a generic additional sign *fig. 15*:

1st position: The traffic sign that currently applies is shown on the left side of the display, for example a speed limit of 20 mph (35 km/h).

2nd position: Another road sign can be displayed in the second position, such as a passing restriction.

Additional signs: A recognized additional sign is displayed above the applicable traffic sign. Depending on the system, a generic additional sign is displayed instead of the actually recognized additional sign. The applicable traffic sign in the instrument cluster is supplemented by the generic additional sign.

⚠ WARNING

The intelligent technology of the Dynamic Road Sign Display cannot overcome the natural laws of physics, and it can only operate within the limits of the system. Do not allow the increased convenience provided by the Dynamic Road Sign Display to tempt you into taking risks. The system cannot replace the driver's attention.

- Always adapt your speed and driving style to the visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- Poor visibility, darkness, snowfall, rain, and fog may prevent road signs from being display or may cause them to be displayed incorrectly by the system.
- If the camera lens is dirty, obstructed, or damaged, the Dynamic Road Sign Display function may be limited.

⚠ WARNING

Driving recommendations and road signs displayed in the Dynamic Road Sign Display may differ from the actual traffic situation.

- Not all road signs can be detected and displayed correctly by the system.
- Traffic signs on the roads and traffic regulations must always take precedence over driving recommendations and displays from the Dynamic Road Sign Display function.

Limits of the Dynamic Road Sign Display

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ ⚠ *Introduction*.

Error messages

No road signs available. The system is in the initialization phase.

Or:

The vehicle has not detected any road signs.

Error: Dynamic Road Sign Display. System malfunction. Contact a suitably qualified professional. Volkswagen recommends contacting your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility

Speed Alert currently not available. The speed alert from the Dynamic Road Sign Display is malfunctioning. Contact a suitably qualified professional. Volkswagen recommends contacting your Volkswagen dealership.

Dynamic Road Sign Display: Clean windshield! The windshield is dirty in the area around the camera or weather conditions are interfering with the camera view. Clean the windshield.

Dynamic Road Sign Display is currently limited. Data is not being transmitted by the Infotainment system. Check that valid map data is loaded in the Infotainment system.
Or:

The vehicle is located in an area that is not detected on the map stored in the Infotainment system.

No data available. The Dynamic Road Sign Display function is not supported in the country where the vehicle is currently being operated.

Functional limitations

The Dynamic Road Sign Display is subject to system limitations. The following conditions may cause the Dynamic Road Sign Display function to be limited or to no operate at all:

- Poor visibility, such as in snow.
- Glare, for example from oncoming traffic or the sun
- High speeds
- If the camera is obstructed or dirty
- If road signs are outside of the camera's visual field
- If road signs are partially or completely covered, for example by trees, snow, dirt, or other vehicles.
- If road signs are not in the standard format
- If there are damaged or bent road signs
- If there are variable traffic signs on overhead signs (variable display of road signs by LEDs s or other lighting).
- If there is outdated map material in the Infotainment system
- If there are stickers on vehicles that indicate road signs, such speed limits on commercial vehicles

Operating the Dynamic Road Sign Display

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ ⚠ *Introduction*.

Speed warning

If the Dynamic Road Sign Display function detects that a valid speed limit is being exceeded, it may warn the driver audibly or visually with a message in the instrument cluster display.

The speed warning can be set or completely deactivated in the Assistance systems menu in the Infotainment system ⇒ *Vehicle settings menu*. The speed warning can be set to a value of 0 km/h (mph), 5 km/h (3 mph) or 10 km/h (5 mph).

Exit menu

You can adjust the settings of some functions in the exit menu before leaving the vehicle. The exit menu will be displayed in the Infotainment system when you switch off the ignition.

The entries shown depend on the vehicle equipment and may only be available under certain conditions. The adjustable functions include, for example:

Hide

The exit menu is automatically hidden when you leave the vehicle. The exit menu will also be hidden after a short time, depending on the vehicle equipment.

1. To hide the exit menu manually, tap ⊗.

Settings

You can adjust the order of the entries shown.

1. Tap ✎.
2. Reorder entries as required.
3. Tap ✎ again.

Vehicle settings menu

This Infotainment system consolidates

essential vehicle systems in a central control panel, such as menu settings, radio, or a navigation system. You can switch individual functions and systems on and off and adjust settings in the vehicle settings menu in the Infotainment system.

General information for operation

The relevant information for the settings in the Vehicle settings menu is included in the following section.

Opening the Vehicle settings menu

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. If necessary, switch on the Infotainment system.
3. Tap the Vehicle function key.
4. To open other submenus in the Vehicle menu or to adjust settings in the menu items, tap the respective function keys from the Inner or Outer areas.
5. Open the required menu and adjust the settings as you wish.

The activated functions are highlighted in color.

System settings and vehicle information display

Depending on the version, you can tap the respective function keys in the Vehicle settings menu to display information or to adjust the settings:

- Vehicle (Interior or Exterior).
- Depending on vehicle equipment: Performance monitor.
- Depending on vehicle equipment: Lap timer.
- Driving Data.
- Vehicle status.

After starting the engine when the 12 V vehicle battery is severely drained or when it has been replaced or jump-started, the system settings, e.g. personal convenience settings and programming, and user profiles may be changed or erased. Check and correct the settings after the 12 V vehicle battery is sufficiently recharged.

⚠ WARNING

Driver distraction can cause accidents and injuries. Operating the Infotainment system can distract you from traffic.

- Always drive attentively and responsibly.

Safety

General information

Driving preparations and driving safety

You must observe the following points before and during every trip for your own safety and for the safety of your passengers and others on the road → ⚠:

- ✓ Make sure the vehicle lighting and turn signals are functioning correctly.
- ✓ Check the tire pressure and fuel level ⇒ *Tire pressure*, ⇒ *Fuel gauge*.
- ✓ Check the washer fluid level ⇒ *Washer fluid*.
- ✓ Make sure the windows are clear and provide good visibility ⇒ *Exterior care and cleaning*.
- ✓ The air intake for the engine must not be blocked. The engine must not be covered with covers or insulation ⇒ *Safety precautions for working in the engine compartment*.
- ✓ Secure all objects and luggage in the storage compartments and the luggage compartment ⇒ *Transporting*.
- ✓ It must be possible to press the pedals without interference.
- ✓ Secure children with child restraint systems that are appropriate for their weight and height ⇒ *Transporting children safely*.
- ✓ Adjust the front seats, head restraints, and mirrors according to the size of the occupants ⇒ *Seating position*, ⇒ *Mirrors*.
- ✓ Wear shoes that give your feet good grip for operating the pedals.
- ✓ The floormat in the driver side footwell must be kept clear from the pedal area and be secured.
- ✓ Assume the correct seating position before driving and remain that way while driving. This also applies to all passengers ⇒ *Seating position*.
- ✓ Fasten the safety belt correctly before you begin driving and keep it fastened while driving. This also applies to all passengers ⇒ *Safety belts*.
- ✓ The number of passengers must not exceed the number of seats and safety belts.
- ✓ Never drive when impaired, like by medication, alcohol, or drugs.
- ✓ Never allow yourself to be distracted from traffic, like by adjusting settings, by opening menus, by passengers, or by phone calls.
- ✓ Always adapt your speed and driving style to the current visual, weather, road, and traffic conditions.
- ✓ Follow driving rules and posted speed limits.
- ✓ Take regular breaks on long trips. You should take a break at least every two hours.
- ✓ Secure animals in the vehicle restraint systems that are appropriate for their weight and size.

Driving in other countries

Some countries have special safety standards and regulations that differ from the vehicle configuration. Volkswagen recommends that you inform yourself about legal regulations and about the following points from an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility before driving in other countries. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

- ✓ Do technical modifications need to be made to the vehicle before driving in other countries, such as covering or adjusting the headlights?
- ✓ Are the tools, diagnostic equipment, and replacement parts that are needed for maintenance and repair work available?
- ✓ Is there an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility in the country where you will be driving?
- ✓ Are fluids that meet Volkswagen specifications available in the country where you will be driving ⇒ *Operating fluids and operating equipment*?
- ✓ Will the navigation function in the factory-installed Infotainment system work with the existing navigation data in the country where you will be driving?
- ✓ Are special tires needed in the country where you will be driving?
- ✓ Is a fire extinguisher required in the country where you will be driving?
- ✓ What are the requirements for a safety vest?
- ✓ Is fuel with sufficient quality available ⇒ *Fuel and emissions control system*?

Checks when refueling

Only perform work on the engine and in the engine compartment if you are familiar with the necessary steps and the general safety precautions, and if the correct operating equipment, fluids, and suitable tools are available ⇒ *Safety precautions for working in the engine compartment*! Otherwise, have all work performed by a authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Make sure that the following items are checked regularly:

- ✓ Washer fluid level ⇒ *Washer fluid*.
- ✓ Engine oil level ⇒ *Engine oil*, ⇒ *Engine oil consumption*.
- ✓ Engine coolant level ⇒ *Engine coolant*.
- ✓ Brake fluid level ⇒ *Brake fluid*.
- ✓ Tire inflation pressure ⇒ *Tire pressure*.

✓ Vehicle lighting ⇒ *Headlights* which is necessary for traffic safety:

Information on changing bulbs ⇒ *Exterior lighting*.

DANGER

Read and heed the important safety information for the front passenger's front airbag ⇒ *Safety notes on using child restraints*.

WARNING

Driving under the influence of alcohol, drugs, medication, and prescription narcotics can cause serious accidents and fatal injuries.

- Alcohol, drugs, medication, and prescription narcotics can considerably impair perception, reaction times, and driving safety, which can result in loss of vehicle control.

WARNING

Always heed the applicable driving regulations and speed limits and drive proactively. Evaluating driving situations correctly can make the difference between safely reaching your destination and being involved in a collision with serious injuries.

NOTICE

Volkswagen is not responsible for damage to the vehicle caused by substandard fuel, insufficient service, or not using Volkswagen Genuine parts.

Having the vehicle serviced regularly not only maintains the value of the vehicle, but also contributes to operational safety and roadworthiness. Therefore, have maintenance procedures performed according to Volkswagen instructions. Under extreme operating conditions, some work may need to be performed before the next service is due. Extreme operating conditions can include frequent "stop-and-go" driving or driving in areas with a lot of dust in the air. For further information, contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Seating position

Introduction

Number of seats

The vehicle has a total of **five** seats: two seats in the front and three seats in the back.

Every seat is equipped with a safety belt.

WARNING

Sitting incorrectly in the vehicle can increase the risk of serious or fatal injuries during sudden driving or braking maneuvers, in the event of a collision or accident, and if the airbags are deployed.

- Before the vehicle starts to move, all vehicle occupants must always be in the correct seating position and maintain it while driving. Safety belts must also be fastened and remain fastened.
- The number of persons in the vehicle must not exceed the number of seats with safety belts.
- Always secure children in the vehicle with an approved and suitable child restraint according to the child's body size and weight ⇒ *Transporting children safely* and ⇒ *Airbag system*.
- Always keep feet in the footwell while driving. For example, never rest feet on the seat or on the instrument panel and never stick feet out of the window. Otherwise, if the airbag and the safety belt deploy, they could increase the risk of injury in the event of an accident instead of providing protection.

Risk of injury due to an incorrect seating position

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ *Introduction*.

The risk of serious or fatal injuries will increase if safety belts are not worn or are incorrectly fastened. Safety belts can only achieve the optimum protection if they are routed correctly. An incorrect seating position significantly impairs the protective function of the safety belt. This could result in serious or fatal injuries. The risk of serious or fatal injuries increases even more if a deployed airbag strikes a passenger who is sitting in an incorrect seating position. The driver is responsible for all vehicle occupants and especially for children who are being transported in the vehicle.

The following list includes examples of seating positions that could be dangerous for all vehicle occupants.

The following points always apply when the vehicle is in motion:

- Never stand inside the vehicle.
- Never stand on the seats.
- Never kneel on the seats.

- Never tilt your seat backrest too far back.
- Never lean against the instrument panel.
- Never lay down in the passenger compartment or on the rear bench seat.
- Never sit only on the front section of the seat.
- Never sit sideways on the seat.
- Never lean against the window.
- Never place your feet out of the window.
- Never place your feet on the instrument panel.
- Never place your feet on the seat cushion or on the seat backrest.
- Never ride in the footwell.
- Never sit on the armrests.
- Never drive or ride in a seat without fastening your safety belt.
- Never ride in the trunk.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect seating positions in the vehicle increase the risk of serious or fatal injuries in the event of an accident or sudden driving and braking maneuvers.

- All vehicle occupants must always sit in the correct seating position and have their own safety belts correctly fastened while driving.
- Incorrect seating positions, failure to wear a safety belt, or being too close to an airbag increases the risk of serious injury or death to vehicle occupants, especially if the airbags deploy and come into contact with occupants who are not seated correctly.

Correct seating position

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ ⚠ *Introduction*.

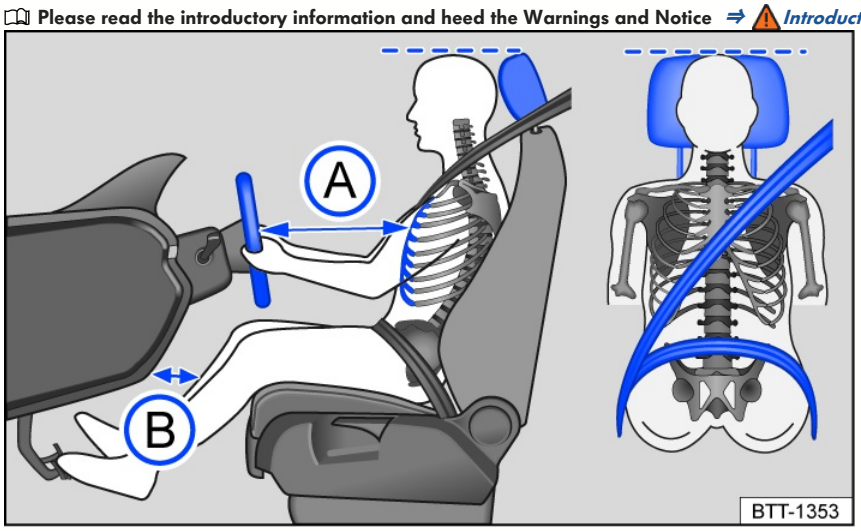


Fig. 16 General example: correct distance between the driver and the steering wheel, correct safety belt routing and correct head restraint adjustment.

The correct seating positions for the driver and passengers are specified in the information that follows.

If individuals cannot achieve the correct seating position due to physical conditions, contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility for more information about possible special modifications. The safety belt and airbags only provide the optimum protection when vehicle occupants are seated in a correct seating position. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

For your safety and to reduce the risk of injuries in the event of a sudden braking maneuver or accident, Volkswagen recommends the following seating positions:

The following applies to all vehicle occupants:

- Adjust the head restraint so that the upper edge of the head restraint is in line with the upper portion of the head as much as possible, but not lower than eye level. Position the back of the head as close as possible to the head restraint *fig. 16*.
- For shorter individuals, slide the head restraint all the way downward, even if the head is then below the upper edge of the head restraint.
- For taller individuals, move the head restraint upward all the way.
- Keep both feet in the footwell while driving.
- Adjust and fasten the safety belts correctly ⇒ *Safety belts*.

The following additional points apply to the driver:

- In vehicles with head restraints that can be moved forward or back, position the head restraint so that it is as close as possible to the back of the head.

- Adjust the steering wheel so that the distance between the steering wheel and your chest is at least 25 cm (around 10 inches) *fig. 16* and you can hold the steering wheel firmly at the sides with both hands and your elbows slightly bent.
- When adjusted, the steering wheel must always face your chest and not be directed toward your face.
- Position the seat backrest in an upright position, so that your back rests completely on the seat backrest.
- Adjust the forward/back position of the driver seat so that you can press the pedals while your legs are slightly bent and there is at least 10 cm (around 4 inches) of space between the instrument panel and your knees *fig. 16*.
- Adjust the driver seat so that the top point of the steering wheel can be reached.
- Always keep both feet in the footwell to keep control of the vehicle at all times.

The following additional points apply to the front passenger:

- In vehicles with head restraints that can be moved forward or back, position the head restraint so that it is as close as possible to the back of the head.
- Position the seat backrest in an upright position, so that your back rests completely on the seat backrest.
- Move the front passenger seat back as far as possible so that the airbag can provide optimum protection if it deploys.

Safety belts

Introduction

Check the condition of all of the safety belts regularly. If there is damage to the belt fabric, the belt connections, the retractor or the buckle, have the affected safety belt replaced immediately by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility ⇒ ⚠. The authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility must use the correct parts for the vehicle, equipment and model year. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

⚠ WARNING

The risk of serious and fatal injuries increases if the safety belts are not worn or are worn incorrectly. The optimum protection is only achieved if the safety belts are worn and used correctly.

- Safety belts are the most effective way to reduce the risk of serious and fatal injuries in a collision. To protect the driver and passengers, the safety belts must always be worn correctly when the vehicle is in motion.
- Before every trip, everyone in the vehicle must seat themselves correctly, fasten the safety belt that belongs to the seat they are using, and keep it fastened while the vehicle is in motion. This applies to all passengers and at all times, including during city driving.
- Secure children in the vehicle with a child restraint that is appropriate for their weight and height and with the safety belt used correctly ⇒ *Transporting children safely*.
- Only begin driving once all passengers are wearing their safety belts correctly.
- Only ever insert and latch the buckle tongue in the belt buckle for the corresponding seat. Using a buckle from another seat reduces the protection provided by the safety belt and can cause serious injuries.
- Never allow foreign objects or fluid to enter the openings in the belt buckles. This could impair the function of the belt buckles and safety belts.
- Never unfasten the safety belt while the vehicle is in motion.
- Secure only one person with a safety belt.
- Never allow children or infants to ride on anyone's lap and never allow children or infants to be secured together with anyone in the same safety belt.
- Do not wear extremely bulky, loose clothing in the vehicle, such as a coat over a sports jacket, because this could impair the fit and function of the safety belt.

⚠ WARNING

Damaged safety belts create a serious risk and can cause serious or fatal injuries.

- Never allow safety belts to become caught in the door or the seat mechanisms because the belts could be damaged.
- If the belt webbing or other parts of the safety belt are damaged, the safety belts could tear during a collision or sudden breaking maneuver.
- Have damaged safety belts replaced immediately with new safety belts that are approved for the vehicle by Volkswagen. Safety belts that are stretched during a collision must be replaced by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. It may be necessary to replace them even if there is no visible damage. The anchors for the safety belts must also be checked.
- Never try to repair, modify, or remove the safety belts yourself. Have all repairs to safety belts, safety belt retractors, and buckle components performed only by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Warning light

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ *Introduction*.



Fig. 17 In the instrument cluster display: warning light.

The driver or front passenger has not fastened their safety belt. Fasten all safety belts.

When the ignition is switched on, several warning and indicator lamps light up temporarily as a function check. They then turn off after a few seconds.

A chime also sounds.

When the ignition is switched on, the red warning light comes on for six seconds. A chime also sounds for up to six seconds if the driver safety belt is not fastened. The chime ends when the driver fastens their safety belt. The warning lamps and chime go off when the driver and front passenger have fastened their safety belts.

If the driver and front passenger do not both fasten their safety belts within 10 seconds after the warning chime has ended and the vehicle is driving at a speed above approx. 15 mph (approx. 25 km/h), the chime sounds again for approx. 6 seconds, then stops for approx. 24 seconds, and then sounds again for approx. 6 seconds. The same happens if one of the safety belts is released while driving. The red warning light comes on. A warning chime also sounds for up to two minutes at 24-second intervals. The chime does not sound at speeds below approx. 5 mph (approx. 8 km/h).

When the ignition is switched on, the red warning light comes on until the driver and front passenger have both fastened their safety belts.

WARNING

The risk of serious and fatal injuries increases if the safety belts are not worn or are worn incorrectly. The optimum protection is only achieved if the safety belts are worn and used correctly.

Frontal collisions and the laws of physics

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ *Introduction*.

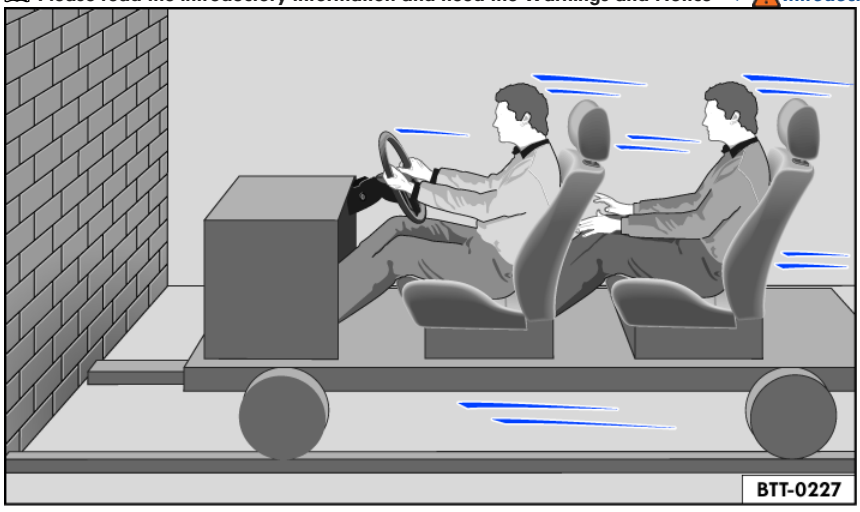


Fig. 18 A vehicle with occupants who are not wearing safety belts drives toward a wall.

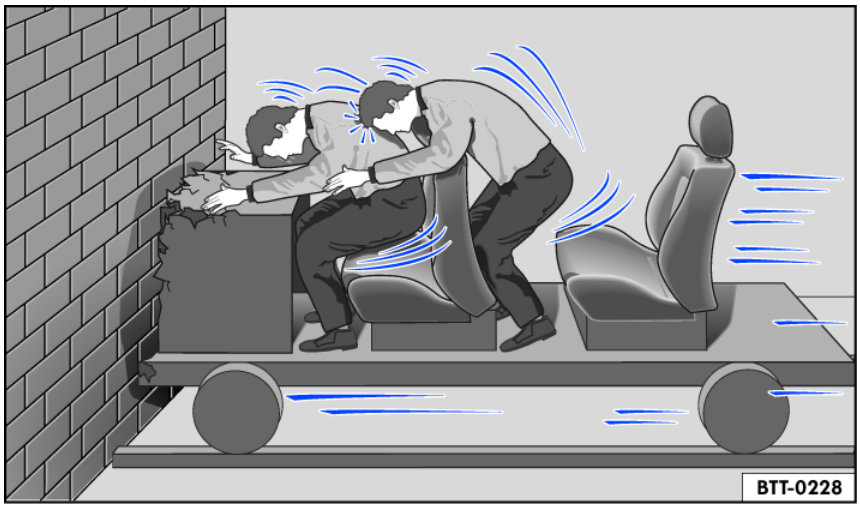


Fig. 19 A vehicle with occupants who are not wearing safety belts collides with a wall.

The physical principle of a frontal collision is a simple concept. Once the vehicle is in motion, the vehicle and its occupants possess energy called “kinetic energy” *fig. 18*.

The higher the vehicle speed and the higher the weight, the more energy must be absorbed in the event of a collision.

However, the vehicle speed is the more significant factor. For example, if the speed doubles from approx. 15 mph (approx. 25 km/h) to approx. 31 mph (50 km/h), then the kinetic energy quadruples.

The amount of “kinetic energy” depends greatly on the vehicle speed and on the weight of the vehicle and the occupants. If speed and weight increase, more energ must be absorbed in the event of an accident.

Vehicle occupants who are not wearing safety belts are also not “connected” to the vehicle. In a frontal collision, individuals who are not wearing safety belts will continue to move at the same speed the vehicle was moving before the collision, until something stops their movement. Since the vehicle occupants in the example are not wearing safety belts, the entire amount of kinetic energy possessed by the vehicle occupants would only be absorbed by the impact on the wall *fig. 19*.

At speeds of approx. 19 mph (approx. 30 km/h) to approx. 31 mph (approx. 50 km/h), the force applied against the bodies of passengers can easily exceed approx 2200 lbs (1000 kg) in the event of a collision. The force applied against a person’s body will increase even more at higher speeds.

This example applies not just to frontal collisions, but to all types of accidents and collisions.

What happens to vehicle occupants who do not wear safety belts?

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ *Introduction*.

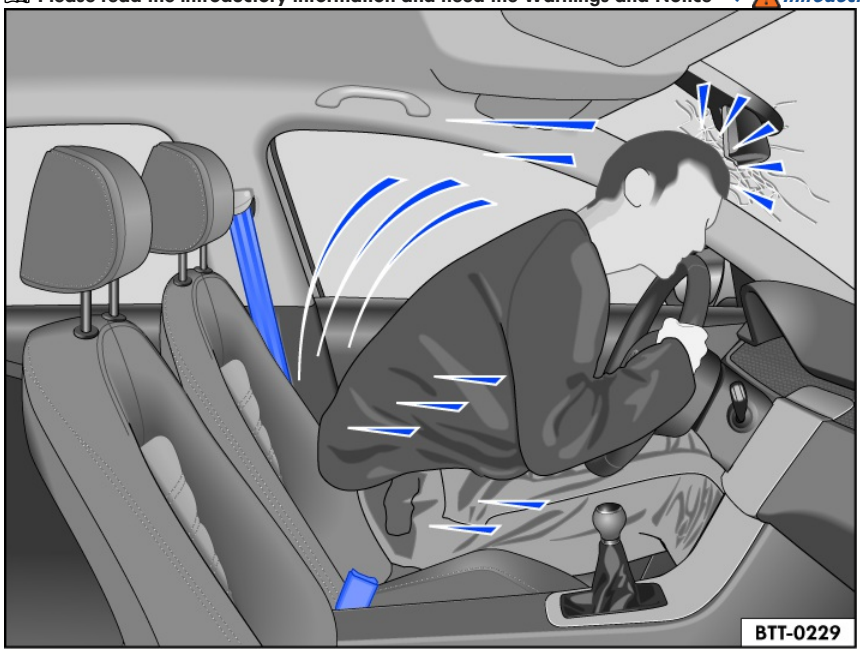


Fig. 20 A driver not wearing a safety belt is propelled forward.

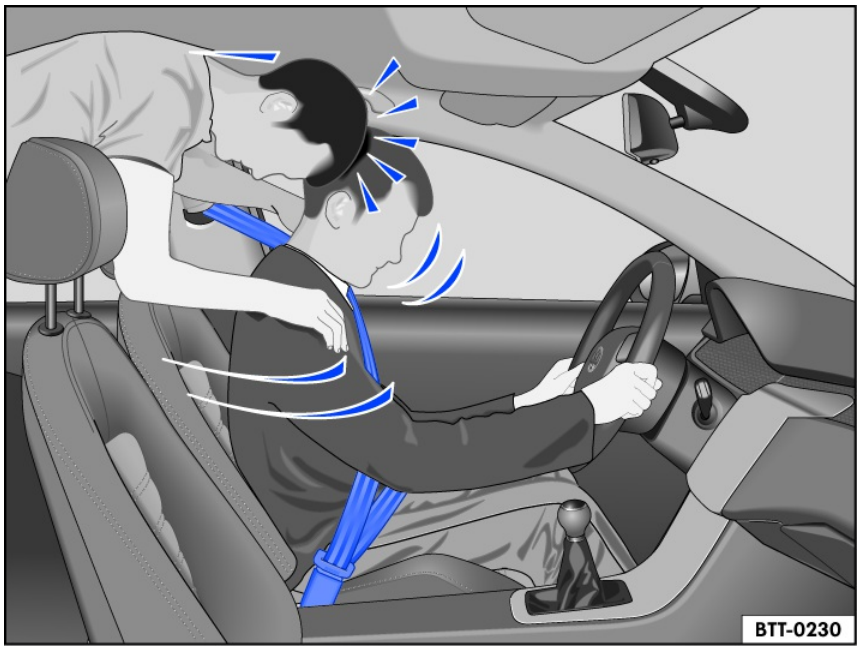


Fig. 21 A passenger in the rear seat who is not wearing a safety belt will be propelled forward toward the driver who has their own safety belt fastened.

Many believe that a person can support their body with their hands during a minor collision. That is incorrect.

Even at low impact speeds, enough force is applied to the body that it is not possible to support the body with arms and hands. In the event of a frontal collision, vehicle occupants who are not wearing safety belts could be propelled forward and collide with components in the vehicle interior, such as the steering wheel, instrument panel, or windshield *fig. 20*.

The airbag system is not a replacement for safety belts. Deployed airbags only offer supplemental protection. Airbags do not deploy during all types of collisions. Even if the vehicle is equipped with an airbag system, all vehicle occupants, including the driver, must fasten their own safety belts and keep them fastened correctly while the vehicle is in motion. This reduces the risk of severe or fatal injuries in the event of a collision, regardless of whether the seating position is equipped with an airbag.

Airbags and safety belt pretensioners can only trigger once. To achieve the optimum protective function, the safety belts must always be fastened correctly. This is also true during accidents where the airbags do not deploy. Vehicle occupants who are not wearing safety belts could be propelled out of the vehicle and this could result in even more severe or fatal injuries.

It is also important for passengers on the rear seats to have their own safety belts fastened correctly, since they could be propelled through the vehicle without control. A passenger on the rear seat without their own safety belt fastened is endangering themselves as well as the driver and the other passengers in the vehicle *fig. 21*.

Protection provided by safety belts

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ *Introduction*.

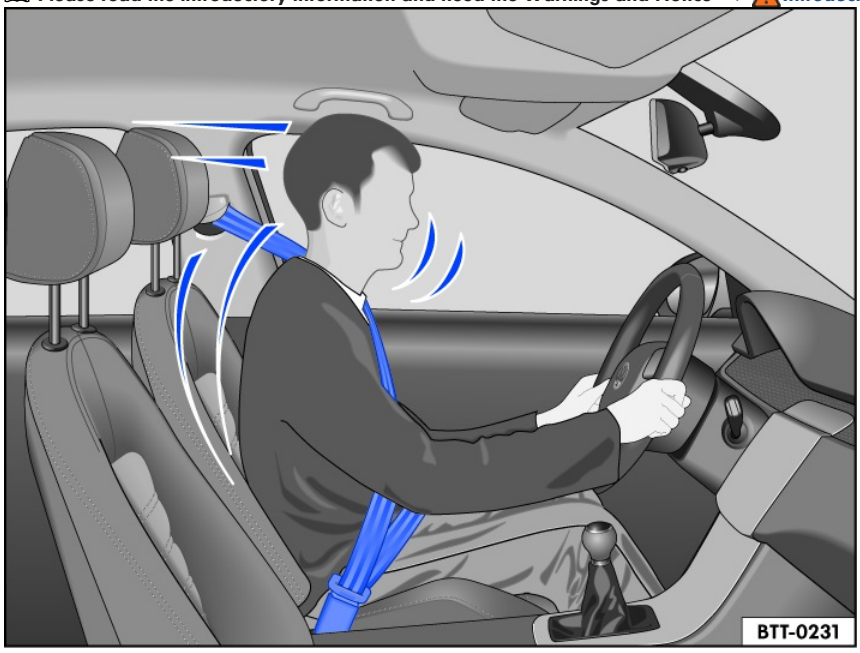


Fig. 22 Driver that is restrained during a braking maneuver by a safety belt that is fastened correctly.

Safety belts that are fastened correctly can make a significant difference. Safety belts that are fastened correctly hold vehicle occupants in the correct seating position and considerably reduce the kinetic energy in the event of a collision. The safety belts also help to reduce the risk of uncontrolled movements that could otherwise cause serious injuries. Safety belts that are fastened correctly also reduce the risk of being propelled out of the vehicle *fig. 22*.

Vehicle occupants with safety belts that are fastened correctly benefit greatly from this, because the kinetic energy is absorbed by the safety belts. The structure in the front of the vehicle and other passive safety features in the vehicle such as the airbag system also ensure that the kinetic energy will be reduced. The accumulated energy reduces along with the risk of injury.

These examples describe frontal collisions. It should be understood that safety belts that are fastened correctly also substantially reduce the risk of injury in all othe types of collisions. Therefore, safety belts must always be fastened before every trip, even if driving “just around the corner”. Make sure that all passengers also have their own safety belts fastened correctly.

Accident statistics have indicated that safety belts that are fastened correctly considerably reduce the risk of injuries and increase the probability of survival in the event of a severe collision. Safety belts that are fastened correctly also increase the protective effect of deployed airbags in the event of an accident. For this reason, the use of safety belts is legally required in most countries.

Even though the vehicle is equipped with airbags, the safety belts must be fastened. For example, the front airbags only deploy in certain frontal collisions. The fror airbags do not deploy in minor frontal collisions, minor side-impact collisions, rear collisions, rollovers, or in accidents where the airbag deployment value in the control module was not exceeded. The same also applies to other airbags in the vehicle.

Therefore, always wear the appropriate safety belt correctly, and make sure all passengers have their own safety belts fastened correctly.

Using safety belts

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ *Introduction*.

Checklist

Using safety belts → :

- ✓ Check the condition of all of the safety belts regularly.
- ✓ Keep safety belts clean.
- ✓ Always keep foreign objects and fluids far away from the safety belt, the safety belt buckle, and the slot in the safety belt buckle.
- ✓ Do not pinch or damage the safety belt and/or belt buckle, for example closing it in a door.
- ✓ Never remove, modify, or repair the safety belt and belt fastening elements.
- ✓ Always fasten the safety belt correctly before you begin driving and keep it fastened while driving.

Twisted safety belt

If the safety belt is difficult to pull out of the belt guide, the safety belt may have been pulled out too quickly when positioning the belt and may have become twisted within the side trim panel:

1. Slowly and carefully pull the safety belt out completely by the belt buckle.
2. Untwist any twisted sections of the safety belt and guide the belt back slowly by hand.

If you cannot untwist the safety belt, fasten the safety belt anyway. The twist must not be in a section of the belt that rests directly on the body. Go to an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility immediately to have the belt untwisted. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Lockable safety belt

The safety belts on the rear seats and the safety belt on the front passenger seat are lockable and have an emergency locking function. If a child restraint system is installed with a safety belt, the safety belt must be locked so that the belt webbing cannot unroll. With the locking function, you can adjust the safety belt so that a child restraint is properly installed. A child restraint can be secured accordingly, for example so that it does not tilt sideways when cornering.

Pull the safety belt fully out to determine whether a safety belt is lockable. If the belt webbing is *fully* pulled out and you hear a “clicking” sound when it is rolled up, i is a lockable safety belt. Test the locking function by pulling on the safety belt. If the locking function is active, do not pull out the safety belt any further. You can nov only roll the safety belt up.

The locking mechanism on the safety belt must only be used to fasten specific child restraint systems ⇒ *Child restraints – overview*.

An activated locking mechanism must be released when a vehicle occupant fastens their safety belt. To release the locking mechanism, push the red button in the belt buckle and guide the belt back fully by hand ⇒ *Fastening and unfastening the safety belts* .

WARNING

Incorrect handling of the safety belts increases the risk of severe or fatal injuries.

- Check the safety belts and associated components regularly to ensure they function correctly.
- Safety belts cannot be repaired; they must be replaced.
- Always keep the safety belt clean.
- Do not pinch or damage the safety belt or allow it to rub against any objects with sharp edges.
- Always keep the belt buckle and insertion guide for the belt buckle free of foreign objects and fluids.

Fastening and unfastening the safety belts

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ *Introduction*.

Safety belts that are fastened correctly hold vehicle occupants in the correct position during braking maneuvers or in a collision, in order to provide the maximum protection →.

Fastening the safety belt



Fig. 23 Inserting the buckle tongue into the safety belt buckle.

Always fasten the safety belts before driving.

1. Adjust the front seat and head restraint correctly ⇒ *Seating position*.
2. Have the rear seat backrest locked into place in an upright position →.
3. Grab the belt and pull it evenly over the chest and pelvis. Do not twist the belt while doing this →.
4. Insert the buckle tongue securely in the safety belt buckle for that seat *fig. 23*.
5. Pull on the safety belt to make sure the buckle tongue is latched correctly in the safety belt buckle.

Unfastening the safety belt



Fig. 24 Releasing the buckle tongue from the safety belt buckle.

Only unfasten the safety belt while the vehicle is stationary → ⚠.

1. Press the red button in the safety belt buckle *fig. 24*.

   The buckle tongue will pop out.

2. Guide the belt back by hand so that the belt rolls up easily, the belt does not twist, and the trim panel is not damaged.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect belt routing can cause serious or fatal injuries in the event of an accident.

- Optimum protection from the safety belts is only possible when the backrest is in an upright position and the safety belts are worn correctly according to the body size of the passenger.
- Unfastening the safety belt while driving can lead to serious or fatal injuries in the event of an accident or braking maneuver.

Safety belt positioning

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ ⚠ *Introduction*.

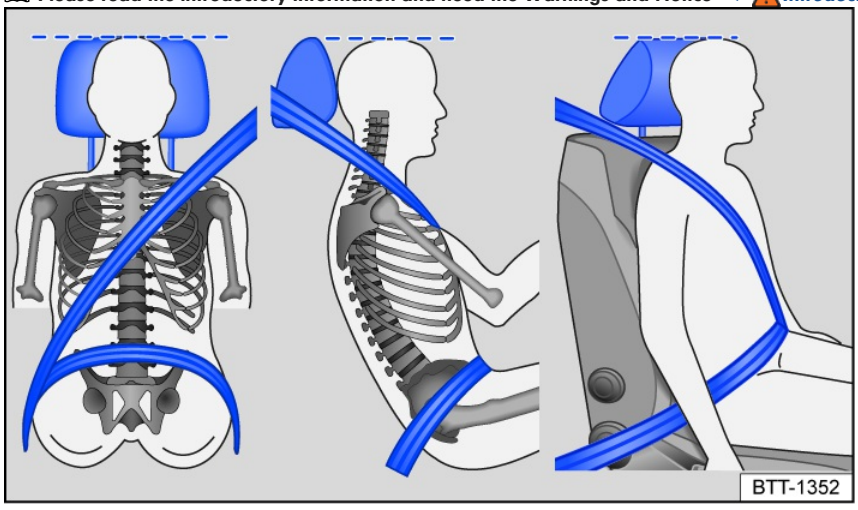


Fig. 25 Correct safety belt positioning and correct head restraint adjustment.

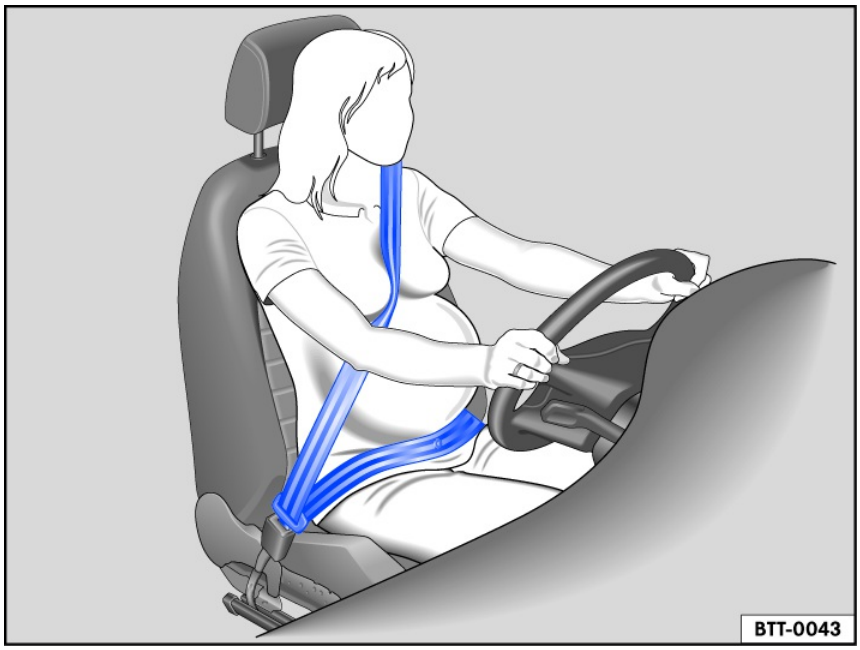


Fig. 26 Correct safety belt positioning for pregnant women.

Safety belts only offer the optimum protection during a collision and reduce the risk of serious injury or death if they are fastened and positioned correctly. The correct safety belt position also holds the vehicle occupant in place so that the airbags can provide their maximum protection if they deploy. Therefore, all vehicle occupants should always fasten their own safety belts and make sure they are positioned correctly *fig. 25*.

An incorrect seating position can cause severe or fatal injuries ⇒ *Seating position*.

Correct safety belt positioning

- The shoulder belt section of the safety belt must always be positioned over the center of the shoulder and never across the neck, above the arm, under the arm, or behind the back.
- The lap section of the safety belt must always lie across the lap and never over the stomach.
- The safety belt must always rest flat and securely on the body. Retighten the belt if necessary.

For **pregnant women**, the safety belt must rest evenly across the chest and as low and flat as possible on the lap, so that no pressure is applied to the lower abdomen. This should be done throughout the entire pregnancy *fig. 26*.

Adjusting the safety belt position to body size

The belt positioning can be adjusted with the following equipment:

- Belt height adjusters for the front seats ⇒ *Safety belt height adjuster*.
- Height-adjustable front seats ⇒ *Seating position*.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect safety belt positioning can cause serious injuries in the event of an accident or during sudden braking or driving maneuvers.

- Optimum protection from the safety belts is only possible when the backrest is in an upright position and the safety belts are worn correctly.
- The safety belt itself or a loose safety belt can cause serious injuries if it shifts onto soft areas of the body, such as the stomach.
- The shoulder portion of the safety belt must lie over the center of the shoulder, and never under the arm or across the neck.
- The safety belt must lie flat and securely on the upper part of the body.
- The lap section of the safety belt must lie across the lap and never over the stomach. The safety belt must lie flat and securely on the lap. Retighten the belt if necessary.
- The lap belt section of the safety belt must sit as low as possible on the lap of pregnant women and lie flat under the “rounding” of the abdomen.
- Do not twist the safety belt while wearing it.
- Never hold the safety belt away from the body with your hand.
- Do not guide the safety belt over hard or breakable objects, such as eyeglasses, pens, or keys.
- Do not modify how the safety belt is routed using belt clips, retaining loops, or similar objects.

Persons who cannot achieve the optimum belt routing due to physical conditions should contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility about possible special modifications that can be used to achieve the best possible protection with the safety belt and airbags. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Safety belt height adjuster

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ *Introduction*.

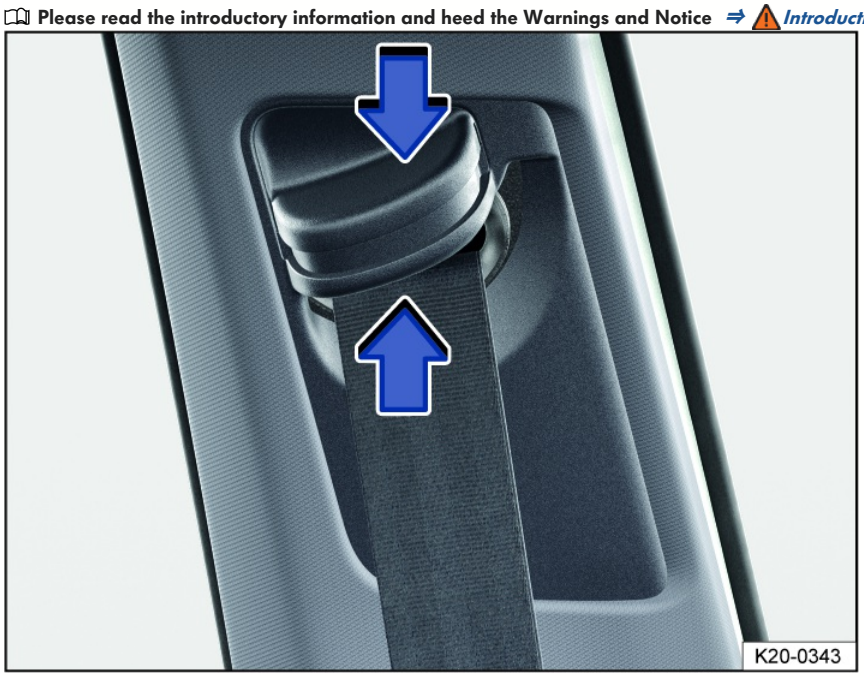


Fig. 27 Next to the front seats: safety belt height adjuster.

You can use the safety belt height adjuster to adjust the safety belt routing on the front seats in the shoulder region according to the individual's body size, so that the safety belt can be correctly fastened:

1. Push down and hold the safety belt height adjustment button in the direction of the arrows *fig. 27*.
2. Slide the safety belt height adjuster upward or downward until the safety belt lies over the center of the shoulder ⇒ *Safety belt positioning*.
3. Release the safety belt height adjustment button.
4. Pull hard on the safety belt to check that the safety belt height adjuster is engaged.

⚠ WARNING

Never adjust the safety belt height while driving.

Automatic safety belt retractor, safety belt pretensioner, safety belt load limiter

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ *Introduction*.

The vehicle seat belts are part of the vehicle safety concept ⇒ *Airbag system*. The vehicle safety concept has the following key functions:

Automatic safety belt retractor

Every safety belt is equipped with an automatic safety belt retractor on the shoulder belt section. If the safety belt is pulled slowly or while driving normally, the shoulder belt will be able to move freely. The automatic safety belt retractor blocks the safety belt from moving if the safety belt is pulled out quickly, for example during sudden braking maneuvers, when driving on hills, when driving around curves and when accelerating.

Safety belt pretensioners

The safety belts for the vehicle occupants in the front seats and in the outer seats in the rear of the vehicle have safety belt pretensioners.

Safety belt pretensioners are activated by sensors and tighten the safety belts in the event of severe front-on, side and rear collisions or if the vehicle rolls over. If the safety belt is loose, it retracts to reduce the forward movement of the vehicle occupants or movement in the direction of the collision. The safety belt pretensioner works together with the airbag system. The safety belt pretensioner is not activated during a rollover accident if the Side Curtain Protection® airbags are not deployed.

Fine dust may appear if airbags deploy. This is completely normal and does not indicate a fire in the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

The safety belt pretensioners only provide protection for one deployment. If the safety belt pretensioners deploy, the system must be replaced.

- Have deployed safety belt pretensioners and affected system components replaced immediately with new parts that are approved by Volkswagen for the vehicle.
- Only have suitably qualified professionals make repairs or modifications to a vehicle. Authorized Volkswagen dealers and authorized Volkswagen Service Facilities have the required tools, diagnostic devices, repair information, and qualified personnel. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
- Never install safety belt pretensioner components removed from scrap vehicles or from recycling.

- Never modify any components of the safety belt pretensioners.

Safety belt load limiter

Safety belt load limiters reduce the force placed on the body by the safety belts during a collision.

When disposing of the vehicle or of individual system components, all safety precautions must be observed. An authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility will be familiar with these provisions ⇒ *Safety belt pretensioner servicing and disposal*. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Safety belt pretensioner servicing and disposal

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ *Introduction*.

When working on safety belt pretensioners, as well as when removing and installing other vehicle components as part of repair work, the safety belts can become damaged without you noticing. This may cause the safety belt pretensioner to function incorrectly or prevent it from functioning in the event of an accident.

The instructions must be followed so that the effectiveness of the safety belt pretensioner is not impaired and removed components do not cause injuries and environmental pollution. An authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility will be familiar with these provisions. Volkswagen recommend contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

WARNING

Repairs that you perform yourself or that are performed incorrectly on the safety belts, automatic safety belt retractors, and safety belt pretensioners can increase the risk of severe or fatal injuries. The safety belt pretensioner may not deploy when it should, or it may deploy unexpectedly.

- Never perform repairs, adjustments, or removal and installation of components of the safety belt pretensioners or safety belts yourself. Only have these procedures performed by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility ⇒ *Accessories, replacement parts, repairs, and modifications*. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
- Safety belts, safety belt pretensioners and automatic safety belt retractors cannot be repaired. These components must be replaced.

Some parts of the vehicle, such as the airbag module and safety belt pretensioners, may contain perchlorate. Special handling may be necessary. For further information, visit https://dtsc.ca.gov/perchlorate.

Airbag system

Introduction

The vehicle is equipped with a front airbag for the driver and one for the front passenger. The front airbags can offer additional protection for the chest and head of the driver and front passenger as long as the seat, the safety belt, the head restraint, and the steering wheel are adjusted and used correctly. Airbags are only designed to offer supplementary protection. Airbags are not a replacement for safety belts. Safety belts must always be worn, even if the front seats are fitted with front airbags.

WARNING

Never rely only on the airbag system for protection.

- Even when an airbag deploys, it only offers supplementary protection.
- The airbag system provides optimum protection when the safety belt is worn correctly and it reduces the risk of injury ⇒ *Safety belts*.
- Before every trip, everyone in the vehicle must seat themselves correctly, fasten the safety belt that belongs to the seat they are using, and keep it fastened while the vehicle is in motion. This applies to all passengers and at all times, including during city driving.

WARNING

Sitting too close to the steering wheel or the instrument panel reduces the effectiveness of the airbags and increases the risk of injury in the event of a collision.

- Adjust the driver seat so that there is a distance of at least 25 cm (approx. 10 inches) between your chest and the center of the steering wheel.
- Adjust the front passenger seat so that there is the greatest possible distance between the front passenger and the instrument panel.
- If body characteristics mean that this is not possible, see an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility to have special modifications made. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
- If you have not fastened your safety belt correctly, if you lean forwards, sit sideways or are in any way seated outside the intended sitting position, the risk of you being injured is far higher.
- Make sure that your safety belt is fastened correctly to reduce the risk of injury if an airbag deploys.
- When using a rear-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat, the risk of life-threatening or fatal injuries in the event of a collision increases for the child. Never use rear-facing child restraints on the front passenger's seat.

- Make sure that children under 12 years of age always sit on a rear seat. Children that are not correctly strapped in can suffer serious or even fatal injuries if the airbag deploys.
- Secure children in the vehicle with a child restraint that is appropriate for their weight and height and with the safety belt used correctly.
- Adjust the front seats correctly.
- Never drive with the backrest angled too far back or forward.
- Position the seat backrest in an upright position, so that your back rests completely on the seat backrest.
- Always keep feet in the footwell while driving. For example, never rest feet on the seat or on the instrument panel and never hold feet out of the window. Otherwise, if the airbag and the safety belt deploy, they could increase the risk of injury in the event of an accident instead of providing protection.

⚠ WARNING

The risk of injury if the airbag deploys increases if there are objects located between vehicle occupants and the airbag deployment zone. These objects could change the deployment zone of the airbag or could strike the vehicle occupants.

- Never hold objects in your hands or on your lap while driving.
- Never transport objects on the front passenger's seat. During sudden braking or driving maneuvers, the objects could move into the airbag deployment zone and then be thrown through the vehicle interior if the airbag deploys.
- There should be no people, animals, or objects between the occupants of the front seats or outer rear seats and the airbag deployment zone. Make sure that child and adult passengers also follow these instructions.

⚠ WARNING

The airbag system only provides protection for one deployment. If the airbags deploy, the system must be replaced.

- Have deployed airbags and affected system components replaced immediately with new parts approved by Volkswagen for the vehicle.
- Only have suitably qualified professionals make repairs or modifications to a vehicle. Authorized Volkswagen dealers and authorized Volkswagen Service Facilities have the required tools, diagnostic devices, repair information, and qualified personnel. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
- Never install airbag components removed from scrap vehicles or from recycling.
- Never modify any components of the airbag system.

⚠ WARNING

Fine dust and water vapor can develop when the airbags deploy. This is normal and does not indicate a fire in the vehicle.

- The fine dust can irritate the skin and mucous membranes in the eyes and can cause breathing problems, particularly for individuals who have asthma or other respiratory conditions. To reduce the risk of breathing problems, exit the vehicle or open the windows or doors for fresh air.
- If you come into contact with the dust, wash your hands and face with mild soap and water before eating anything.
- Do not allow the dust to come into contact with your eyes or any open wounds.
- Flush your eyes with water if dust enters them.

⚠ WARNING

Cleaners that contain solvents can make the surface of the airbag module porous. Plastic pieces that come loose could cause serious injuries in the event of a collision with airbag deployment.

- Never treat the instrument panel and the surface of the airbag modules with cleaners that contain solvents.

Advanced Airbag System

🕮 **Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice** ⇒ ⚠ ***Introduction.***
Read and follow the introductory information and safety precautions ⇒ *Safety notes on using child restraints*.

An active passenger's front airbag presents serious dangers for a child ⇒ ⚠. For this reason, all children under the age of twelve must be secured in the rear seats while the vehicle is in motion.

The Advanced Airbag System, together with the side and Side Curtain Protection® airbags, is checked every time the ignition is switched on. The yellow airbag indicator light comes on briefly and turns off after several seconds.

Features of the Advanced Airbag System:

- Front passenger's front airbag in the instrument panel

- Yellow indicator light in the instrument cluster display.
- Yellow PASSENGER AIR BAG indicator light OFF.
- Yellow PASSENGER AIR BAG indicator light ON.

If the status of the indicator light is one of the following, the Advanced Airbag System must be checked by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility:

- The indicator light does not come on for several seconds when the ignition is switched on.
- The indicator light stays on after the ignition is switched on.
- The indicator light comes on or flashes again after it is turned off.
- The indicator light comes on while driving.

Advanced Airbag System, small children, child restraints and children on the front passenger seat

The Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle has been certified and complies with the regulations of the United States Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (FMVSS) 208 and the Canada Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (CMVSS) 208 at the time of vehicle manufacture. In accordance with the requirements, the system o the passenger's side has been designed to “inhibit” deployment for small children of up to 12 months of age and “low-risk deployment” for children of between three and six years of age.

The airbag on the passenger's side is a potential danger for children when it is deployed. The front passenger seat is not the safest seat for a child in a forward-facing child restraint and is a very dangerous seat for a child or small child in a backward-facing child restraint.

The Advanced Airbag System has a capacitive detection system in the seat cushion of the front passenger seat which detects whether a baby, small child or child is in a child restraint on the front passenger seat.

The capacitive detective detection system measures the electrical capacity of a child, the child restraint and a child's blanket on the front passenger seat.

The electrical capacity of a child restraint depends on the child restraint type. Together with the average capacity values of small children and one-year-old children the capacity values of all child restraints specified in accordance with FMVSS 213 and CMVSS 213 are stored in the Advanced Airbag System control module. These are compared with the values detected. Only use child restraints that are specified according to these standards and have been approved by the child restraint manufacturer for use with airbag systems. The U.S. National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) has published a list of certified child restraint models for use with the Advanced Airbag System in accordance with FMVSS 208.

Only install child restraints on the front passenger seat under exceptional circumstances. Carefully read all of the information about child restraints and the Advanced Airbag System beforehand and follow all instructions and warnings. Make sure that the system has correctly detected the child restraint on the front passenger seat and the front passenger's front air bag has been switched off. The yellow OFF PASSENGER AIR BAG indicator light will come on.

⚠ DANGER

The front passenger seat of a vehicle is a potential danger to children (even for advanced airbags). In the event that front passenger seat air bags are deployed, children who are completely unsecured in an unsecured child restraint or in a rear-facing child restraint on the front passenger seat may suffer serious or fatal injuries.

- Even if your vehicle is equipped with an Advanced Airbag System, make sure that children (particularly children younger than 12 years of age) are always transported in such a way that they are secured to the rear seats according to their age and size.

Indicator light for front passenger’s front airbag

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ ⚠ *Introduction*.

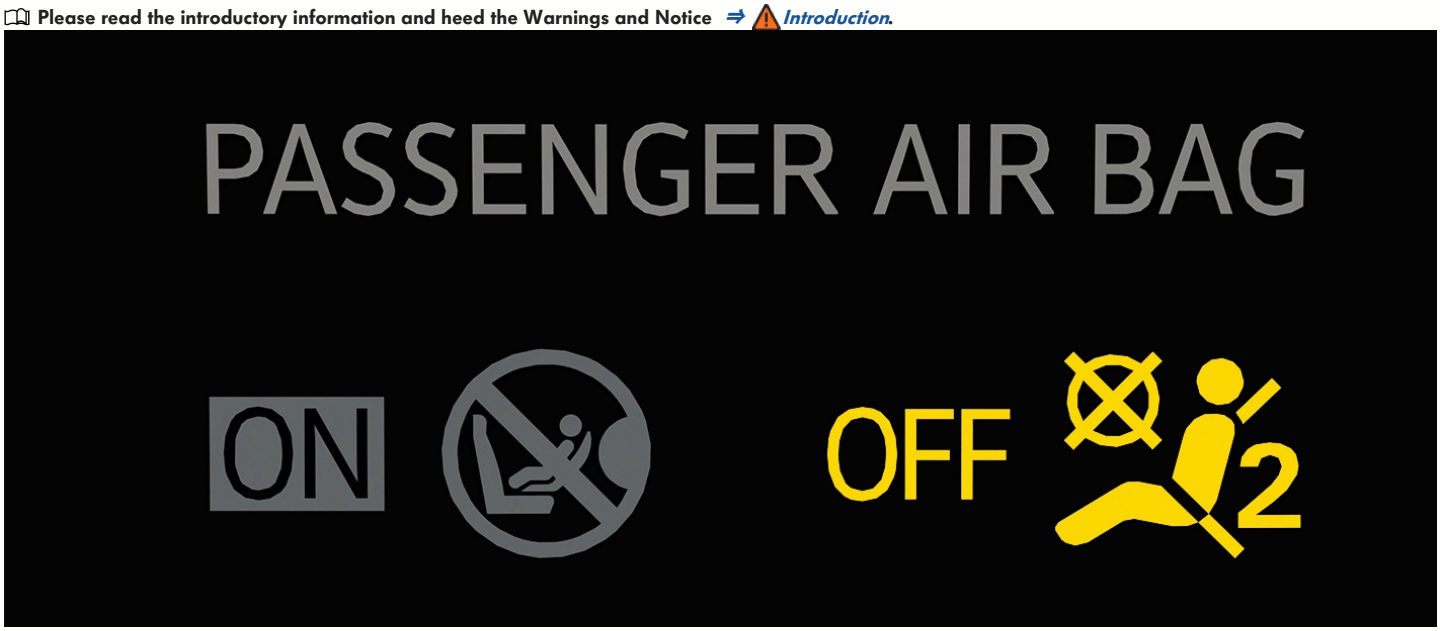


Fig. 28 In the roof console: Indicator light (general example) for the deactivated front passenger's front airbag.



Fig. 29 In the roof console: Indicator light (general example) for the activated front passenger's front airbag.

The yellow PASSENGER AIR BAG indicator light OFF *fig. 28* comes on as soon as the Advanced Airbag System has deactivated the front passenger airbag.

The yellow PASSENGER AIR BAG indicator light ON *fig. 29* comes on as soon as the Advanced Airbag System has activated the front passenger airbag.

If the yellow PASSENGER AIR BAG indicator light OFF malfunctions, the yellow indicator light appears in the instrument cluster to indicate a malfunction. A faulty indicator light does not affect the function of the front passenger's front airbag, but the yellow PASSENGER AIR BAG indicator light OFF can no longer be used to display the status of the front passenger's front airbag. Immediately visit an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility to hav the system checked. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

The yellow OFF PASSENGER AIR BAG indicator light blinks for around five seconds in the following situations:

- The capacitive passenger detection system detects that the front passenger seat is not occupied.
- The capacitive passenger detection system detects a child restraint according to FMVSS 208 or CMVSS 208 ⇒ *Airbag system*.

The yellow ON PASSENGER AIR BAG indicator light blinks for around five seconds when the capacitive passenger detection system has detected an adult occupying the seat. The yellow PASSENGER AIR BAG indicator light ON then comes on permanently.

Ensure that the correct status of the airbag (on or off) is shown by the indicator light according to the load on the seat.

The yellow PASSENGER AIR BAG indicator light OFF must come on when the ignition is switched on and an infant carrier or child restraint is installed on the front passenger seat and the measured capacity is less than or equal to the capacity of an average one-year old child in a child restraint system as per FMVSS 208

If the front passenger seat is not occupied, the front passenger's front airbag is also deactivated and the indicator light remains on.

Never install a rear-facing child restraint on the front passenger seat. The safest place for a child restraint is on the rear seat.

Under these conditions, the yellow PASSENGER AIR BAG indicator light OFF must come on permanently whenever the ignition is on. If this is not the case, sto the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and follow these instructions:

- Switch the ignition off for at least four seconds and then switch it on again.
- Remove the child restraint from the front passenger seat and install it again according to the manufacturer's instructions. When doing so, ensure that the child restraint is installed correctly.
- Ensure that the safety belt has been guided around the child restraint correctly and that it is secure.
- Ensure that there are no electronic devices on the front passenger seat.
- Ensure that the safety belt and belt buckle are working correctly and not blocked.
- Ensure that no seat heating or similar systems have been retrofitted.
- Ensure that there are no damp objects on the front passenger seat.

If the yellow PASSENGER AIR BAG indicator light OFF still does not come on and the yellow PASSENGER AIR BAG indicator light ON comes on permanently, remove the child restraint immediately and install it on the rear seat. Visit an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility as soon as possible to have the airbag system checked. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

The yellow PASSENGER AIR BAG indicator light OFF must not come on if the front passenger seat is occupied by an adult. However, if this is the case, stop th vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and ensure the following:

- Ensure that the passenger is sitting in the middle of the seat and that the backrest is upright.
- Ensure that the belt is correctly positioned and tight.

- Ensure that there are no other objects on the seat cushion, such as blankets or booster seats, that could affect the system's ability to detect a passenger.

If the yellow PASSENGER AIR BAG indicator light OFF is still permanently on, the passenger must move to the rear seat. Visit an authorized Volkswagen deale or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility as soon as possible to have the airbag system checked. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

If the status of the Advanced Airbag System changes when you are driving, the relevant yellow indicator light blinks for around five seconds. Stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and follow the instructions specified here.

If the system recognizes an unoccupied front passenger seat or child restraint according to FMVSS 208 or CMVSS 208, the front passenger airbag remains deactivated and the yellow PASSENGER AIR BAG indicator light OFF comes on permanently. If the front passenger seat is unoccupied and the passenger's safety belt is fastened, the yellow PASSENGER AIR BAG indicator light OFF also comes on permanently.

If the front passenger seat is occupied by an adult, the front passenger airbag is activated and the yellow PASSENGER AIR BAG indicator light ON comes on permanently.

Troubleshooting

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ *Introduction*.

Airbag system or safety belt pretensioners malfunction

The yellow indicator light stays on. There may also be a message in the instrument cluster display.

A malfunction has been detected in at least one of the airbags or safety belt pretensioners.

1. Visit an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility and have the airbag system and safety belt pretensioners checked. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Airbag system or safety belt pretensioners deactivated with diagnostic equipment

After the ignition is switched on, the yellow indicator light turns on for about four seconds and then blinks for about twelve seconds. There may also be a message i the instrument cluster display.

At least one airbag or safety belt pretensioner has been deactivated by a diagnostic device.

1. Have an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility check whether the airbag system or safety belt pretensioners need to remair deactivated. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

OFF Front passenger's front airbag disabled

The yellow indicator light stays on.

The front passenger's front airbag has been deactivated.

1. Check whether the front passenger's front airbag has to be deactivated.
2. If the front passenger's front airbag is incorrectly deactivated, there may be a malfunction in the airbag system. Contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

ON Front passenger's front airbag enabled

The yellow indicator light blinks for about five seconds when the capacitive passenger detection system has detected an adult occupying the seat. The yellow indicator light then stays on.

The front passenger's front airbag is switched on.

1. Ensure that the correct status of the airbag (on or off) is shown by the indicator light according to the load on the seat.

Airbag description and function

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ *Introduction*.

The airbag can protect vehicle occupants in a collision by reducing the movement of vehicle occupants in the direction of the impact during frontal and side collisions.

The airbag is filled by a gas generator when it deploys. When this occurs, the airbag covers open and the airbags unfold with great force into the deployment zone within milliseconds. When vehicle occupants who are wearing safety belts sink into the airbags, the gas contained in the airbags is released in order to cushion the individuals and slow their movement. This can reduce the risk of serious and fatal injuries. The airbag cannot always prevent other injuries, such as swelling, bruises, burns, and abrasions. Heat from friction can develop when the airbag deploys.

Airbags do not provide any protection for arms and the lower part of the body.

The most important factors for triggering airbag deployment are the type of collision, the angle of impact, the vehicle speed, and the characteristics of the object wit which the vehicle is colliding. Therefore, the airbags will not deploy in all situations where there is visible vehicle damage.

The deployment of the airbag system depends on the vehicle deceleration rate resulting from the impact, which is detected by an electronic control module. If the deceleration rate is below the minimum value programmed into the control module, then the airbags will not be deployed even though there may be significant vehicle damage. The extent of vehicle damage, the repair costs, or even the absence of vehicle damage in a collision are not indicators of whether the airbag shou have deployed or not. Because situations can vary greatly among different collisions, it is not possible to define a range of vehicle speeds and reference values.

Therefore, it is not possible to cover every conceivable type of impact and impact angle that could trigger airbag deployment. Among other things, important factors for airbag deployment include the characteristics of the object with which the vehicle collides (hard or soft), the angle of impact, and the vehicle speed.

Airbags are only a supplement to the three-point safety belts in some collisions when the deceleration of the vehicle is great enough to trigger airbag deployment. Airbags can only deploy once, and only under certain conditions. The safety belts are always there to provide protection in situations where the airbags do not deploy or if they have already deployed — for example, this may be the case if the vehicle collides with another vehicle or is hit by another vehicle after the initial impact.

The airbag system is part of the entire passive vehicle safety concept. The airbag system can only provide the best possible protection when it works in conjunctior with safety belts that are fastened correctly and a correct seating position ⚠ ⇒ *Seating position*.

Components of the vehicle safety concept

The vehicle safety concept is comprised of the following safety features in the vehicle that reduces the risk of serious and fatal injuries. Depending on vehicle equipment, some equipment may not be installed in the vehicle or may not be available in some markets.

- Optimized safety belts in all seating positions.
- Safety belt pretensioners for the driver and front passenger.
- Safety belt load limiters for the driver and front passenger.
- Belt height adjusters for the front seats.
- Red warning light .
- Front airbags for the driver and front passenger.
- Advanced Airbag System for the driver and front passenger.
- Capacitive passenger detection system for the front passenger's airbag.
- Side airbags for the driver and front passenger.
- Side Curtain Protection® for outer seats.
- Yellow airbag indicator light .
- Yellow PASSENGER AIR BAG indicator light OFF in the center console.
- Control modules and sensors.
- Safety-optimized and height-adjustable head restraints.
- Adjustable steering column.
- Anchorage points for child restraints on the rear seats.
- Anchorage points for the top tether strap for child restraints.

How the components of the Advanced Airbag System work together:

On the front passenger side, regardless of whether the safety belt is being used or not, the front passenger’s front airbag is deactivated if the electrical capacity measured on the front passenger seat by the capacitive passenger detection system is smaller than the value saved in the control unit. The front passenger’s front airbag is also deactivated if the measured capacity corresponds to the value for an infant of around one year old in a child restraint certified by the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208.

The indicator light for the front passenger's front airbag lights up continuously to tell you that the Advanced Airbag System on the front passenger side has been deactivated.

Situations where front airbags, side airbags or Side Curtain Protection® airbags do not deploy:

- If the ignition is switched off in a collision.
- Deceleration measured at the vehicle front end during the collision is too low for the control module.
- In minor side collisions.
- If the speed of rotation measured by the control module is too low during a rollover.
- In rear collisions.
- If the collision speed is lower than the required reference value in the control module.

Components of the Advanced Airbag System

🕮 **Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice** ⇒ ⚠ ***Introduction***.
The following components are essential parts of the Advanced Airbag System:

- The capacitive passenger detection system in the front passenger seat.
- Optimized safety belts with safety belt pretensioners and safety belt load limiters.
- Front airbags for the driver and front passenger.
- Airbag indicator light .
- PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF indicator light

- Control modules and sensors.

⚠ WARNING

Airbags and safety belt pretensioners that do not function properly can cause serious or fatal injuries in the event of an accident.

- If the airbag indicator light turns on, have the system inspected by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility as soon as possible. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
- Only use original Volkswagen replacement parts and have the installation performed by authorized specialists only.
- Never use used or recycled airbags or parts in the Advanced Airbag System. Only use new parts.

⚠ WARNING

Damage to the front passenger seat may affect the function of the Advanced Airbag System and cause severe or fatal injuries.

- Have damaged components in the front passenger seat and the capacitive detection system replaced by authorized specialists as soon as possible.
- Never remove the front passenger seat or components of the front passenger seat, such as seat surfaces, wires, lines or seat covers.
- Never damage the seat covers or the seat surface of the front passenger seat.
- Never use protective covers or seat surfaces on the front passenger seat as these affect the capacitive detection system.
- Never transport electronic or electrical objects on or under the front passenger seat as these affect the capacitive detection system.
- Never use protective covers, cushions or similar items on the front passenger seat as these affect the capacitive detection system.
- Never install seat heating on the front passenger seat.
- Never replace the seat cover on the front passenger seat.

⚠ WARNING

If the front passenger seat becomes wet or damp, this can cause the Advanced Airbag System to malfunction.

- Allow the seat to dry as soon as possible and check it for damage.

Front airbags

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ ⚠ *Introduction*.

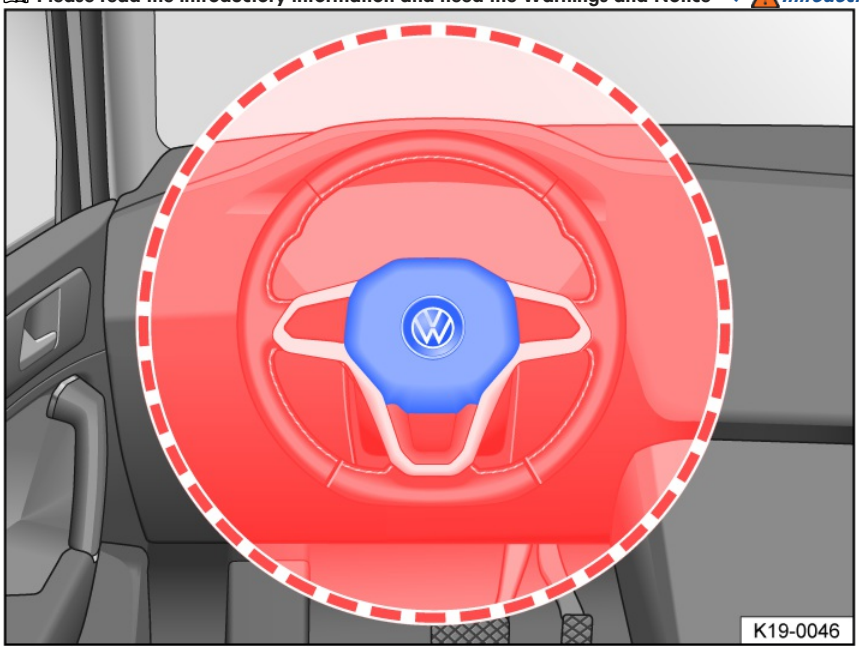


Fig. 30 Installation location and deployment zone of the driver's front airbag.

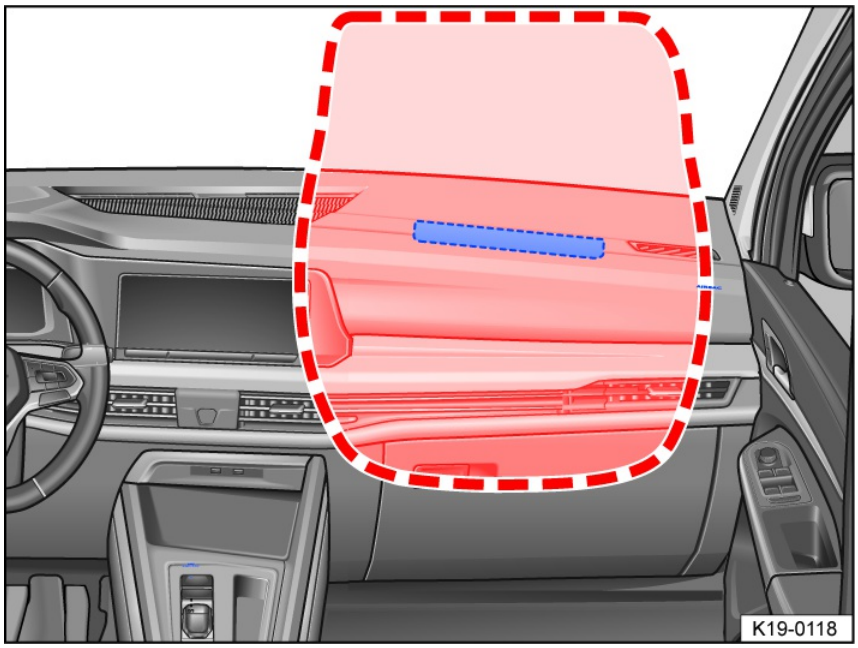


Fig. 31 Installation location and deployment zone of the front passenger's front airbag.

As a supplement to the safety belts, the front airbag system offers additional protection for the head and chest regions of the driver and front passenger during fron collisions with higher impact severity. In certain head-on collisions, the Side Curtain Protection® airbags will also deploy on both sides.

Always maintain as much distance as possible to the front airbag ⇒ *Seating position*. This allows the front airbags to expand completely during collisions and thus provide maximum protection.

The front airbag for the driver is located in the steering wheel *fig. 30* and the front airbag for the front passenger is located in the instrument panel *fig. 31*. The airbag installation locations are indicated by the word "AIRBAG".

The area outlined in red defines where the front airbags will deploy (deployment zone). Therefore, never place or attach objects in these areas → ⚠. The attachments mounted at the factory will not be affected by the deployed driver's and front passenger's front airbag.

The front airbags do not deploy in the following situations:

- In case of crashes when the ignition is switched off.
- In side-on collisions.
- In case of a rear-end collision.
- If the vehicle rolls over.
- If the impact speed is too low.

The front passenger's front airbags do not deploy in the following situations:

- If the front passenger seat is not occupied.
- If the passenger seat recognition system recognizes that the front passenger seat is unoccupied and the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF indicator light come on.

⚠ DANGER

An airbag deploys within a fraction of a second and at a very high speed.

- Always keep the deployment zones of the front airbags clear.
- Never attach objects to the covers or in the deployment zone of the airbag module, such as cup holders or phone holders.
- There should be no people, animals, or objects between the occupants of the front seats and the airbag deployment zone. Make sure that children and passengers also follow this guideline.
- Do not attach any objects, such as mobile navigation systems, to the windshield above the front airbag on the passenger's side.
- Do not tape over or cover the steering wheel airbag module or the instrument panel in the deployment zone of the front passenger's front airbag, or modify them in any other way.

⚠ WARNING

The front airbags expand in front of the steering wheel *fig. 30* and the instrument panel *fig. 31*.

- Always hold the steering wheel with both hands on the sides of the outer edge, in the nine o'clock and three o'clock position.
- Adjust the driver seat so that there is a distance of at least 10 inches (25 cm) between your chest and the center of the steering wheel. If body characteristics mean that this is not possible, you must contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Volkswagen

recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

- Adjust the front passenger seat so that there is the greatest possible distance between the front passenger and the instrument panel.

Side airbags

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ ⚠ *Introduction*.

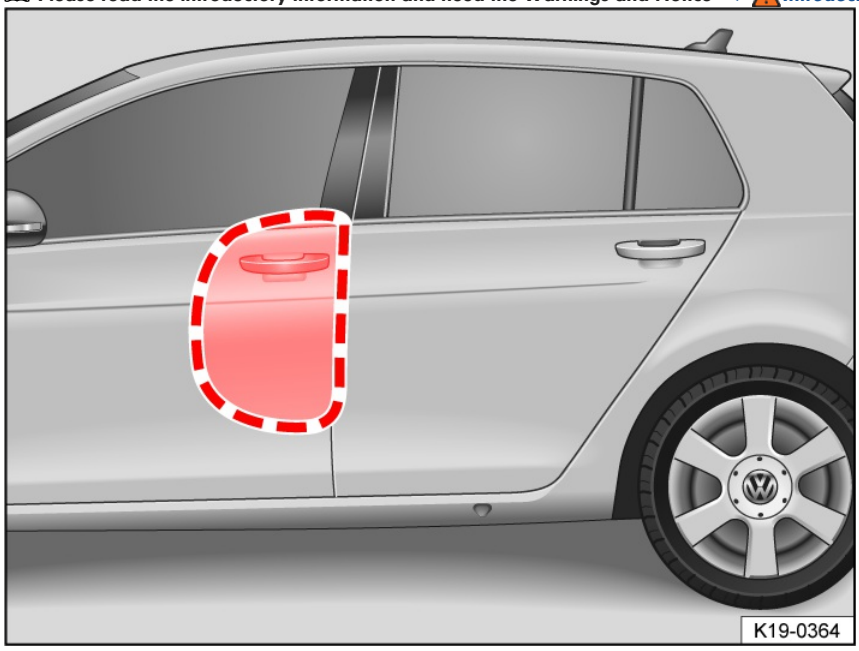


Fig. 32 In the vehicle interior on the left-hand side: Side airbag deployment zone.

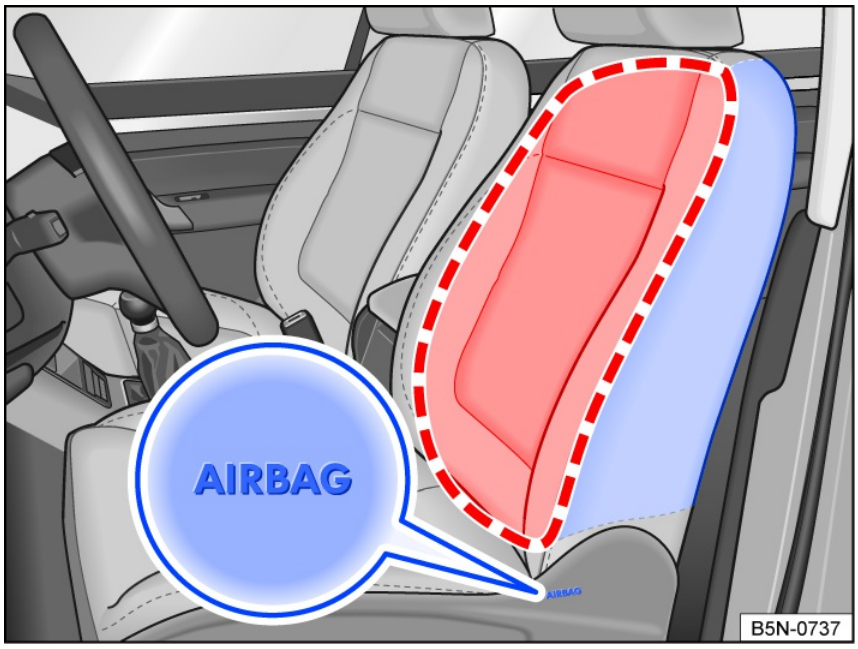


Fig. 33 On the side of the front seat: Side airbag installation location and deployment zone

The installation locations of the side airbags are marked with the word “AIRBAG”.

The area outlined in red defines where the side airbags will deploy (deployment zones) *fig. 33* , *fig. 32*. Therefore, never place or attach objects in these areas – ⚠.

In the event of a side impact collision, the side airbags reduce the risk of injury to the vehicle occupants on the side of impact. The Side Curtain Protection® airbags will also deploy on both sides.

⚠ WARNING

An airbag deploys within a fraction of a second and at a very high speed.

- Always keep the deployment zones of side airbags clear.
- Only hang lightweight clothing from the garment hooks in the vehicle. Never store heavy or sharp-edged objects in pockets.
- Do not attach any accessories to the doors.
- Only use seat covers or protective covers that are specifically approved for use in your vehicle. Otherwise, the side airbag may not expand when

deployed.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect handling and use of the driver's and front passenger's seat can inhibit the side airbags from functioning correctly and cause serious injuries.

- Never remove the front seats from the vehicle or modify parts of them.
- If too much force is applied to the seat backrest bolsters, the side airbags may not deploy correctly, deploy unexpectedly, or not deploy at all.
- Have any damage to the original seat covers or the seam in the side airbag module areas repaired immediately by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Side Curtain Protection

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ ⚠ *Introduction*.

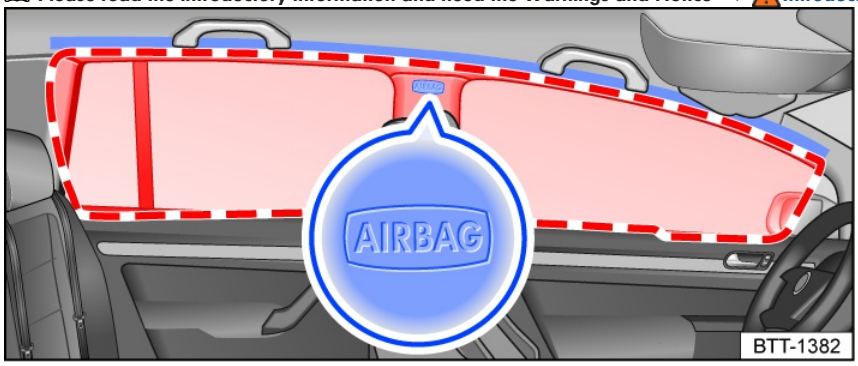


Fig. 34 On the left side of the vehicle: installation location and deployment zone of the Side Curtain Protection®.

Side Curtain Protection® airbags are located on the driver and passenger side inside the vehicle above the doors *fig. 34*.

The installation locations of the Side Curtain Protection® are marked with the word "AIRBAG".

The area outlined in red defines where the Side Curtain Protection® airbags will deploy (deployment zone) *fig. 34*. Therefore, never place or attach objects in this area → ⚠.

In side collisions and certain head-on collisions, the Side Curtain Protection® airbags will trigger on both sides.

Side Curtain Protection® airbags offer the "ejection mitigation" function, which protects the vehicle occupants and body parts from being completely or partially ejected from the vehicle in the event of a side impact collision or if the vehicle rolls over.

The Side Curtain Protection® airbags reduce the risk of injury to vehicle occupants in the front and outer rear seats during a side collision and certain head-on collisions.

Side Curtain Protection® airbags are composed of the following components:

- Control module and sensors.
- Side Curtain Protection airbags.
- Airbag indicator light ⇒ *Indicator light for front passenger's front airbag*.

The Side Curtain Protection® airbags do not deploy in the following situations:

- In case of crashes when the ignition is switched off.
- In certain side collisions with a low force that does not trigger the sensor.
- In case of a rear-end collision.
- In the case of certain head-on collisions.
- In certain rollovers with a low momentum that do not trigger the sensor.
- If the impact speed is too low.

⚠ WARNING

An airbag deploys within a fraction of a second and at a very high speed.

- Always keep the Side Curtain Protection® airbag deployment zones clear.
- Never attach objects to the cover or within the Side Curtain Protection® airbag deployment zone.
- There should be no people, animals, or objects between the occupants of the front seats or outer rear seats and the airbag deployment zone. Make sure that children and passengers also follow this guideline.
- Only hang lightweight clothing from the garment hooks in the vehicle. Never store heavy or sharp-edged objects in pockets.

- Do not attach any accessories to the doors.
- Do not attach any sunshades to the side windows that are not specifically approved for use in the vehicle.
- Only pivot sunshades toward the side windows if no objects such as pens or garage door openers are attached to the visor.

Transporting children safely

Introduction

The physical principles in the event of an accident also apply to children. However, due to their size and other factors, they face a greater risk of injury.

Children and babies must therefore always be transported in child restraint systems that are designed for their age, size, weight and body structure. In the USA and Canada, the use of tested and certified child restraint systems is required by law.

In the case of head-on collisions at speeds of between around 20 and 35 mph (30–55 km/h), a small child weighing 13 lbs (6 kg) will be subjected to forces of more than 20 times their body weight. This means that the child's effective weight will suddenly increase to up to 120 kg (260 lbs). Under such conditions, only a child restraint used in accordance with regulations can reduce the risk of injury. However, a child restraint which is not used in accordance with regulations may further increase the risk of injury!

All children (particularly children under 12 years of age) should always be transported on the rear seats in appropriate child restraint systems. However, if you must use a child restraint on the front passenger seat in exceptional circumstances, always follow all the information and warnings available at ⇒ *Introduction*.

You can find more information on this subject at:

- National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA): http://www.safercar.gov (USA)
- Transport Canada Information Centre: http://www.tc.gc.ca (Canada)

Read and follow the instructions from the child seat manufacturer to ensure that the seat is appropriate for your child. Also be sure to read and follow all the information and warnings on child restraint systems in this manual!

⚠ WARNING

In the event of an accident, people sitting on the front passenger seat (particularly children and small children) may suffer severe or fatal injuries if there is not sufficient distance between them and the airbag, if it is deployed (even with the Advanced Airbag System)!

- The safest place for children is on the rear seats.
- A suitable child restraint that is installed on the rear seat in accordance with regulations provides the highest level of protection for children and small children in most accidents.
- Even though the Advanced Airbag System is designed to detect child restraint systems on the front passenger seat and to switch off the front passenger's front airbag, it is not possible to guarantee that the system will perform correctly under all circumstances and over the vehicle's service life.
- In compliance with the “low risk” option for children of 3–6 years of age according to the U.S. Federal Standard, the Advanced Airbag System may be deployed if the electrical capacity of a typical one-year-old child combined with a child restraint system on the front passenger seat is exceeded and the criteria for deployment of the Advanced Airbag System are met.

Child restraints – overview

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ ⚠ *Introduction*.

All children (particularly small children and infants) must be transported in child restraints suitable for them. These child restraints must always be installed correctly. The information in the following table will help you to find the suitable child restraint for your child.

Child restraint type	Use
Rear-facing child restraint	**Birth–12 months old:** A child of up to 12 months of age must always be transported in a rear-facing child restraint. There are different types of these: – Rear-facing for infants only. – Convertible and multi-purpose child restraints with greater weight and size restrictions for transporting your child in the rear-facing position for longer periods of time.
Rear-facing child restraint before transitioning to the forward-facing child restraint	**1 – 3 years old:** Transport your child in a rear-facing child restraint for as long as possible until they have reached the weight and size restrictions. After your child has reached the weight and size restrictions, you can transport them in a forward-facing child restraint with the appropriate safety belts.
Forward facing child restraints	**4 – 7 years old:** Transport your child in a forward-facing child restraint for as long as possible until they have reached the weight and size restrictions. After your child has reached the weight and size restrictions, you can transport them in a booster seat but only on the rear seats.
Booster seat	**7 – 12 years old:** Transport your child using a booster seat until they have grown enough to sit on the seats with a safety belt without a booster seat. The safety belt must be routed correctly ⇒ *Safety belt positioning*. You should continue to transport your child on the rear seats.

The current child restraints can be secured either with a standard three-point belt or the LATCH/UAS attachment system. Many child restraints also require the use of Top Tether systems. Depending on countries and federal states, the use of Top Tether may even be required by law.

How to determine whether a child restraint is installed correctly

- The child restraint lies flush against the seat cushion and the backrest unless the child restraint manufacturer allows a gap between the seat and child restraint
- The overhang of the child restraint on the seat cushion is not longer than the usual 20% of the child restraint. Always follow the instructions for the permitted child restraint overhangs.
- You should always position the child restraint centrally on the seat.
- The clearance of the child restraint forward and sideways is no greater than approximately one inch (2.5 cm).
- The child restraint must not rest on the belt buckles of the seats. These could be damaged as a result.
- When installing multiple child restraints, they must not block each other and must be free-standing and remain accessible.
- The child restraint has been secured correctly using the three-point belt or LATCH/UAS system. The Top Tether system of the child restraint has also been used correctly as specified by the manufacturer.

⚠ DANGER

Not using the child restraint, using it incorrectly or using the wrong child restraint increases the risk of severe or fatal injuries in the event of a collision or an accident.

- Children sitting on the front seats may suffer severe or fatal injuries if the air bag is deployed (even if advanced airbags are used).
- Children in a rear-facing child restraint on the front passenger seat may suffer severe or fatal injuries if the air bag is deployed.
- Always install child restraints on the rear seats.
- If, in exceptional circumstances, you nevertheless install a child restraint on the front passenger seat and the yellow OFF PASSENGER AIR BAG indicator light does not come on and stay on, remove the seat immediately and have the airbag system checked by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

⚠ WARNING

If the airbag is deployed, a child restraint on the front passenger seat may collide with the airbag and the child in the child restraint may suffer severe or even fatal injuries (even if advanced airbags are used). If, in exceptional circumstances, you nevertheless install a child restraint on the front passenger seat, observe the following points:

- Forward-facing child restraints may be situated in the deployment zone of a front passenger's front airbag and may result in severe or fatal injuries if the airbag is deployed. Always ensure that the child restraint in use has been approved by the manufacturer for use on the front passenger seat.
- Read and always follow the child seat manufacturer's instructions.
- Never install a child restraint without a top tether strap if this is required by the manufacturer or by law.
- Never position a forward-facing child restraint directly on the instrument panel.
- Adjust the seat belt adjuster so that the seat can be installed correctly.
- Position the front passenger seat as high as possible and move it as far back as possible in order to obtain the largest possible distance to the instrument panel.
- Make sure that the upper anchorage of the safety belt is behind the child restraint to ensure that the safety belt is routed correctly.
- Make sue that the backrest is in the upright position.

⚠ WARNING

Any unused safety belts on the rear seats are a danger to your child when transported in a child restraint on the rear seats. By playing with the safety belts, the child may get tangled up and this could result in severe or fatal injuries.

- Always secure unused safety belts to the rear seat. You can do this by putting them around the head restraints which are furthest away from the installed child restraint and secure the safety belt.

NOTICE

- Make sure not to activate the lockable belt system when you secure the safety belts that are not being used.
- Make sure that the belt is not damaged when installing the child restraint with the safety belt, particularly if you are using the lockable belt system.

Safety notes on using child restraints

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ *Introduction*.

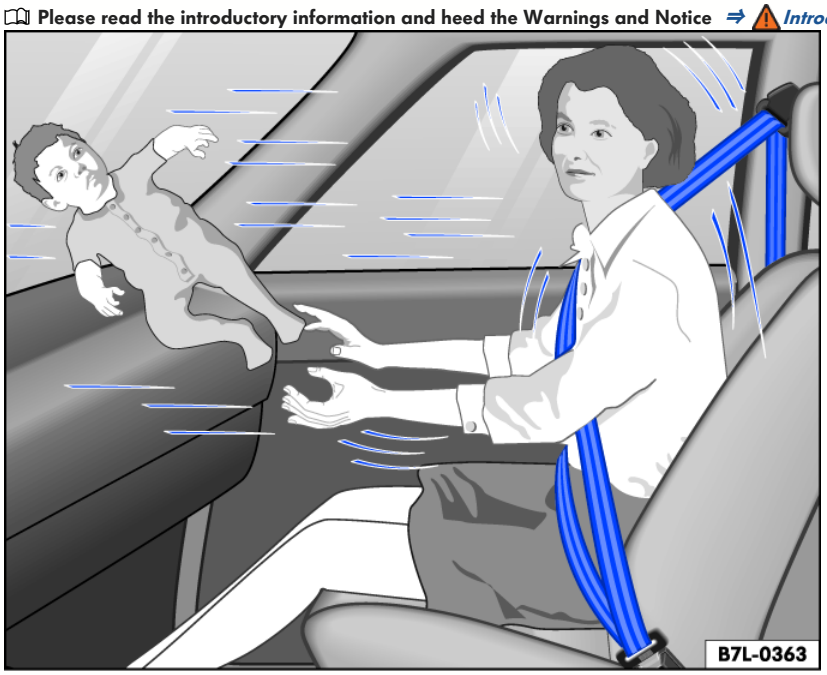


Fig. 35 Never allow children or infants to travel on your lap.

The correct use of child restraints significantly reduces the risk of injury in the event of an accident or collision!

All children, in particular children under the age of 12, must always travel in suitable child restraints on the rear seat.

Only use child restraints that are suitable for the height and weight of the child.

LATCH/UAS anchors can be used to secure child restraints on the seats without using the vehicle's safety belts. If you do want to install a child seat using the safet belts instead of LATCH/UAS anchors, please follow all instructions given by the child restraint manufacturer for guiding the belt around the child restraint and securing the child in the child restraint. Ensure that the child restraint cannot move forward or sideways by more than 1 inch (2.5 cm) after installation.

When installing a child restraint with the safety belt, you must activate the lockable belt system.

Never activate the lockable belt system when installing a booster seat or if a child is traveling without a child restraint.

Important additional information for installing child restraints on the front passenger seat

If, under exceptional circumstances, you need to install a child restraint on the front passenger seat, read and follow all warnings and instructions here ⇒ *Introduction*.

You can find additional information on the selection and use of child restraints here:

Transport Canada Information CentreTel.: 1-800-333-0371Tel.: 1-613-998-8616 (Ottawa)http://www.tc.gc.ca/roadsafety
National Highway Traffic Safety AdministrationTel.: 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153)http://www.nhtsa.govhttp://www.safercar.gov
National SAFE KIDS CampaignTel.: 1-202-662-0600http://www.safekids.org
SafetyBeltSafe U.S.A.Tel.: 1-800-745-SAFE or 1-800-745-7233 (English)Tel.: 1-800-747-SANO or 1-800-747-7266 (Spanish)http://www.carseat.org
Volkswagen Customer CARETel.: 1-800-822-8987

DANGER

The use of rear-facing child restraints or infant carriers on the front passenger seat can cause severe or fatal injuries.

- Always install rear-facing child restraints or infant carriers on the rear seat.

WARNING

Transporting children without a child restraint or with an unsuitable child restraint, or incorrectly installing a child restraint, increases the risk of severe or fatal injuries in the event of an accident or collision.

- Only use child restraints that are suitable for the child and that comply with the regulations set out by FMVSS 210 (CMVSS 213 in Canada).
- Only use child restraints that sit fully and evenly on the seat cushion.
- Always follow the installation instructions given by the manufacturer of the child restraint.
- Always observe all legal requirements regarding the installation and use of child restraints.
- Children smaller than 4'9" (57 inches, 145 cm) must always be secured in a suitable child restraint when traveling in the vehicle.
- Only one child must be allowed to travel in a child restraint.
- Never drive with children, toddlers or babies on the driver's or a passenger's lap.

⚠ WARNING

Forward-facing child restraints on the front passenger seat may collide with the airbag if it is triggered, which can lead to severe or fatal injuries.

- Always install child restraints on the rear seat.

Securing systems

🕮 Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ ⚠ *Introduction*.

Different securing systems are used for safe installation of child restraints depending on the country.

Overview of securing systems

- **ISOFIX/lower LATCH anchorage points**: ISOFIX/lower LATCH anchorage points are attachment systems for quick and secure attachment of child restraints in the vehicle. Attachment using ISOFIX/lower LATCH anchorage points creates a fixed connection between the child restraint and the vehicle.

The child restraint can have two fixed or flexible attachment arms. The attachment arms snap into the ISOFIX/lower LATCH anchorage points that are located between the seat and the rear seat backrest ⇒ *Attaching a child restraint with ISOFIX or lower LATCH anchorage point* . Reinforce the attachment using the ISOFIX/lower LATCH anchorage point by attaching using a top tether or a support bracket, if necessary.

- **Three-point automatic safety belt**. If available, it is better to secure child restraints to the ISOFIX/lower LATCH anchorage point using a three-point safety belt ⇒ *Securing a child restraint with a safety belt* .

Additional fasteners:

- **Top Tether**: the upper belt is guided over the rear seat backrest and secured to the anchorage point on the rear side of the rear seats using a hook ⇒ *Secu the child restraint with the upper strap (top tether)*. Top Tether fastening eyelets are labeled with an anchor symbol.
- **Support base**: some child restraints are supported with a support base on the vehicle floor. The support base reduces the risk of the child restraint tipping forward in the event of a collision. Only use child restraints with a support foot on the front passenger seat and the outer seats in the second row of seats → ⚠ .

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect use of the support base can cause severe or fatal injuries.

- Make sure the support base is installed correctly and securely.

Attaching a child restraint with ISOFIX or lower LATCH anchorage point

🕮 Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ ⚠ *Introduction*.

Installing child restraints with ISOFIX/lower LATCH anchorage point

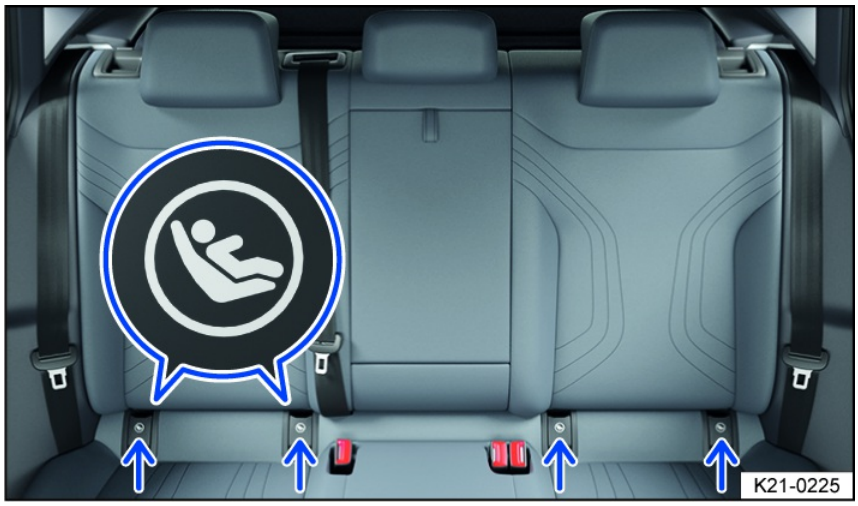


Fig. 36 On the outer seats in the rear bench seat: Designation of the ISOFIX/lower LATCH anchorage points for child restraints.



Fig. 37 General example: fitting a child restraint with attachment arms.

The installation location of the ISOFIX/lower LATCH anchorage points is indicated by a symbol *fig. 36*.

1. Pay attention to and follow the information ⇒ *Safety notes on using child restraints*.
2. If necessary, fold down the protective caps of the ISOFIX/lower LATCH anchorage points.
3. Push the attachment arms of the child restraint in the direction of the arrow onto the ISOFIX/lower LATCH anchorage points *fig. 37*. The child restraint must engage securely and audibly.
4. Pull on both sides of the child restraint to check that the child restraint is securely locked in place.

If the child restraint is equipped with a support foot, this support foot must be positioned securely on the vehicle floor.

Securing the child restraint with the upper strap (top tether)

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ *Introduction*.



Fig. 38 On the rear side of the rear bench seat: Top tether anchorages for the top tether safety belt.



Fig. 39 On the rear side of the outer seats of the second row of seats: Attached top tether safety belt.

Top tether safety belts reduce the forward movement of the child restraint during an accident. This reduces the risk of a head injury to the child.

The anchorages suitable for top tether are labeled with a symbol and may have the label “TOP TETHER” *fig. 38*. Fasten the top tether safety belt only to the top tether anchorages designed for this purpose.

Fastening the top tether safety belt

1. Pay attention to and follow the information ⇒ *Safety notes on using child restraints*.
2. Prepare the top tether safety belt on the child restraint according to the child restraint manufacturer instructions ⇒ ⚠.
3. If necessary, remove the luggage compartment cover and screen separator.
4. Place the child restraint in the center of the vehicle seat cushion and fasten it securely according to the child restraint manufacturer instructions.
5. If necessary, move the rear seat backrest of the vehicle seat to an upright position and adjust to the backrest of the child restraint.
6. Locate the top tether anchorage for the respective seat *fig. 38*.
7. If necessary, push the head restraint upwards and guide the top tether safety belt of the child restraint to the rear under the head restraint.

   Applies to child restraints with V-shaped top tether safety belt: Check that the top tether safety belt is taut on the seat and is not redirected by the bars of the head restraint.
8. Guide the top tether safety belt of the child restraint back over the seat.
9. Hook the top tether safety belt into the appropriate anchorage marked with “top tether” *fig. 39*.
10. Pull on the top tether safety belt.
11. Check that the hook of the top tether safety belt is closed.
12. Tighten the top tether safety belt according to the child restraint manufacturer instructions ⇒ ⚠.
13. If necessary, guide the head restraint back into the starting position.

⚠ WARNING

Fastening the child restraint incorrectly increases the risk of serious and fatal injury during an accident.

- Always follow the child restraint manufacturer instructions for fastening the child restraint in the vehicle.
- Never fasten a child restraint without the top tether safety belt if the use of a top tether safety belt is prescribed by the child restraint manufacturer or legally required for the child restraint.

  For example, the use of a top tether safety belt in conjunction with a forward-facing child restraint is legally required in Canada.
- Improper fastening of the top tether safety belt can lead to serious injuries during an accident. The top tether anchorages are only approved for correctly installed child restraints.
- Always only fasten a top tether safety belt of a child restraint to a top tether anchorage.
- Never fasten a child restraint top tether safety belt to a tie-down.
- Never fasten a safety belt or another belt of the child restraint to a top tether anchorage.
- Never fasten luggage or other objects to a top tether anchorage.

Releasing the top tether safety belt

1. Release the top tether safety belt according to the child restraint manufacturer instructions.
2. Release the catch on the hook and release the top tether safety belt from the top tether anchorage.

Securing a child restraint with a safety belt

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ *Introduction*.

Securing a child restraint with a safety belt

1. Pay attention to and follow the information ⇒ *Safety notes on using child restraints*.
2. Adjust the height of the safety belt so that the belt webbing runs naturally along the child restraint without any sharp bends in the webbing.
3. Route the safety belt according to the instructions provided by the child restraint manufacturer and guide the belt through the child restraint.
4. Make sure the safety belt is not twisted.
5. Activate the lockable safety belt and insert the buckle tongue into the safety belt buckle belonging to the corresponding seat until the safety belt buckle audibly clicks into place .

Lockable safety belt

If the belt webbing is **fully** pulled out and you hear a clicking sound when the safety belt is retracted, this is a lockable safety belt ⇒ *Using safety belts*. The lockir mechanism on the safety belt must only be used to fasten specific child restraint systems ⇒ *Child restraints – overview*. An activated locking mechanism must be released when a vehicle occupant fastens their safety belt. To release the locking mechanism, push the red button in the belt buckle and guide the belt back fully by hand ⇒ *Fastening and unfastening the safety belts* .

Keep any safety belts that are not being used out of the reach of children



Fig. 40 Keep any safety belts that are not being used away from children.

Secure any safety belts not being used to prevent a child from playing with the safety belt and getting caught in it. The procedure for securing a safety belt that is nc being used depends on the seating position.

To secure a safety belt that is not being used for one of the outer seats:

1. Position the safety belt around the head restraint of the center seating position *fig. 40*.
2. Make sure that the safety belt is out of range of the child so that the child cannot touch it or play with it.
3. Make sure that the safety belt is not blocking the lower anchors.

   If the anchor points are blocked, this may mean that you cannot install the child restraint properly in the anchor points.
4. Do **not** activate the lockable safety belt.

   Otherwise, it is very difficult to retract the safety belt into its normal position. You should **not** hear any clicking noises when the safety belt is retracted.

To secure a safety belt that is not being used for the middle seat:

1. Fasten the safety belt *fig. 40*.
2. Pull the shoulder strap on the safety belt out fully to activate the lockable safety belt. You should hear a clicking noise when the safety belt is rolled up again.
3. Let the safety belt roll up fully. Pull the safety belt to make sure that the lockable safety belt is activated and the safety belt is properly fastened and tightened sc that the child cannot get hold of the belt or play with it.

If a child is secured on a seat in the second row, adjust the position in front of the child restraint to ensure that the child has enough space. For example, adjust the front passenger seat to the size of the child and the child directly behind them. Always pay attention to the correct seating position ⇒ *Seating position*.

if no child restraints are needed, move all the safety belts back into their normal storage positions so that the safety belts are available for normal use.

Installing on the center seating position

When installing a child restraint on the center seating position, it is especially important to install correctly because this seating position is narrower than both of the outer seats. If the child restraint is wider than the seat surface, the belt buckle of the adjacent seating position may be covered and could then be damaged. When installing child seats, always ensure that all belt buckles are easily accessible.

- If nothing else is specified by the child restraint manufacturer, the child restraint must rest close against the backrest and seat surface and must not overlap se surfaces.
- The child restraint must be installed straight and centered on the seating position, and it must not be able to move more than 2.5 cm (approx. 1 inch).
- The child restraint must not rest on the belt buckles.
- When installing multiple child restraints, the child restraints must not become caught on one another.

In some cases, even if a child restraint is installed correctly on the center seating position, it may cover the belt buckles and could then damage them and make the belt buckles unusable. This can occur if the child restraint slides on the seat surface while driving. Therefore, check the position of the child restraint regularly to ensure that the belt buckles are neither covered nor damaged.

⚠ WARNING

A child that is in a child restraint that has been secured with the anchor points or with a safety belt may play with any unused safety belts on the rear seat and get tangled up, which could result in serious or even fatal injuries.

- Always keep any safety belts for the rear seats that are not being used out of the reach of children.

Securing a booster seat with a safety belt

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ ⚠ *Introduction*.

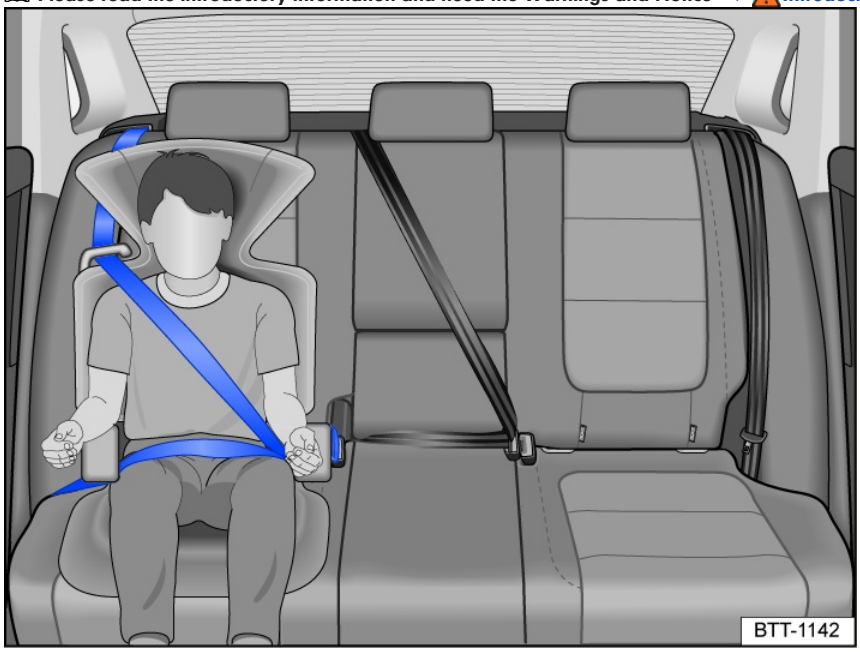


Fig. 41 Correctly secured child on a booster seat.

Children between the ages of around 8 and 12 are best protected when they travel on a booster seat that is suitable for their age and height.

The safety belts in the vehicle are usually only suitable for children taller than 4'9" (57 inches, 145 cm). Booster seats ensure that children under this height can be correctly secured using the safety belt.

- Never activate the lockable belt system when securing a child with a booster seat.
- The upper area of the belt must always be positioned on the child's shoulder. Ensure that the belt does not rest on the child's face or neck.
- The lap belt must always run across the child's lap. It must never run across the child's stomach.

Children taller than 4'9" (57 inches, 145 cm) can generally be secured using the safety belt. Pay attention to the information at ⇒ *Safety belt positioning*.

A child no longer needs a booster seat when they are taller than 4'9" (57 inches, 145 cm) if the following requirements are met:

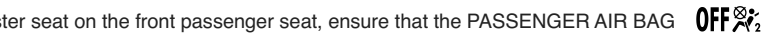
- The child can sit with their back fully against the backrest.
- The child's knees bend over the edge of the seat.
- The child's feet sit fully flat on the vehicle floor.

- The child can comfortably stay in this position for the entire journey.

Children aged 12 or under must always travel on a rear seat.

⚠ WARNING

Not using a booster seat or incorrectly using a booster seat or safety belt can cause severe or fatal injuries in the event of an accident or collision.

- Always observe all instructions regarding the installation and use of child restraints and booster seats.
- If, under exceptional circumstances, you need to install a booster seat on the front passenger seat, ensure that the PASSENGER AIR BAG  indicator light turns on and remains on.

In case of an emergency

Securing yourself and the vehicle

Follow all legal regulations regarding securing a vehicle during a breakdown. For example, in many countries you must switch on the emergency flashers and wear a reflective vest ⇒ *Emergency equipment*.

Checklist

For your own safety and the safety of your passengers, follow the points below in the order they are given → ⚠:

1. Park your vehicle a safe distance from traffic and on suitable ground → ⚠.
2. Switch on the emergency flashers ⇒ *Bottom section of the center console*.
3. Set the electronic parking brake.
4. Move the gear lever into the neutral position or move the selector lever into the **P** position.
5. Stop the engine ⇒ *Stopping the engine*.
6. Have all vehicle occupants exit the vehicle on the side facing away from traffic and move to a safe area, such as behind a guard rail. Follow the local regulation regarding wearing a reflective vest.
7. Take all vehicle keys with you if you are leaving the vehicle.
8. Set up the warning triangle to warn others on the road about the vehicle.
9. Allow the engine to cool and see an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility for assistance if necessary. Volkswagen recommends contacting the Volkswagen emergency assistance service.

When the emergency flashers are switched on, for example while towing the vehicle, you can indicate any turns or lane changes using the turn signal lever. The emergency flashers will stop temporarily.

Switch on the emergency flashers in the following situations, for example:

- To warn traffic behind your vehicle if the traffic ahead slows suddenly or you reach the end of a traffic jam.
- If there has been an accident.
- If the vehicle malfunctions.
- When towing the vehicle.

Always follow the applicable local requirements for use of the emergency flashers.

If the emergency flashers do not work, others on the road must be informed about the stalled vehicle in some other way that meets the applicable legal regulations.

⚠ WARNING

A stalled vehicle increases the risk of a crash that could cause injury to you, your vehicle occupants, or others on the road.

- Stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
- Park the vehicle a safe distance from moving traffic.
- Switch on the emergency flashers.
- Never leave any persons, particularly children or people requiring assistance, in the vehicle. This is especially true when the doors are locked. Individuals locked in the vehicle could be exposed to very high or very low temperatures.

⚠ WARNING

Failing to heed this checklist that is provided for your own safety can cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Always follow the activities in the checklist and follow the general safety precautions.

WARNING

Exhaust system components will become very hot. This can result in fires and serious injuries.

- Never park the vehicle in such a way so that any exhaust system components could come into contact with flammable materials under the vehicle such as dry grass or fuel.

NOTICE

When pushing the vehicle by hand, do not press on the taillights, the rear spoiler, or large pieces of sheet metal. Doing so could cause vehicle damage and detach the rear spoiler.

The 12 V vehicle battery will drain if the emergency flashers remain on for a long period of time, even if the ignition is switched off.

Depending on vehicle equipment, the brake lights may blink quickly if you brake hard while driving at speeds above approx. 50 mph (approx. 80 km/h) or brake the vehicle to a complete stop. This is done to warn traffic behind your vehicle. If the braking continues, the emergency flashers will switch on automatically when the vehicle speed is below approx. 6 mph (approx. 10 km/h). The emergency flashers will switch off automatically when you accelerate.

Emergency equipment

First aid kit

Depending on vehicle equipment, the first aid kit may be in a storage compartment, in a holder in the luggage compartment, under the luggage compartment floor, or in the vehicle interior.

The first aid kit must meet the legal regulations.

- Note the expiration date of the contents.
- Replace contents after use, if necessary, and put the first aid kit securely back into place.

Warning triangle



Fig. 42 In the trunk lid: Holder for the warning triangle.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the warning triangle may be located in the trunk lid.

1. With the trunk lid open, hold the warning triangle by the recess and turn it 90° towards the front of the vehicle.
2. Remove the warning triangle through the opening.
3. After use, insert the warning triangle back into the holder.

The warning triangle must meet the legal regulations.

Reflective vest

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the safety vest may be in a storage compartment in the front door trim panel or in the glove compartment ⇒ *Driver door*, ⇒ *Passenger's side*.

The reflective vest must meet the legal regulations.

Fire extinguisher

Depending on vehicle equipment, a fire extinguisher may be located in a holder in the footwell under the front passenger's seat.

The fire extinguisher must meet the legal regulations, always be ready to operate, and be checked regularly (see inspection seal on the fire extinguisher).

⚠ WARNING

Objects that are loose or secured incorrectly can be thrown around the vehicle interior during sudden driving or braking maneuvers or in a collision and cause serious injuries.

- Always position the first aid kit, warning triangle and fire extinguisher securely in the holders provided in the vehicle.
- Store the reflective vest in a storage compartment so that it is easy to access.

Information Call, Roadside Assistance Call and Emergency Call Service



Fig. 43 Located on the roof console: Emergency Call Service button (behind a button cover) and indicator light.



Fig. 44 Located on the roof console: Emergency Call Service button.

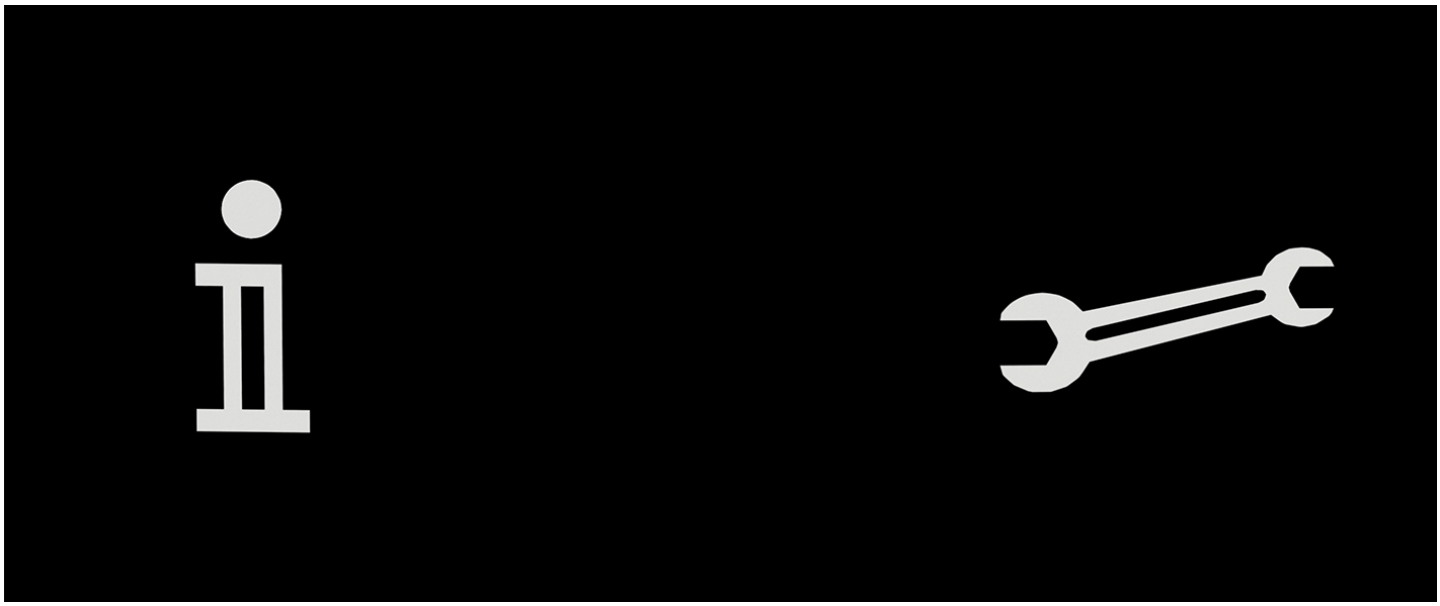


Fig. 45 In the overhead console: Controls for the information call and roadside assistance call.

Information call.

Roadside assistance call.

The control in the roof console *fig. 43*, *fig. 44*, *fig. 45* can be used for voice services, depending on the vehicle equipment and country of use. The required connection is produced by a control module installed by the manufacturer.

Note the additional information on VW Car-Net® ⇒.

Indicator light

An indicator light *fig. 43* (arrow) for voice and data transmission services is located in the control panel. The indicator light comes on in different colors and light patterns depending on the vehicle operating status:

The indicator light does not light up: The vehicle is offline and has no connectivity. The red indicator light comes on and remains on: system error. The Emergency Call Service is limited or not available. The green indicator light lights up: Displays the availability of mobile radio signal. Does not display whether VW Car-Net services have been purchased and are active, except for the Emergency Call Service. The indicator light blinks green: there is a call in progress.

Information call

- With an information call, a call can be made to the VW Car-Net call center for questions regarding VW Car-Net services.
- The contact person will communicate in the language in which the vehicle was registered via VW Car-Net.

Roadside assistance call

- If you break down, you can contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility for assistance with the roadside assistance call.
- Some vehicle data, e.g. its current location, is transferred in parallel to the voice call.
- The contact person will communicate in the language in which the vehicle was registered via VW Car-Net.

Emergency Call Service

- The Emergency Call Service is only available if a corresponding license is acquired.
- If the Emergency Call Service is triggered, a connection to the Car-Net response center will be established.
- If an emergency call is triggered manually or by a collision with airbag deployment, data that is relevant to the emergency call, such as the vehicle's current location, is automatically transmitted ⇒ *Customer information*.
- The contact partner will communicate in the language that is set in the vehicle's Infotainment system. If this language is not available at the current emergency call location, English will be used.

⚠ WARNING

The following conditions may restrict or prevent a manual or automatic emergency call:

- The emergency call location is in an area with no cell phone and satellite reception, or insufficient reception.
- You are in a location where there is sufficient mobile phone and satellite reception, but the telecommunications provider's mobile communications network is unavailable.
- The Emergency Call Service is not permitted by law in some countries.
- VW Car-Net has not been activated.

- No valid license for the use of the Emergency Call Service has been acquired or the license has expired.
- The vehicle components required for manual or automatic emergency calls are damaged or do not have sufficient power.
- The vehicle's ignition is not switched on.

Triggering an emergency call manually

1. Briefly press on the button cover, if present, and fold the cover downward.
2. Press the *fig. 44* emergency call button until the green indicator light starts to flash.

   The emergency call is triggered and a voice connection to the VW Car-Net response center is established.

If you pressed the emergency call button by mistake, cancel the emergency call immediately:

1. Press the emergency call button again until the indicator light remains green.

Automatic emergency call

The automatic emergency call is only triggered when the ignition is on.

A call will automatically be made to the VW Car-Net call center immediately after the airbags or safety belt pretensioners deploy. The automatic emergency call cannot be stopped by pressing the *fig. 44* emergency call button.

If questions from the VW Car-Net call center are not answered, rescue operations will automatically start.

Integrated battery

The integrated battery ensures that the Emergency Call Service will still be available for some time if the 12 V vehicle battery is disconnected or faulty.

If the integrated battery is drained or faulty, a message indicating this will be displayed in the instrument cluster. If this message is shown, immediately consult an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility and have the integrated battery replaced. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Have the integrated battery checked, and if necessary, replaced by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility after approximately three years. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Data transmission

The available data will be sent to the VW Car-Net response center during an emergency call to determine what rescue measures are needed.

The data regarding the location of the vehicle is continuously overwritten, so that only the ten most recent saved locations as required for the Emergency Call Service to function are available. The vehicle cannot be tracked on a continuous basis.

The emergency call data is only processed to ensure the proper function of the Emergency Call Service. The emergency call data is automatically deleted by the system 13 hours after the emergency call is triggered.

The following data will be sent:

- The current vehicle position at the time the emergency call was triggered
- Nine other vehicle positions shortly before the emergency call was triggered (from the route driven).
- Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)
- Type of vehicle drive.
- Vehicle model
- Trigger type (automatic or manual)
- Call type.
- Direction in which the vehicle was moving at the time the emergency call was triggered.
- Accident severity.
- Accident direction.
- Time of impact
- Reliability of the positioning data
- Data set version.
- Counter of the data sets transmitted per call
- Calculated number of passengers.
- Language selected in the Infotainment system.

The Emergency Call Service function may be limited by any after-market Infotainment systems that are installed.

Troubleshooting

Emergency Call Service malfunctioning

The red indicator light in the emergency call button comes on and remains on . The message Error: Emergency call function. Service vehicle may also be displayed in the instrument cluster.

There is a system error with the Emergency Call Service. You may not be able to make an emergency call.

1. Contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility immediately and have the fault rectified. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Emergency Call Service limited

The red indicator light in the emergency call button comes on and remains on . The message Emergency call function limited. Service vehicle may also be displayed in the instrument cluster.

The Emergency Call Service function has restricted availability. For example, you cannot make a voice call to the VW Car-Net call center.

1. Contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility immediately and have the fault rectified. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Controls are responding differently than expected

Moisture, dirt and grease may limit the functioning of the controls.

1. Always keep the control panels clean and dry.

Opening and Closing

Vehicle key

Vehicle key functions

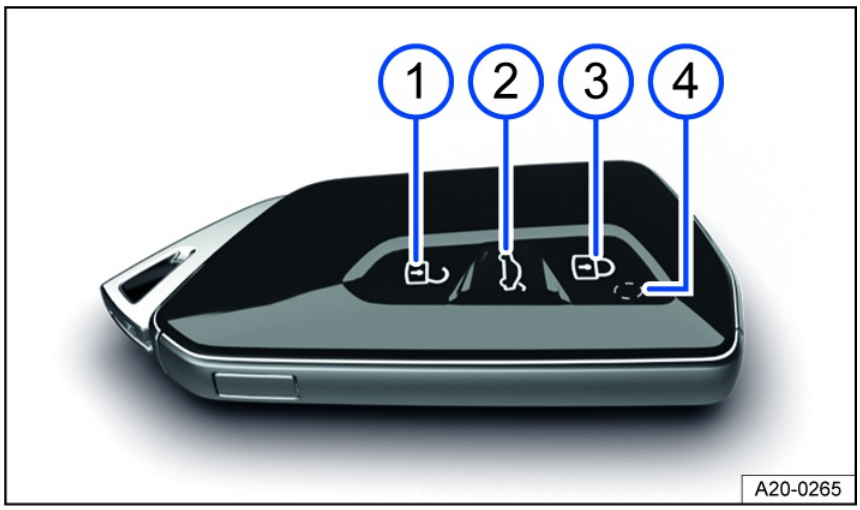


Fig. 46 Vehicle key.

(1) Unlock the vehicle. All turn signals will flash *twice*.

(2) Unlock the trunk lid separately. All turn signals will flash *twice*. To do this, briefly press and hold the button.

(3) Lock the vehicle. All turn signals will flash *once*.

(4) Indicator light: Will blink when a button is pressed if all doors and the trunk lid are closed.

⚠ WARNING

Careless or unintended use of the vehicle key can cause crashes and serious injuries.

- Always take all vehicle keys with you when leaving the vehicle. Children or unauthorized people could lock the doors and/or the trunk lid, start the engine, or switch on the ignition and activate electrical equipment, such as the power windows.
- Never leave children or people requiring assistance alone in the vehicle. In an emergency, they will not be able to leave the vehicle unassisted or care for themselves. For example, depending on the season, the temperature inside the vehicle could become very high or low, which can lead to serious injuries, illness or death, especially for very young children.

NOTICE

Protect the vehicle key from moisture and strong impacts.

Regular use of comfort systems and other usage patterns shorten the service life of the button cell in the vehicle key.

Emergency key

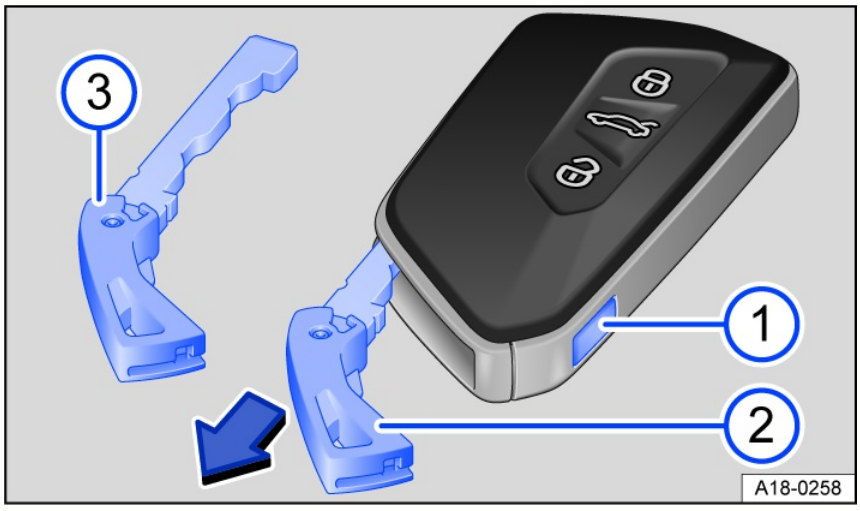


Fig. 47 Vehicle key: releasing the emergency key.

(1) Briefly press the release button. The key ring will fold open.

(2) Press the release button and pull out the emergency key in the direction of the arrow.

(3) Emergency key.

There is an emergency key *fig. 47* (3) located in the vehicle key that can be used to manually unlock and lock the vehicle.

Possible functions:

- Unlock and lock the vehicle manually ⇒ *Vehicle key functions*.
- Switch the childproof lock on and off ⇒ *Child safety lock*.

Replacing the button cell battery

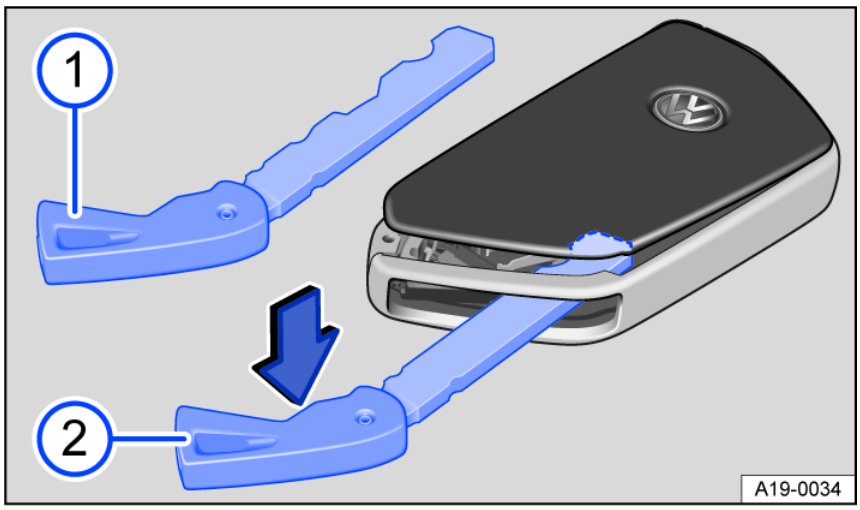


Fig. 48 Vehicle key: opening the battery compartment cover.

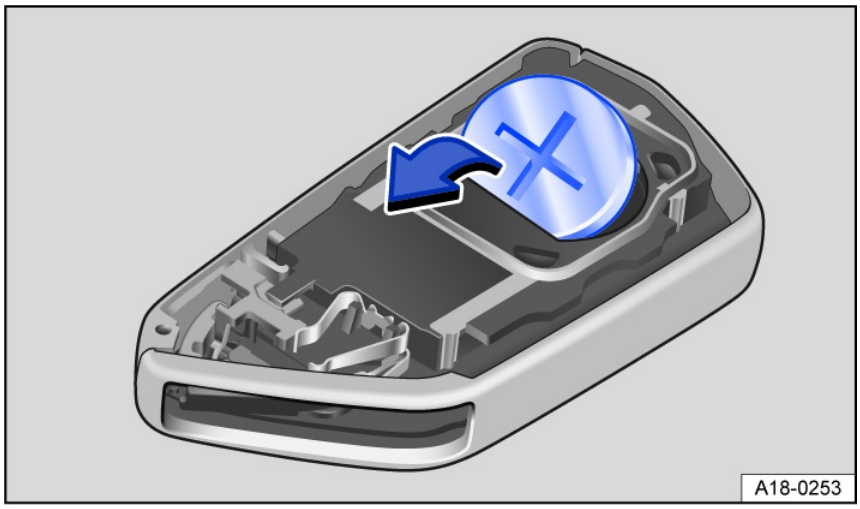


Fig. 49 Vehicle key: replacing the button cell battery

Volkswagen recommends having the button cell changed by suitably qualified professionals ⇒ (!). Volkswagen recommends contacting your Volkswagen dealership.

1. Remove the emergency key *fig. 48* (1) ⇒ *Emergency key*.
2. Insert the spare key in the slot *fig. 48* (2), push it in the direction of the arrow and lever out the cover.
3. Lift the button cell battery out of the battery compartment *fig. 49*.
4. Press the new button cell battery into the battery compartment ⇒ (!).
5. Press the cover out of the housing *fig. 48*.
6. Store the emergency key ⇒ *Emergency key*.
7. Dispose of drained battery in a way that will not harm the environment.

⚠ DANGER

If button cell batteries are swallowed or enter the air ducts, serious or fatal injuries could occur within a very short time due to choking or internal burns.

- Seek medical assistance immediately if you suspect that a button cell battery has been swallowed.
- If the battery cover cannot be closed, do not use the remote control.
- Always keep the remote control and key fob with button cell batteries out of the reach of children.

NOTICE

- If the button cell battery is replaced incorrectly, it can damage the vehicle key.
- Using incorrect batteries can damage the vehicle key. Only replace a drained battery with a new battery of the same voltage, size, and specification.
- Make sure the battery is facing in the right direction when inserting it.

The type of batteries used in the remote control of your vehicle key can contain perchlorate. This requires special handling. Observe all legal requirements regarding the handling and disposal of these batteries ⇒ *Disposal of old batteries and electronic devices*. We recommend that you have this service carried ou by suitably qualified professionals. Volkswagen recommends contacting your Volkswagen dealership.

Synchronizing a vehicle key

If the vehicle cannot be unlocked or locked using the vehicle key, synchronize the vehicle key or replace the button cell battery ⇒ *Replacing the button cell batter*

Synchronizing a vehicle key

1. Stand next to the vehicle.
2. Press the button on the vehicle key twice, quickly.

Or:

1. Remove the emergency key ⇒ *Emergency key*.
2. If necessary, remove the cap from the driver's door handle ⇒ *Locking the front passenger door and rear doors in an emergency* .
3. Press the button on the vehicle key.
4. Unlock the vehicle using the emergency key.
5. Open the driver door.

   If the vehicle is equipped with an anti-theft alarm system, the alarm will be triggered immediately ⇒ *Anti-theft alarm system*.
6. Switch the ignition on.

   Please note: To switch on the ignition, put the remote control vehicle key in the cup holder or in the storage compartment in the center console ⇒ *Troubleshooting*.

   This completes the synchronization.

Troubleshooting

Vehicle cannot be locked or unlocked

Remote control is disrupted by objects, poor weather conditions or transmitters on the same frequency band close to the vehicle (e.g. cell phones), as well as by a drained button cell.

Or: The central locking switches off briefly to protect it from overloading.

1. Close the driver door.

   Or: Synchronize the vehicle key ⇒ *Synchronizing a vehicle key*.

   Or: Change the battery cell in the vehicle key ⇒ *Replacing the button cell battery*.

The indicator light is not blinking

If the indicator light in the vehicle key does not blink when you press one of the buttons, then the button cell battery in the vehicle key must be replaced ⇒ *Repla the button cell battery*.

You can get an additional or replacement vehicle key from an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Keyless Access

Introduction

Keyless Access makes it possible to unlock and lock the vehicle without actively using the key. A valid vehicle key must be present within the vicinity of the vehicle t use this function.

Unlocking or locking using Keyless Access

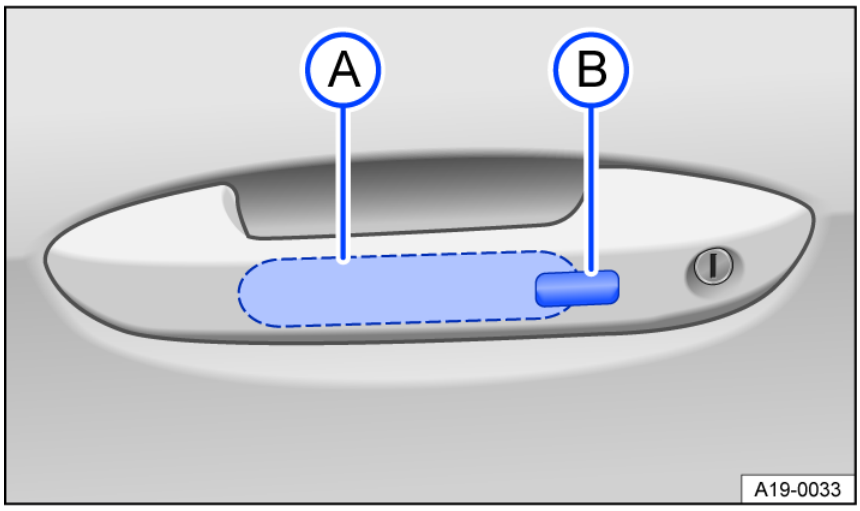


Fig. 50 In door handle: sensors.

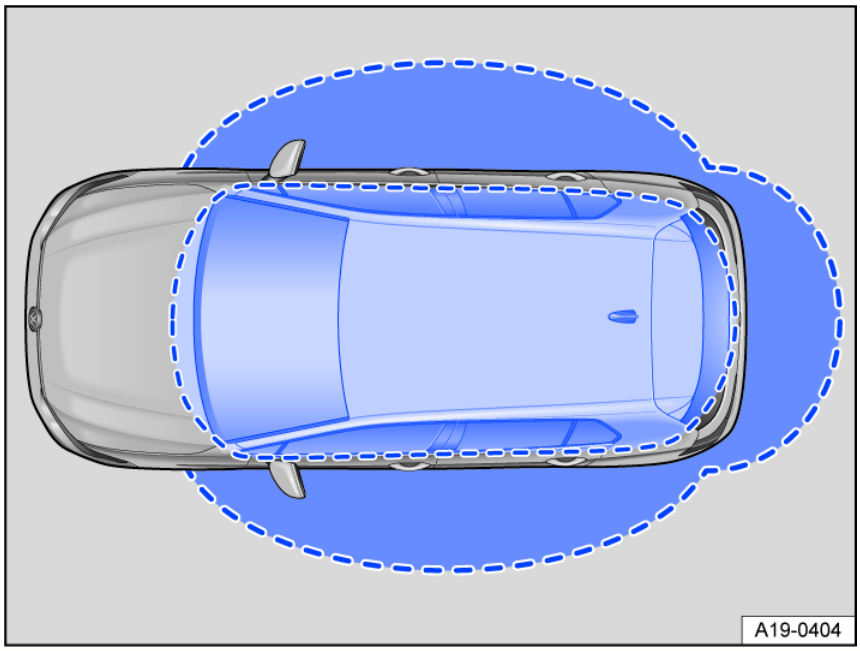


Fig. 51 Keyless Access: sensor range.

Configuring Keyless Access

The behavior of Keyless Access can be set in the Vehicle menu in the Infotainment system.

If the Keyless Access function is deactivated, it may be subject to functional limitations.

Unlocking the vehicle

1. Touch the sensor *fig. 50* (A) on the inside of the door handle. All turn signals will flash *twice*.

   If the sensor is touched twice, the entire vehicle will be unlocked.

Automatically unlocking the vehicle

The vehicle can be unlocked automatically. To do so, the function must be activated in the Infotainment system and the vehicle key must be within the sensor range of the vehicle.

- If the vehicle key is detected within the range of any of the sensors *fig. 51*, the vehicle is then unlocked. All turn signals will flash *twice*.

If the vehicle is not unlocked for a long period of time, the function is automatically deactivated. The function is reactivated the next time the vehicle is locked.

If single door unlocking is activated in the settings for the central locking in the Infotainment system, this may restrict automatic unlocking.

Locking the vehicle

1. Park the vehicle.
2. Touch the sensor *fig. 50* (B) on the outside of the door handle. All turn signals will flash *once*.

   The unlock function is deactivated for several seconds so that you can check if the vehicle locked correctly.

Unlocking the trunk lid

If the vehicle is locked and a vehicle key is within the trunk lid sensor range, the trunk lid will unlock automatically when opened. After closing, the trunk lid will lock again.

Please note: If Central locking for all doors and Keyless Access unlocking upon approach are activated in the Infotainment system, the vehicle remains unlocked after opening and closing the trunk lid. The vehicle must be actively locked.

Deactivating Keyless Access temporarily

You can temporarily deactivate the Keyless Access with push-button start unlocking function to prevent the vehicle from being unlocked and started by unauthorize people:

1. Lock the vehicle with the button on the vehicle key.
2. Within five seconds of locking the vehicle, touch the sensor on the outside of the door handle once *fig. 50* (B). Do not grasp the door handle during this process. Keyless Access is now temporarily deactivated.
3. Check if it is deactivated by waiting at least 10 seconds and then pulling on the door handle. The door should not open.

The next time the vehicle is unlocked, you must use the vehicle key. Keyless Access will be reactivated the next time the vehicle is unlocked.

Deactivating Keyless Access permanently

You can also permanently deactivate Keyless Access in the Infotainment system to prevent the vehicle from being unlocked and started by unauthorized people.

Troubleshooting

If Keyless Access is not working

The sensor function may be impaired if the sensor is dirty.

1. Clean the sensors.

If all turn signals flash four times

The vehicle key that was last used is still in the vehicle.

1. Remove the key and lock the vehicle.

Automatic sensor deactivation

The sensors will deactivate automatically under the following conditions:

- If the vehicle is not unlocked or locked for a long period of time
- If a sensor is triggered too frequently

Reactivating the sensor pads:

1. Unlock the vehicle using the button on the vehicle key.

NOTICE

Strong streams of water or vapor could activate the sensors in the door handles if a valid vehicle key is located near the vehicle. If at least one window is open and the sensors in one door handle are permanently activated, then all windows will close. If the stream of water or vapor is removed briefly from the sensor in a door handle and then redirected at the sensor, all of the windows may open ⇒ *Introduction*.

If the message Keyless faulty. appears in the instrument cluster display, there may be a malfunction in the Keyless Access system. Contact a suitably qualified professional. Volkswagen recommends contacting your Volkswagen dealership.

If another signal interferes with the vehicle key, e.g. a cell phone in close proximity, or if the vehicle key is covered by an object, such as an aluminum case, the Keyless Access function may be impaired. If there is no vehicle key in the vehicle or the key is not detected, a relevant message will appear in the instrument cluster display.

Doors and central locking button

Introduction

The doors can be manually locked and in some cases unlocked, for example if the vehicle key or the central locking system is malfunctioning.

The central locking system allows you to unlock and lock all doors, the trunk lid, and the fuel filler flap from one location.

The vehicle can be locked when the ignition has been switched off or if the driver has exited the vehicle when the engine is stopped.

An image in the instrument cluster display indicates if one or more doors have not opened or closed correctly ⇒ *Driver information*. **Do not continue driving!** Open the respective door and close it again.

The image is also displayed when the ignition is switched off, and it turns off several seconds after the doors are closed and the vehicle has been locked.

WARNING

If a door is not closed correctly, it can open suddenly while driving and cause serious injuries.

- Stop immediately and close the door.
- When closing the door, make sure it engages securely and completely. When closed, the door must be flush with the areas of the vehicle body that are

around the door.

- Do not open or close the doors if anyone is in the way.

⚠ WARNING

When the door is being held open by the door arrester, it may close by itself in high winds or on inclines, which can cause injuries.

- Always hold the door handle firmly when opening and closing the door.

⚠ WARNING

The area within the range of motion for the doors and trunk lid can be dangerous and there is the potential for injuries.

- Do not open or close the doors and trunk lid if anyone is in the way.

⚠ WARNING

Locking the doors carelessly can cause serious injuries.

- When the vehicle is locked from the outside, the doors and power windows cannot be opened from the inside.
- The central locking system locks all the doors. When the vehicle is locked from the inside, it reduces the risk of opening the doors unintentionally and of unauthorized people entering the vehicle. In case of an emergency or an accident, locked doors can make it more difficult for first responders to access the vehicle interior to help the passengers.
- Never leave children or people requiring assistance in the vehicle. All doors can be locked from the inside using the central locking button. This can result in locking yourself inside the vehicle. Individuals locked in the vehicle could be exposed to very high or very low temperatures.
- Depending on the season, the temperature inside the vehicle could become very high or low, which can lead to serious injuries, illness or death, especially for very young children.
- Never leave anyone in a locked vehicle. In an emergency, these people may not be able to exit the vehicle without assistance or help themselves.

NOTICE

When using the emergency locking or emergency unlocking feature, remove and reinstall the affected parts carefully and correctly to reduce the risk of vehicle damage.

Indicator light in the driver's door

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ ⚠ and ⓘ *Introduction*.

The indicator light for the central locking system is located in the driver door ⇒ *Driver door*.

Vehicle is locked: the red LED light blinks for approximately two seconds, and then flashes more slowly after that. The indicator light does *not* flash if the vehicle w locked using the central locking button in the driver's door ⇒ *Central locking button*.

Automatic locking and unlocking

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ ⚠ and ⓘ *Introduction*.

Depending on how your vehicle is equipped, settings for the central locking can be configured in the Vehicle settings menu in the Infotainment system.

Automatic locking (Auto Lock)

The vehicle locks automatically at speeds of about 9 mph (15 km/h) or higher. If the vehicle is locked, the indicator light will turn yellow in the central locking button.

Automatic unlocking (Auto Unlock)

If one of the following conditions apply, all doors and the trunk lid will unlock automatically:

- *In vehicles with an automatic transmission:* If the parking lock **P** is engaged and the ignition is switched off.
- **Or:** if the door handle has been pulled. This applies at speeds up to 9 mph (15 km/h).
- **Or:** if airbags have deployed during a collision ⇒ *Troubleshooting*.

The Auto Unlock function makes it possible for first responders to access the inside of the vehicle.

Central locking button

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ ⚠ and ⓘ *Introduction*.

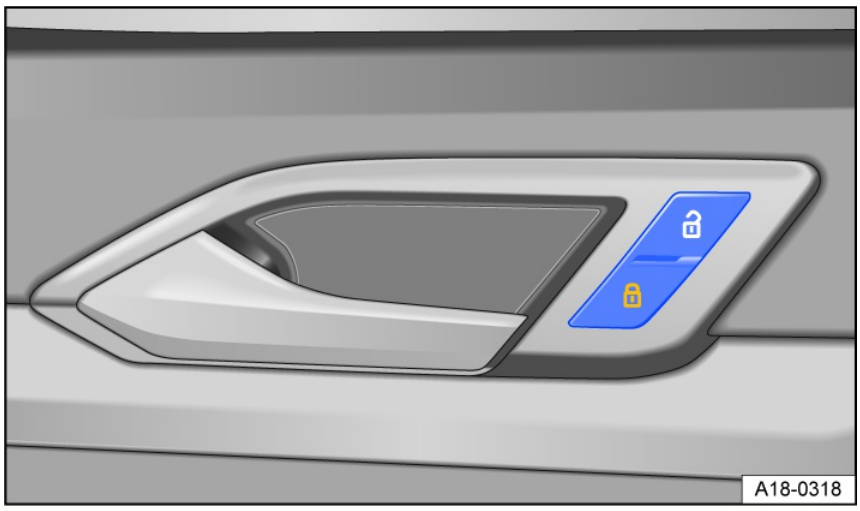


Fig. 52 In the driver's door: central locking button.

– Unlock the vehicle.

– Lock the vehicle.

The central locking button functions both when the ignition is on or off, but only when all the doors are closed.

If the vehicle is locked from the outside using the vehicle key, the central locking buttons will be disabled.

If the vehicle is locked from the inside using the central locking button, then:

- The indicator light in the button will turn yellow if all doors are closed and locked.
- The anti-theft alarm system will **not** be activated ⇒ *Anti-theft alarm system*.

The doors can be opened from the inside by pulling the door handle. The indicator light in the button will turn off. The unopened doors and the trunk lid will remain locked and cannot be opened from the outside.

Locking the front passenger door and rear doors in an emergency

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ and *Introduction*.

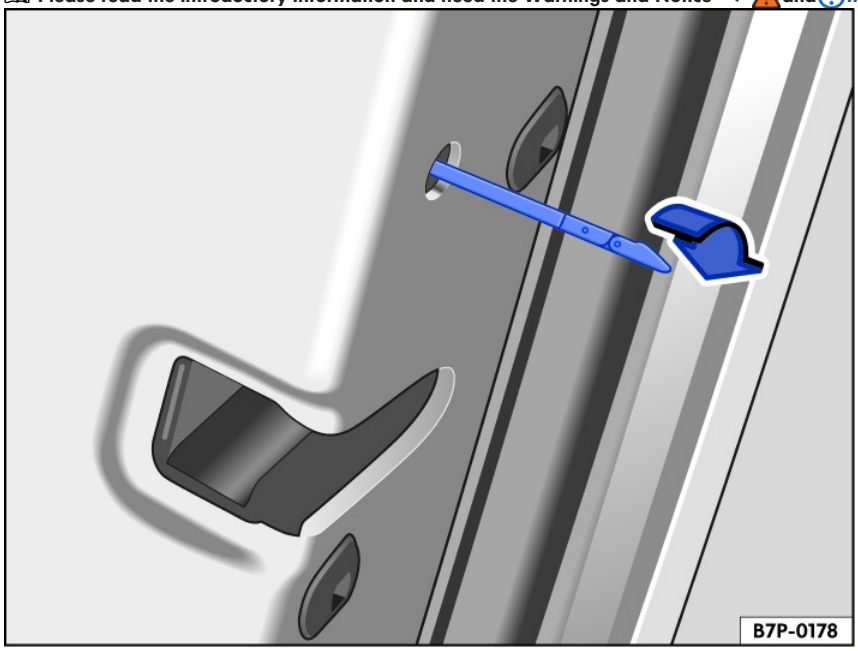


Fig. 53 In the front edge of the rear right-hand door: Vehicle emergency lock for using the emergency (mechanical) key.

The front passenger door and the rear doors can each be locked manually.

The anti-theft alarm system is **not** activated when this happens ⇒ *Anti-theft alarm system*.

1. Open the door.
2. Remove the rubber seal in the front of the door.
3. Insert the emergency key in the vertical slot and turn *fig. 53*.
4. Reattach the rubber seal.
5. Check that the door is locked.
6. Have the vehicle checked immediately by a suitably qualified professional. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

If a door is locked manually, it will unlock again when the vehicle is unlocked or if that door is opened from the inside.

Doors can be unlocked and opened from the inside by pulling the door handle.

Child safety lock

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ and *Introduction*.

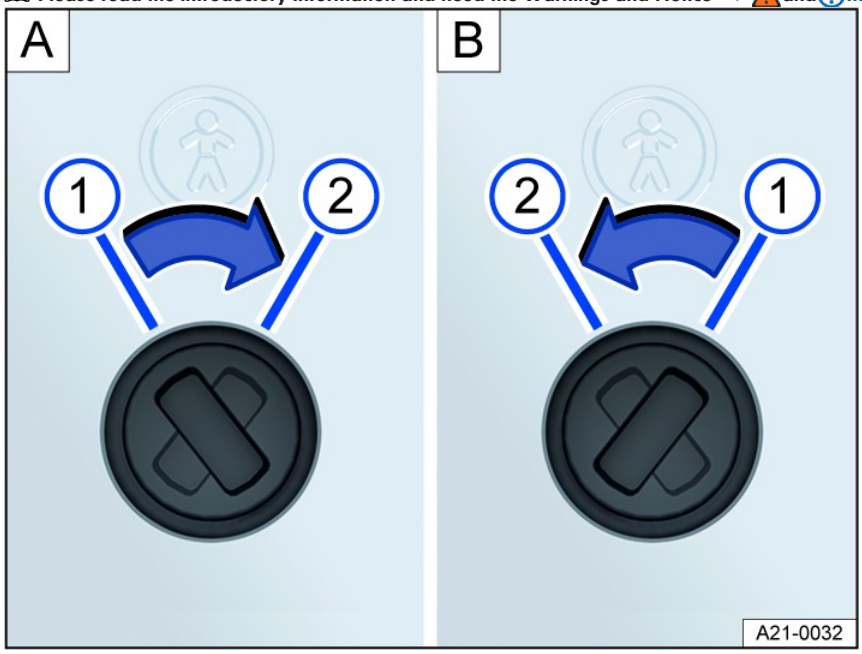


Fig. 54 Child safety lock: A left rear door, B right rear door.

(1) Child safety lock is switched off.

(2) Child safety lock is switched on.

The child safety locks are located on the inner door panels of the rear doors.

The child safety lock reduces the risk of the rear doors being opened from the inside.

When the child safety lock is switched on, the door can only be opened from the outside.

Switching the child safety lock on or off

1. Unlock the vehicle the open the respective rear door.
2. Bring the slot into the corresponding position.

WARNING

When the child safety lock is switched on, that door cannot be opened from the inside.

- Never leave children or people requiring assistance unattended in the vehicle when the doors are locked. Otherwise, they could become locked inside the vehicle. In case of an emergency, these individuals would not be able to leave the vehicle without assistance or care for themselves. Individuals locked in the vehicle could be exposed to very high or very low temperatures.
- Depending on the season, the temperature inside the vehicle could become very high or low, which can lead to serious injuries, illness or death, especially for very young children.

Troubleshooting

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ and *Introduction*.

If the indicator light does not turn off

The red LED in the vehicle door flashes briefly and then stays on.

There is a malfunction in the locking system.

1. Contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

If the turn signals are not flashing

If the turn signals are *not* flashing as confirmation when locking the vehicle:

- At least one of the doors, the trunk lid or the hood are not closed.

If the vehicle is locking automatically

The vehicle will lock again automatically after approximately 45 seconds if one of the following conditions apply:

- The vehicle was unlocked, but not opened
- The ignition was not switched on
- The trunk lid was not opened.

Locking with a second vehicle key

For vehicles with Keyless Access with push-button start: If a second vehicle key is used to lock the vehicle from outside, the vehicle key inside the vehicle is immediately disabled so that it cannot be used to start the engine; it is still possible to perform an emergency start, however ⇒ *Troubleshooting*.

1. To enable the vehicle key inside the vehicle so that it can be used to start the engine as usual, press the button on the vehicle key inside the vehicle ⇒ *Starting the engine*.

Locking the vehicle after an airbag deploys

The entire vehicle unlocks when an airbag deploys in a collision. Depending on the severity of the damage, it may be possible to lock the vehicle as follows after th collision:

1. Switch the ignition off.
2. Open the driver door and shut it again.
3. Lock the vehicle.

Automatic sensor deactivation

The sensors will deactivate automatically under the following conditions:

- If the vehicle is not unlocked or locked for a long period of time
- If a sensor is triggered too frequently

Reactivating the sensor pads:

1. Unlock the vehicle using the button on the vehicle key.

NOTICE

Strong streams of water or vapor could activate the sensors in the door handles if a valid vehicle key is located near the vehicle. If at least one window is open and the sensors in one door handle are permanently activated, then all windows will close ⇒ *Keyless Access*.

It may not be possible to unlock or lock the vehicle using Keyless Access if the 12 V vehicle battery or button cell battery in the vehicle is weak or drained. The vehicle can be manually unlocked or locked ⇒ 🕮 *Introduction*.

If there is no valid vehicle key in the vehicle or one is not detected, a message will appear in the instrument cluster display. This can occur if another signal interferes with the remote control vehicle key or if the remote control vehicle key is covered by an object, such as a metal case ⇒ *Starting and stopping the engine*.

Anti-theft alarm system

The vehicle may be equipped with an anti-theft alarm system.

The anti-theft alarm system monitors the doors, the hood, and the trunk lid.

The anti-theft alarm system is automatically activated when you lock the vehicle.

If an attempt is made to access the vehicle without using the appropriate vehicle key, this triggers the anti-theft alarm system, which emits audible and visual warning signals for up to five minutes.

When is the alarm triggered?

- If a door that was unlocked manually using the vehicle key is opened.
- If the hood is opened.
- If the trunk lid is opened.
- If the ignition is switched on with an invalid vehicle key.

Switching off the alarm

1. Unlock the vehicle with the unlock button on the vehicle key.
2. Grasp the door handle ⇒ *Keyless Access*.
3. Switch the ignition on.

The anti-theft alarm system will not work correctly if the 12 V vehicle battery is weak or drained.

Disconnecting the 12 V vehicle battery may set off the anti-theft alarm system.

Trunk lid

Introduction

The trunk lid is unlocked and locked together with the doors.

On vehicles with Keyless Access, the trunk lid is automatically unlocked when opening ⇒ *Keyless Access*.

If individual door opening or the opening of one side of doors is activated in the Infotainment system settings for opening and closing, you must press the but on the remote control vehicle key **twice** to unlock the trunk lid.

On vehicles with Keyless Access you must press the sensor on the inside of the driver's or front passenger's door handle **twice** to do this.

WARNING

Uncontrolled or unintentional release: opening and closing the trunk lid can cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Do not open or close the trunk lid if anyone is in the way.
- After closing the trunk lid, check that it is properly closed. When closed, the trunk lid must be flush with the areas of the vehicle body that are around the door.
- Always keep the trunk lid closed while driving.
- Never open the trunk lid when cargo is secured on it, such as bicycles. Additional weight can cause the trunk lid to begin closing by itself. If necessary, prop the trunk lid open or remove the cargo beforehand.
- Close and lock the trunk lid and all doors when the vehicle is not in use. Make sure that no one remains in the vehicle.
- Never let children play in or on the vehicle unattended, especially when the trunk lid is open. Children could enter the luggage compartment, close the lid, and then lock themselves in. Depending on the season, the temperature inside the vehicle could become very high or low, which can lead to serious injuries, illness or death, especially for very young children.

WARNING

Unlocking or opening the trunk lid incorrectly or carelessly may lead to serious injuries.

- The vehicle may not always detect when the trunk lid is not latched if a cargo rack that is carrying cargo is mounted on the trunk lid. If the trunk lid is not latched, it may open suddenly while driving.

WARNING

If there is a heavy load of snow or cargo on the trunk lid, the additional weight may cause the lid to lower, which can result in serious injuries.

- Never open the trunk lid if there is a heavy load of snow or cargo such as a cargo rack on it.
- Remove the snow or cargo before opening the trunk lid.

WARNING

Do not press on the rear window of the trunk lid with your hand. The rear window could crack, which can result in injuries.

NOTICE

Never attach or secure cargo on the opening mechanisms. This could cause damage that could prevent the trunk lid from closing.

NOTICE

Never attach cargo to the rear window wiper or use the rear window wiper to hold cargo in place. This could cause damage that could result in the rear window wiper breaking off.

NOTICE

Never attach cargo to the rear spoiler or use the rear spoiler to hold cargo in place. This could cause damage that could result in the rear spoiler breaking off.

Opening and closing the trunk lid

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ and *Introduction*.

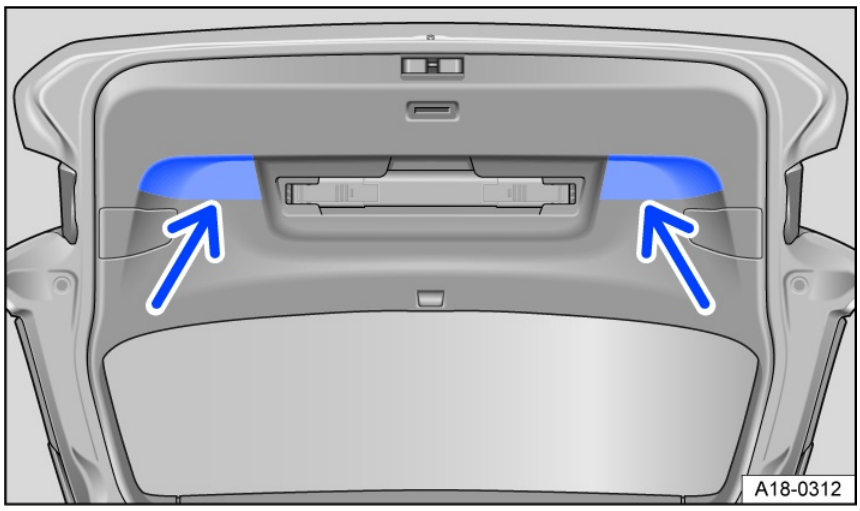


Fig. 55 In the opened trunk lid: recessed grips for pulling the lid shut.

Opening the trunk lid

1. To unlock the trunk lid, press the or button on the vehicle key.
2. Press on the top of the Volkswagen emblem and raise the trunk lid.

Closing the trunk lid

1. Pull the trunk lid downward firmly using the recessed grip in the interior trim *fig. 55* until it latches shut ⇒ ⚠.

The trunk lid will also lock when the doors are locked.

An image in the instrument cluster display indicates if the trunk lid has not opened or closed correctly.

The trunk lid locks automatically while driving.

⚠ WARNING

Closing the trunk lid incorrectly or carelessly may lead to serious injuries.

- When opening the trunk lid, take care to pull it all the way up.
- When closing the trunk lid, make sure your hands are not within the closing range of the lid.

If the trunk lid is not opened within several minutes after unlocking, it will lock again automatically.

Mechanically unlocking the trunk lid using the emergency release

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ ⚠ and ⓘ *Introduction*.

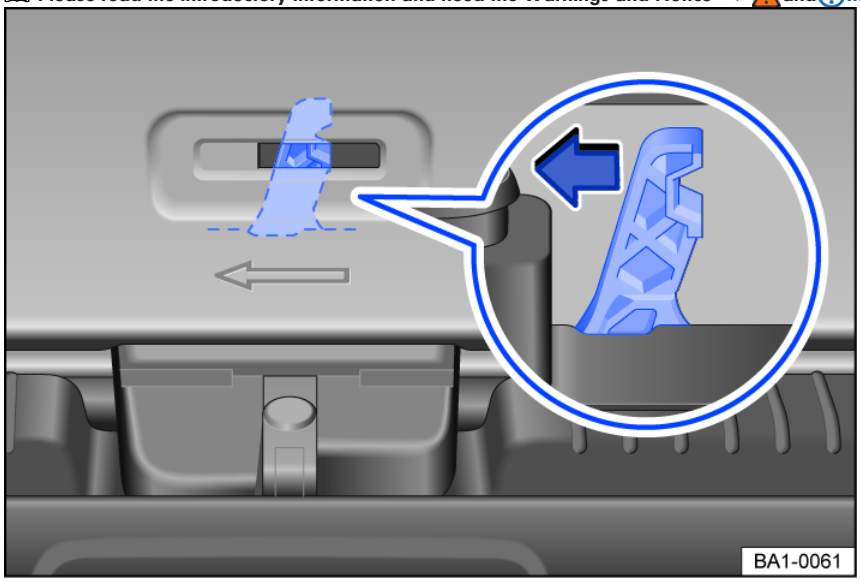


Fig. 56 In the luggage compartment: Service opening in the trunk lid.

Mechanically unlocking the trunk lid using the emergency release

1. Insert a suitable object into the service opening in the trunk lid *fig. 56* and push the release lever in the direction of the arrow.

Troubleshooting

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ and *Introduction*.

If the trunk lid will not open or close

- Check if the trunk lid is being blocked by an object. The trunk lid can be moved by hand. It is necessary to use more force when doing this.
- If the trunk lid is operated too frequently within a short period of time, then the lid motor will automatically switch off to reduce the risk of overheating. Until the l motor has cooled down, the trunk lid can be opened and closed by hand using extra force.
- If the 12-volt vehicle battery or fuse is disconnected or malfunctioning, the trunk lid must be closed by hand.

If all turn signals flash four times

The vehicle key that was last used is still in the vehicle.

1. Remove the key and lock the vehicle.

If the trunk lid is difficult to move

The mechanism for opening the trunk lid may not always work automatically when the outside temperatures are around the freezing point.

1. Guide the trunk lid farther upward by hand.

Windows

Opening and closing the windows

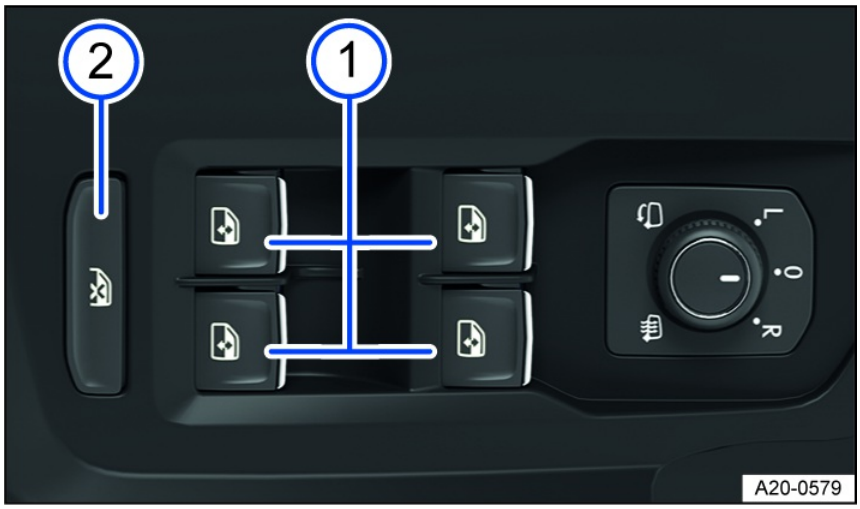


Fig. 57 In the driver door: Power window buttons.

(1) Opening the window: press the switch.
Closing the window: pull the switch.

(2) Press to disable the power window switches in the rear doors.
This button is only located in the driver door.

The windows can still be opened or closed using the switches in the doors for a brief period after the ignition has been switched off, as long as the driver's or front passenger door is not opened.

One-touch opening and closing function

The one-touch opening and closing function allows the windows to be completely opened or closed. To use this feature, do not hold the window switch up or down.

One-touch closing function

1. Pull the window button upward briefly to the second level.

One-touch opening function

1. Press the window button downward briefly to the second level.

Stopping the automatic closing/opening

1. Pull or press the button for the window again.

Convenience opening

The windows can be opened from outside the vehicle using the vehicle key when the ignition is switched off:

1. Press and hold the unlock button on the vehicle key.
2. To stop the function, release the unlock button.

A valid vehicle key must be located nearby to use this feature. When all of the windows and the power sunroof are closed, the turn signals will flash *once* as a confirmation.

You can select the convenience opening settings in the Vehicle settings menu in the Infotainment system.

⚠ WARNING

Careless or unintended use of the power windows can cause serious injuries.

- Do not open or close the power windows if anyone is in the way.
- Never leave children or people requiring assistance unattended in the vehicle when the vehicle is locked. The windows cannot open in an emergency situation.
- Always take all vehicle keys with you when leaving the vehicle. The windows can still be opened or closed using the switches in the doors for a brief period after the ignition has been switched off, as long as the driver's or front passenger door is not opened.
- When driving with children seated on the rear bench seat, always disable the rear power windows by pressing the child safety lock button so that the windows cannot be opened or closed.

NOTICE

If the windows are open, rain could enter the vehicle and soak the interior, causing vehicle damage.

If the power windows are malfunctioning, the one-touch opening and closing function and the pinch protection may not function correctly. Contact a suitably qualified professional. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Convenience opening and closing only functions if the one-touch opening and closing function is activated for all the power windows.

Power window pinch protection

The power window pinch protection can reduce the risk of being pinched and injured when the windows are closing.

If the window cannot close due to resistance or an obstacle, then the window will reopen immediately ⇒ ⚠.

1. Check why the window did not close.
2. Try again to close the window.

If the window will not close again, then the pinch protection will be disabled for several seconds.

If the window still cannot close, then the window will stop at the place where it meets resistance. If you press the switch again within several seconds, the window will close without **pinch protection** ⇒ ⚠.

Closing windows without pinch protection

1. Try to close the windows again within a few seconds by holding the switch. **This will disable the pinch protection.**

   If the closing process takes longer than several seconds, then pinch protection will be enabled again. If there is resistance to the window moving or an obstacle is blocking the window, then the window will reopen automatically.
2. If the window still cannot close, then contact a suitably qualified professional. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

⚠ WARNING

Closing the window when pinch protection is disabled can result in serious injuries.

- Always be careful when closing the windows.
- Never allow anyone to be in the window operating area, especially if a window is closing when pinch protection is disabled.
- The pinch protection does not prevent fingers or other parts of the body from becoming injured by being pressed against the window frame.

Pinch protection also occurs when using the convenience closing function with the vehicle key.

Troubleshooting

One-touch up/down feature

If the 12 V vehicle battery is disconnected or drained when the windows are not completely closed, then the one-touch up/down feature will not work. It must be reprogrammed using the following steps:

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Close all windows and doors.
3. Pull the switch for the desired window and hold it in that position for several seconds.
4. Release the switch, then pull it upward again and hold it.

The one-touch up and down features will then be fully functional.

The automatic power windows can be reprogrammed individually, or multiple windows can be reprogrammed at the same time.

Controls are responding differently than expected

Moisture, dirt and grease may limit the functioning of the controls.

1. Always keep the control panels clean and dry.

Sunroof

Opening or closing the sunroof

The term “sunroof” is used as a synonym for the panoramic sliding/tilting sunroof.

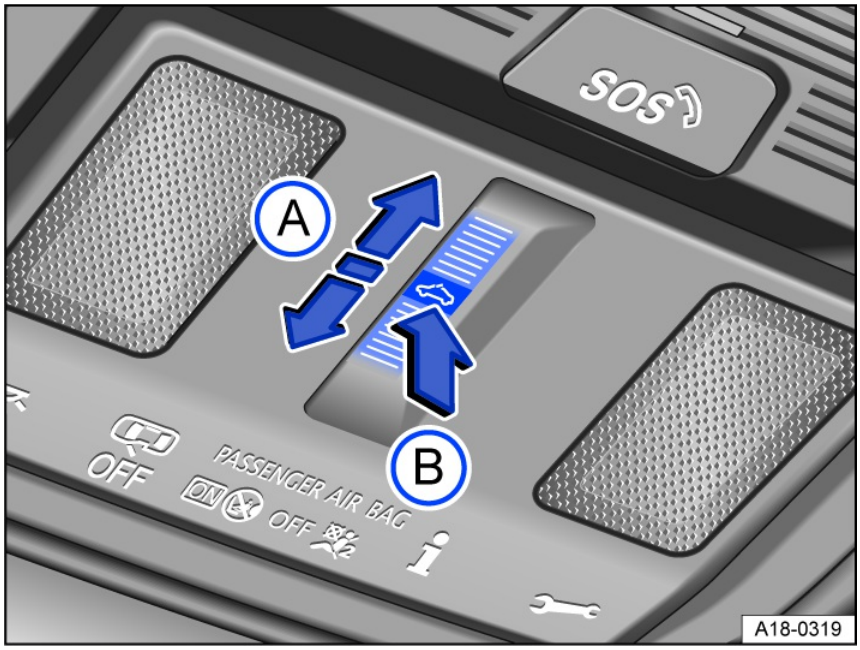


Fig. 58 In the headliner: Control for the tilting and sliding panoramic sunroof.

The control can be operated in two ways: Swiping and tapping.

Swipe: Fully or partially open and close the roof.

Tap: Fully or partially tilt, open or close the roof.

You can stop the automatic process by tapping the control again.

Opening the power sunroof

- Automatic process: swipe back on the control *fig. 58* (A).
- Manual process: swipe back on the control and hold.

Closing the power sunroof

- Automatic process: swipe forward on the control *fig. 58* (A).
- Manual process: swipe forward on the control and hold.

Tilting the power sunroof

1. Automatic process: Briefly tap the center of the *fig. 58* (B) button.

Tilting the tilting and sliding panoramic sunroof is only possible when the roof is closed. If necessary, close the roof beforehand.

Closing the power sunroof when tilted

1. Automatic process: swipe forward on the control *fig. 58* (A).

   Or: briefly tap the center of the *fig. 58* (B) button.

Stopping the automatic opening or closing process

1. Tap the *fig. 58* (B) button again.

⚠ WARNING

Careless or inattentive use of the sunroof can cause serious injuries.

- Do not open or close the power sunroof if anyone is in its path.

- Always take all vehicle keys with you when leaving the vehicle.
- Never leave children or people requiring assistance unattended in the vehicle, especially if they have access to the vehicle key. Inattentive use of the vehicle key can lock the vehicle, start the engine, switch the ignition on, or operate the sunroof.
- The sunroof can still be opened or closed for a brief period after the ignition has been switched off, as long as the driver's or front passenger's door has not been opened.

⚠ CAUTION

Depending on your vehicle equipment, the position of the tilting and sliding panoramic sunroof may change automatically above a certain speed when it is tilted. This is an intended feature and is designed to reduce wind noise. The tilting and sliding panoramic sunroof can cause injury to persons and material damage when moving.

- Always ensure that no body parts or objects are within the opening range of the power sunroof.

NOTICE

- To reduce the risk of damage, remove ice and snow from the vehicle roof before opening or tilting the power sunroof in winter weather.
- Always close the power sunroof before leaving the vehicle and when there is precipitation. If the sunroof is open or tilted, rain or snow could enter the vehicle interior and cause extensive damage to the electrical system. This could also result in further vehicle damage.
- Keep the power sunroof closed when using the roof rack.

Remove leaves and other loose objects from the sunroof guide rails regularly, either by hand or with a vacuum cleaner.

The pinch protection will not function correctly if the sunroof is malfunctioning. Contact a suitably qualified professional. Volkswagen recommends contacting your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Convenience opening or closing the sunroof

Convenience opening and closing

The sunroof can be opened and closed from outside the vehicle using the vehicle key.

- Does not apply to the US or Canada: Press and hold the unlock or lock button on the vehicle key. The sunroof will be tilted or closed.
- For vehicles with Keyless Access with push-button start: Hold your finger on the unlock sensor in the door handle for several seconds until the tilting and slidin panoramic sunroof is closed ⇒ *Unlocking or locking using Keyless Access* .
- Remove your finger from the unlock or lock button to stop the function.

When using the convenience closing function, all windows in the doors and the sunroof will be closed. When all of the windows and the power sunroof are closed, the turn signals will flash *once* as a confirmation.

Settings for the sunroof can be adjusted in the vehicle settings in the Infotainment system ⇒ *Driver information*.

Sunroof pinch protection

The pinch protection reduces the risk of pinching injuries ⇒ ⚠. If the sunroof is obstructed while it is closing, it will open again automatically.

1. Check why the sunroof is not closing.
2. Try again to close the sunroof.
3. If the sunroof is still not able to close, close the sunroof without pinch protection.

Closing the sunroof without pinch protection

1. Try again to close the sunroof.
2. If the power sunroof still cannot be closed, swipe forward over the function key within 5 seconds and hold until the power sunroof is completely closed ⇒ *Opening or closing the sunroof*.

   This will close the sunroof without pinch protection.
3. If the power sunroof still cannot close, then contact a suitably qualified professional. Volkswagen recommends contacting your Volkswagen dealership.

If you release the button during the closing process, the power sunroof will open again automatically.

⚠ WARNING

Closing the sunroof without pinch protection may result in serious injuries.

- Always be careful when closing the power sunroof.

- Never allow anyone to be within the sunroof range of operation, especially if it is closing without pinch protection.
- The pinch protection does not prevent fingers or other parts of the body from becoming injured by being pressed against the roof frame.

Pinch protection also occurs when convenience closing the windows and sunroof with the vehicle key.

Troubleshooting

If the sunroof is not closing

- The sunroof only works when the ignition is on. The sunroof can still be opened or closed for a brief period after the ignition has been switched off, as long as the driver’s or front passenger's door has not been opened.
- If it is not possible to close the sunroof using the power controls, the sunroof must be closed manually. Some vehicle components must be removed in order to close the sunroof manually. Contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Controls are responding differently than expected

Moisture, dirt, grease, etc. may limit the functioning of the control. Make sure that the controls are always clean and dry.

Steering wheel

Adjusting the steering wheel position

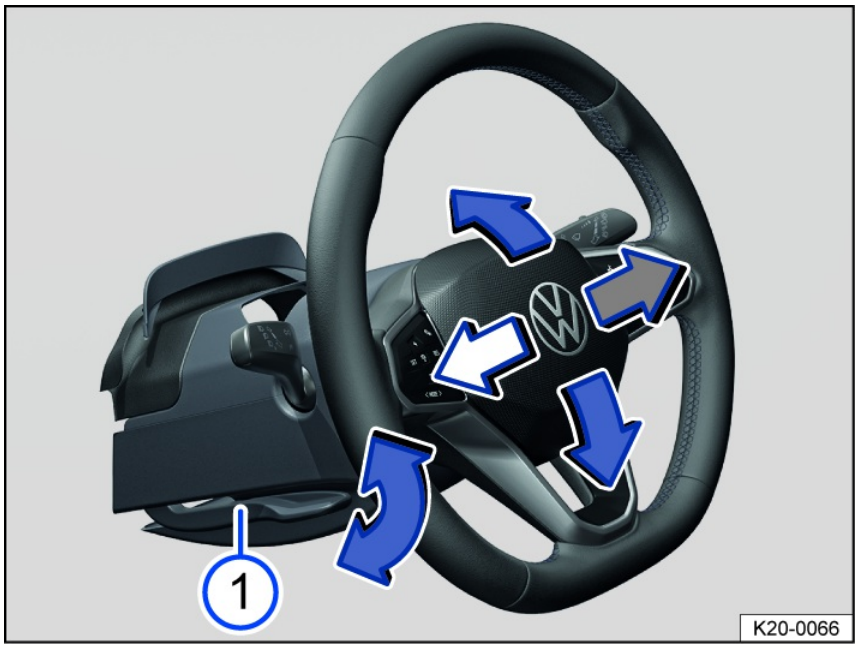


Fig. 59 Under the steering wheel in the steering column trim panel: lever to adjust the steering wheel position manually (general example).



Fig. 60 On the steering wheel: nine o'clock and three o'clock position.

Only adjust the steering wheel **before** driving or while the vehicle is stationary → ⚠.

1. Tilt the lever *fig. 59* downward.
2. Adjust the steering wheel so that it can be firmly held at the outer edge with both hands at the *nine o'clock and three o'clock position* *fig. 60*.

3. Press the lever all the way up until it locks flush with the steering column trim panel → ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect use of the steering wheel adjuster and an incorrect steering wheel adjustment could cause serious or fatal injuries.

- Always push the lever *fig. 59* (1) upward into its locked position after adjusting so that you do not change the steering wheel position unintentionally while driving.
- Never adjust the steering wheel while driving. If you find the steering wheel must be adjusted while driving, then stop the vehicle safely and adjust the steering wheel correctly.
- The steering wheel must always face toward the chest and never toward the face. Otherwise, the protective function of the driver's front airbag may be limited in the event of an accident.
- To reduce the risk of injuries if the driver's front airbag deploys, always hold the outer edge of the steering wheel firmly with both hands in the *nine o'clock and three o'clock position* *fig. 60*.
- Never hold the steering wheel in the twelve o'clock position or in any other way, such as holding the center of the steering wheel. Otherwise, the arms, hands, and head could be seriously injured if the driver's front airbag deploys.

Seats and head restraints

Front seats

Introduction

The following information describes the various options for adjusting the front seats. Always make sure the seats are adjusted to the correct position ⇒ *Introduction*.

WARNING

Adjust the front seats correctly each time before driving and make sure all passengers have their safety belts fastened correctly.

- Move the front passenger seat all the way back.
- Adjust the driver seat so that there is a distance of at least 10 inches (25 cm) between your chest and the center of the steering wheel. Adjust the forward/back position of the driver seat so that you can fully press the pedals while your legs are slightly bent and there are at least 4 inches (10 cm) of space between the instrument panel and your knees. If body characteristics mean that this is not possible, see an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility to have special modifications made. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
- Never drive with the backrest angled back far. The farther back the backrest is angled, the greater the risk of injury due to incorrect routing of the safety belt and an incorrect seating position.
- Never drive with the backrest angled sharply forward. If the front airbag deploys, it could push the backrest back and injure passengers in the rear seat.
- Always sit upright, with your back against the backrest and the front seats adjusted correctly. Never position any part of your body close to or directly on the location where the airbag is installed.

WARNING

Adjusting the seats incorrectly can cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Only adjust the seats when the vehicle is stationary. Otherwise, the position of the seats could change unexpectedly while driving and you could lose control of the vehicle. You could also put yourself in an incorrect seating position.
- Only adjust the height, angle, and forward/back position of the front seats when there is no one within the seat's range of movement.
- Do not restrict the movement of the seats by placing objects within their range of movement.
- Only adjust the forward/back position and angle of the rear seats when there is no one within the seat's range of movement.
- The adjusting and locking areas of the seats must not be dirty.

WARNING

Using seat covers or protective covers incorrectly can result in unintentionally operating the seat adjusters, and the front seats could move unexpectedly while driving. This could cause you to lose control of the vehicle. This can cause accidents and injuries. The electrical components in the front seats could also be damaged.

- Never install or secure seat covers and protective covers on the electrical controls.
- Only use seat covers or protective covers that are specifically approved for use in your vehicle.

WARNING

Lighters in the vehicle can become damaged or ignite unintentionally. This can cause severe burns and vehicle damage.

- Before adjusting any seat, always make sure that there are no cigarette lighters near the moving parts of the seat.

NOTICE

Objects with sharp edges can damage the seats.

- Never touch the seats with sharp-edged objects. Sharp-edged objects, such as zippers, rivets on clothing, or belts, can cause surface damage. Open hook and loop fasteners can also cause damage.

Manually adjusting front seats

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ and *Introduction*.

The information that follows describes all possible controls. Depending on the seat version, the number of controls may vary.

The controls on the front passenger seat are a mirror image of those for the driver seat.

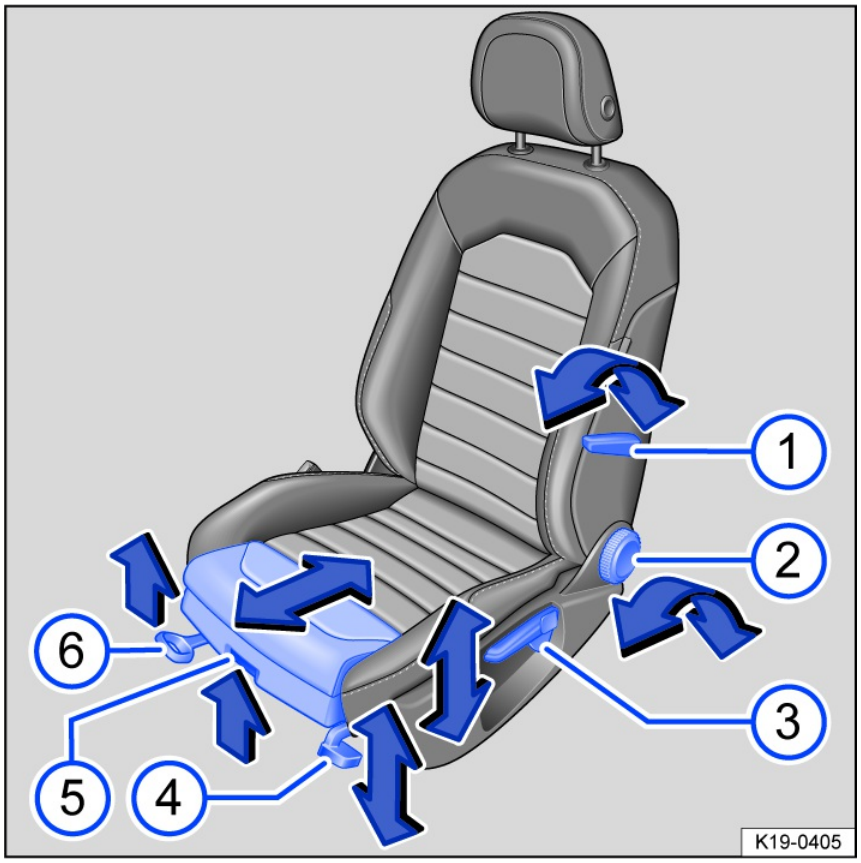


Fig. 61 On the driver seat: Controls.

(1) Operate lever to adjust lumbar support.

(2) To adjust the backrest, turn the handwheel with nothing resting on the backrest.

(3) If necessary, move the lever multiple times upward or downward to adjust the height of the seat.

(4) Pull or push the lever several times if necessary to adjust the seat cushion angle.

(5) Lift the grip to move the seat cushion forward or backwards.

(6) Pull the lever to slide the front seat forward or backward. The front seat must lock into place after the lever is released.

[1)] This only applies to the inner side of the seat in vehicles with four doors.

Adjusting power front seats

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ and *Introduction*.

The controls on the front passenger seat are a mirror image of those for the driver seat.

A seat may have both manual and power controls.

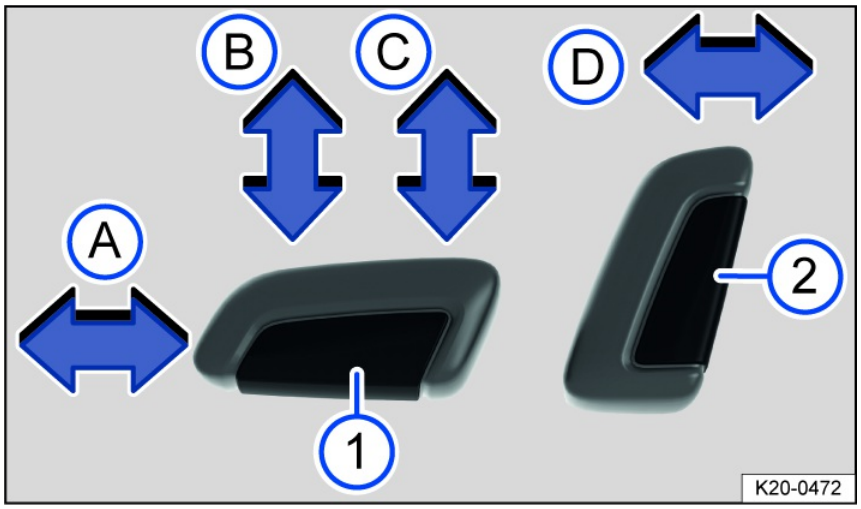


Fig. 62 Switch on the driver seat: Adjusting the front seat forward/back, the height and angle of the seat surface, and the front seat backrest.

(A) Slide the seat forward or backward.

(B) Adjust the angle of the seat surface.

(C) Adjust the height of the seat.

(B) Adjust the angle of the backrest.

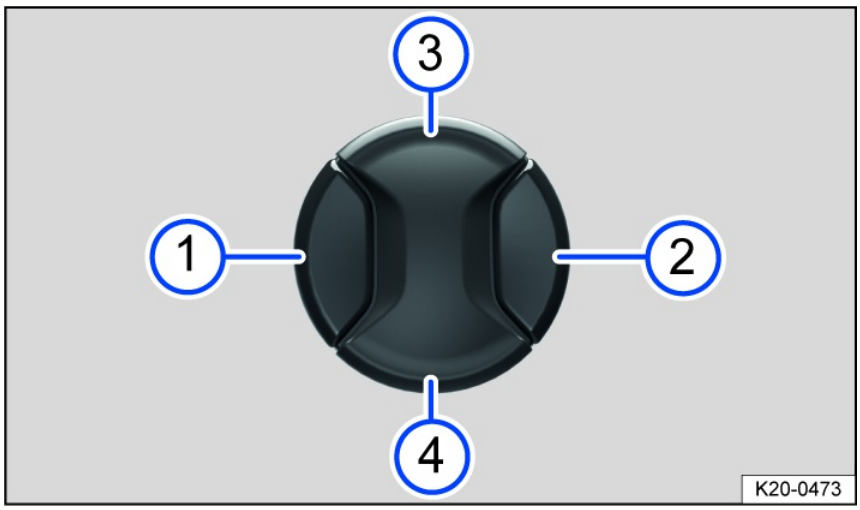


Fig. 63 Switch on the driver seat: Adjusting the lumbar support.

(1) Move the curvature of the lumbar support forward.

(2) Move the curvature of the lumbar support backward.

(3) Raise the curvature of the lumbar support.

(4) Move the curvature of the lumbar support down.

⚠ WARNING

Careless or unintended use of the power front seats can cause serious injuries.

- The power front seats can also be adjusted when the ignition is switched off. Never leave children or people requiring assistance in the vehicle.
- In case of an emergency, interrupt the power adjustment by pressing another switch.

(!) NOTICE

To reduce the risk of damage to the electrical components in the front seats, never kneel on the front seats or seat cushions. Do not exert pressure on the backrest with sharp or pointed objects.

If the 12 V vehicle battery charge level is too low, the seat may not be able to be adjusted with the power controls.

A seat adjustment may be canceled while the engine is starting.

Folding the front passenger backrest forwards

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ ⚠ and (!) *Introduction*.

The front passenger seat backrest can be folded down and locked in a horizontal position.

If objects are transported on the folded front passenger seat, the front passenger airbag must be deactivated.

Folding the front passenger backrest forwards

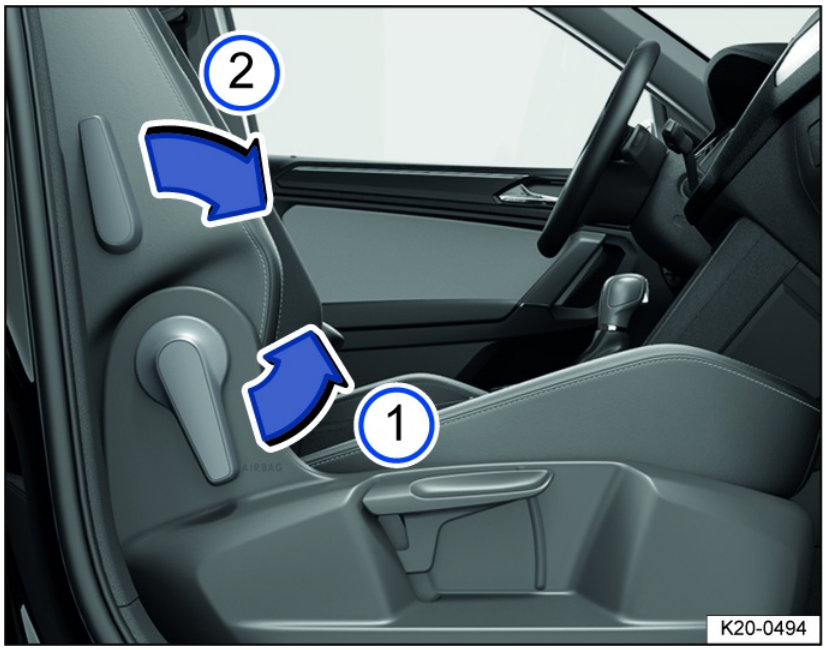


Fig. 64 Front passenger seat: Fold backrest forwards.

1. Remove objects from the front passenger seat ⇒ ⚠.
2. Set the front passenger seat as low as possible.
3. Move the front passenger seat as far back as possible.
4. Move the head restraints all the way down.
5. Unlock the front passenger backrest in the direction of the arrows *fig. 64*.
6. Fold the front passenger backrest forwards in the direction of the arrows *fig. 64* into the horizontal position.

The front passenger backrest must engage securely in the folded down position.

Unfolding the front passenger backrest

Do not have any objects or body parts near the hinge when unfolding.

1. To unfold the front passenger backrest unlock it again *fig. 64*.
2. Fold the front passenger backrest backwards into the upright position.

The front passenger backrest must engage securely in the vertically folded position.

⚠ WARNING

Folding and unfolding the front passenger backrest in an uncontrolled or careless manner can cause severe injury.

- Only fold or unfold the front passenger backrest when the vehicle is stationary.
- Always ensure that no people or animals are in the way of the backrest when folding down the front passenger backrest.
- As long as the front passenger backrest is folded down, the front airbag must be switched off and the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF indicator light must be illuminated.
- Keep hands, fingers, feet, and other parts of the body out of the range of operation of the seat hinges and seat locking mechanism when folding the backrest forward and back.
- Floor mats or other objects can get caught in the front passenger backrest hinges. This can lead to the front passenger backrest not being securely locked when unfolded to the upright position.
- The front passenger backrest must be securely locked when being unfolded to the upright position. A front passenger backrest which is not securely locked can move unexpectedly and cause severe injury.

⚠ WARNING

The uncovered seat mountings or hinges can lead to severe injury during a braking maneuver or accident when the front passenger backrest is folded down.

- Never transport adults or children on the front passenger seat when the front passenger backrest is folded down.
- Only the seat behind the driver seat on the rear bench seat may be used when the front passenger backrest is folded down. This also applies to child seats.

⚠ WARNING

Objects that are not secured or are secured incorrectly can cause serious injuries in the event of sudden driving and braking maneuvers or a collision. This is especially true if the airbags deploy and strike objects, causing them to fly through the vehicle interior. To reduce the risk of damage, note the following:

- Store all objects securely in the vehicle. Follow the legal regulations whilst doing so.
- As long as the front passenger backrest is folded down, the front airbag must be switched off and the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF indicator light must be illuminated.

Rear seats

🕮 Introduction

The following information describes the various options for adjusting the rear seats. Always make sure the seats are adjusted to the correct position ⇒ *Correct seating position*.

⚠ WARNING

Adjust the rear seats correctly before each journey and make sure all passengers have their own safety belts fastened correctly.

- Only adjust the rear seats when the vehicle is stationary. Otherwise, the rear seats could move unexpectedly while the vehicle is in motion. You could also put yourself in an incorrect seating position.
- For passengers in the rear seats, the risk of serious injuries increases if they do not sit upright, because the safety belts will not be positioned correctly.
- Only adjust the rear seat when there is no one within the seat's range of movement.

⚠ WARNING

Lighters in the vehicle can become damaged or ignite unintentionally. This can cause severe burns and vehicle damage.

- Before adjusting any seat, always make sure that there are no cigarette lighters near the moving parts of the seat.

⚠ WARNING

To reduce the risk of injury while driving, the center armrest must always be folded upward.

- If the center armrest is folded down, the center rear bench seat must never be used by either adults or children. Doing so would create an incorrect seating position that could result in serious injuries.
- Never allow an adult or child to ride on the center armrest.

ⓘ NOTICE

- Objects in the luggage compartment can cause damage when adjusting the rear seat forward or backward.
- If the rear seat is positioned forward, objects can become caught between the seat and the luggage compartment floor. Remove any objects from this area before sliding the rear seat back.

ⓘ NOTICE

Objects with sharp edges can damage the seats.

- Never touch the seats with sharp-edged objects. Sharp-edged objects, such as zippers, rivets on clothing, or belts, can cause surface damage. Open hook and loop fasteners can also cause damage.

Folding the rear bench seat backrest forward or backward

🕮 **Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice** ⇒ ⚠ and ⓘ *Introduction*.

The seat backrest is divided. Each part of the rear seat backrest can be folded forward individually to enlarge the luggage compartment.

Folding the rear seat backrest forward and down with the release button



Fig. 65 In the rear seat backrest: release button.

1. Move the head restraints all the way down.
2. Pull the release button *fig. 65* forward while folding the rear seat backrest forward and down.

The respective backrest part of the rear seat backrest is released when the red marking *fig. 65* can be seen.

Folding the rear seat backrest up and back

1. Fold the rear seat backrest to the back and push firmly into the catch until it securely engages ⇒ ⚠.

The red marking *fig. 65* must no longer be visible.

⚠ WARNING

Folding and unfolding the rear seat backrest in an uncontrolled or careless manner may cause severe injury.

- Always take care that no people or animals are in the way of the rear seat backrest when folding it forward and down.
- Never fold the rear seat backrest forward or back while driving.
- Make sure the safety belt is not pinched or damaged when folding the rear seat backrest back.
- Keep hands, fingers, feet and other body parts away from the rear seat backrest when folding forward or back.
- Each rear seat backrest must always be securely engaged to ensure that the safety belts in the rear seats can provide the maximum protection. Take extra care especially with the middle seat in the rear bench seat. If a seat on the rear bench is used without the rear seat backrest being engaged, the vehicle occupant will move forward with the rear seat backrest in the event of sudden braking and driving maneuvers or a collision.
- A red marking *fig. 65* indicates that the rear seat backrest is not engaged. Always check that the red marker is not visible when the rear seat backrest is in the upright position.
- Never allow adults or children to sit in a rear seat if that seat backrest is folded forward or is not engaged.

NOTICE

Folding and unfolding the rear seat backrest in an uncontrolled or careless manner may cause damage to the vehicle or other objects.

- Before folding the rear seat backrest forward, always adjust the front seats so that the head restraint or padding on the rear seat backrest does not press against the front seats.
- Before folding the rear seat backrest forward, always take care that there are no objects in its path.

Head restraints

Introduction

The information that follows describes how the head restraints can be adjusted and removed. Always make sure the seats are adjusted to the correct position ⇒ *Correct seating position*.

All seats are equipped with head restraints. The head restraints are specially approved for the relevant seat and should not be installed in another seat in the vehicle.

The center rear head restraint (depending on the vehicle equipment) is only intended for the center seat on the rear bench seat. Therefore do not install this head restraint in any other position.

There are notches in the head restraint supports so that they can be locked in different positions. Only head restraints which are correctly mounted can lock into the notches within the adjustable range. To prevent the head restraints from being removed unintentionally after mounting, there are stops at the top and bottom of the adjustable range.

Correct head restraint adjustment

Adjust the head restraint so that the upper edge of the head restraint is in line with the upper portion of the head as much as possible, but not lower than eye level. Position the back of the head as close as possible to the head restraint.

Head restraint adjustment for shorter persons

Slide the head restraint all the way down, even if the head is then below the upper edge of the head restraint. When the head restraint is in the lowest position, there may be a small gap between the head restraint and the backrest.

Head restraint adjustment for taller persons

Move the head restraint up all the way.

⚠ WARNING

Driving with head restraint that have been removed or adjusted incorrectly increases the risk of serious or fatal injuries in the event of an accident or sudden driving and braking maneuvers.

- If a person is sitting in a seat, always drive with the head restraint correctly installed and adjusted on that seat.
- If a person is sitting in a seat, adjust the head restraint according to their height.
- Never adjust the head restraint while driving.

ⓘ NOTICE

When removing and installing the head restraint, make sure the head restraint does not hit the headliner, the front seat backrest, or other vehicle components. Otherwise, damage could result.

Adjusting the head restraints

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ ⚠ and ⓘ *Introduction*.

Adjusting the height of the head restraints



Fig. 66 Front head restraint: adjusting (general example).

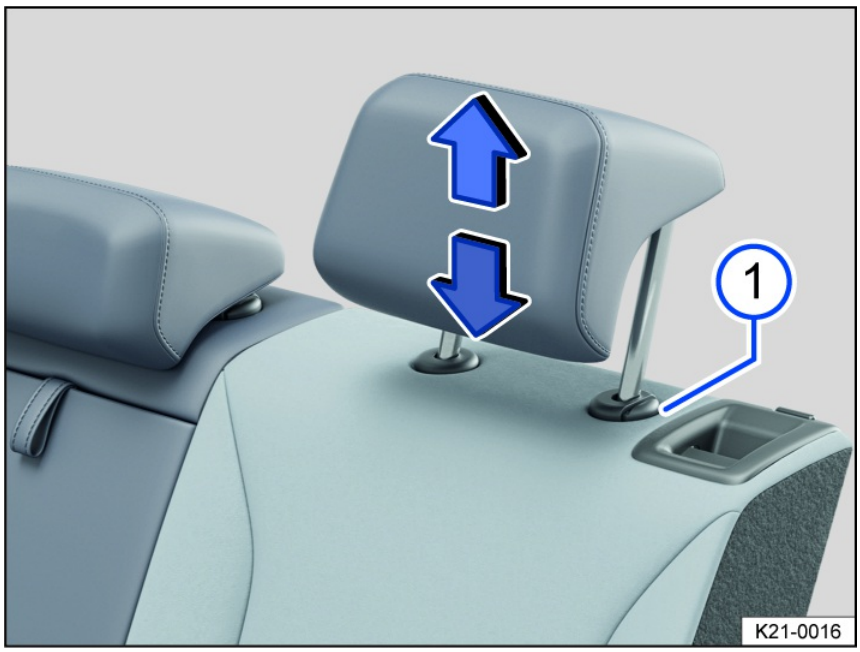


Fig. 67 Rear head restraint: adjusting (general example).

1. If necessary, slide the head restraint upward or downward in the direction of the arrow and when pressing the *fig. 66* or *fig. 67* button.

The head restraint must lock securely into place.

Removing and installing the head restraints

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ and *Introduction*.

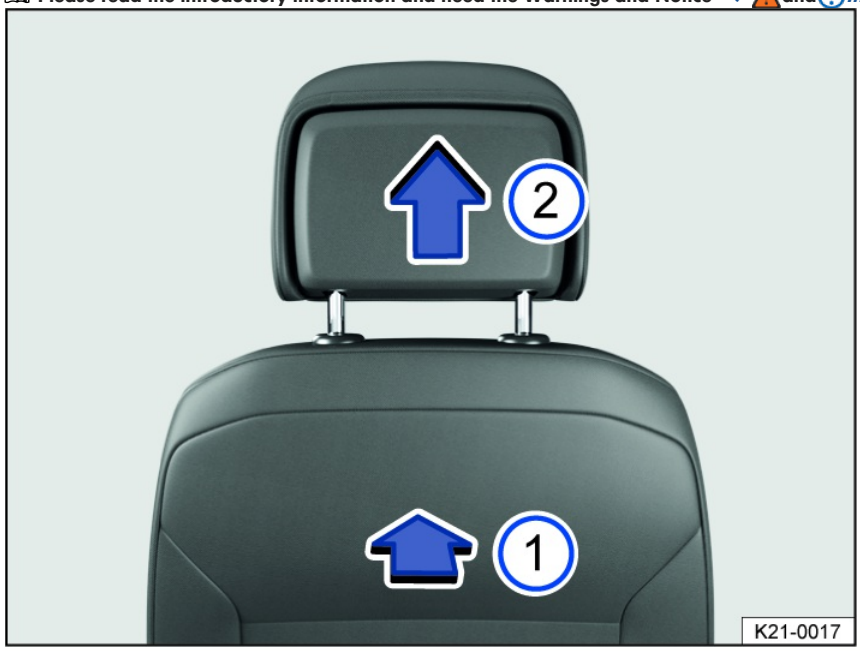


Fig. 68 Front head restraint: removing (general example).

Removing the front head restraints

1. Lower the head restraint if necessary.
2. To release, find the notch on the rear side in the marked area and push in the direction of the arrow *fig. 68*.
3. Pull out the head restraint in the direction of the arrow *fig. 68*.

Installing the front head restraints

1. Position the head restraint correctly above the head restraint guides and insert into the guides on the seat backrest.
2. Slide the head restraint downward until it engages into the guide rods.
3. Adjust the head restraint to the correct position.

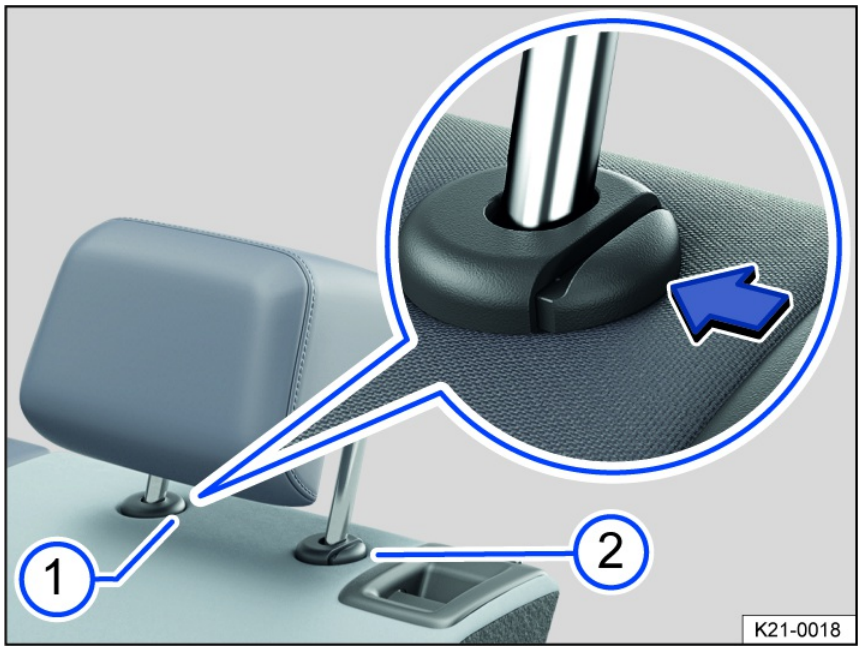


Fig. 69 Rear head restraint: removing.

Removing the rear head restraint

1. Release the backrest of the rear bench seat and fold forwards.
2. Slide the head restraint all the way upward ⇒ *Adjusting the head restraints*.
3. Press the button *fig. 69* on the head restraint guide.
4. At the same time, press button (2) while a second person pulls the head restraint all the way out.
5. Fold the rear bench seat backrest toward the rear and lock it securely into place.

Installing the rear head restraint

1. Release the backrest of the rear bench seat and fold forwards.
2. Position the head restraint correctly above the head restraint guides and insert into the guides on the seat backrest.
3. Push the head restraint downward while pressing the *fig. 69* button.
4. Fold the rear bench seat backrest toward the rear and lock it securely into place.
5. Adjust the head restraint to the correct position.

Seat functions

Center armrest

Front center armrest



Fig. 70 Front center armrest (general example).

- To *lift*: Pull the center armrest up to the detents in the direction of the arrow *fig. 70*.
- To *lower*: Pull the center armrest up fully. Then press the center armrest down.
- *Fore-and-aft adjustment*: slide the center armrest in the direction of the arrow *fig. 70* all the way forwards or rearwards.

⚠ WARNING

If the front center armrest is opened all the way or not completely closed, it can limit the driver's ability to move his or her arms, which can cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Always keep the storage compartments closed while driving.
- Never allow an adult or child to ride on the center armrest. This incorrect seating position can cause serious injuries.

Rear center armrest



Fig. 71 Folding center armrest in the rear.

There may be a folding armrest in the backrest of the rear center seat.

- To *fold out*: pull the loop in the direction of the arrow *fig. 71*.
- To *fold back*: fold the center armrest upward in the opposite direction of the arrow *fig. 71* and press it all the way toward the seat backrest.

Passengers must not sit in the center rear seat when the center armrest is folded down.

⚠ WARNING

To reduce the risk of injuries while driving, the rear center armrest must always be folded up.

- If the center armrest is folded down, the center rear bench seat must never be used by either adults or children. Doing so would create an incorrect seating position that could result in serious injuries.

Memory function

Memory buttons

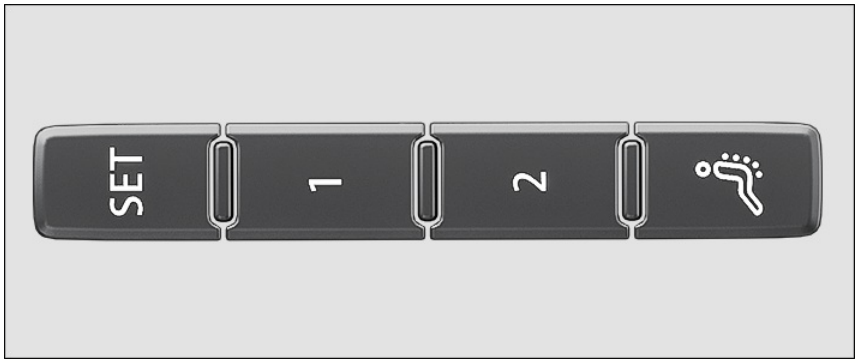


Fig. 72 On the outer side of the driver's seat: memory buttons.

Driver seat and outside mirror settings can be saved and called up using the memory buttons.

Storing the driver's seat and outside mirror settings for driving forward

1. Set the electronic parking brake.

2. Shift the transmission to neutral.
3. Switch the ignition on.
4. Adjust the driver's seat and outside mirror.
5. Press and hold the SET *fig. 72* button for longer than 10 seconds.
6. Press the desired memory button within approximately ten seconds.

   A chime will confirm that the settings were saved.

Storing the front passenger's outside mirror settings for driving in reverse

1. Set the electronic parking brake.
2. Shift the transmission to neutral.
3. Switch the ignition on.
4. Press the desired memory button *fig. 72*.
5. Select the reverse gear.
6. Adjust the front passenger's outside mirror so that the edge of the curb can be seen clearly, for example.

   The selected mirror position will be stored automatically and assigned to the vehicle key that was used to unlock the vehicle.

Recalling driver's seat and outside mirror settings

1. When the vehicle is stationary, the ignition is switched off, and a door is open, press the respective memory button briefly.

   After approximately ten minutes, the stored positions can *no longer* be adjusted automatically. The adjustment process will be canceled if one of the memory buttons is pressed again.

   Or: When the ignition is switched on or the door is closed, press and hold the respective memory button until the stored position is reached.

The front passenger's outside mirror automatically leaves the position stored for driving in reverse once you begin driving forward at speeds of at least approx. 10 mph (approx. 15 km/h) or when you turn the knob for the outside mirrors from the **R** position to another position.

If you open the driver door more than approximately ten minutes after the vehicle is unlocked, the driver seat and the outside mirrors will not be adjusted automatically.

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of seat functions can cause injuries.

- Before beginning a journey always adjust to the correct seat position and maintain this throughout the journey. This also applies to all passengers.
- Set the memory function only with the vehicle stationary.
- Always keep your hands, fingers, feet and other parts of your body clear of the area in which the seats operate and move during adjustment.

Massage feature



Fig. 73 In the lower part of the driver seat: Massage function button.

For the massage function, the lumbar support moves and massages the lumbar area of your back.

The lumbar support cushioning can be individually adjusted during operation by pressing repeatedly on the corresponding switch ⇒ *Adjusting power front seats*.

Switching the massage function on or off

To switch on, push the button in the seat control panel. Press the button again to switch off.

After around ten minutes, the massage function switches off automatically.

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of seat functions can cause injuries.

- Before beginning a journey always adjust to the correct seat position and maintain this throughout the journey. This also applies to all passengers.
- Only switch the massage function on and off when the vehicle is stationary.
- Always keep your hands, fingers, feet and other parts of your body clear of the area in which the seats operate and move during adjustment.

Lights

Turn signals

Switching the turn signals on and off

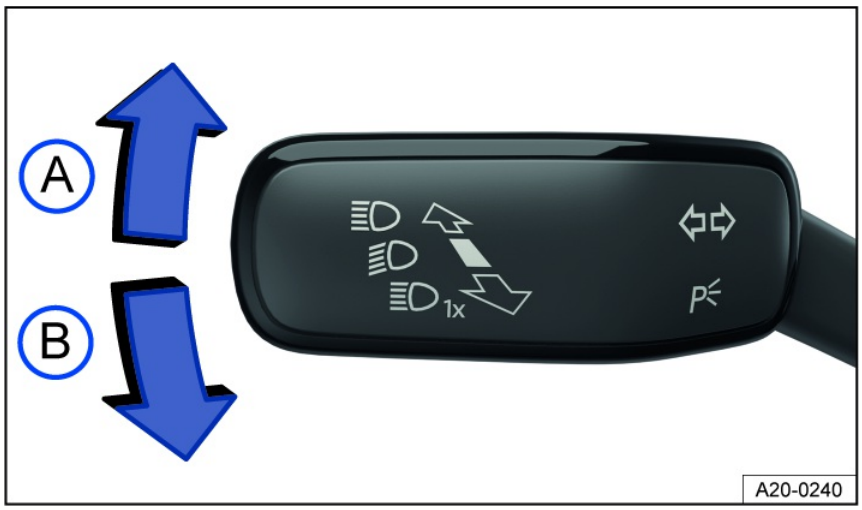


Fig. 74 On the left side of the steering column: turn signal and high beam lever.

(A) Right turn signal ➡.

(B) Left turn signal ⬅.

Switching the turn signals on and off

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Move the turn signal and high beam lever from the center position to the preferred position *fig. 74*.
3. To cancel the turn signal, move the turn signal and headlamp lever back to its basic position.

If no chime sounds when the turn signal is on, contact suitably qualified professionals and have the vehicle checked. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

3-blink turn signal

To use the 3-blink turn signal, move the turn signal and high beam lever upward or downward to the pressure point and then release the lever. The turn signal will blink three times.

To stop the 3-blink turn signal before it ends, move the turn signal and high beam lever immediately to the pressure point in the opposite direction and release.

The 3-blink turn signal can be activated and deactivated in the vehicle settings in the Infotainment system ⇒ *Vehicle settings menu*.

⚠ WARNING

Using the turn signals incorrectly, not using the turn signals, or forgetting to turn the turn signal off can mislead other road users. This can cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Always activate the turn signals correctly when changing lanes, passing, or turning.
- Switch the turn signal off again every time you finish changing lanes, passing, or turning.

The emergency flashers also work when the ignition is switched off ⇒ *In case of an emergency*.

Headlights

Switching the lights on and off



Fig. 75 Next to the steering wheel: Control to switch on the exterior lighting (models with poor weather light).



Fig. 76 Next to the steering wheel: Control to switch on the exterior lighting (models with fog light).

Switching the lights on

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Tap the button repeatedly until the corresponding indicator lights turn on: *fig. 75*

	The low beam headlights are switched on. The green indicator light turns on.
AUTO	Automatic headlights: The low beam headlights are switched on or off depending on the ambient brightness ⇒ ⚠, ⇒ *Light functions*.
	Parking light switched on, the green indicator light turns on. The automatic headlights AUTO are activated from a speed of approximately 6 mph (10 km/h).
OFF	Display only in instrument cluster: Light switched off. The automatic headlights AUTO are activated from a speed of around 6 mph (10 km/h) or after driving around 100 m (0.062 miles).

Switching the lights off

1. Switch the ignition off.

AUTO	The orientation lighting can be switched on ⇒ *Entry and exit lighting (orientation lighting)* .
	The parking lights or continuous parking light on both sides of the vehicle are switched on. The green indicator light turns on.
OFF	Display only in instrument cluster: Light switched off.

Daytime running lights

The daytime running lights can increase the visibility of your vehicle in traffic during the daytime.

The daytime running lights switch on every time the ignition is switched on (when daylight is detected).

At a speed of around 10 km/h (6 mph) or more the daytime running lights cannot be manually switched on or off.

⚠ WARNING

Accidents and serious injuries may occur if the road is not well lit and the vehicle cannot be seen by others on the road, or is very difficult to see.

- The light assistance systems are only aids. The driver is always responsible for turning on the correct vehicle lighting.

- Always turn on the low beam headlight in the dark, when it is raining, and when visibility is poor.
- Regularly check that the lighting system and turn signals are functioning correctly.

⚠ WARNING

The parking lights or daytime running lights are not bright enough to illuminate the road sufficiently and to be seen by other road users.

- Always turn on the low beam headlight in the dark, when it is raining, and when visibility is poor.
- The taillights do not switch on with the daytime running lights. A vehicle without its taillights turned on may not be seen by other road users in the dark, in the fog, and when visibility is poor.

⚠ WARNING

Automatic headlight control AUTO only turns the low beam headlights on and off when there are changes in brightness.

- Turn on the low beam headlights manually in certain weather conditions, such as in fog.

When reverse gear is engaged, the cornering lights on both sides of the vehicle will turn on automatically to better illuminate the surroundings while maneuvering.

Switching the fog lights on and off

The fog lights can be switched on when the ignition is on and the parking light or low beam headlight are switched on ⇒ *Switching the lights on and off*:

- **To switch on the fog lights :** Press the button ⇒ *Switching the lights on and off*. The green indicator light in the button turns on.
- **To switch off the fog lights :** Press the button again.

Switching the poor weather lights on and off

Poor weather lights help you to illuminate the carriageway more effectively when visibility is poor.

The poor weather lights can only be switched on when the ignition is switched on:

- **Switching on the poor weather lights :** Press the button ⇒ *Switching the lights on and off*. The green indicator light in the button turns on. The indicator light will also light up on the instrument cluster for a few seconds.
- Press the button again to switch off the poor weather lights.

If the poor weather lights are switched on when the light is off OFF, the parking lights are switched on or the automatic headlights AUTO are switched on the low beam headlights will also be switched on, regardless of the ambient brightness.

Light functions

Parking lights

If the parking light function is switched on, both headlights will turn on along with the parking lights, sections of the taillights, the license plate lighting, and the buttons in the center console and in the instrument panel. The automatic headlights are activated from a speed of around 6 mph (10 km/h) or after driving around 100 m (0.062 miles).

Automatic headlight control AUTO

If automatic headlights are switched on, the vehicle lighting switches on and off automatically along with the instrument illumination under the following conditions:

- The light sensor has detected darkness.
- The windshield wipers are switched on for a long time.

When the lights are turned on, the AUTO indicator light in the control panel lights up yellow.

Automatic headlight control is merely an aid and cannot always accurately detect all driving situations.

If the vehicle is equipped accordingly, the activation time of the automatic headlights can be adjusted in the vehicle settings in the Infotainment system ⇒ *Vehicle settings menu*.

Cornering lights

If the low beam headlights are switched on, a cornering light will also switch on during slow turns or in very tight corners.

Dynamic cornering light

The dynamic cornering lights provide optimum illumination of the roadway. The dynamic cornering light only works when the automatic headlights AUTO are switched on and at speeds of more than approximately 10 km/h (6 mph).

Warning tones when lights are not turned off

If the ignition has been switched off and the driver door is opened, warning tones will sound under the following conditions:

- With the parking lights switched on.
- With the side lights switched on .

If the orientation lighting is switched on, the warning tone to indicate that the light is still turned on will not sound when leaving the vehicle.

Switching the high beam headlights on and off

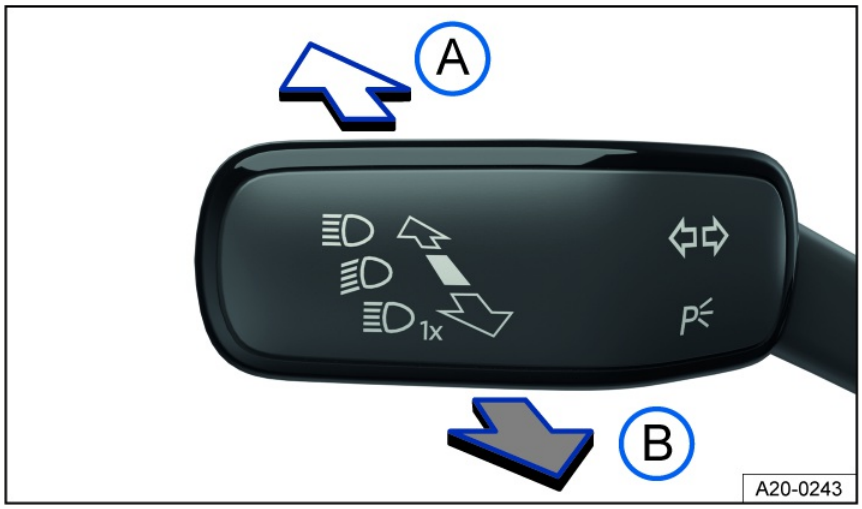


Fig. 77 On the left side of the steering column: turn signal and high beam lever.

1. Switch the ignition and the low beam headlight on.
2. Move the turn signal and high beam lever from the center position to the following position *fig. 77*:
   - (A) High beam headlights switched on.
   - (B) Activate the headlight flashers or turn off the high beam headlights. The *headlight flashers* will stay on as long as the lever is pulled.

If the high beam headlights or headlight flashers are turned on, the blue indicator light will be on in the instrument cluster.

Light Assist

Depending on the equipment, high beam control (Light Assist) may be available ⇒ *Light Assist*.

⚠ WARNING

Using the high beam headlights incorrectly can cause accidents and serious injuries, because the high beams can distract and create glare for other drivers.

Light Assist

Light Assist switches off automatically if the system detects oncoming vehicles or vehicles driving ahead. Light Assist generally detects well-lit areas such as towns and deactivates the high beam headlights when driving through these areas.

The high beam headlights switch on and off automatically within the limits of the system, depending on the environmental and traffic conditions and the vehicle speed ⇒ ⚠.

Switching on Light Assist

1. Switch on the ignition and the automatic headlights AUTO.
2. Tap the turn signal and high beam lever forward out of the basic position.

When Light Assist is switched on, the indicator light in the instrument cluster display will turn on. When high beam control (Light Assist) is active, the blue indicator light for the high beam in the instrument cluster comes on.

Setting the main-beam control sensitivity

Depending on the country, the main-beam control sensitivity can be set in two stages:

- *Increasing the sensitivity:* press the turn signal and high beam lever forwards from its original position and hold it in this position for around 15 seconds. The indicator light on the instrument cluster will blink three times to confirm that this has been applied.
- *Setting the sensitivity back to its standard setting:* press the turn signal and high beam lever forwards from its original position and hold it in this position for around 15 seconds. The indicator light on the instrument cluster will blink three times in quick succession to confirm that this has been applied.

  Or: Switch the ignition off and on.

Switching off Light Assist

1. Switch off AUTO automatic headlights.

Or: When high beam control (Light Assist) is switched on and active: pull the turn signal and high beam lever backwards.

Or: When high beam control (Light Assist) is switched on and **not** active: tap the turn signal and high beam lever forwards to switch the high beams on manually. Pull the turn signal and high beam lever backwards to switch the high beam off manually if necessary.

Or: Switch off the ignition.

System limitations

The high beams must be switched off manually in the following situations, because Light Assist may not switch them off at the right time or at all:

- In poorly lit towns which cannot be recognized as a town by the system.
- On poorly lit roads with strongly reflective signs.
- If there are others on the road who have inadequate lighting, such as pedestrians or cyclists.
- On tight curves where the view of traffic is partially obstructed, on steep rises, or in dips.
- When there are oncoming vehicles on roads with a center barrier and the drivers in the oncoming vehicle can clearly see above the barrier, for example truck drivers.
- In fog, snow, and heavy rain.
- When there are dust and sand in the air.
- If the windshield is damaged in the camera's field of vision.
- If the camera visual field is fogged over, dirty, or covered by a sticker, snow, or ice.
- If the camera is faulty and the power supply is interrupted.

⚠ WARNING

Do not allow the increased convenience provided by the Light Assist to tempt you into taking risks. The system cannot replace the driver's attention.

- Always control the headlights yourself and adapt them to the lighting, visual, and traffic conditions.
- Light Assist may not detect all traffic situations correctly and the function may be restricted in certain situations.
- If the camera lens is dirty, covered, or damaged, the Light Assist function may be limited. This is also the case if the vehicle lighting system is changed, such as by adding auxiliary headlights.

NOTICE

To avoid impairing the function of the system, note the following points:

- Regularly clean the camera view area and keep it free of snow and ice.
- Do not cover the camera view area.
- Regularly check the windshield for damage in the camera lens area.

Switching the continuous parking light on both sides of the vehicle on and off

Switching on the continuous parking lights on both sides of the vehicle

When the continuous parking lights on both sides of the vehicle are switched on, both headlights will turn on as well as the side lights and sections of the taillights:

1. With the ignition switched on, switch on the parking lights .
2. Switch the ignition off.
3. Lock the vehicle from the outside.

Switching off the continuous parking lights on both sides of the vehicle

1. Switch off the parking lights .

Automatic side or parking light deactivation

The vehicle can detect when the 12 V vehicle battery is running low, and switches off the side or parking lights in good time (but after no less than two hours) to leave enough power to restart the engine.

If the battery capacity is not sufficient for the side or parking lights to run for two hours, the 12 V vehicle battery may drain to such an extent that the engine may no be able to start ⇒ .

⚠ WARNING

If the vehicle is stopped without enough lighting so that the vehicle cannot be seen or is difficult for others on the road to see, this can cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Always stop the vehicle safely and with enough lighting. Follow the country-specific legal regulations.

Entry and exit lighting (orientation lighting)

When you are entering and exiting the vehicle in the dark, the entry and exit lighting illuminates the immediate area around the vehicle.

The entry and exit lighting is automatically controlled by a light sensor.

Switching on entry lighting

- Unlock the vehicle while the automatic headlights AUTO are switched on and the light sensor detects *darkness*.

Switching off entry lighting

- Turns off automatically after the lighting time has elapsed.
- **Or:** Lock the vehicle.
- **Or:** Press the MODE button repeatedly until the OFF setting is displayed in the instrument cluster.
- **Or:** Switch on the ignition.

Switching on exit lighting

1. Switch the ignition off.

The exit lighting switches on when the automatic headlights AUTO are switched on and the light sensor detects *darkness*.

The *lighting time* begins when the last vehicle door or trunk lid is closed.

Switching off exit lighting

- Turns off automatically after the set lighting time has elapsed.
- **Or:** Automatically if a vehicle door or the trunk lid is still open approximately 30 seconds after switching on.
- **Or:** Press the MODE button repeatedly until the OFF setting is displayed in the instrument cluster.
- **Or:** Switch on the ignition.

Adjusting entry and exit lighting

The lighting time can be adjusted in the vehicle settings in the Infotainment system and the function can be activated or deactivated ⇒ *Vehicle settings menu*.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, you can adjust the behavior of the exterior lighting in the vehicle settings in the Infotainment system.

You can choose between two display strategies in the Convenience lighting settings menu:

- Classic entry and exit lighting.

  The periphery lighting, headlights and taillights are switched on and off at the same time.
- Dynamic entry and exit lighting.

  The ambient lighting, headlights and taillights are switched on and off dynamically and, if necessary, in an animated pattern.

Headlight range control

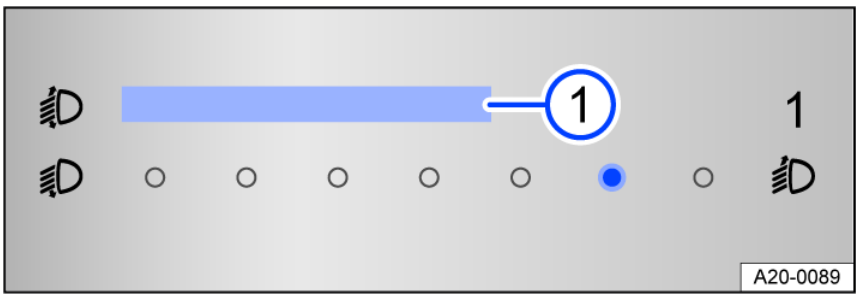


Fig. 78 In the Infotainment system: Touch control for headlight range control.

Headlight range control is used to adjust the beam of the dipped beam headlight to the load level of the vehicle. This provides the driver with the best possible visibility and oncoming traffic is not dazzled ⇒ ⚠.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the headlight range can be adjusted in the Infotainment system *fig. 78*.

Manual headlight range control

Adjustment with the touch control in the Infotainment system:

1. Tap the Vehicle function keys.
2. Tap the Dipped beam function key to open the Headlight range control *fig. 78* (1) menu item.
3. Tap the required position (example vehicle load).

Setting in the Infotainment system	

0	Front seat occupied and luggage compartment empty.
2	All seats occupied and luggage compartment empty.
4	All seats occupied and luggage compartment fully loaded.
6	Only driver seat occupied and luggage compartment fully loaded.

Dynamic headlight range control

Manual adjustment does not apply to vehicles with dynamic headlight range control. The headlight range automatically adjusts to the vehicle load when the headlights are switched on ⇒ ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

Heavy objects in the vehicle can cause the headlights to dazzle and distract other road users. This can cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Always adjust the light cone to the vehicle load so that other road users are not dazzled.

⚠ WARNING

If the dynamic headlight range control fails or malfunctions, the headlights may create glare and distract other road users. This can cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Have the headlight range control inspected immediately by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Adjusting headlights (travel mode)

When driving in countries that drive on the opposite side of the road to the country in which you live, if your vehicle has advanced high beam control (Dynamic Ligh Assist) or the dynamic cornering light function, the low beam headlights may blind oncoming traffic ⇒ *Light functions*. Therefore, the headlight alignment on vehicles equipped with these functions can be adjusted in the Infotainment system via the Vehicle settings menu (travel mode) ⇒ *Vehicle settings menu*. On vehicles without Dynamic Light Assist and dynamic cornering light, it is not necessary to adjust the headlights.

Travel mode may be used only for a short period of time. Contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility for permanent conversion. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Troubleshooting

Turn signal indicator light

The green indicator light blinks.

If a turn signal light on the vehicle is not working, the indicator light will blink twice as fast.

1. Check the lights and replace any bulbs as necessary ⇒ 🕮 *Introduction*.
2. If the malfunction persists, contact a suitably qualified professional. Volkswagen recommends contacting your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Exterior lighting malfunction

The yellow indicator light turns on.

The headlights have completely or partially failed.

1. Check the lights and replace any bulbs as necessary ⇒ 🕮 *Introduction*.
2. If the malfunction persists, contact a suitably qualified professional. Volkswagen recommends contacting your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Rain/light sensor malfunction

The yellow indicator light turns on.

If the automatic headlights (AUTO) are switched on, the vehicle lighting will not turn on or off automatically.

1. Switch the ignition off and on.
2. If the malfunction persists, contact a suitably qualified professional. Volkswagen recommends contacting your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Dynamic cornering light

The swinging behavior of the bulbs can be influenced by the selected driving mode in vehicles with driving mode selection.

If the dynamic cornering light malfunctions, this is indicated on the instrument cluster display. Contact a suitably qualified professional. Volkswagen recommends contacting your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Controls are responding differently than expected

Moisture, dirt and grease may limit the functioning of the controls.

1. Always keep the controls clean and dry.

Interior lighting

Instrument and switch illumination

You can adjust the instrument and switch lighting brightness and the basic brightness of the head-up display in the vehicle settings in the Infotainment system *⇒ Vehicle settings menu*.

The selected brightness will automatically adjust to the changing brightness in the vehicle.

If the automatic headlight control AUTO is switched on, a sensor switches the low beam headlights and the instrument and switch lighting on and off automatically based on outside brightness.

The instrument illumination for the needles and dials turns on when the ignition is on and the lights are off. The lighting for the gauges reduces automatically and eventually turns off as brightness outside increases. This function should remind the driver to turn off low beam headlights at the right time, such as when driving through tunnels.

Interior/reading lights, ambient lighting



Fig. 79 On the overhead console: touch-sensitive reading lights.

Tap the corresponding symbol:

	Switch the interior lights on or off or dim them.
OFF	Function switched off: the interior lights switch on automatically when unlocking the vehicle, opening a door or switching off the ignition.

Touch-sensitive reading lights with manual dimming function

On the roof console and above the rear door, there can be touch-sensitive reading lights depending on the equipment *fig. 79*. By tapping the illuminated area, the respective reading light can be switched on or off.

To activate the manual dimming function, touch the illuminated area until the desired brightness level is reached.

Glove compartment and luggage compartment lights

When opening and closing the glove compartment or trunk lid, a light will turn on or off.

Ambient lighting

Depending on vehicle equipment, ambient lighting can provide indirect lighting in various areas of the vehicle interior.

The brightness and, depending on the equipment, the color of the ambient lighting, can be adjusted in the vehicle settings in the Infotainment system *⇒ Vehicle settings menu*. If you select the setting Auto, the color of the ambient lighting changes depending on the driving mode setting.

The lights turn off when the vehicle is locked or a few minutes after the ignition has been switched off. This reduces the risk of the 12 V vehicle battery being drained.

Visibility

Window wipers

Operating the windshield wiper lever

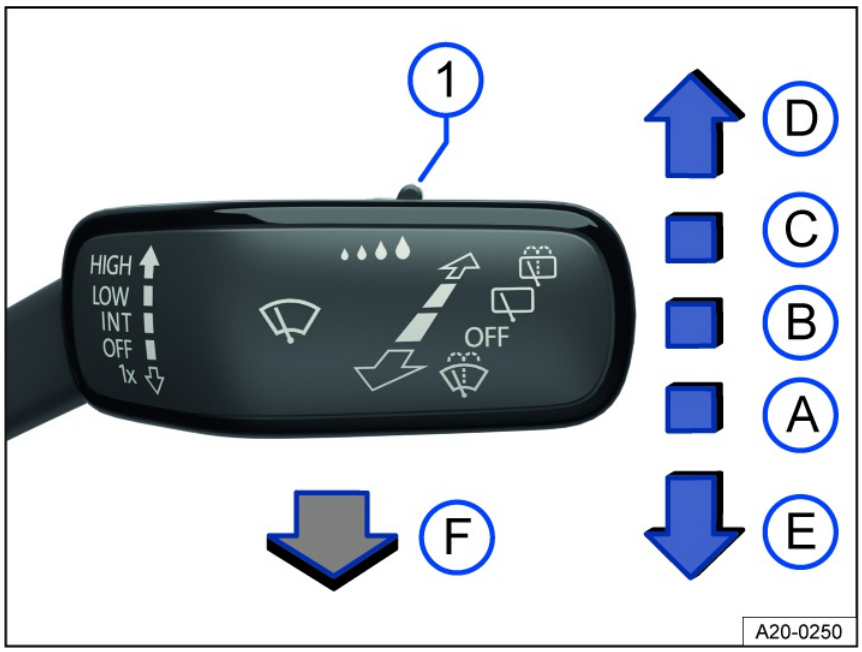


Fig. 80 On the right side of the steering column: operating the windshield wipers.

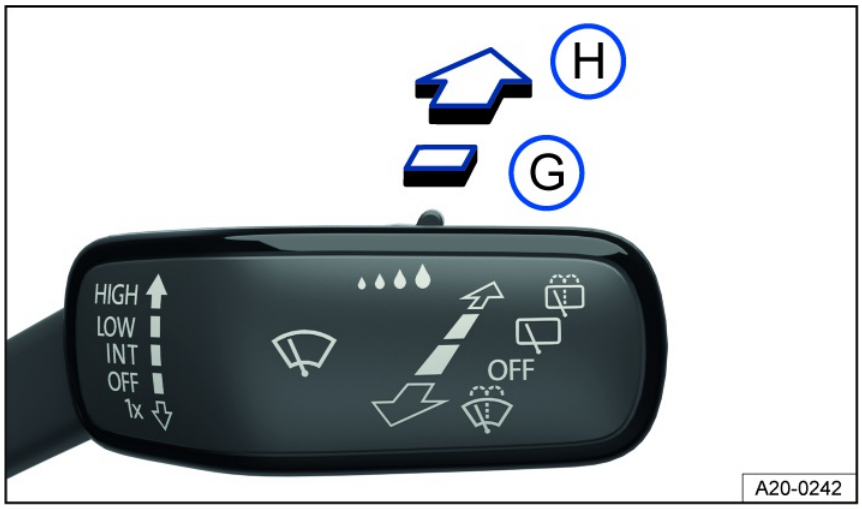


Fig. 81 On the right side of the steering column: operating the rear window wiper.

The windshield wipers only work when the ignition is switched on and the hood or trunk lid is closed.

Move the wiper lever into the desired position ⇒ (!):

(A) OFF Wipers are switched off.

(B) INT Interval wiping for the windshield or rain sensor mode. Interval wiping for the windshield depends on the driving speed. The higher the speed, the faster the wipers will move.

(C) LOW Slow wiper speed.

(D) HIGH Fast wiping.

(E) 1x One-tap wiping – brief wiping. Press and hold the lever down longer to wipe faster.

(F) Pull the lever to activate the automatic wiper/washer system to clean the windshield. While the wiper/washer system is active, the Climatronic system switches to recirculation mode for approximately 30 seconds to help prevent the washer fluid odor from entering the vehicle interior.

(1) Switch for interval levels (vehicles without rain/light sensor) or to adjust the sensitivity of the rain/light sensor.

(G) Interval wiping for the rear window. The wiper moves approximately every six seconds.

(H) Press the lever to activate the automatic wiper/washer system to clean the rear window.

⚠ WARNING

Without the sufficient freeze protection, washer fluid can freeze on the window glass and reduce visibility.

- Only use the washer system with sufficient freeze protection in winter temperatures.
- Never use the windshield washer system in winter temperatures if the windshield has not been warmed up, e.g. with the air conditioning system. Otherwise, the freeze protection mixture can freeze on the windshield and limit visibility.

⚠ WARNING

Worn or dirty wiper blades reduce visibility and increase the risk of accidents and serious injuries.

- Always replace wiper blades if they are damaged or worn and are no longer cleaning the window glass sufficiently ⇒ *Cleaning and changing wiper blades*.

NOTICE

To reduce the risk of damage to the windshield, wiper blades, and the windshield wiper motor, make sure of the following before driving and **before switching on the ignition**:

- The windshield wiper lever is in the off position.
- Snow and ice have been removed from the windshield wipers and the windshield.
- Wiper blades that have frozen onto the windshield have been carefully loosened from the windshield. Volkswagen recommends using a deicing spray for this.

NOTICE

Do not turn on the windshield wipers when the window glass is dry. The window glass can be damaged if wiper blades wipe a dry window.

The activated wiper speed temporarily changes to the next lower speed when the vehicle is stationary.

When parking the vehicle in cold weather conditions, moving the windshield wipers to the service position may be helpful for loosening the wiper blades more easily from the windshield ⇒ *Service position*.

Wiper function

Automatic rear window wiping

The rear window wiper switches on automatically when the windshield wipers are switched on and reverse gear is engaged. The automatic activation in reverse gear function can be activated and deactivated in the vehicle settings in the Infotainment system ⇒ *Vehicle settings menu*.

Heated washer nozzles

The heat thaws frozen washer fluid nozzles. The heat output is automatically regulated when the ignition is switched on and is dependent on the outside temperature. Only the window washer nozzles are heated and not the washer fluid hoses.

Rain/light sensor

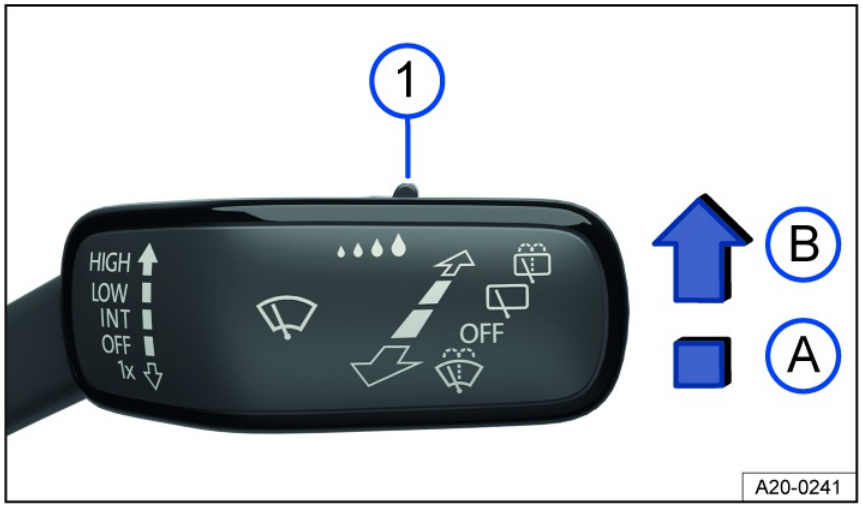


Fig. 82 On the right side of the steering column: windshield wiper lever.

When switched on, the rain/light sensor automatically shortens or lengthens the delay between wiping cycles depending on how hard it is raining.

Activating and deactivating the rain/light sensor

Press the lever into the desired position *fig. 82*:

- Position (A) - rain/light sensor deactivated.
- Position (B) - rain/light sensor activated, automatic wiping as necessary.

Automatic wiping can be activated and deactivated in the vehicle settings in the Infotainment system ⇒ *Vehicle settings menu*.

If automatic wiping is deactivated in the Infotainment system, the interval time will be set in fixed stages.

Adjusting the sensitivity of the rain/light sensor

The sensitivity of the rain/light sensor can be manually adjusted with the switch in the windshield wiper lever *fig. 82* (1) ⇒ ⚠.

- Move the switch to the right – high sensitivity.
- Move the switch to the left – low sensitivity.

⚠ WARNING

The rain/light sensor cannot detect all precipitation sufficiently and activate the windshield wipers accordingly.

- If necessary, switch on the windshield wipers manually if water on the windshield is impairing visibility.

Troubleshooting

Washer fluid level too low

The yellow indicator light turns on.

Fill the washer fluid reservoir ⇒ *Washer fluid*.

Windshield wiper malfunction

The yellow indicator light turns on.

The windshield wipers are not working.

1. Switch the ignition off and on.
2. If the malfunction persists, contact a suitably qualified professional. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Rain/light sensor malfunction

The yellow indicator light turns on.

The windshield wipers will not be automatically activated in rain/light sensor mode when it is raining.

1. Switch the ignition off and on.
2. If the malfunction persists, contact a suitably qualified professional. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Changes to rain/light sensor reaction

Some possible reasons for malfunctions and misinterpretations *in the sensor area* of the rain/light sensor ⇒ *View from the front* could be:

- **Damaged wiper blades:** damaged wiper blades can leave a film of water or streaks on the window, and this can extend the activation time, greatly shorten th wiper intervals, or cause fast wiping time.
- **Insects:** insects hitting the windshield may trigger the wipers.
- **Salt streaks:** salt streaks on the windshield from driving in the winter can cause the wipers to wipe more frequently or continuously on a window that is almost dry.
- **Dirt:** dried dust, wax, any other build-up on the windshield (lotus effect), or washing product residue (car wash) can lower the sensitivity of the rain/light sensor and cause it to react too slowly or not at all. Clean the sensor area for the rain/light sensor regularly and check the wiper blades for damage ⇒ *Exterior care and cleaning*.
- **Crack in the windshield:** if a stone strikes and chips the sensor area while the rain/light sensor is on, this will trigger a wiper cycle. After that, the rain/light sensor will detect this irregularity on the sensor surface and react to it. Depending on the size of the chip, the reaction behavior of the rain/light sensor may or may not change.

If there is an obstacle for the wipers on the window glass, the wipers will attempt to remove it. If it continues to block the wipers, the wipers will stop moving. Remove the obstacle and switch the wipers on again.

Mirrors

General safety precautions

Using the outside mirrors and the interior rearview mirror, the driver can observe traffic and adjust their driving based on traffic.

For driving safety, it is important that the driver adjusts the outside mirrors and the interior rearview mirror correctly before starting to drive.

It is not possible to oversee the entire side and rear area of the vehicle by looking in the outside and interior rearview mirrors. These areas that are not visible are called blind spots. Other road users and objects could be in the blind spot.

⚠ WARNING

Adjusting the outside mirrors and interior rearview mirror while driving can distract the driver. This can cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Only adjust the outside mirror and interior rearview mirror when the vehicle is stationary.
- When parking, changing lanes, passing, and turning, always pay attention to your surroundings, because other road users and objects could be within the blind spot.
- Always make sure that the mirrors are adjusted correctly and visibility to the rear is not limited by ice, snow, fog, or other objects.

⚠ WARNING

Inaccurate prediction of distance to vehicles behind you can cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Curved mirror surfaces (convex or aspheric) enlarge the field of vision and allow objects in the mirror to appear smaller and farther away.
- Using the curved mirrors to estimate the distance from vehicles behind you when changing lanes is imprecise and may cause accidents and serious injuries.
- Use the interior rearview mirror as much as possible to more accurately determine the distance to vehicles or other objects behind you.
- Make sure there is sufficient visibility of the area behind the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

An automatic dimming rearview mirror contains an electrolyte fluid that can leak out if the mirror glass breaks.

- The leaking electrolyte fluid can irritate the skin, eyes, and respiratory organs, especially in individuals with asthma or similar illnesses. Immediately try to exit the vehicle to get fresh air. If this is not possible, open all the windows and doors.
- If the electrolyte fluid comes into contact with eyes or skin, wash the affected area immediately for at least 15 minutes with plenty of water and seek medical assistance.
- If the electrolyte fluid comes into contact with your shoes or clothing, wash it for at least 15 minutes with plenty of water. Clean the shoes and clothing thoroughly before wearing them again.
- If electrolyte fluid is swallowed, rinse out the mouth immediately for at least 15 minutes with plenty of water. Do not induce vomiting unless it ordered to do so by a doctor. Call for medical assistance immediately.

NOTICE

If the glass on an automatic dimming mirror breaks, electrolyte fluid can leak out. This fluid damages plastic surfaces.

- Remove any leaking fluid as soon as possible, for instance using a wet sponge.

Interior rearview mirror

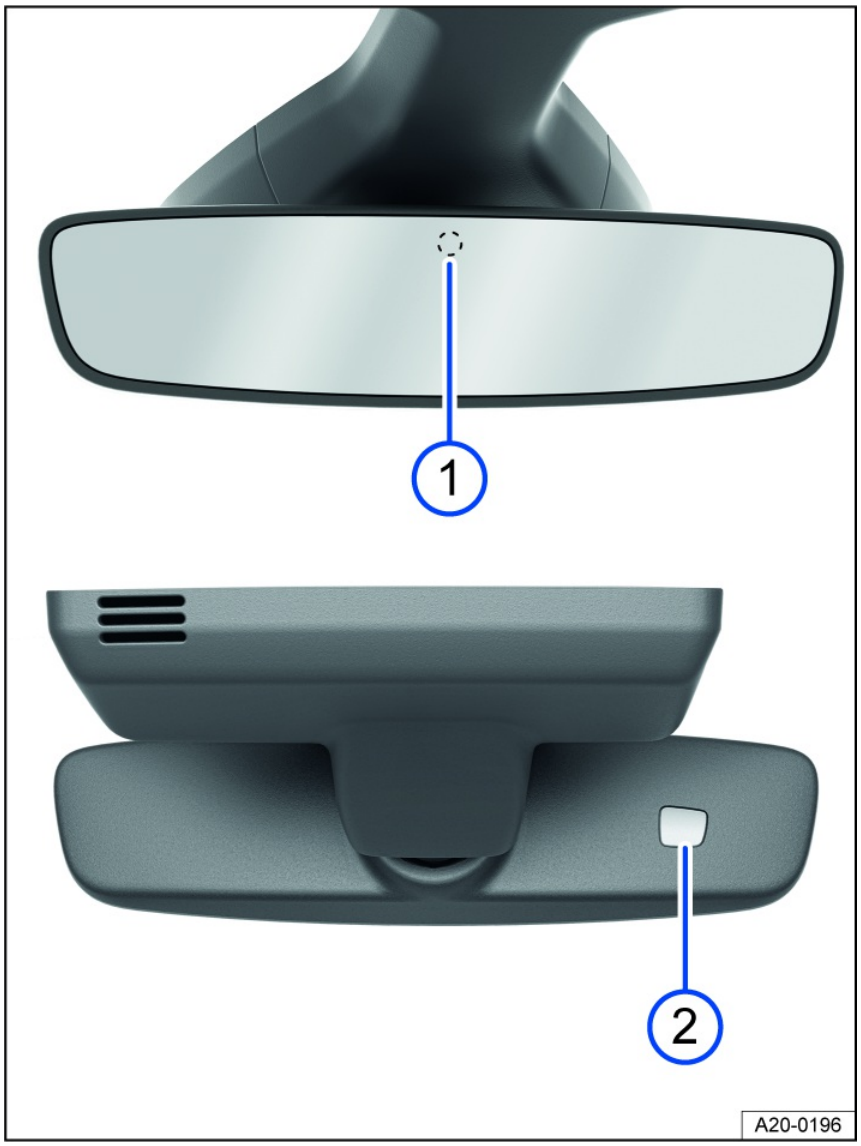


Fig. 83 On the windshield: automatic dimming interior rearview mirror.

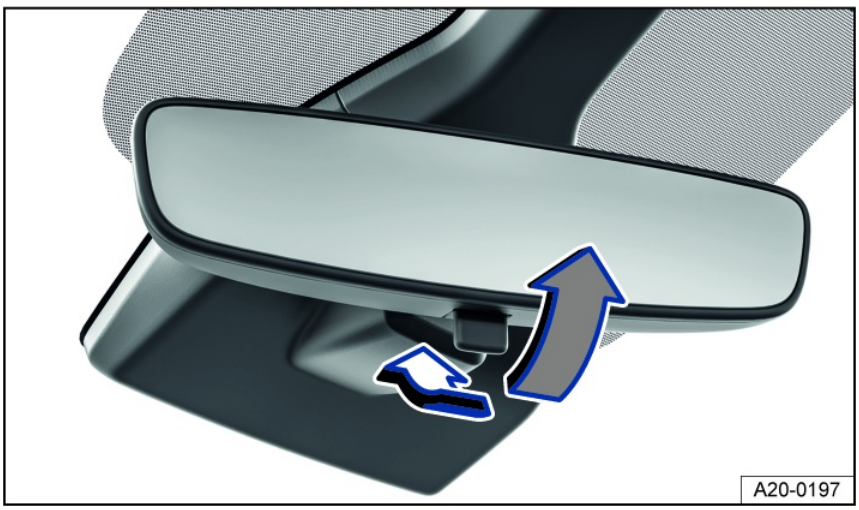


Fig. 84 On the windshield: manual dimming interior rearview mirror.

Automatic dimming interior rearview mirror

When the ignition is on, the sensors measure the amount of light entering from the rear *fig. 83* (1) and from the front (2).

Depending on the measured values, the interior rearview mirror will dim *automatically*.

If the amount of light entering the sensors is limited or interrupted, for example by a sunshade or attachment, the automatic dimming interior rearview mirror may nc function or may malfunction. Mobile navigation devices on the windshield or near the automatic dimming interior rearview mirror can also affect the sensors ⇒ ⚠.

Automatic dimming will be deactivated in some situations, for example when reverse gear is engaged.

Manual dimming interior rearview mirror

- Base position: lever on the lower edge of the mirror points forward toward the windshield.

- To dim, pull the lever back *fig. 84*.

⚠ WARNING

The illuminated display on a mobile navigation device can cause the automatic dimming interior rearview mirror to malfunction, which can result in accidents and serious injuries.

- If the automatic dimming function malfunctions, it may not be possible to use the interior rearview mirror to evaluate the exact distance to vehicles or other objects behind the vehicle.

Outside mirrors

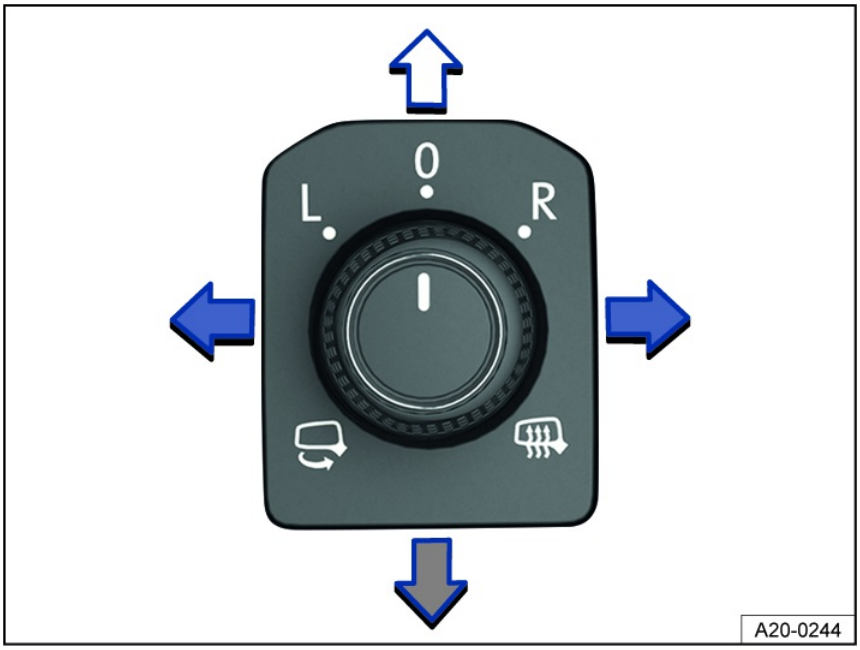


Fig. 85 In the driver door: knob for the outside mirrors.

The following information describes the outside mirror functions for left-hand drive vehicles. Position **L** corresponds to the outside mirror on the driver's side, and position **R** corresponds to the outside mirror on the passenger's side. For right-hand drive vehicles, proceed in the reverse order.

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Turn the knob in the driver door to the preferred symbol *fig. 85*.
3. Press the knob forward, back, right, or left in the direction of the arrow to adjust the outside mirror.

	Fold the outside mirror in towards the vehicle body ⇒ ⚠.
	Switch on the outside mirror heating. The outside mirror heating only works when the outside temperature is below 68 °F (20 °C) and provides the most heat when it first turns on. After about two minutes, the mirrors will be heated depending on the ambient temperature.
L	Adjusts the left outside mirror.
R	Adjusts the right outside mirror.
0	Neutral position. The outside mirror cannot be adjusted and all functions are switched off.

Activating outside mirror functions

The following outside mirror functions must be activated in the vehicle settings in the Infotainment system before they are used for the first time ⇒ *Vehicle settings menu*.

Synchronized mirror adjustment

The synchronized mirror adjustment feature simultaneously adjusts the right-side outside mirror to match adjustments to the left-side outside mirror.

1. Turn rotary knob to position **L**.
2. Adjusts the left outside mirror. The right outside mirror will be adjusted the same way (synchronized).
3. Correct the adjustment of the right outside mirror if necessary: turn the knob to the **R** position and adjust the right outside mirror.

Folding the outside mirrors in while parking

If the vehicle is locked or unlocked from the outside, the outside mirrors will automatically fold in or out. For this to happen, the knob must be in the , **L**, **R** or **0**

position.

If the knob for power outside mirrors is in the position, the outside mirrors will remain folder in.

Storing and recalling the front passenger outside mirror position when driving in reverse

1. Unlock the vehicle using the key, to which the setting is allocated.
2. Set the electronic parking brake.
3. Switch the ignition on.
4. Shift the transmission to neutral.
5. Select the reverse gear.
6. Adjust the front passenger outside mirror so that, for example, the edge of the curb can be seen clearly.
7. Shift the transmission to neutral.
8. Switch the ignition off.
9. The selected mirror position will be stored and assigned to the vehicle key.

Opening the front passenger outside mirror settings for driving in reverse

1. Turn rotary knob for the outside mirrors to the relevant position for adjusting the front passenger outside mirror.
2. With the ignition switched on, select reverse gear. The front passenger outside mirror will adjust to the stored position.

The front passenger outside mirror will exit the position stored for driving in reverse when you begin driving forward faster than about 9 mph (15 km/h) or when the knob is turned to any other position.

WARNING

Inattentively folding the outside mirrors out and in can cause injuries.

- Do not fold the outside mirrors out or in if there are any obstacles in the way.
- Always make sure your fingers do not get pinched between the outside mirror and the mirror base when moving the mirror.

NOTICE

If outside mirrors are not folded in when driving through a car wash, they can get damaged.

- Always fold in the outside mirrors.
- Do not fold power outside mirrors in or out by hand because the mirror motor could be damaged.

Leave the outside mirror heating on only as long as it is needed. Otherwise fuel will be used unnecessarily.

If there is a malfunction in the power outside mirror, you can adjust the position of the mirror manually by hand by pushing on the edge of the mirror surface.

Sunshade

Sun visors

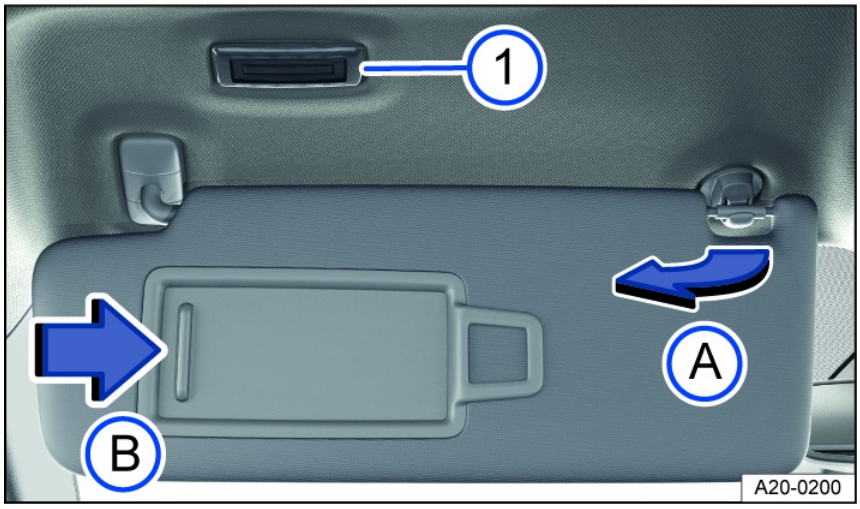


Fig. 86 In the front of the headliner: sun visor.

Adjustment options for the driver and front passenger sun visors:

- Fold toward the windshield.
- Remove from the holder and tilt toward the door *fig. 86* (A).

Illuminated vanity mirror

When the sun visor is folded down, there is a vanity mirror located behind a cover. The lights *fig. 86* (1) turn on when the cover *fig. 86* (B) slides open.

⚠ WARNING

Visibility may be reduced when sun visors are folded down and the sunshades are extended.

- Always guide sun visors and sunshades back into their holders when they are no longer needed.

Under certain conditions, the light above the sun visor will turn off automatically after several minutes. This reduces the risk of the 12 V vehicle battery being drained.

Heating and A/C system

Heating, ventilation, and air conditioning

Introduction

Climatronic is an automatic air conditioning system which warms, cools and dehumidifies the air. In automatic mode, Climatronic can automatically control the air temperature, air distribution and the volume of air.

The air conditioner is most effective when the vehicle interior is kept closed. If there is a build-up of heat inside the vehicle, ventilation can help to speed up the cooling process.

Display of activated functions

Illuminated symbols on the sensors indicate that a function is activated.

In the air conditioning settings in the Infotainment system, function keys highlighted with colors indicate that a function is switched on.

Air conditioner with voice command operation

Some of the air conditioner functions can be operated with voice control, depending on the vehicle equipment ⇒ *Voice control*.

⚠ WARNING

Poor visibility through the windows increases the risk of collisions and accidents that can cause serious injury.

- Keep all windows free of ice, snow, and fog to have good visibility.
- Adjust the heating, air conditioner, and rear window defroster to a setting where the windows do not fog up.
- Only start driving when all windows are clear.
- Only use recirculation mode for a short time. Otherwise, the windows could fog up very quickly and greatly reduce visibility.
- Always switch off recirculation mode when it is not necessary.

NOTICE

Food, medication, and objects that are sensitive to heat or cold can become damaged or unusable from the air coming out of the vents.

- Do not place any food, medication, or other objects that are sensitive to temperature in front of the vents.

NOTICE

If the air conditioner is not working, switch it off immediately to prevent subsequent damage. Have the air conditioner checked by suitably qualified professionals. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Overview of the functions

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ ⚠ and ⓘ *Introduction*.
Certain functions of the air conditioner and menus in the Infotainment system as well as a climate control bar for the rear seats depend on the vehicle equipment.

In the upper center console

CLIMA **Open the climate control settings in the Infotainment system.**

in the Infotainment system: Top of the screen

Switch the air conditioning system on and off.

in the Infotainment system: Bottom of the screen

Adjust the temperature. Depending on the vehicle equipment, you can adjust the temperature directly in the Infotainment system or via a touch control under the Infotainment system. The set temperatures are displayed at the bottom of the screen in the Infotainment system.
The set temperatures for the rear seats are shown on the climate control bar displays for the rear seats.

SYNC **Apply temperature settings for the driver side to all seats.** **Switch seat heating on and off ⇒ *Seat heating*.** REAR **Open the settings for the rear seats.**

In the Infotainment system: Classic Climate menu

AUTO **The set air temperature is maintained constant. The air volume and air distribution are automatically controlled. The blower power in automatic mode can be controlled via the air conditioning profiles. Automatic mode switches off when the blower speed is changed manually.** **Adjust the blower speed.** **Switch air recirculation on and off ⇒ *Air recirculation*.** A/C **The air is cooled and dehumidified in cooling mode.** MAX A/C **Switch the maximum cooling output on and off.**
Air recirculation is switched on automatically and Climatronic automatically directs air to the upper body.

Direct air to the upper body. **Direct air into the footwell.** **Direct air to the upper body and into the footwell.** **Direct air onto the windshield and**

into the footwell. Direct air onto the windshield.

In the Infotainment system: Smart Climate menu

If a Smart Climate function is switched on, automatic mode is also switched on. The Smart Climate functions remain switched on for a short time and automatic mode also remains switched on once this time has elapsed.

Clear fog and ice from the windshield. Direct warm air into the footwell. Direct warm air onto the steering wheel. Direct cool air into the footwell. Direct fresh air from outside into the vehicle interior. Temporarily increase the power of the refrigerant system.

In the Infotainment system: Air Care menu

Air Care The Air Care Climatronic active combination filter can limit the entrance of hazardous substances as well as allergens ⇛ *Air recirculation*.

In the Infotainment system: Settings

Settings for vehicle start:

1. Tap the relevant function key to automatically switch on seat heating or steering wheel heating depending on the outside temperature after starting the engine.

On the multi-function steering wheel

Switch steering wheel heating on and off ⇛ *Steering wheel heating*.

Control next to multi-function steering wheel

REAR Switch the rear window defroster on and off while the engine is running.

The rear window defroster switches off automatically after maximum 10 minutes.

MAX The Climatronic defrost function clears fog and ice from the windshield.

The air is dehumidified and the blower is set to a higher speed.

If REAR LOCK is switched on in the Infotainment system, the rear climate control bar cannot be used.

NOTICE

To reduce the risk of damage to the rear window defroster, do not apply any stickers on the heating wires on the inside of the window.

In order to save fuel, switch off the rear window defroster as soon as possible.

Air recirculation

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇛ and *Introduction*.

No fresh air will enter the vehicle interior when recirculation mode is switched on.

Switching air recirculation on and off

1. Tap CLIMA in the upper center console.
2. Tap in the Infotainment system.

Air Care – Climatronic with active combination filters

The Air Care Climatronic active combination filter can limit the entrance of hazardous substances as well as allergens.

If Air Care is switched on, the air recirculation of the air conditioner is maximized as far as permitted by the risk of fogging up the windows depending on the humidi in the vehicle interior and the outside temperature. Air recirculation is controlled automatically and adapts itself continuously to prevent vehicle occupant fatigue.

1. Tap CLIMA in the upper center console.
2. Switch the Air-Care function on and off with Air Care ▸ Active.

Air recirculation switches off automatically

If one of the following conditions is met, air recirculation switches off automatically → :

- The defrost function is switched on.
- A sensor detects that the vehicle windows could fog up.
- The tilting and sliding panoramic sunroof is open at high vehicle speeds.

WARNING

Lack of air circulation can lead to sudden driver fatigue and lack of concentration, which can cause collisions, accidents, and serious injuries.

- Never use recirculation mode for long periods of time, because this prevents fresh air from entering the passenger compartment.
- Only use recirculation mode for a short time. Otherwise, the windows could fog up very quickly and greatly reduce visibility.
- Always switch off recirculation mode when it is not necessary.

NOTICE

Do not smoke in the vehicle when air recirculation is switched on. The smoke can settle on the refrigerant system evaporator and the active combination filter and cause permanent odors.

When reverse gear is engaged or while the automatic wash and wipe system is on, recirculation mode switches on automatically so that no odors will enter the vehicle interior.

Seat heating

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ and *Introduction*.
When the engine is running, the front seats and outer rear seats may be electrically heated in three stages.

Seat heating levels

The operation status of the seat heating is represented by colors in the Infotainment system:

- At the highest heating level, all three indicators under or in the Infotainment system are red.

Using the seat heating function

1. Tap CLIMA in the upper center console.
2. To switch on the seat heating at the highest heating level, tap or at the bottom edge of the screen.
3. To set the heating level, tap or repeatedly.
4. To switch the seat heating off, tap or repeatedly until the symbol is gray.

   Or: To switch the seat heating on or off, tap with two fingers on the touch control under the Infotainment system on the driver or passenger's side.

The seat heating switches on and off automatically

If you start the engine again within approximately ten minutes, the last heating level set for the driver seat is automatically switched on. If the front passenger seat i occupied, the last heating level set for the front passenger seat is also switched on automatically.

If the front passenger leaves their seat when the seat heating is switched on and the engine is running, the seat heating for the front passenger seat is automaticall switched off. The display in the Infotainment system turns grey after approximately two seconds. If the front passenger takes their seat again when the engine is sti running, the seat heating for the front passenger seat is automatically switched back on.

If the seat heating automatically switches off, you can manually switch the seat heating on again if required, even if the front passenger seat is not occupied.

When should the seat heating function not be turned on?

Do not turn on the seat heating function under any of the following conditions:

- The seat is occupied by a person with a limited perception of pain or temperature → .
- The seat is not occupied
- The seat is covered with a seat cover
- A child restraint is installed on the seat
- The seat surface is damp or wet
- The interior or exterior temperature is higher than +77 °F (+25 °C).

WARNING

Magnetic fields are generated when the seat heating is operated. In individual cases, these magnetic fields can have effects on active medical implants (e.g. pacemakers).

- Wearers of an active medical implant should consult their doctor or the manufacturer of their implant before operating the seat heating.
- If necessary, make your vehicle occupants aware of this as well.

WARNING

People who cannot feel pain or perceive temperature or can do so only to a limited extent, due to medication, paralysis or chronic illnesses such as diabetes, could develop burns or hypothermia on the back, buttocks and legs when using seat heating. Such injuries may take a very long time to heal or may never heal completely. Contact a medical doctor for questions about personal health conditions.

- People with a limited perception of pain and/or temperature must never use the seat heating function.

WARNING

If the seat cover is soaked through, this can cause the seat heating to malfunction and increase the risk of burns.

- Make sure the seat surface is dry before using the seat heating function.
- Never sit on the seat while wearing damp or wet clothing.
- Do not place any damp or wet objects and clothing on the seat.
- Do not pour any fluids on the seat.

NOTICE

- To prevent damage to the seat heating elements, never kneel on the seats or exert pressure on the seating surface and backrest with sharp or pointed objects.
- Fluids, sharp objects, and insulating materials, for example a protective cover or child restraint, can damage the seat heating function.
- If any odor starts to develop, turn off the seat heating immediately and have it checked by suitably qualified professionals. Volkswagen recommends contacting your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
- If the original seat cover is replaced with a different material, the seat heating may overheat or the operation of the seat heating may be restricted.

In order to save fuel, switch off the seat heating as soon as possible.

Steering wheel heating

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ and *Introduction*.

The steering wheel heating only works when the engine is running.

Heating levels for the steering wheel heating

When you switch on the steering wheel heating, the current heating level is constantly displayed in the instrument cluster as a bar display. At the highest heating level, all three bars are filled.

Switching steering wheel heating on and off via the multi-function steering wheel

1. To switch on steering wheel heating at the highest heating level, press .
2. To adjust the heating level, press repeatedly.
3. To switch off steering wheel heating, press repeatedly until the bar display in the instrument cluster display goes out.

Saving the heating level

1. Switch on the steering wheel heating and set the desired heating level.
2. To save the current heating level, press and hold for approximately one second.

   The heating level is saved and the steering wheel heating is switched off.
3. To switch the steering wheel heating back on at the most recently saved heating level, press and hold for approximately one second.

Steering wheel heating switches on automatically

If you start the engine again within approximately ten minutes, the last heating level set is automatically switched on.

Steering wheel heating switches off automatically

If one of the following conditions is met, the steering wheel heating switches off automatically:

- If the energy use is too high.
- If the steering wheel heating system is malfunctioning.

Troubleshooting

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ and *Introduction*.

The cooling mode A/C cannot be switched on or the function is limited

The A/C cooling mode only works when the engine is running and at ambient temperatures above +3 °C (+38 °F).

The cooling mode A/C is switched off when the engine is very hot.

- Switch on the fan.
- Check the safeguard on the air conditioning system ⇒ *Replacing fuses*.
- Change active combination filters ⇒ *Service*.
- If the malfunction persists, contact a suitably qualified professional. Volkswagen recommends contacting your Volkswagen dealership.

The heat cannot be switched on or the function is limited

The heating and defrost function operates better when the engine is warm.

1. If the malfunction persists, contact a suitably qualified professional. Volkswagen recommends contacting your Volkswagen dealership.

The windows are fogged up

The windows fog up when they are colder than the ambient temperature and the air is very humid. Cold air does not absorb as much moisture as warm air which is why windows fog up more frequently during cold seasons.

1. Keep the air intake in front of the windshield free of ice, snow, and leaves to improve the heat and cooling output ⇒ *Vehicle care*.
2. Leave the air duct in the rear section of the luggage compartment uncovered so that air can flow through the vehicle from front to back.
3. Switch on the defrost function ⇒ *Overview of the functions*.

The temperature unit has changed

1. Changing the temperature units for all temperature displays in the vehicle using the Infotainment system ⇒ *Vehicle settings menu*.

Water or water vapor under the vehicle

In the case of high outside humidity and temperatures, condensation can drip from the air conditioning system evaporator and pool under the vehicle. This is norma and does not mean there is a leak in the system.

Controls are responding differently than expected

Moisture, dirt and grease may limit the functioning of the controls.

1. Always keep the controls clean and dry.

Driving

Messages about driving

Pedals

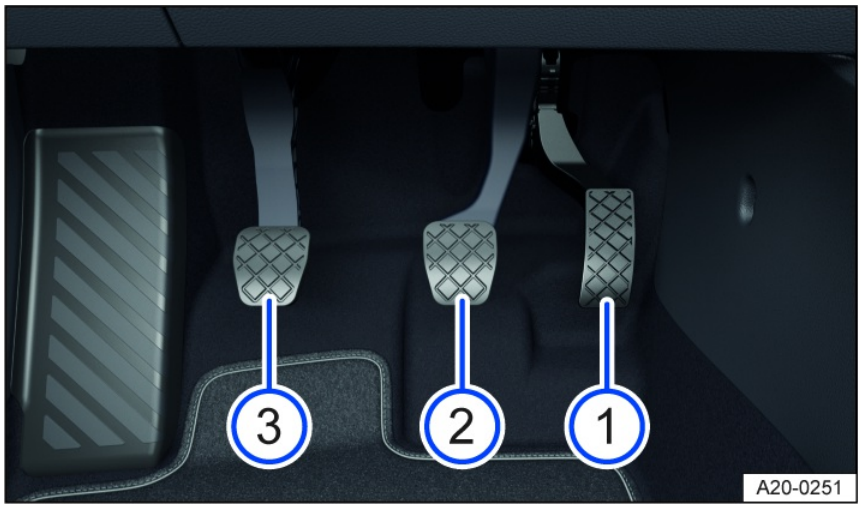


Fig. 87 In the footwell: Pedals in vehicles with a manual gearbox.

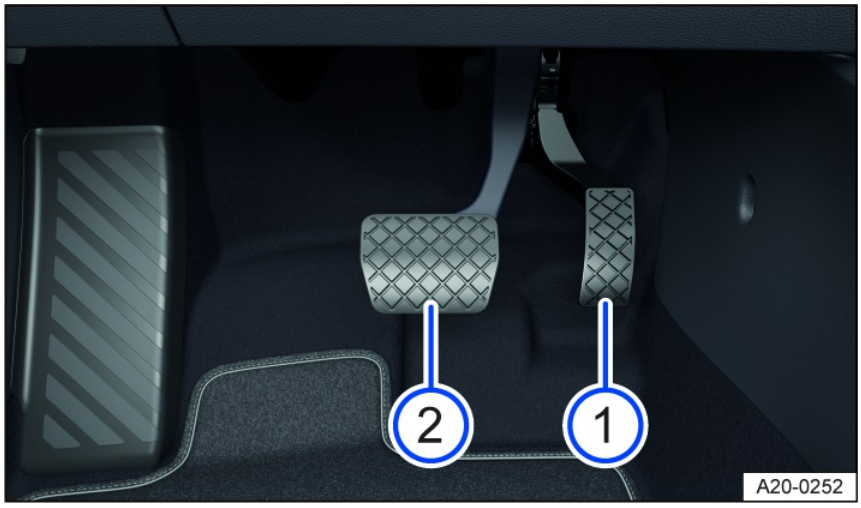


Fig. 88 In the footwell: Pedals in vehicles with an automatic gearbox.

(1) Accelerator pedal

(2) Brake pedal

(3) Clutch pedal *for vehicles with a manual gearbox*

The operation and the ability of the pedals to move freely must never be restricted by objects or floor mats.

Only use floor mats that keep the pedal area open and can be secured from sliding around the footwell.

⚠ WARNING

Objects in the driver footwell can prevent the pedals from moving freely. This can cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle and increases the risk of serious injuries.

- Make sure all pedals can always be pressed without obstructions.
- Always attach floor mats securely in the footwell.
- Never place floor mats or other carpet over the installed floor mat.
- Make sure no objects can enter the driver footwell while driving.
- Remove any objects from the footwell when the vehicle is parked.
- Wear shoes that give your feet good grip for operating the pedals.

⚠ WARNING

Always heed the applicable driving regulations and speed limits and drive proactively. Evaluating driving situations correctly can make the difference between

safely reaching your destination and being involved in a collision with serious injuries.

- Take regular breaks on long drives. You should take a break at least every two hours.

⚠ WARNING

Driving under the influence of alcohol, drugs, medication, and prescription narcotics can cause serious accidents and fatal injuries.

- Alcohol, drugs, medication, and prescription narcotics can considerably impair perception, reaction times, and driving safety, which can result in loss of vehicle control.

ⓘ NOTICE

It must always be possible to press the pedals with no obstructions. For example, if a brake circuit is malfunctioning, the brake pedal may need to travel farther in order to stop the vehicle. In that case, the brake pedal would need to be pressed down father and more strongly than normal.

Gear recommendation

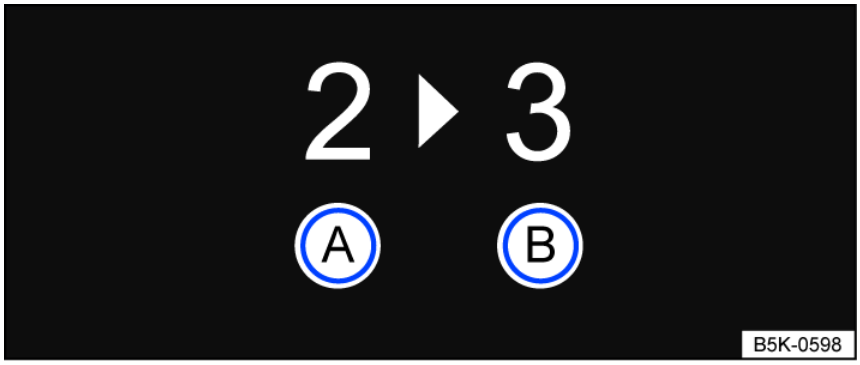


Fig. 89 Gear recommendation on the instrument cluster display.

Ⓐ Currently selected gear.

Ⓑ Recommended gear for you to select.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, a recommendation to select a fuel-saving gear can be displayed as a number in the instrument cluster while you are driving *fig. 89*.

Vehicles with an automatic transmission: To do this, the transmission must be in the tiptronic program ⇒ *Shifting using tiptronic*.

If the optimal gear is currently selected, no gear recommendation is made. The gear that is currently selected is displayed.

⚠ CAUTION

The gear recommendation is simply an aid and cannot replace the driver's attention.

- The responsibility for selecting the correct gear in each driving situation remains with the driver, for example when overtaking or driving uphill.

An optimally selected gear helps to save fuel.

For vehicles with manual transmission, the gear recommendation display is turned off when you press the clutch pedal. For vehicles with automatic transmission, the gear recommendation display is turned off when you leave the tiptronic position.

Eco tips

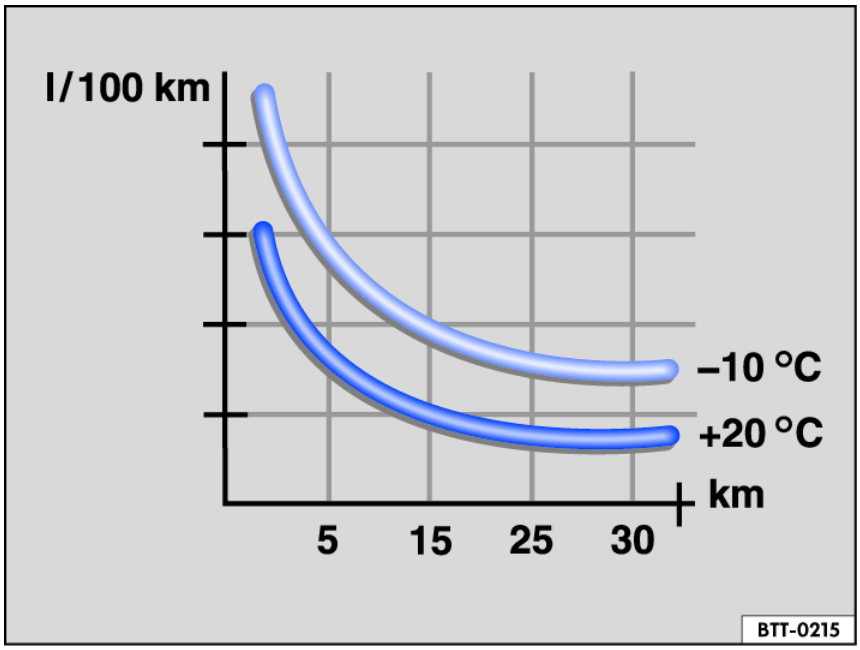


Fig. 90 Fuel consumption in mpg (l/100 km) for two different environmental temperatures.

The correct driving style can help to reduce consumption, pollution, and wear on the engine, brakes, and tires. The following tips will help you conserve the environment and your money.

Anticipatory driving

An inconsistent driving style increases consumption. When the driver actively pays attention to traffic, this can prevent frequent acceleration and braking maneuvers. Maintaining enough distance to the vehicle driving ahead helps you to drive with better anticipation.

Energy recuperation in vehicles with mHEV system

Whenever you brake or decelerate, energy can be recovered and stored.

Whenever you have to brake and rolling is not possible, the switch from the accelerator pedal to the brake pedal should be quick and even. This ensures the best possible use of energy recuperation. No fuel is consumed.

Using the freewheel function

Vehicles with an automatic transmission: If neither the accelerator nor the brake pedal is pressed in the **D** selector lever position, the vehicle will roll (“coast”) using hardly any energy.

With the Eco coasting function, the engine will not only disengage but will also stop. No energy is recuperated, but the vehicle can roll a very long distance without fuel consumption with a predictive driving style.

Avoiding full acceleration

Excessively high speeds increase the rolling resistance and air resistance and with that, the power needed to move the vehicle. Never drive at the maximum vehicl speed.

Drive off immediately

Deactivate the vehicle's drive system when you are at a standstill for a prolonged period, e.g., in a traffic jam or at a railway crossing.

Refuel in moderation

A full fuel tank increases the vehicle weight. A fuel tank that is half to three-quarters full is best suited for city driving.

Avoid short trips

A cold engine has a very high consumption rate. The optimal operating temperature is only reached after several kilometers (miles). When outside temperatures ar very low, for example in winter, the consumption is much higher than average *fig. 90*. Plan trips economically and combine short trips.

Have maintenance performed regularly

Regular maintenance is required for fuel-efficient driving and increases the service life of the vehicle.

Checking tire pressures

Low tire pressures cause wear as well as increased rolling resistance of tires, and this increases consumption. Use tires with optimal rolling resistance.

Adapt the tire pressures to the load:

- Follow the specifications on the tire pressure label ⇒ *Tire pressure*.
- Tire Pressure Monitoring System ⇒ *Tire Pressure Monitoring System*

Using synthetic engine oil

Full synthetic engine oils with a low viscosity reduce the frictional resistance in the engine and distribute significantly better and faster when cold-starting the engine

Removing unnecessary weight

Clearing out the luggage compartment, for example by removing empty crates or unneeded child restraints, can reduce consumption.

To keep the vehicle air resistance as low as possible, remove accessories such as ski, bicycle, and roof racks after use.

Saving energy

The alternator, which is powered by the engine, generates power for the electrical equipment, such as the climate control system, window heating, or ventilation. Saving energy is simple, for example:

- When temperatures are high, air out the vehicle before driving and drive short distances with the windows open. Then turn on the climate control system.
- Turn off electrical equipment when it is no longer needed.

⚠ WARNING

Always adapt your speed and remain a safe distance to vehicles driving ahead according to the visual, weather, road, and traffic conditions.

NOTICE

Never let the vehicle roll down mountains or hills in the **N** neutral setting. The transmission is not lubricated when this happens and this can damage it.

Learn about other ways to protect the environment. Think Blue. is the worldwide Volkswagen brand for sustainability and environmental impact.

An authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility can provide you with more information about correct maintenance and replacemer parts that are particularly energy efficient, such as new tires.

Information on the brakes

During the first 200 to 300 km (100 to 200 miles), **new brake pads** do not yet have their full braking efficiency and first need to be "worn in" ⇒ ⚠. However, you can compensate for the slightly reduced braking force by pressing firmly on the brake pedal. **During the break-in period, the braking distance during full braking or automatic braking is longer** than with brake pads that have been broken in. During the break-in period, avoid full braking and situations that place a heavy load on the brakes, such as driving too close to the vehicle ahead.

Brake pad wear depends on driving conditions and style. When driving frequently in cities and on curves or with a sporty driving style, have your brake pads checked frequently by suitably qualified professionals. Volkswagen recommends contacting your Volkswagen dealership.

When driving with **wet brakes**, for example after driving through water, in heavy rain, or after washing your vehicle, the braking efficiency can be reduced by moisture or ice on the brake rotors. You must "dry" the brakes as soon as possible by braking carefully at high speeds. Make sure there is no vehicle behind you ar that you do not endanger anyone else on the road ⇒ ⚠.

A **coating of salt on the brake rotors and brake pads** reduces the braking efficiency and increases the braking distance. If you do not apply the brakes for long periods of time on salt-covered roads, you must brake carefully to clean off the layer of salt ⇒ ⚠.

Leaving the vehicle parked for long periods of time, low mileage, and avoiding heavy braking can contribute to **corrosion** on the brake rotors and **dirty** brake pac If you usually avoid heavy braking or if there is corrosion present, occasional heavy braking at high speeds is recommended to clean the brake rotors and pads. Ensure that you do not endanger any other vehicles or anyone else on the road ⇒ ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

Driving with worn brake pads or a malfunctioning brake system can result in accidents and serious injuries.

- If you suspect that the brake pads are worn or the brake system is malfunctioning, immediately find a suitably qualified professional and have the brake pads checked and worn brake pads replaced. Volkswagen recommends contacting your Volkswagen dealership.

⚠ WARNING

New brake pads have not achieved the optimum braking efficiency yet.

- New brake pads do not have their full braking efficiency up to the first 300 km (200 miles) and need to be "worn in" first. You can make up for the reduced braking efficiency by pressing the brake pedal harder.
- To reduce the risk of accidents, serious injuries, and loss of vehicle control, drive with extra caution when the brake pads are new.

- During the break-in period for new brake pads, do not drive too close to other vehicles and avoid driving situations that place a heavy load on the brakes.

⚠ WARNING

Never let the brakes “rub” too often and too long or press the brake pedal too often and too long. Prolonged braking causes the brakes to overheat. This can considerably reduce braking performance, increase braking distance and possibly lead to a total brake system malfunction.

⚠ WARNING

Overheated brakes reduces the braking efficiency and increase the braking distance considerably.

- When driving downhill, a lot of force is placed on the brakes and they become hot quickly.
- Before driving on a long stretch of road with a steep gradient, reduce your speed by shifting down to a lower gear (with a manual transmission or in tiptronic mode of the automatic transmission). This utilizes the engine braking efficiency and reduces the load on the brakes.
- Aftermarket or damaged front spoilers can affect the air supply to the brakes and cause them to overheat.

⚠ WARNING

Wet, icy, or salt-covered brakes will take longer to brake and increase the braking distance.

- Test the brakes carefully.
- Always press the brake pedal carefully several times to dry the brakes and clear the ice and salt from them, as long as the visibility, weather, road, and traffic conditions permit.

If you are having the front brake pads checked, the rear brake pads should be checked at the same time. Regularly check the thickness of the brake pads visually by inspecting them through the openings in the wheel rims or from underneath the vehicle. If necessary, remove the wheels so that the brake pads can be inspected. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Driving a loaded vehicle

Heed the following for good vehicle handling when the vehicle is loaded:

- Stow all cargo securely ⇒ *Transporting*.
- Accelerate with extra care and caution.
- Avoid sudden braking and driving maneuvers.
- Brake earlier than usual.
- If necessary, read and heed the information about roof racks ⇒ *Roof rack*.

⚠ WARNING

Sliding loads can considerably impair the driving stability and safety of your vehicle, increase the braking distance when you brake hard or perform an emergency stop, and thus increase the risk of accidents and serious injury.

- Correctly secure the load to prevent it from sliding.
- Use suitable tie-downs or securing straps on heavy objects.
- Engage the rear seat backrests securely.

Driving with an open trunk lid

Driving with an open trunk lid can be especially dangerous. Secure all objects and the open trunk lid correctly and take sufficient precautions to reduce the amount of poisonous exhaust that enters the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

Driving with the trunk lid unlocked or open may cause serious injuries.

- Always drive with the trunk lid closed.
- Store all objects securely in the luggage compartment. Loose objects can fall out of the trunk and injure other road users.
- Always drive carefully and anticipate upcoming traffic situations.
- Avoid abrupt or sudden driving and braking maneuvers because the open trunk lid can move in an uncontrolled manner.
- Mark objects sticking out of the luggage compartment so they will be visible to others on the road. Observe legal regulations.
- If objects must stick out of the luggage compartment, never use the trunk lid to “clamp” or “secure” objects.

- If there is a roof rack with cargo on the trunk lid, always remove it before driving with an open trunk lid.

⚠ WARNING

Poisonous exhaust may enter the vehicle interior when the trunk lid is open. This can lead to a loss of consciousness, carbon monoxide poisoning, accidents, and serious injuries.

- To prevent poisonous exhaust from entering the vehicle, always drive with the trunk lid closed.
- If you absolutely must drive with the trunk lid open, take the following precautions to reduce the risk of poisonous exhaust fumes entering the vehicle interior:
  - Close all windows and the power sunroof.
  - Switch off air recirculation by the heating and fresh air system or air conditioner.
  - Open all the air vents in the instrument panel.
  - Set the blower for the heating and fresh air system or air conditioner to the highest setting.

NOTICE

Opening the trunk lid changes the height and possibly the length of the vehicle.

Driving through water on roads

Note the following to reduce the risk of vehicle damage when driving through water, for example on flooded roads:

- The water must not be **any higher** than the bottom of the vehicle body ⇒ ⓘ.
- Do not driver faster than walking speeds.
- Never stop the vehicle, drive in reverse, or stop the engine in water.
- Oncoming vehicles create waves that can raise the water level for your vehicle enough that it is not safe to drive through.
- Always manually deactivate the start-stop system when driving through water ⇒ *Start/Stop system*.

⚠ WARNING

When driving through water, mud, slush, etc., the braking effect may be delayed due to damp or icy brake rotors and brake pads in the winter, and this can extend the braking distance.

- Perform careful braking maneuvers to “dry and remove ice” from the brakes. Do not endanger road users or disregard legal regulations when doing this.
- Avoid abrupt and sudden braking maneuvers directly after driving through water.

NOTICE

Vehicle components such as the engine, transmission, suspension, or electrical system can be severely damaged by driving through water.

- Never drive through salt water because salt can cause corrosion. Immediately clean any vehicle components that come into contact with salt water using fresh water.

Breaking in the engine

A new engine needs to be broken in during the first 1000 miles (1500 km). All moving parts should be able to work together. During the first few hours of operation, the engine has a higher internal friction than it will later.

Up to 1000 km (600 miles):

- Do not accelerate fully.
- Do not use more than two thirds of the maximum engine RPM.

Between 1000 and 1500 km (600 to 1000 miles):

- Increase the speed and engine RPM *gradually*.

The driving style during the first 1000 miles (1500 km) also affects the engine's quality. Even after that – especially when the engine is cold – the engine should be driven at moderate engine speeds to reduce engine wear and increase the possible mileage.

Do not drive at too low of an engine speed (RPM). Always downshift if the engine stops running “smoothly”.

New tires ⇒ *Information about wheels and tires* and brake pads ⇒ *Information on the brakes* must be carefully broken in.

If the new engine is broken in gently, its service life is increased while, at the same time, reducing engine oil consumption.

Operating the vehicle in different countries and continents

The vehicle was manufactured by the factory for a specific country and meets those approval regulations that were valid at the time of vehicle manufacture.

If the vehicle will be used temporarily or for a brief period in another country, then read and observe the following information.

Some countries have special safety standards and regulations that differ from the vehicle configuration. Volkswagen recommends obtaining information about legal regulations from an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility before driving in other countries.

If the vehicle is sold in another country or will be used for an extended period in another country, then the applicable legal regulations in that country must be observed.

Certain equipment may need to be installed or removed and functions may need to be deactivated. The scope and types of service may also be affected. This particularly applies if the vehicle is being operated for an extended period in a different climate region.

Due to the many different frequency bands around the world, the Infotainment system installed at the factory may not function in other countries.

NOTICE

- Volkswagen is not responsible for damage to the vehicle caused by substandard fuel, insufficient service, or not using Volkswagen Genuine parts.
- Volkswagen is not responsible if the vehicle does not meet all of the applicable legal requirements in other countries and continents.

Troubleshooting

BRAKE Brake system malfunction

The red warning light turns on.

A message may also be displayed.

Do not continue driving!

1. Contact a suitably qualified professional and have the brake system checked. Volkswagen recommends contacting your Volkswagen dealership.

BRAKE WEAR Brake pad wear indicator

The red warning light turns on or flashes.

The front brake pads are worn.

1. Contact a suitably qualified professional immediately. Volkswagen recommends contacting your Volkswagen dealership.
2. Have **all** brake pads inspected and replaced, if necessary.

Unusual noises when braking

If there are sustained scraping or squeaking noises when braking, that is a sign of worn brake pads on the front or rear axle.

1. Contact a suitably qualified professional immediately. Volkswagen recommends contacting your Volkswagen dealership.
2. Have **all** brake pads inspected and replaced, if necessary.

If the vehicle's braking performance changes

If the brake pads are worn or if you notice that your vehicle does not brake as usual, e.g. the braking distance suddenly increases:

1. Contact a suitably qualified professional immediately. Volkswagen recommends contacting your Volkswagen dealership.

Starting and stopping the engine

Starter button

The starter button replaces the ignition lock (Press & Drive).



Fig. 91 Located in the lower area of the center console: Starter button for starting the engine (in vehicles with a manual gearbox).



Fig. 92 Located in the lower area of the center console: Starter button for starting the engine (in vehicles with a DSG automated transmission).

Vehicles with manual transmission: Start the engine with the starter button and by pressing the clutch pedal.

Vehicles with an automatic transmission: Start the engine with the starter button and by pressing the brake pedal.

The vehicle can only be activated when there is a valid vehicle key inside the vehicle.

Depending on the model, the starter button blinks to indicate readiness for use.

The electronic steering column lock is activated **when you leave the vehicle** by opening the driver's door when the ignition is switched off ⇒ *Steering informatio*

Switching the ignition on or off

1. Press the starter button once without pressing the brake or clutch pedal ⇒ ⚠.

Automatic ignition switch off

If the vehicle recognizes that the driver is absent when the internal combustion engine is switched off, the ignition is automatically switched off after a certain amou of time.

Engine restart function

If no valid vehicle key is detected inside the vehicle after stopping the engine, it can be started again within approximately five seconds. A message about this will b shown in the instrument cluster display.

Once this time has elapsed, the vehicle can no longer be started without a valid vehicle key inside the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

Unintentional vehicle movements can cause serious injuries.

- Do *not* press the brake pedal when switching on the ignition or the engine will start immediately.

⚠ WARNING

Careless or unintended use of the vehicle key can cause crashes and serious injuries.

- Always switch off the engine and take all vehicle keys with you when you leave the vehicle. Children or unauthorized people could lock the vehicle, start

the engine, or switch the ignition on and activate electrical equipment, such as the power windows, which could lead to serious injuries.

- Never leave children or people requiring assistance unattended in the vehicle when the vehicle is locked. In an emergency, they will not be able to leave the vehicle unassisted or care for themselves. For example, depending on the season, the temperature inside the vehicle could become very high or low, which can lead to serious injuries, illness or death, especially for very young children.
- Never start the engine or let it run in unventilated or enclosed spaces. Among other substances, engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide, an odorless and colorless poisonous gas. Carbon monoxide can cause loss of consciousness and death.

Always switch the ignition off manually before leaving the vehicle and note any messages in the instrument cluster display.

The vehicle being stationary for long periods with the ignition switched on can cause the 12 V vehicle battery to drain and then it will not be possible to start the engine.

Starting the engine

Starting the engine

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Set the electronic parking brake.
3. Vehicles with an automatic transmission: Press and hold the brake pedal until the engine has started. Engage gear **N** or parking lock **P**.
4. Vehicles with manual transmission: Fully press and hold the clutch pedal until the engine has started. Bring the gearshift lever to the neutral position.
5. Press the starter button ⇒ *Starter button* briefly and do not press the accelerator pedal. A valid vehicle key must be inside the vehicle for the engine to start.
6. If the engine does not start, stop the starting procedure and try again after approximately one minute.
7. If the vehicle was locked with the vehicle key, the starter button will be deactivated. If you are in the vehicle and you need to start the engine, unlock the vehicle first or perform an emergency start ⇒ *Troubleshooting*.

Performing an emotion start (R models only)

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Set the electronic parking brake.
3. Press and hold the starter button with the brake pedal not depressed until the message Please depress the brake appears in the instrument cluster ⇒ *Starter button*.
4. Press and hold the brake pedal until the engine has started, but do not press the accelerator pedal. The engine starts with a briefly increased idle speed. A valid vehicle key must be inside the vehicle for the engine to start.
5. If the engine does not start, stop the starting procedure and try again after approximately one minute.
6. If the vehicle was locked with the vehicle key, the starter button will be deactivated. If you are in the vehicle and you need to restart the engine, unlock the vehicle or perform an emergency start ⇒ *Troubleshooting*.

⚠ WARNING

The risk of serious injuries can be reduced when the engine is running or when starting the engine.

- Never start the engine or let it run in unventilated or enclosed spaces. Among other substances, engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide, an odorless and colorless poisonous gas. Carbon monoxide can cause loss of consciousness and death.
- Never start the engine or let it run if oil, fuel, or other highly flammable operating materials are under the vehicle, near the vehicle, or dripping from the vehicle, for example as a result of damage.
- Never leave the vehicle unattended when the engine is running, especially if a gear is engaged. The vehicle could move suddenly or perform an unusual action, increasing the risk of damage, fires, and serious injuries.
- Never use a start booster. A start booster can explode and cause sudden engine revving.

NOTICE

The starter or engine can be damaged if you try to restart the engine while driving or immediately after switching it off.

NOTICE

Avoid high engine speeds, full acceleration and heavy engine loads when the engine is cold.

NOTICE

Do not push start or tow start the vehicle. Uncombusted fuel can damage the catalytic converter.

Do not let the engine run to warm up while the vehicle is parked. Begin driving as soon as there is enough visibility through the windows. This allows the engine to reach its operating temperature sooner and reduces the emissions.

Major electrical equipment switches off temporarily when starting the engine.

If there is no vehicle key in the vehicle or the key is not detected, a message will appear in the instrument cluster display. This can occur if another signal interferes with the remote control vehicle key or if the remote control vehicle key is covered by an object, such as a metal case.

For example, if the vehicle key button cell battery is weak or drained, the engine cannot be started with the starter button. If this is the case, use the emergency start function ⇒ *Troubleshooting*.

After starting, operating noises may be temporarily higher than usual while the engine is cold. This is normal and not a cause for concern.

Stopping the engine

1. Bringing the vehicle to a stop ⇒ ⚠.
2. Park the vehicle ⇒ *Parking*.
3. Press the starter button briefly. If the engine cannot be turned off, perform an emergency shut-off ⇒ *Troubleshooting*.
4. Pay attention to the messages in the instrument cluster ⇒ *Introduction to the instrument cluster*.

Car wash function

Vehicles with an automatic transmission: If the ignition is switched off in gear **N**, the vehicle will be capable of rolling for 30 minutes. After this time, the parking lock is automatically engaged when the vehicle is stationary. A corresponding warning message is shown in the instrument cluster display one minute before the parking lock **P** is automatically engaged.

Exit warning

When the driver door is opened, a warning chime sounds and warning notifications appear in the instrument cluster display to warn you that you are exiting a vehicle that can roll.

⚠ WARNING

Never turn the engine off when the vehicle is in motion. That can result in loss of control of the vehicle, accidents, and serious injuries.

- The airbags and safety belt pretensioners will not function.
- Braking support will not work. You must apply more pressure on the brake pedal to stop.
- Power steering will not work. You must use more force to steer.
- When the ignition is switched off, the steering column lock could engage and you would not be able to steer the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

Exhaust system components will become very hot. This can result in fires and serious injuries.

- Never park the vehicle in such a way that exhaust system components come into contact with flammable materials under the vehicle, for example shrubs, leaves, dry grass, spilled fuel, etc.
- Never use additional undercoating or corrosion protection for exhaust pipes, catalytic converters, heat shields, or particulate filters.

NOTICE

The engine can overheat after turning it off if the vehicle is driven with a high engine load for a long period of time.

- Let the engine run in neutral for approximately two minutes before turning it off to reduce the risk of engine damage.

The radiator fan in the engine compartment may continue running for several minutes after turning the engine off, even if the ignition is switched off. The radiator fan will turn off automatically.

Electronic immobilizer

The immobilizer helps prevent the engine from being started and the vehicle from being moved with an unauthorized vehicle key.

There is a chip in the vehicle key. It is used to automatically deactivate the electronic immobilizer when there is a valid remote control vehicle key in the vehicle interior.

The electronic immobilizer is automatically activated as soon as there is no valid vehicle key in the vehicle.

The engine can only be started with a Volkswagen Genuine vehicle key that is coded correctly. You can obtain coded vehicle keys from an authorized Volkswagen

dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Only using Volkswagen Genuine vehicle keys will ensure that your vehicle operates correctly.

Troubleshooting



Fig. 93 In the center armrest: Emergency start function.

Engine control malfunction

The red warning light turns on.

Engine control is malfunctioning.

The vehicle's drive power may be limited or completely missing.

It may not be possible to continue driving, or only with limitations.

1. Safely park the vehicle.
2. Do not continue driving!
3. Pay attention to the text in the instrument cluster.
4. See a suitably qualified, authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility for assistance and have the engine control checked.

Engine control malfunction

The yellow indicator light turns on.

Engine control is malfunctioning.

The vehicle's drive power may be limited.

1. The instrument cluster displays the message Error: drive system. Please visit workshop.
2. Have the engine checked immediately by suitably qualified professionals. Volkswagen recommends contacting your Volkswagen dealership.

Engine control malfunction

The yellow indicator light turns on.

The driving performance of the vehicle is limited.

The driving performance has been limited to prevent the engine control components from overheating.

- The instrument cluster displays the message Error: drive system. Performance is limited.
- It is possible to continue driving with reduced driving performance.

The driving performance limitation is removed in the following scenarios:

- The engine control components are no longer within a critical temperature range.

Engine speed limited

The yellow indicator light turns on.

The engine speed has been limited to reduce the risk of the engine overheating.

The instrument cluster display shows the engine speed.

The engine speed limitation is removed in the following scenarios:

- The engine is no longer within a critical temperature range.
- The driver's foot is removed from the accelerator pedal.

together with Engine speed limitation due to engine control malfunction

The yellow indicator lights turn on.

The engine speed limitation is triggered by an engine control malfunction.

The drive system's power may be limited.

1. Make sure the displayed RPM is not exceeded.
2. Have the engine checked immediately by suitably qualified professionals. Volkswagen recommends contacting your Volkswagen dealership.

Valid vehicle key cannot be detected

A corresponding indicator appears in the instrument cluster display.

If the vehicle key has a weak or drained button cell battery, the vehicle key may not be able to be detected.

An **emergency start** must be performed:

1. Press and hold the brake pedal.
2. Place the vehicle key in the rear cup holder in the center armrest and press the starter button *fig. 93*.

The ignition will switch on automatically and the engine may start.

The engine cannot be turned off

The engine cannot be turned off when the starter button is pressed briefly.

An emergency stop must be performed:

1. Press the starter button twice within several seconds or press and hold one time.

The engine will stop automatically ⇒ *Starter button*.

The engine cannot be started

If an unauthorized vehicle key is used or the system is malfunctioning, a corresponding indicator appears in the instrument cluster display.

1. Use an authorized vehicle key.
2. If the malfunction persists, seek assistance from qualified professionals.

Start/Stop system

Start-stop system

The start-stop system automatically switches the engine off when you stop and when the vehicle is stationary. The engine starts again automatically when needed.

Switching on the start-stop system

The function is automatically activated every time the ignition is switched on.

Always manually deactivate the start-stop system when driving through water.

1. Press and hold the brake pedal to stop the vehicle. The engine turns off shortly before the vehicle becomes stationary.
2. To restart the engine, take your foot off the brake pedal or press the accelerator pedal.

Indicator lights

When indicator light Ⓐ comes on, the start-stop system is available and the automatic engine stop is active.

When indicator light comes on, the start-stop system is not available ⇒ Ⓘ.

Important conditions for automatic engine switch off

- The driver is wearing their safety belt.
- The driver door is closed.
- The hood is closed.
- A minimum engine temperature has been reached.
- The vehicle interior temperature is within the preset temperature value and air humidity is not too high.
- The air conditioner's defrost function is not switched on.
- The charge level of the 12-volt vehicle battery is sufficient.

- Vehicles with mHEV system: The charge level of the 48-volt vehicle battery is sufficient.
- The temperature of the 12-volt vehicle battery is neither too low or too high.
- The vehicle is not on a large uphill or downhill gradient.
- The steering wheel is not significantly turned.
- Reverse gear is not engaged.
- Park Assist is not activated.

If the conditions for automatic engine switch-off are only achieved during a stationary phase, then the engine may also switch off at this point, e.g. if the defrost function is switched off.

Conditions for automatic restart

The engine can start automatically under the following conditions:

- If the vehicle interior heats up or cools down significantly.
- If the vehicle starts to move.
- If the electrical voltage in the 12-volt vehicle battery falls.
- Vehicles with mHEV system: If the electrical voltage in the 48 V battery falls.

In principle the following applies: The engine always restarts automatically when required for the identified situation and vehicle.

Conditions that make manual engine start necessary

The engine must be started manually under the following conditions:

- The driver's door is opened.
- The hood is opened.

Manually deactivating and activating the start-stop system

The start/stop system can be manually deactivated and activated in the Infotainment system.

Manually deactivating the start-stop system:

1. Tap the Vehicle function key in the menu selection.
2. Tap the Status function key.
3. Tap the (A) OFF StartStop function key to deactivate the start-stop system. If the start/stop system is deactivated, the (A) OFF StartStop function key has a blue background.

Manually activating the start-stop system:

1. Tap the Vehicle function key in the menu selection.
2. Tap the Status function key.
3. Tap the (A) OFF StartStop function key to activate the start-stop system.

If the start/stop system has switched off the engine, it will start again as soon as the system is deactivated with the (A) OFF StartStop function key.

Vehicles with mHEV system: If the start-stop system has switched off the engine and the system was deactivated via the (A) OFF StartStop function key, the engine w only start when the vehicle is stationary.

Always manually deactivate the start-stop system when driving through water.

Deactivating the start-stop function does not deactivate the eco-coasting function.

Start/stop mode with Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

The engine is switched off after the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) has brought the vehicle to a stop with active braking support ⇒ *Adaptive Cruise Control*.

In the following scenarios, the engine restarts if ACC is active:

- The accelerator pedal is pressed.
- The ACC resumes speed and distance control again.
- The vehicle in front has moved on.

The engine also restarts if the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) is deactivated and the vehicle in front moves on.

⚠ WARNING

Never switch off the ignition when the vehicle is in motion. That can result in loss of control of the vehicle, accidents, and serious injuries.

- The airbags and safety belt pretensioners will not function.
- Braking support will not work. You must apply more pressure on the brake pedal to stop.

- Power steering will not work. You must use more force to steer.
- When you switch the ignition off, the steering column lock could engage and you would not be able to steer the vehicle.
- Always deactivate the start-stop system when working in the engine compartment.

NOTICE

If the start-stop system is used for a very long period of time at very high outside temperatures, this can damage the 12-volt vehicle battery.

In some cases you may need to restart the engine manually. Pay attention to the relevant message on the instrument cluster display.

Always manually deactivate the start-stop system when driving through water.

Troubleshooting

The engine no longer starts automatically

The red warning light turns on.

There is a start-stop system malfunction.

1. Start the engine manually ⇒ *Starting the engine*.
2. Seek assistance from suitably qualified professionals immediately. Volkswagen recommends contacting your Volkswagen dealership.

Manual transmission

Manual transmission: Engaging a gear

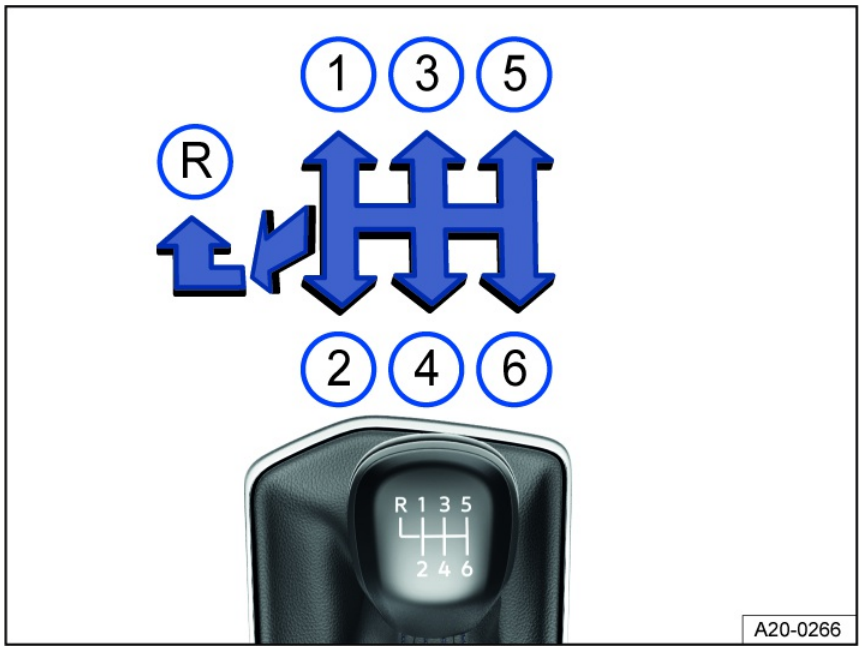


Fig. 94 Gear shift pattern for 6-speed manual transmission.

Your vehicle may be equipped with a 5-speed manual transmission.

Engaging forward gear

The positions of the individual gears are depicted on the gear lever.

1. Fully depress the clutch pedal and hold.
2. Move the gearshift lever into the desired position ⇒ ⚠.
3. Release the clutch pedal to engage the clutch.

In some countries the clutch pedal must be fully depressed to start the engine.

Engaging reverse gear

Only select reverse gear when the vehicle is stationary.

1. Fully depress the clutch pedal and hold ⇒ ⚠.
2. Move the gearshift lever to the neutral position and push it down.

3. Push the gearshift lever all the way to the left and then forward into the reverse gear position *fig. 94* □.
4. Release the clutch pedal to engage the clutch.

Downshifting

You should always downshift gear-by-gear when driving, i.e. into the next gear down, and at engine speeds that are not too high ⇒ ⚠. At high speeds or engine speeds, skipping a gear or several gears when downshifting can result in damage to the clutch or transmission, even if the clutch is not engaged when doing so ⇒ ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

Fast acceleration can cause traction loss and sliding, especially on slippery roads. This could cause loss in vehicle control, accidents, and serious injuries.

- Only accelerate quickly when the visibility, weather, road, and traffic conditions allow it, and when other road users will not be endangered by the vehicle's acceleration and driving style.
- Always adapt your driving style to the flow of traffic.
- If you switch off the traction control system, the drive gears may spin, especially on wet, icy or dirty roads. This can cause the vehicle to become out of control or difficult to steer.

⚠ WARNING

When the engine is running, the vehicle immediately begins to move as soon as a gear is engaged and the clutch pedal has been released. This applies even if the electronic parking brake is switched on.

- Never engage reverse gear when the vehicle is in motion.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrectly downshifting into gears that are too low can result in loss of vehicle control as well as accidents and serious injuries.

NOTICE

If the gearshift lever is shifted to a gear that is too low at high speeds or high engine speeds, it can result in significant damage to the clutch and transmission. This also applies when the clutch pedal remains pressed and the clutch is not engaged.

NOTICE

Follow the points below to avoid damage and premature wear:

- Do not rest your hand on the gearshift lever while driving. The pressure from your hand is transmitted to the selector forks in the transmission.
- Ensure that the vehicle is completely stationary before engaging reverse gear.
- Always fully depress the clutch pedal when shifting gears.
- Do not hold your vehicle stationary on inclines by “slipping” the clutch while the engine is running.

Early upshifting helps to save fuel and reduces operating noise.

Troubleshooting

Clutch “slips”

The yellow indicator light turns on.

The clutch does not transmit the full engine torque.

1. Take foot from clutch pedal if required.

Clutch overheats

The yellow indicator light turns on.

An audible warning may also sound ⇒ *Manual transmission*.

The clutch can become overheated, for example due to frequent start-ups, allowing the vehicle to “creep” forward for long distances, or in stop-and-go traffic.

You are notified of overheating by a warning light, or possibly several warning lights, as well as a text notification in the instrument cluster display.

1. It is possible to continue driving.

Faulty clutch

The yellow indicator light turns on.

The clutch is faulty.

Drive on carefully.

1. Contact professional assistance qualified in this respect. Otherwise the clutch may become severely damaged.

Automatic transmission

DSG® automated transmission system function

Description

The vehicle is equipped with a DSG® automated transmission.

The DSG® automated transmission is a **transmission with dual-clutch technology that switches automatically**. A dual clutch and two mutually independent gear train halves permit very fast shifting without loss of traction force. The DSG® automated transmission combines the performance and economic efficiency of a manual transmission with the comfort and convenience of a conventional automatic gearbox.

System function

When driving, engine force is transmitted through the transmission to the drive axles. The power transmission between the engine and transmission must be interrupted to change a gear. The clutch is needed for this.

In the case of the DSG® automated transmission with its two gear train halves, the engine force is always on a gear train half when driving. When changing a gear, the next highest or next lowest gear is already engaged in the second gear train half without a load. Then the clutch of the load-free gear is closed and the other gear is opened at the same time. This permits very fast shifting.

Thanks to its design, the DSG® automated transmission is more efficient than an automatic gearbox. While the torque converter of an automatic gearbox is in use the entire time, the DSG® automated transmission can open when idling and therefore save fuel. Due to its efficiency, its low weight and intelligent control, the DSG® automated transmission normally permits the same or improved fuel consumption in comparison to a manual transmission.

As is the case for the manual transmission, also the clutch in the DSG® automated transmission is subject to wear. Depending on the type of DSG® automated transmission, regular maintenance is required, further information is available at ⇒ *Service*. In the case of an error in the gear train half, the DSG® automated transmission also offers the option to switch off a gear train half and continue driving with the other gear train half ⇒ *Troubleshooting*. The transmission must then be checked immediately by suitably qualified professionals. Volkswagen recommends contacting your Volkswagen dealership.

Automatic transmission: Selecting a position

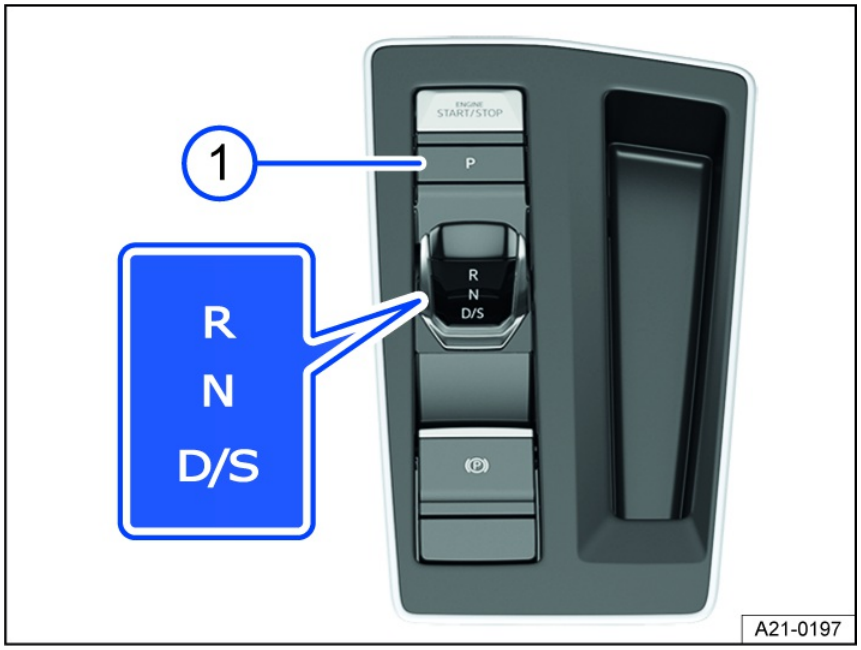


Fig. 95 Automatic transmission selector lever with P parking lock button.

When the ignition is switched on, the gear position that is currently selected is shown on the instrument cluster display and on the selector lever.

When operating the brake or selecting a gear, the gear shift pattern is displayed in the instrument cluster.

P – Parking lock

The drive gears are locked. Only select this gear when the vehicle is *stationary*.

To engage the parking lock, press the **P** button *fig. 95* (1).

If you switch off the engine when the selector lever is in the **D/S** or **R** positions, the transmission will automatically engage the **P** position, which prevents the vehi

from rolling away.

If the engine is switched off when selector lever position **N** is selected, the transmission remains in neutral position **N** for approximately 30 minutes and only then activates parking lock **P** (car wash function) ⇒ *Stopping the engine*.

R – Reverse gear

Reverse gear is selected. Only select this gear when the vehicle is *stationary*.

N – Neutral

The transmission is in the neutral setting. No power is transferred to the wheels and the engine braking effect is not available.

D/S – Drive

gear: normal program.

The transmission upshifts and downshifts automatically when in the forward driving gears. The shifting time depends on the engine load, the personal driving style, and the driving speed.

gear: sport program.

The driving gears automatically upshift *later* and downshift *earlier* than in **D** gear in order to fully utilize the engine power reserves. The shifting time depends on the engine load, the personal driving style, and the driving speed.

To switch between **D** and **S** gears, tap the selector lever toward the rear.

The selector lever will always spring back to the center position.

Selector lever position S+: Sport Plus program

The forward gears automatically upshift *later* and downshift *earlier* than in **S** gear in order to fully utilize the engine power reserves.

Activating the Sport Plus program:

1. Select the Drift or Special driving mode in the Driving Mode Selection ⇒ *Selecting the driving mode*. The Sport Plus program is active immediately.

Deactivating the Sport Plus program:

1. Tap the selector lever toward the rear.

To switch between **S** and **S+** gears, tap the selector lever toward the rear.

Changing gear

To select the nearest selector lever position, move the selector lever backward or forward to the first pressure point. The selector lever will then return to its starting position.

To skip a selector lever position, move the selector lever beyond the pressure point and in the direction you require. The selector lever will then return to its starting position. Thus, it is possible to shift from selector lever position **D** directly to selector lever position **R**, for example. In doing so, selector lever position **N** is skipped.

⚠ WARNING

Engaging the incorrect gear can cause you to lose control of the vehicle, which could lead to accidents and serious injuries.

- Never press the accelerator pedal when engaging a gear.
- If you release the brake pedal while the engine is running and a gear is engaged, the vehicle will start moving.
- Never shift to reverse gear **R** while driving or engage the **P** parking lock while driving.

⚠ WARNING

Unintentional vehicle movements can cause serious injuries.

- As the driver, never leave the driver seat when the engine is running and a gear is engaged. If you have to leave the vehicle while the engine is running, always set the electronic parking brake and move the selector lever to the **P** position.
- When the engine is running and the **D/S** or **R** gear is engaged, hold the vehicle with the brake pedal. Even at idle speed, power is still being transmitted and the vehicle will “creep”.
- Never shift into reverse gear **R** or engage the parking lock **P** while the vehicle is moving.
- Never leave the vehicle in selector lever position **N**. The vehicle will roll downhill regardless of whether the engine is running or not.

NOTICE

If you accidentally shift into N when driving in Eco mode E, take your foot off the accelerator pedal and wait for the engine to reach idle speed before shifting back to D or S.

NOTICE

If the electronic parking brake is **not** switched on when the vehicle is stationary and the brake pedal is released when **P** is engaged, the vehicle may move forward or backward a few inches.

If N is engaged by mistake while driving, remove your foot from the accelerator pedal. Wait until the engine is at idle speed in neutral before shifting into a drive gear.

Shifting using tiptronic

The tiptronic mode allows you to shift gears manually on an automatic transmission.



Fig. 96 Steering wheel with shift paddles for Tiptronic.

You can switch to the tiptronic program from gears **D** and **S** by pulling a shift paddle *fig. 96*.

From gear **D**, the tiptronic program is switched on **temporarily**.

From gear **S**, the tiptronic program is switched on **permanently**.

When shifting in the tiptronic program, the gear currently engaged is maintained. This applies until the system shifts gears automatically when the speed threshold reached.

As soon as the gearbox has switched to the Tiptronic program, this is indicated in the instrument cluster display with M.

If the engine is switched off while the gearbox is in Tiptronic mode, the gearbox engages the electronic parking brake **P**. The vehicle is secured from rolling away.

Operating Tiptronic with the shift paddles

1. To shift up a gear, pull the right-hand shift paddle toward the steering wheel *fig. 96*.
2. To shift down a gear, pull the left-hand shift paddle toward the steering wheel.
3. To engage the lowest gear, pull the left-hand shift paddle toward the steering wheel and hold it there.

NOTICE

When accelerating, the transmission automatically upshifts to the next gear shortly before the maximum permissible engine RPM is reached.

NOTICE

When downshifting manually, the transmission only shifts if it is no longer possible to over-rev the engine.

Leaving the tiptronic program

1. Exits automatically after 8 seconds if the tiptronic program was initiated from gear **D**.

   Or: push the selector lever back and release again to engage gear **D**.

   Or: Pull the right-hand shift paddle towards the steering wheel for about three seconds and release again.

Gear M+: Sport Plus program, manual mode

The forward gears are shifted up and down manually in order to fully utilize the engine's power reserves. The gear **does not** shift automatically when the engine speed threshold is reached.

Activating the M+ program:

1. Select the Drift or Special driving mode in the Driving Mode Selection ⇒ *Selecting the driving mode*. The Sport Plus program is active immediately.
2. Pull the right- or left-hand shift paddle *fig. 96*.

Deactivating the M+ program:

1. Pull the right-hand shift paddle toward the steering wheel and hold it there *fig. 96*.

   Or: Tap the back of the selector lever.

WARNING

Incorrectly downshifting into gears that are too low can result in loss of vehicle control as well as accidents and serious injuries.

NOTICE

At high vehicle or engine speeds, the clutch and gearbox can sustain significant damage if the selected gear is too low.

Early upshifting helps to save fuel and reduces operating noise.

Driving with an automatic transmission

The transmission shifts up and down automatically when in the forward driving gears.

Driving on an incline

The steeper the incline, the lower the gear that you should select. Lower gears increase the engine braking effect. Never let the vehicle roll down mountains or hills in the **N** neutral setting.

1. Reduce your speed.
2. Switch the transmission to Tiptronic mode ⇒ *Shifting using tiptronic*.
3. Downshift using the shift paddles on the steering wheel ⇒ *Shifting using tiptronic*.

Stopping and starting to drive uphill

The steeper the hill, the lower the gear that you should select.

Auto Hold should be used when stopping or starting uphill when the engine is running ⇒ *Auto Hold*.

Coasting with a DSG® automated transmission

When coasting, the vehicle's momentum is used to save fuel with predictive driving. The engine does not slow down the vehicle, so it can roll for a longer period. The function is only available in gear **D** and within a speed range of around 4–99 mph (7–160 km/h) when the accelerator pedal is not depressed.

R models only: The coasting feature is only available in **Convenience** driving mode.

If the brake pedal is actuated when rolling **below** a speed of 25 mph (40 km/h), the engine will remain switched off until the vehicle is stationary.

If the brake pedal is actuated when rolling **above** a speed of 25 mph (40 km/h), the coasting feature will be canceled and the engine will start.

When rolling without braking, the engine starts again automatically when the vehicle reaches “creeping pace”.

The engine may restart automatically to ensure the engine restarts safely and there is a secure supply of electricity to the vehicle electrical system.

Triggering coasting

1. Vehicles with eco-coasting function: In the Driving Mode Selection, select the **Eco or Convenience** driving mode ⇒ *Selecting the driving mode*.
2. Take your foot off the accelerator. The engine is disengaged and in neutral. The vehicle is rolling without any engine braking effect.
3. Vehicles with eco-coasting function: Take your foot off the accelerator. The engine may be disengaged and switched off automatically.

Interrupting coasting

1. Press the brake pedal.

   Or: Briefly press the accelerator pedal.

   Or: Pull the shift paddle toward the steering wheel.

   Or: change driving profiles from **Eco or Comfort**.

Kick-down

The kick-down function makes maximum acceleration possible in the **D**, **S** gears or in tiptronic mode.

When you press the accelerator pedal all the way down, the automatic transmission downshifts into a lower gear, depending on the vehicle speed and engine RPM This utilizes the full acceleration power of the vehicle ⇒ .

With kick-down, the automatic upshift to the next gear only occurs if the maximum predefined engine RPM is reached.

If the **Eco** driving mode is selected ⇒ *Selecting the driving mode* and the accelerator pedal is pressed down beyond the pressure point, the engine output is automatically regulated to achieve maximum vehicle acceleration.

Launch Control Program

The Launch Control Program provide maximum acceleration from a standstill.

1. Switch off the traction control system or switch on ESC Sport on sports model versions ⇒ *Switching the braking support system on and off* .
2. Use your left foot to press down on the brake pedal and hold it.
3. Engage gear **S** or tiptronic mode, or the **Race** driving mode on sports model versions.
4. Use your right foot to press down on the accelerator pedal until an engine speed of approx. 3200 rpm to 4000 rpm is automatically held.

   Depending on the model, a message in the instrument cluster displays the activation of the Launch Control Program.
5. Take your left foot off the brake ⇒ (!). The vehicle starts with maximum acceleration.
6. Switch the traction control system back on or switch ESC Sport off after acceleration.

⚠ WARNING

Fast acceleration can cause traction loss and sliding, especially on slippery roads. This could cause loss in vehicle control, accidents, and serious injuries.

- Always adapt your driving style to the flow of traffic.
- Only use the kick-down function or accelerate quickly when the visibility, weather, road, and traffic conditions allow it, and when other road users will not be endangered by the vehicle's acceleration and driving style.
- Please note that the drive wheels can continue to spin and the vehicle can slide if ASR is switched off, especially if the road is slippery.
- Switch the traction control system back on after the acceleration.
- Only use the Launch Control Program when road and traffic conditions permit it.

⚠ WARNING

Never let the brakes “rub” too often and too long or press the brake pedal too often and too long. Prolonged braking causes the brakes to overheat. This can considerably reduce braking performance, increase braking distance and possibly lead to a total brake system malfunction.

(!) NOTICE

- If you stop on inclines when a gear is engaged, do not press the accelerator pedal to prevent the vehicle from rolling away. This can cause the automatic transmission to overheat and can damage it.
- Never let the vehicle roll in the **N** gear, especially when the engine is stopped. The automatic transmission is not lubricated and this can damage it.
- Vehicles with the Launch Control Program: All vehicle components are put under intense strain when accelerating with the Launch Control Program. This can cause increased wear.

(!) NOTICE

Never let the brakes “rub” by pressing the pedal lightly when braking is not really necessary. This increases wear.

Troubleshooting

The engine is not starting

The green indicator light turns on.

The brake pedal was not pressed, for example when trying to shift to another gear using the selector lever.

1. Press the brake pedal to select a gear.

   See also electronic parking brake ⇒ *Using the electronic parking brake* .

Transmission overheating

The yellow indicator light turns on.

An audible warning may also sound. Where applicable, a message will appear in the instrument cluster display.

The DSG® automated transmission can become heated, for example to frequent start-ups, allowing the vehicle to “creep” forward for long distances, or in stop-and go traffic.

Do not continue driving!

1. Let the transmission cool down with **P** engaged ⇒ (!).
2. If the indicator light does not turn off, do not continue driving.
3. Contact professional assistance qualified in this respect. Otherwise, the transmission could become severely damaged.

Selector lever lock emergency release

If there is a loss of power, for example, the 12 V vehicle battery is drained and the vehicle should be towed, then the selector lever lock must be released manually. Contact professional assistance qualified in this respect.

Emergency program

If all of the selector lever position displays have a gray background on the instrument cluster display, this means there is a system malfunction. The DSG ® automated transmission runs in emergency mode. The vehicle can still be driven in emergency mode, but only at a reduced speed and not in all gears.

With the DSG® automated transmission, it may **no longer be possible to drive in reverse gear** in some cases.

In all cases, have the DSG ® automated transmission checked immediately by suitably qualified professionals. Volkswagen recommends contacting your Volkswagen dealership.

Vehicle is not moving even when a drive gear is engaged

If the vehicle does not move in the desired direction, the system may not have engaged the drive position correctly.

1. Press the brake pedal and select the drive position again.
2. If the vehicle still does not move in the desired direction, there is a system malfunction. See a suitably qualified authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility for assistance to have the system checked.

⚠ WARNING

Never release the parking lock **P** once the electronic parking brake is switched off. Otherwise, the vehicle may start to move unexpectedly on inclines or hills, which could then lead to accidents and serious injuries.

NOTICE

If you allow the vehicle to roll for a long period of time or at high speed with the engine off and in the **N** gear, the DSG® automated transmission will be damage e.g. in the case of towing.

NOTICE

- Immediately stop the vehicle safely or drive faster than 12 mph (20 km/h) the first time the vehicle indicates that the transmission is overheating.
- Stop the vehicle safely and switch off the engine as soon as possible if the message and audible warning are repeating approximately every 10 seconds. Let the transmission cool down.
- Only continue driving when the audible warning stops to reduce the risk of damaging the transmission. As long as the transmission is overheated, avoid starting the vehicle and driving slowly, like at walking speeds.

Driving on slopes

Downhill speed control

Downhill speed control helps when braking when traveling downhill on vehicles with DSG ® automated transmission ⇒ ⚠. Downhill speed control does this by using the braking power of the engine.

The DSG® automated transmission selects the optimum gear itself, depending on the present gradient and current speed. The selector lever must be in the **D/S** selector lever position. Downhill speed control is **not** active in Tiptronic mode.

As the downhill speed control can only downshift as far as third gear, you may need to switch to Tiptronic mode on very steep downhill stretches. In Tiptronic mode, manually shift into second or first gear to use the engine's braking power and reduce the load on the brakes.

While downhill speed control is active, the start-stop system is automatically deactivated.

Downhill speed control activates automatically:

- If the gradient is greater than approximately 6%.
- **And:** if the selector lever is in the **D/S** selector lever position.
- **Also, for switched-off cruise control system or Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC):** If the speed is slower than approximately 80 km/h (50 mph) **or** the brake is pressed.
- **Also, for active cruise control system or Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC):** If the stored speed is exceeded.

Downhill speed control deactivates automatically:

- When the gradient decreases.
- **Or:** if the transmission upshifts because the engine speed is greater than approximately 4500 rpm.
- **Also, for active cruise control system or Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC):** If the stored speed can be maintained.

⚠ WARNING

The intelligent technology of downhill speed control cannot overcome the natural laws of physics and it can only operate within the limits of the system. Do not allow the increased convenience of the downhill speed control to tempt you into taking risks.

- Unintentional vehicle movements can cause serious injuries.
- Downhill speed control is not a replacement for the driver's attention.
- Always adapt your speed and driving style to the visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- Downhill speed control cannot hold the vehicle on the incline or brake sufficiently going downhill in every situation, for example if the ground is slippery or icy.

⚠ WARNING

Always be ready to brake. If this is not the case, accidents and injuries may result.

- Downhill speed control is merely a tool and cannot sufficiently brake the vehicle going downhill under every circumstance.
- The vehicle can go faster despite the downhill speed control.

Steering

Steering information

To make it more difficult to steal the vehicle, the steering must always be locked before leaving the vehicle.

Steering

Power steering on an electromechanical steering system adjusts automatically based on the driving speed, the steering torque, and the steering angle of the wheels. Electromechanical power steering works only when the engine is running. The steering also works if the start-stop system engages and the engine switches off.

If the power steering system is impaired or malfunctioning, a significantly greater amount of force than normal must be used to steer.

Vehicles with eco-coasting function: The power steering also works when the engine is switched off while driving ⇒ ⚠.

On vehicles with Driving Mode Selection, power steering handling can be influenced by the selected driving mode.

Electronic steering column lock

1. Stop the vehicle, if necessary engage the parking lock **P**.
2. Switch the ignition off and then open the driver's door. The steering column will be locked.

If the steering column does **not** lock, first open the driver's door and then switch the ignition off. As long as the vehicle is unlocked, the steering column also stays unlocked.

Countersteering assist

The countersteering assist provides the driver with steering assistance in critical driving situations. Additional steering power supports the driver when countersteering ⇒ ⚠.

Progressive steering

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the progressive steering can adapt the force of the steering movement to the driving situation. Progressive steering only works when the engine is running.

In *city traffic*, less steering movement is needed for parking, maneuvering or for taking sharp bends.

On *highways* or on *expressways*, progressive steering gives a sportier, direct steering experience and noticeable dynamics, when driving along curved stretches, for instance.

⚠ WARNING

If the power steering is not functioning, the steering wheel becomes stiff, making it much more difficult to steer, which can in turn result in loss of control of the vehicle, accidents, serious injuries or death.

- Power steering works only when the engine is running.
- Never let the vehicle roll when the engine is stopped.
- Never switch off the ignition when the vehicle is in motion. The steering column lock could engage and you would not be able to steer the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

The countersteering assist together with the ESC assists the driver when steering the vehicle in critical driving situations. The driver must always steer the vehicle in every scenario. The vehicle is not steered by the countersteering assist.

NOTICE

When the vehicle is being towed, switch on the ignition so that the turn signals, horn, windshield wipers, and the windshield washer system can be activated.

Troubleshooting

Steering malfunction

The red warning light turns on or flashes.

There is an electromechanical steering or electronic steering column lock malfunction.

Do not continue driving!

1. Contact professional assistance qualified in this respect.

- If the red warning light **turns on**, it may be difficult to move the steering wheel because the electromechanical steering system is malfunctioning.
- If the red warning light **blinks**, the steering column cannot unlock.

Steering malfunction

The yellow indicator light turns on or flashes.

The steering is stiffer or more sensitive than usual.

The indicator light **comes on permanently:**

1. Restart the engine and drive the vehicle slowly for a short distance.
2. If the indicator light stays on, contact a suitably qualified professional. Volkswagen recommends contacting your Volkswagen dealership.

The indicator light **blinks:**

1. Turn the steering wheel back and forth slightly.
2. Switch the ignition off and back on.
3. Pay attention to the messages in the instrument cluster display.
4. If the indicator light continues to flash after switching the ignition back on, do not continue driving. Contact professional assistance qualified in this respect.

Driving Mode Selection

Introduction

Via the driving modes, the driver can adapt various properties of vehicle systems to the current driving situation, the desired driving comfort, and for an economic driving style. The suspension, steering, drive, and the air conditioner are some of the vehicle systems that can be adjusted.

Different driving modes are available depending on the vehicle equipment. The influence of vehicle systems on the individual driving modes depends on the vehicle equipment.

Vehicles with adaptive chassis control (DCC)

During the drive, the adaptive chassis control (DCC) adapts the suspension damping to the current ground and driving situation. The adaptive chassis control also incorporates the suspension tuning of the selected driving mode.

Vehicles with R-Performance rear axle differential with dynamic torque splitter

The R-Performance rear axle differential with dynamic torque splitter is available on R models, depending on the vehicle equipment. To achieve more traction when cornering, the system can distribute more torque to the wheel on the outside of the corner. The system also incorporates the suspension tuning of the selected driving mode.

Selecting the driving mode

The driving mode can be selected when the ignition is switched on and the vehicle is stationary or while driving.

WARNING

Selecting the driving mode while driving can distract you from traffic and increase the risk of accidents.

- Always drive attentively and responsibly.

If you select a driving mode while driving, the vehicle systems, except for Drive, will be switched over to the new driving mode immediately.

1. When the traffic situation allows it, briefly take your foot off the accelerator pedal to enable the newly selected driving mode to be applied to the Drive vehicle system as well.

Selecting the driving mode via the control in the upper center console

1. Tap the control MODE.
2. To select driving modes, tap the control MODE again or tap the preferred driving mode in the Infotainment system.

Selecting a driving mode via the button on the multi-function steering wheel

The button on the multi-function steering wheel is available on R models, depending on the vehicle equipment.

1. Press the button gently.
2. To select driving modes, press the button again gently.

   Or: To select the Race driving mode, press the button firmly.

   The Drift and Special driving modes can only be selected in the Infotainment system.

Displaying information about the driving mode

1. To display additional information about the selected driving mode, tap in the Infotainment system.

Selecting the Custom driving mode

1. Tap the control MODE until the Custom driving mode has been selected.
2. Tap ... to open the Individual menu.

Driving mode properties

Eco: The vehicle switches to fuel-efficient operation and supports the driver with an energy-saving driving style. Comfort: This driving mode is the basic setting for the vehicle systems, provides a comfort-oriented vehicle setup and is suited, for instance, for everyday use. Sport: this gives the driver a sporty feel. If the Sport driving mode is selected, vehicles with an automatic transmission switch to S. In R models with an automatic transmission, it switches to D. Race: This driving mode is only available on special sports models of the vehicle, depending on the vehicle equipment. It gives you a very sporty feel. If you select Race driving mode, the chassis suspension will be set to hard and, for vehicles with an automatic transmission, gear S will be selected. Special: This driving mode is only available on special sports models of the vehicle, depending on the vehicle equipment. If you select Special driving mode, the vehicle systems will be tuned to the road characteristics of the north loop of the Nürburgring. Drift: The Drift driving mode is only available in R models, depending on the vehicle equipment. Vehicles with R-Performance rear axle differential with dynamic torque splitter distribute high torque to the rear axle to enable vehicle handling with oversteering. When the Drift driving mode is in use, the electronic stabilization program (ESC) is in ESC Sport mode. This makes wheelspin easier and the traction control system (TCS) is switched off. Oversteering causes the rear of the vehicle to slide out. If the vehicle slides out too far, the electronic stabilization program will automatically cut back in. The Drift driving mode is intended only for race tracks or closed-off courses and should only be used by drivers who have been trained in the art of drifting and who are skilled and experienced in the art ⇛ . Always observe the country-specific laws and regulations.
For vehicles with a manual transmission: If you select the Drift driving mode, do not press down or slip the clutch while you are drifting.

Individual: you can adapt individual vehicle systems according to your preferences.

WARNING

Oversteer can cause accidents, serious injury or even death.

- Use the Drift driving mode on race tracks or closed-off courses only.
- Use the Drift driving mode only if you have been trained in the art of drifting and are skilled and experienced in the art.
- Only use Drift driving mode if the closed road is dry and free of ice and snow.
- Always adapt your speed and driving style to the visibility, weather and road conditions.

NOTICE

Drifting can cause additional wear and tear to your vehicle. Taking your vehicle beyond its limits and improper use of the Drift driving mode may affect the validity of your guarantee.

Standard behavior of the driving mode and the vehicle systems

The Comfort driving mode shows the basic settings of the vehicle systems when the ignition is switched on.

In R models, the Sport driving mode represents the basic settings for the vehicle systems when the ignition is switched on.

Behavior of the driving mode when switching the ignition off and on

If you switch the ignition off and then on again, the previously selected driving mode remains selected.

Whenever you switch the ignition in R models off and on again, the Sport driving mode is selected.

Behavior of the Drive vehicle system when the ignition is switched off and on

The Drive vehicle system settings are reset to the Comfort driving mode settings when you switch the ignition off and on again.

In R models, the settings for the Drive vehicle system are reset to the Sport driving mode settings when you switch the ignition off and on again.

The other vehicle systems will retain their settings if you switch the ignition off and on again.

You can change the Drive vehicle system back to the preferred driving mode:

- Select your desired driving mode again.

Troubleshooting

Adaptive chassis control malfunction

The yellow indicator light turns on.

The message Fault: Damper control may appear in the instrument cluster display.

1. Contact suitably qualified professionals to have the system checked. Volkswagen recommends contacting your Volkswagen dealership.

Malfunction in the all-wheel drive

The yellow indicator light turns on.

The rear axle differential may be overheated.

The message All-wheel drive is not working. It is not possible to continue driving. Please contact workshop. may appear in the instrument cluster display.

1. Park the vehicle for about 10 minutes and then continue driving with adapted speed and driving style.
2. If the malfunction persists, contact a suitably qualified professional. Volkswagen recommends contacting your Volkswagen dealership.

The driving mode or the vehicle systems do not behave as expected

1. Pay attention to the standard behavior of the driving mode and the vehicle systems ⇒ *Standard behavior of the driving mode and the vehicle systems*.

Driver assistance systems

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

Introduction

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) maintains your selected speed. When the vehicle approaches a vehicle driving ahead, the ACC adjusts the speed automatically and maintains your set distance to the vehicle driving ahead.

Does this vehicle have ACC?

The vehicle has ACC if you can adjust ACC settings in the Assistance systems menu in the Infotainment system.

Speed range

You can set a speed between approx. 20 mph (approx. 30 km/h) and approx. 130 mph (approx. 210 km/h). The maximum speed that you can set may be lower, depending on the vehicle equipment and country.

Driving with ACC

You can override the ACC system at any time. Adaptive Cruise Control is canceled when you apply the brakes. When you accelerate, Adaptive Cruise Control is paused while accelerating and then resumed.

Driver intervention request

If automatic deceleration by the ACC is not sufficient or the system limits are reached, the ACC will prompt you – with a message in the instrument cluster – to also apply the brakes. The red warning light will also turn on and a warning tone will sound. Take over steering and be ready to brake.

Radar sensor

ACC detects driving situations using a radar sensor in the front of the vehicle. The radar sensor has a range of up to approx. 160 m (approx. 520 ft).

⚠ WARNING

The intelligent technology of the ACC cannot overcome the natural laws of physics and can operate only within the limits of the system. Never allow the increased convenience to tempt you into taking risks. Careless or unintended use of the ACC system can cause accidents and serious injuries. The system cannot replace the driver's attention.

- Always adapt your speed and distance to vehicles driving ahead based on the visual, weather, road, and traffic conditions.
- Never use ACC when visibility is poor or when roads are steep, winding, flooded, or slippery, for example due to snow, ice, moisture, or gravel.
- Never use ACC when driving off-road or on unpaved roads. ACC is only designed for use on paved roads.
- Take over steering immediately if a driver intervention prompt appears in the instrument cluster display or the deceleration by ACC is not sufficient.
- Apply the brakes if the vehicle continues to roll unintentionally, e.g. after a driver intervention prompt.
- Always be ready to resume control of the vehicle speed.

Special driving situations

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ ⚠ *Introduction*.

Stop-and-go traffic

ACC can brake the vehicle and bring it to a standstill. ACC remains active, and the instrument cluster display shows ACC is ready for a few seconds. During this time, the vehicle will automatically resume driving once the vehicle driving ahead starts to move (depending on the equipment and not available in all countries).

Extend drive-readiness or reactivate:

1. Press the RES button.

Driving off when drive-readiness has ended and the vehicle driving ahead has already started moving:

1. Press the RES button.

   Or: Briefly press the accelerator pedal.

The ACC does not stay active in the following scenarios:

- The stationary phase lasts several minutes.
- A vehicle door is opened.
- The ignition is switched off.

⚠ WARNING

If ACC is ready appears in the instrument cluster display and the vehicle driving ahead starts to move, your vehicle will start driving automatically. The vehicle may not be able to detect obstacles in the vehicle's path when this happens. This may cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Check the vehicle's path every time before you start driving and brake the vehicle if necessary.

ACC limitations

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ *Introduction*.

When should I not use ACC?

The ACC system is not suitable in the following situations. Canceling Adaptive Cruise Control ⇒ *Introduction*:

- When driving in heavy rain, snow, or spray
- When driving through construction zones, tunnels or toll stations.
- When driving on winding roads, for example, mountain roads
- When driving off-road
- When driving in parking ramps
- When driving on roads with embedded metal objects, such as railroad tracks
- When driving on gravel roads

WARNING

If you use the ACC in the situations mentioned, accidents and serious injuries may result and legal regulations may be violated.

Delayed reaction

If the radar sensor is exposed to environmental conditions that limit its function, the system may have a delayed response to this. Therefore, the display that indicates that functions are restricted may be delayed when you first start driving or while driving ⇒ *Introduction*.

Unrecognizable objects

ACC only detects vehicles that are moving in the same direction. The following will not be detected:

- Pedestrians
- Animals
- Stationary vehicles
- Vehicles crossing the street or oncoming vehicles
- Other stationary obstacles

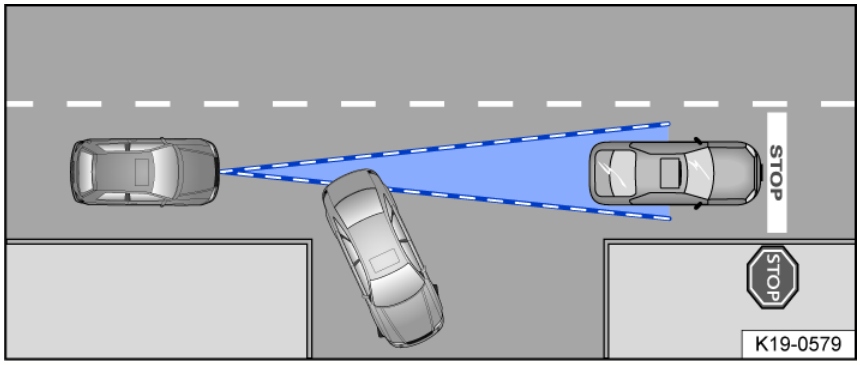


Fig. 97 Turning and stationary vehicles.

If, for example, a vehicle detected by the ACC turns or changes lanes and there is a stationary vehicle in front of this vehicle, the ACC will not react to the stationary vehicle *fig. 97*.

Curves

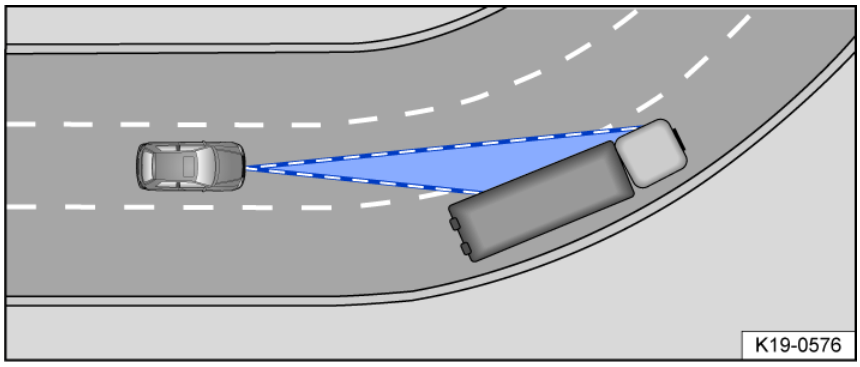


Fig. 98 Driving around curves.

The radar sensor only measures straight ahead. Therefore, on tight curves, vehicles may be detected by mistake or vehicles driving ahead may not be detected *fig. 98*.

Vehicles outside the sensor range

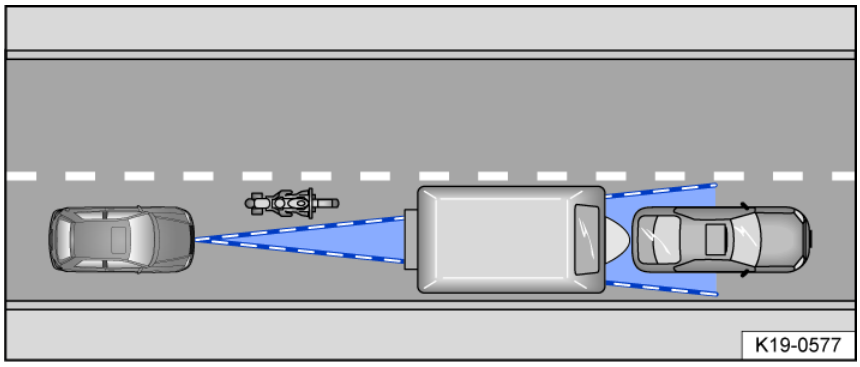


Fig. 99 Narrow vehicle.

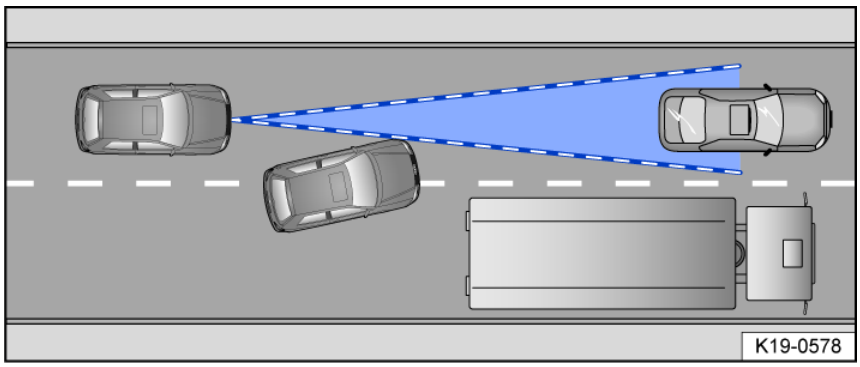


Fig. 100 Changing lanes.

The ACC may not react, may react with a delay, or may react in a way that is not desired in the following situations:

- If there are vehicles that are driving close to your vehicle but outside the sensor range, such as motorcycles *fig. 99*.
- If vehicles change to your lane close in front of your vehicle *fig. 100*.
- If vehicles have objects or accessories projecting out of the vehicle.

Switching ACC on and off

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ *Introduction*.



Fig. 101 Left side of the multi-function steering wheel (variant 1).



Fig. 102 Left side of the multi-function steering wheel (variant 2).

Switching on

1. Press the button.

   ACC is not yet functioning.

Starting Adaptive Cruise Control

1. Press the SET button while driving forward.

   ACC saves the current speed and maintains the set distance. If the current speed is outside the specified speed range, the ACC adjusts the minimum speed (when driving too slowly) or the maximum speed (when driving too quickly).

   In addition, the anti-slip regulation (ASR) is activated and ESC Sport is deactivated.

The following indicator lights may turn on depending on the driving situation:

ACC is regulating – no vehicle ahead detected. **ACC is regulating – vehicle ahead detected.**

If the ACC is not functioning, the gray indicator lights come on.

Canceling Adaptive Cruise Control

1. Press the button briefly.

   Or: Press the brake pedal.

   If the respective indicator light for the driving situation lights up gray, the speed and distance are saved.

If the anti-slip regulation (ASR) is deactivated, then the Adaptive Cruise Control is automatically stopped.

Resuming Adaptive Cruise Control

1. Press the RES button.

   ACC assumes the last set speed and the last set distance. The instrument cluster display shows the set speed, and indicator lights turn on corresponding to the driving situation.

Switching off

1. Press and hold the button.

   The set speed is deleted.

Adjusting the ACC settings

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ *Introduction*.

Setting the distance

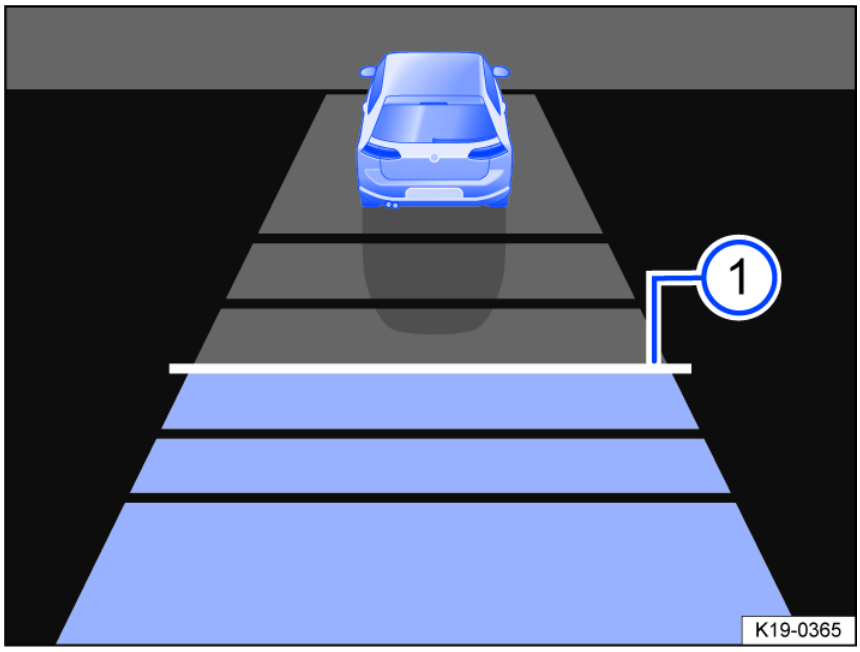


Fig. 103 In the instrument cluster display: set distance (1) (general example, ACC is regulating).

You can set the distance at five levels from very short to very long:

1. Press the button.
2. Press the + or − button.

   Steering wheel version 2: Alternatively, swipe vertically over the button area from to + or −.

   Or: Press the button repeatedly until the preferred distance is set.

   The instrument cluster display shows the selected level *fig. 103* (1). Heed the country-specific regulations for minimum distance.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, you can configure the distance to be set when starting Adaptive Cruise Control in the Infotainment system's Assistance systems menu.

Setting the speed

You can adjust the stored speed within the specified speed range using the buttons on the multi-function steering wheel as follows:

Steering wheel version 1:

+ 1 mph (1 km/h): Press the + button.

- 1 mph (1 km/h): Press the − button.

+ 5 mph (10 km/h): Press and hold the + button. The ACC will start by changing to the next-largest tens digit (km/h) or fives digit (mph).

- 5 mph (10 km/h): Press and hold the − button. The ACC will start by changing to the next-smallest tens digit (km/h) or fives digit (mph).

Steering wheel version 2:

+ 1 mph (1 km/h): Press the + button gently.

- 1 mph (1 km/h): Press the − button gently.

+ 5 mph (10 km/h): Press the + button firmly or swipe it from the bottom to the top. Pressing for the first time changes to the next-largest tens digit (km/h) or fives digit (mph).

- 5 mph (10 km/h): Press the − button firmly or swipe it from the top to the bottom. Pressing for the first time changes to the next-smallest tens digit (km/h) or

fives digit (mph).

⚠ WARNING

If the vehicle is less than the minimum distance from the vehicle ahead and the difference in speed between the vehicle ahead and your own vehicle is so great that the speed deceleration from the ACC is not sufficient, there is a risk of a rear end collision. The braking distance also increases during rainfall and winter road conditions.

- ACC may not be able to detect all driving situations correctly.
- Always be ready to apply the brakes yourself.
- If you press the accelerator pedal, you will override the speed and distance control. In this case, ACC will not brake automatically.
- Heed the country-specific regulations regarding minimum distance.
- Always set a longer distance when there is rain, snow, or poor visibility.

Adjusting the Adaptive Cruise Control system settings

You can influence how the ACC reacts in a sporty driving style:

- Vehicles with Driving Mode Selection: Select the desired driving mode ⇒ *Driving Mode Selection*.
- Vehicles without Driving Mode Selection: Select the desired driving mode in the Assistance systems menu in the Infotainment system.

Deactivating Adaptive Cruise Control

1. Press the button.
2. Select the speed regulation in the instrument cluster display.

   Adaptive Cruise Control is deactivated. The vehicle only maintains the set speed.

Troubleshooting

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ *Introduction*.

ACC is not available

The yellow indicator light turns on.

- The radar sensor is dirty. Clean the radar sensor ⇒ *Vehicle care*.
- The visibility of the radar sensor is limited due to weather conditions, such as snow, or from soap residue or coatings. Clean the radar sensor ⇒ *Vehicle care*
- Radar sensor visibility is limited by attachments, decorative frames on license plate holders, or stickers. Clear the area around the radar sensor.
- The radar sensor is misaligned or damaged, for example as a result of damage to the front of the vehicle. Check if there is noticeable damage ⇒ *Repairs and technical modifications*.
- Malfunction or fault. Stop the engine and restart.
- Painting work was carried out on or structural modifications were made to the front of the vehicle.
- The original Volkswagen emblem is not used.
- If the problem persists, seek assistance from suitably qualified professionals. Volkswagen recommends contacting your Volkswagen dealership.

ACC is not functioning as expected

- The radar sensor is dirty. Clean the radar sensor ⇒ *Vehicle care*.
- The system limitations are not adhered to ⇒ *ACC limitations*.
- The brakes are overheating, and the ACC has been automatically canceled. Let the brakes cool down and check the function again.
- If the problem persists, seek assistance from suitably qualified professionals. Volkswagen recommends contacting your Volkswagen dealership.

The Adaptive Cruise Control cannot start

Make sure the following requirements are met:

- A gear is engaged for driving forward.
- The brake lights on the vehicle are functioning.
- ESC is not regulating.
- The brake pedal is not being pressed.

Unusual noises during automatic braking

This is normal and not a cause for concern.

Controls are responding differently than expected

Moisture, dirt and grease may limit the functioning of the controls.

1. Always keep the controls clean and dry.

Front Assist

Introduction

Front Assist can recognize impending forward collisions and warn the driver. In addition, the system can provide support when braking and initiate an automatic braking maneuver.

The Front Assist system can help to avoid accidents but cannot replace the driver's attention.

Front Assist works solely within the system limitations. Warning times vary depending on the Traffic Situation and the driving behavior.

Range of functions

Autonomous Emergency Braking (Front Assist) includes the following extended functions, depending on the vehicle equipment and the country:

- Pedestrian Monitoring.
- Cyclist Monitoring.

The functions named are (if available) automatically active if Front Assist is switched on.

Recognizable objects

Autonomous Emergency Braking (Front Assist) can recognize the following objects, depending on the vehicle equipment and the country:

- Vehicles.
- Bikes.
- Pedestrians.

Driving with Front Assist

You can cancel automatic braking interventions by moving the steering wheel or pressing the accelerator pedal.

Automatic braking

Front Assist can brake the vehicle to a stop. The vehicle will not be held at a stop after that. Press the brake pedal.

The brake pedal feels more firm during an automatic braking maneuver.

Detecting the driving situation

Front Assist records driving situations using a camera in the upper front windshield and a radar sensor in the front of the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

The intelligent technology of Front Assist cannot overcome the natural laws of physics and it can only operate within the limits of the system. Do not allow the increased convenience provided by the Front Assist system to tempt you into taking risks. The Front Assist system cannot prevent accidents and severe injuries automatically. The driver is always responsible for control of the vehicle.

- Always adapt your speed and remain a safe distance to vehicles driving ahead according to the visual, weather, road, and traffic conditions.
- Please be aware that Autonomous Emergency Braking (Front Assist) cannot detect all objects in the speed range ⇒ *Front Assist limitations*.
- When Front Assist warns you, brake the vehicle immediately or maneuver around the obstacle, depending on the driving situation.
- Autonomous Emergency Braking (Front Assist) may intervene when not desired, e.g. when the function is limited. Therefore, consider interrupting automatic Autonomous Emergency Braking (Front Assist) interventions if necessary.
- If you are unsure which functions the vehicle has included, consult suitably qualified professionals before starting your journey. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Warning levels and braking support

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ ⚠ *Introduction*.

Speed ranges

Autonomous Emergency Braking (Front Assist) provides maximum support within these speed ranges:

- Response to vehicles: Approx. 3 mph (approx. 5 km/h) to approx. 155 mph (approx. 250 km/h).
- Response to bikes: Approx. 3 mph (approx. 5 km/h) to approx. 155 mph (approx. 250 km/h).
- Response to pedestrians: Approx. 3 mph (approx. 5 km/h) to approx. 53 mph (approx. 85 km/h).

The support system can involve an advance warning, an immediate warning, automatic braking or braking support. A distance warning may also be displayed.

Influencing factors

Whether and in which speed range Autonomous Emergency Braking (Front Assist) reacts to the named objects is dependent on the following factors:

- Type of object.
- Movement direction of the object.
- Speed of the object.
- Speed of the vehicle.

The work area can therefore be limited if the vehicle approaches an object very quickly and thus has little time to react.

Furthermore, not all warning levels are passed through in all situations. Depending on the speed, there may not be, for example, an advance warning or immediate warning, but rather an automatic braking maneuver that occurs straight away, so as to best protect the detected object.

Distance warning

Front Assist detects if there is a safety hazard from following the vehicle ahead too closely.

The indicator light turns on. Increase the distance.

Advance warning

Front Assist detects a possible collision and prepares the vehicle for possible emergency braking.

A warning tone sounds and the warning light turns on. Apply the brakes or maneuver to avoid the collision.

Immediate warning

If you do not respond to the advance warning, the brakes may be applied briefly to indicate the increasing risk of a collision. Apply the brakes or maneuver to avoid the collision.

Automatic braking

Autonomous Emergency Braking (Front Assist) can brake the vehicle automatically in several stages of increasing braking force. Reducing the vehicle speed may help to reduce the damage resulting from a collision.

Braking support

If the system detects that you are not braking enough before an impending collision, Front Assist can increase the braking force and thus help to reduce the risk of collision. The braking support is only active as long as you are firmly pressing the brake pedal.

Front Assist limitations

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ *Introduction*.

Front Assist is not available or its availability is limited immediately after starting the vehicle. During this time, the indicator light in the instrument cluster display comes on.

Front Assist has physical and system limitations. Therefore, always pay attention and be ready to intervene as necessary.

Delayed reaction

If the camera or radar sensor is exposed to environmental conditions that limit their function, the system may have a delayed response to this. Therefore, the displa that indicates that functions are restricted may be delayed when you first start driving or while driving ⇒ *Introduction*.

Unrecognizable objects

Autonomous Emergency Braking (Front Assist) may not react or may react with a delay to the following objects:

- If vehicles are driving close to your vehicle but outside of the sensor range, for example vehicles that are staggered around your vehicle or motorcycles
- If vehicles change to your lane close in front of your vehicle
- If vehicles have objects or accessories projecting out of the vehicle
- If there are oncoming vehicles or vehicles crossing the street
- Oncoming pedestrians; generally no reaction to people without Pedestrian Monitoring.
- Stationary or oncoming cyclists; also no reaction to cyclists crossing the road without Cyclist Monitoring.
- Pedestrians and cyclists who are not detected as such, for example because they are fully or partially hidden.

Functional limitations

Front Assist may not react, may react with a delay, or may react in a way that is not desired in the following situations:

- When driving around tight curves
- When driving in heavy rain, snow, mist, or heavy spray.
- When driving in parking garages or tunnels.
- When driving on roads with embedded metal objects, such as railroad tracks
- When driving in reverse
- If ESC is regulating or is malfunctioning.

- When the radar sensor or camera field of view is dirty, obstructed or damaged.
- If multiple brake lights on the vehicle are malfunctioning.
- If multiple brake lights are malfunctioning on a bicycle rack that is connected to the vehicle electrical system.
- If the vehicle is accelerating very quickly or the accelerator pedal is pressed all the way down
- In complex driving situations, such as around traffic islands
- In unclear traffic situations, for example if vehicles driving ahead are braking quickly or are turning
- In low-lying sun, darkness or if there is glare from oncoming vehicles.
- When entering or exiting a tunnel.
- If Front Assist is malfunctioning

Switching off Front Assist

Depending on the system, Front Assist may not be suitable in the following situations and must be switched off if they occur ⇒ ⚠:

- If the vehicle is not being driven on public roads, for example during off-road driving or on a racetrack.
- If the vehicle is being towed or transported
- If add-ons cover the radar sensor or camera.
- If the camera or radar sensor is malfunctioning.
- Following a violent impact affecting components within the range of the radar sensor, e.g. following a rear-end collision.
- If the windshield is damaged in the camera field of view.
- If there are multiple unwanted activations

⚠ WARNING

If you do not switch off Front Assist in the these situations, accidents and serious injuries could occur.

Using Front Assist

📖 Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ ⚠ *Introduction*.

When you switch on the ignition, Front Assist, with all of its functions (depending on the country), are automatically switched on.

However, Front Assist is not available or its availability is restricted while the indicator light is turned on.

Volkswagen recommends always leaving Front Assist and all its included functions (depending on the country) switched on. Exceptions ⇒ *Front Assist limitations*

Switching on and off

You can switch Autonomous Emergency Braking on and off manually and view the switched on condition.

In the Infotainment system:

1. Open the Assistance systems menu.
2. Switch Autonomous Emergency Braking on or off in the corresponding submenu.

If you switch off Front Assist, all the functions included in it, depending on the country, are also switched off. The yellow indicator light turns on in the instrument cluster display.

Setting up functions included, depending on the country

If Front Assist is switched on, you can adjust the following settings:

1. Switch the function you require on or off in the Assistance systems menu in the Infotainment system.

You can also adjust the warning time setting for the advance warning.

Troubleshooting

📖 Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ ⚠ *Introduction*.

Autonomous Emergency Braking starts

The white indicator light comes on.

- Autonomous Emergency Braking (Front Assist) is temporarily not available or has limited availability. After driving straight for a short distance, Autonomous Emergency Braking is available again and the indicator light goes out. If the vehicle does not drive, the indicator light stays on.

Autonomous Emergency Braking (Front Assist) not available or has limited availability

The yellow indicator light comes on and a message is also displayed.

- The radar sensor or camera field of view is dirty. Clean the radar sensor and windshield ⇒ *Vehicle care*.
- The visibility of the radar sensor or camera is limited due to weather conditions, such as snow, or from soap residue or coatings. Clean the radar sensor and

windshield ⇒ *Vehicle care*.

- Radar sensor visibility is limited by attachments, decorative frames on license plate holders, or stickers. Clear the area around the radar sensor.
- The camera's view is limited by attachments or stickers. Keep the area around the camera field of view clear.
- The radar sensor or the camera is misaligned or damaged, for example as a result of damage to the front of the vehicle or the windshield. Check if there is noticeable damage ⇒ *Repairs and technical modifications*.
- Painting work was carried out on or structural modifications were made to the front of the vehicle.
- The original Volkswagen emblem is not used.
- If the malfunction persists, turn off Autonomous Emergency Braking and contact suitably qualified professionals. Volkswagen recommends contacting your Volkswagen dealership.

Front Assist is not functioning as expected or has been triggered multiple times unnecessarily

- The radar sensor or camera field of view is dirty. Clean the radar sensor and windshield ⇒ *Vehicle care*.
- The system limitations are not adhered to ⇒ *Front Assist limitations*.
- Low-lying sun or darkness.
- If the malfunction persists, turn off Autonomous Emergency Braking and contact suitably qualified professionals. Volkswagen recommends contacting your Volkswagen dealership.

Controls are responding differently than expected

Moisture, dirt and grease may limit the functioning of the controls.

1. Always keep the controls clean and dry.

Lane Keeping System (Lane Assist)

🕮 Introduction

Lane Assist helps the driver to stay in a lane, within the system limitations. This function is not suitable for, and not designed for, autonomously keeping your vehicle in a lane.

Lane Assist detects the lane markers using a camera behind the windshield. If the system detects that the vehicle is coming too close to a lane marker, the system warns the driver with corrective steering. The driver can override the corrective steering at any time.

Speed range

Lane Assist is ready to take control (active system status) when a lane marking is detected within the system limits above approximately 35 mph (60 km/h).

⚠ WARNING

The intelligent technology of Lane Assist cannot overcome the natural laws of physics and it can only operate within the limits of the system. Careless or unintended use of Lane Assist can cause accidents and serious injuries. The system cannot replace the driver's attention and steering.

- Always adapt your speed and remain a safe distance to vehicles driving ahead according to the visual, weather, road, and traffic conditions.
- Always keep your hands on the steering wheel so that you are prepared to steer at any time. The driver is always responsible for keeping the vehicle within the lane.
- Override immediately by steering if the system intervenes when it should not.
- Pay attention to indicators in the instrument cluster display and respond to the prompts accordingly when the traffic situation allows.
- Always pay attention to the area around your vehicle and drive with anticipation.
- If the camera lens is dirty, covered, or damaged, Lane Assist may be limited.

Lane Assist limitations

🕮 **Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ ⚠ *Introduction*.**

Lane markings not detected or not correctly recognized

Lane Assist does not correctly detect all lane markings. If lane markings are not recognized, Lane Assist may fail to intervene. Be prepared to steer at all times.

Under certain circumstances, Lane Assist may incorrectly detect poor road surfaces, road structures or objects, reflections and glare as lane markings. Override immediately if the system intervenes when it should not.

Switching off Lane Assist temporarily

In the following situations, Lane Assist may intervene when not desired or may fail to intervene when it should. Therefore, the driver's attention is especially important in these scenarios. Switch off Lane Assist temporarily:

- When the driving style is very dynamic.

- When weather or road conditions are poor
- In construction zones
- In front of bumps or dips in the road
- When not on highways or well-developed roads.

⚠ WARNING

If you do not switch off Lane Assist in the these situations, accidents and serious injuries could occur.

Lane Assist is not available

The system is not available under the following conditions (inactive system status):

- The vehicle speed is less than around 55 km/h (around 30 mph).
- Lane Assist has not detected a road lane marking.
- In tight curves.
- Temporarily, when the driving style is very dynamic.
- When the turn signals are switched on before a manual lane change.
- When the driver oversteers during a system intervention.
- When there is no reaction from the driver to a driver intervention prompt.

Driving with Lane Assist

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ *Introduction*.

Switching on and off

You can view the switched on condition of the Lane Assist in the instrument cluster display and in the Infotainment system. You can also switch Lane Assist on and off there.

In the instrument cluster display:

1. Press the button.
2. Switch Lane Assist on or off.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the button is located either on the multi-function steering wheel or the turn signal and high beam lever.

In the Infotainment system:

1. Open the Assistance systems menu.
2. Switch Lane Assist on or off in the corresponding submenu.

When the Travel Assist is switched on, also Lane Assist is switched on.

If there is a system malfunction, Lane Assist can turn off automatically.

Displays

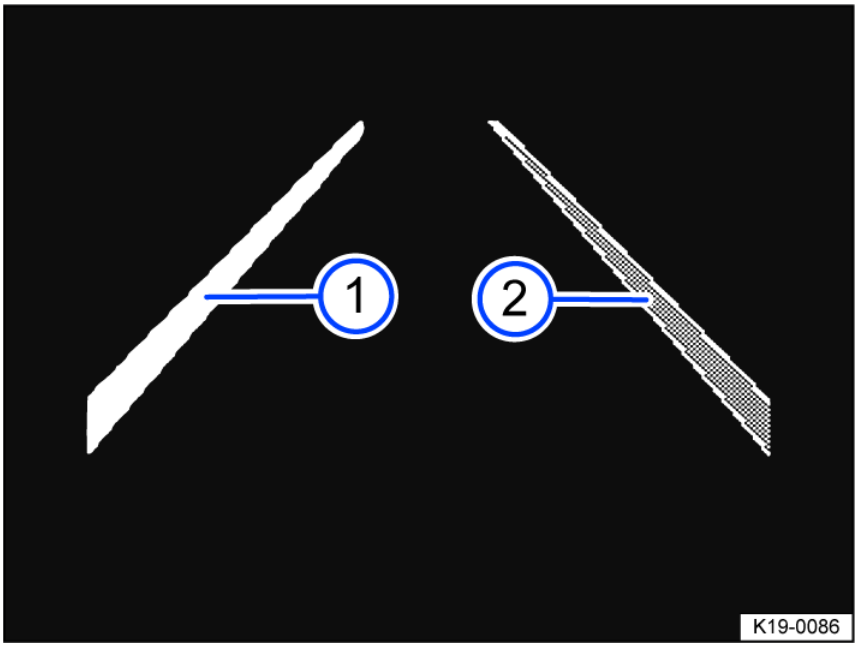


Fig. 104 In the instrument cluster display: Lane Assist indicators.

(1) Lane marking detected. The system is monitoring on the indicated side.

(2) Lane marking detected. The system is ready to monitor on the indicated side.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, further details about lane marking, such as broken road markings, may also be shown on the instrument cluster display.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, a display may also appear in the head-up display ⇒ *Head-up display (HUD)*.

The following indicator lights may turn on depending on the driving situation:

System active and ready to control. **System in operation (corrective steering intervention).**

If the indicator light does not light up, the system is not ready for operation on both sides (inactive system status) or is switched off.

If Travel Assist is actively regulating, there will be no steering intervention and no Lane Keeping System (Lane Assist) display.

Driver intervention request

If there is no steering activity, the system prompts you to drive in the center of your lane with an indicator in the instrument cluster display and warning chimes.

If you do not respond accordingly, the system becomes inactive.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, semi-automatic vehicle control in a medical emergency (Emergency Assist) is activated when Emergency Assist is switched on in the Infotainment system.

Independently of steering activity, you are also prompted by an indicator on the instrument cluster display and by a warning chime to drive in the middle of the lane the corrective steering intervention takes a long time.

Steering wheel vibration

The following situations may cause the steering wheel to vibrate:

- A lane is no longer detected during a sharp corrective steering intervention by the system.

In addition, you can select the Vibration or Steering wheel vibration option in the Assistance systems menu in the Infotainment system. If you select this option, the steering wheel will vibrate if Lane Assist is active and you drift onto a road lane marking that the system has detected.

Troubleshooting

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ *Introduction*.

Lane Assist is not available

The yellow indicator light turns on. In addition, a message is shown in the instrument cluster display.

- The camera field of view is dirty. Clean the windshield ⇒ *Vehicle care*.
- The camera's view is limited due to weather conditions, such as snow, or from soap residue or coatings. Clean the windshield ⇒ *Vehicle care*.
- The camera's view is limited by attachments or stickers. Keep the area around the camera field of view clear.
- The camera is misaligned or damaged, for example as a result of damage to the windshield. Check if there is noticeable damage ⇒ *Repairs and technical modifications*.
- Malfunction or fault. Stop the engine and restart.
- If the problem persists, switch off Lane Assist and seek assistance from suitably qualified professionals. Volkswagen recommends contacting your Volkswager dealership.

It can take a few seconds once the ignition has been switched on for a system fault to be recognized.

If Lane Assist is not available, Emergency Assist is not available either.

If Lane Assist is not available, Travel Assist is not available either.

The system is functioning differently than expected

1. Do not mount any objects on the steering wheel.

Controls are responding differently than expected

Moisture, dirt and grease may limit the functioning of the controls.

1. Always keep the controls clean and dry.

Comfort drive Travel Assist

Introduction

Thanks to the comfort drive Travel Assist, within the system limitations, the vehicle can maintain a distance, which has been preselected by the driver, to

the vehicle in front and hold the preferred position within the lane (adaptive lane guidance).

Travel Assist uses the same sensor technology as the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) and Lane Keeping System (Lane Assist). Therefore, carefully read all the information about the ACC and Lane Assist and take note of the system limitations and notes specified in those sections.

Does this vehicle have Travel Assist?

The vehicle has Travel Assist, if the button on the multi-function steering wheel is available.

Speed range

Travel Assist operates in a speed range between around 30 km/h (approximately 20 mph) and around 210 km/h (approximately 130 mph). This range is expanded to, from 0 km/h (0 mph) to around 250 km/h (approximately 155 mph), for the adaptive lane guidance. This speed range may vary depending on the country.

Driving with Travel Assist

Travel Assist automatically regulates the speed and steers the vehicle. Within the system limitations, Travel Assist can also bring the vehicle to a halt behind a stopping vehicle and drive on again.

You can override the Travel Assist at any time.

Displays

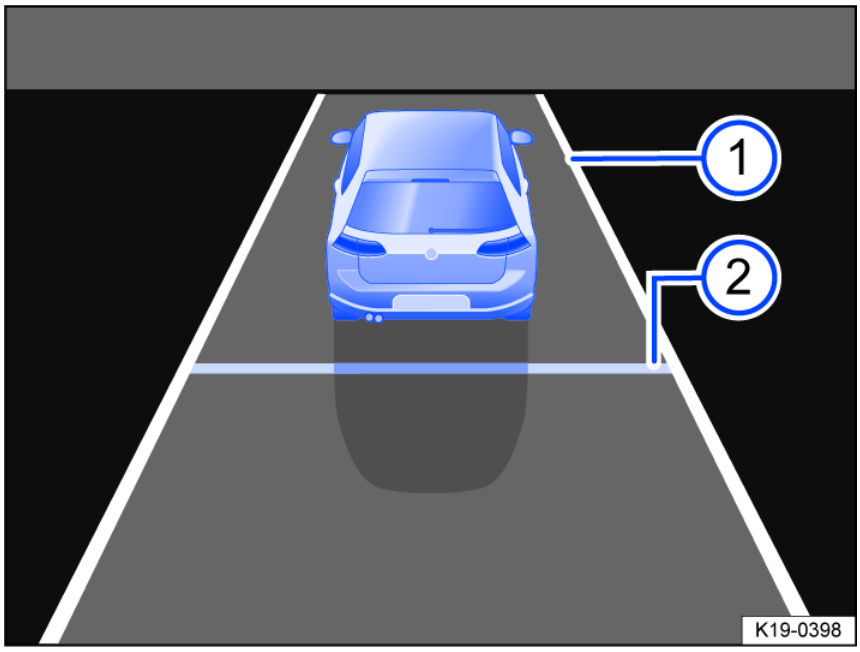


Fig. 105 In the instrument cluster display: Display during active control.

(1) Adaptive lane guidance is active.

(2) Set distance.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, a display may also appear in the head-up display ⇒ *Head-up display (HUD)*.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, further details may also be shown on the instrument cluster display, such as broken road markings and vehicles driving in front.

Indicator lights on the instrument cluster display show the Travel Assist status, depending on the vehicle equipment:

Travel Assist active, Adaptive Cruise Control and adaptive lane guidance active. **Travel Assist active, Adaptive Cruise Control active and adaptive lane guidance passive.**

Driver intervention request

If you remove your hands from the steering wheel, the system will ask you to take over the steering wheel after a few seconds with a message in the instrument cluster display and with audible warnings.

If you do not respond to this, Travel Assist is deactivated.

Alternatively, Emergency Assist is activated, depending on the vehicle equipment.

⚠ WARNING

The intelligent technology of the Travel Assist cannot overcome the natural laws of physics, and it can only operate within the limits of the system. Careless or unintended use of the Travel Assist can cause accidents and serious injuries. The system cannot replace the driver's attention.

- Pay attention to the system limitations and notes about the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) and Lane Keeping System (Lane Assist).
- Always adapt your speed and distance to vehicles driving ahead based on the visual, weather, road, and traffic conditions.

- Never use Travel Assist when visibility is poor or when roads are steep, winding, flooded, or slippery, for example from snow, ice, moisture, or gravel.
- Never use Travel Assist when driving off-road or on unpaved roads. Travel Assist is only designed for use on paved roads.
- Travel Assist does not react to persons, animals, vehicles crossing the lane or vehicles coming towards you in the same lane.
- Take over steering immediately if a driver intervention prompt appears in the instrument cluster display or the deceleration by the Travel Assist is not sufficient.
- Apply the brakes if the vehicle continues to roll unintentionally, e.g. after a driver intervention prompt.
- Always keep your hands on the steering wheel so that you are prepared to steer at any time. The driver is always responsible for keeping the vehicle within the lane.
- When a driver intervention prompt appears in the instrument cluster display, resume control of the vehicle immediately.
- Always be ready to resume control of the vehicle speed.

Operating Travel Assist

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ *Introduction*.



Fig. 106 Left side of the multi-function steering wheel (variant 1).



Fig. 107 Left side of the multi-function steering wheel (variant 2).

Switching on the start control

1. Press the button on the multi-function steering wheel.

   The green indicator light turns on in the instrument cluster display . A notification is also displayed. Travel Assist maintains the current speed and the prese distance from the vehicle driving ahead. At the same time, the vehicle is kept in its lane by steering movements when road markings are detected.

Canceling Adaptive Cruise Control

1. Press the button briefly.

   Or: Press the brake pedal.

   The set distance remains saved.

Adjusting further settings

The further operation of Travel Assist corresponds to the operation of the ACC ⇒ *Adjusting the ACC settings*.

Troubleshooting

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ *Introduction*.

Comfort drive Travel Assist is not available or is not working as expected

The yellow indicator light turns on. In addition, a message is shown in the instrument cluster display.

- There is a malfunction in the sensor system. Check the causes and troubleshooting measures described in the information on ACC ⇒ *Troubleshooting* and Lane Assist ⇒ *Troubleshooting*.
- Malfunction or fault. Stop the engine and restart.
- The system limitations are not adhered to.
- If the problem persists, contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Take over the steering

The white warning light will come on and a message will be shown in the instrument cluster display.

You have let go of the steering wheel for a few seconds.

1. Take hold of the steering wheel and take over steering the vehicle.

Take over the steering

The red warning light will come on and a message will be shown in the instrument cluster display. An audible warning will sound or the steering wheel will vibrate, depending on the driving situation.

You have let go of the steering wheel for a long period of time or the system limits have been reached.

1. Immediately take hold of the steering wheel and take over steering the vehicle.

Comfort drive Travel Assist switches off automatically

- Vehicles without Emergency Assist:

  You have let go of the steering wheel for a long period of time.
- Malfunction or fault. Stop the motor and restart.
- If the problem persists, contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Control is canceled unexpectedly

You have operated the turn signal.

Semi-automatic vehicle control in a medical emergency (Emergency Assist)

Emergency Assist can recognize driver inactivity and can automatically keep the vehicle in its lane and, if necessary, slow it down to a stop. The system can hereby actively help to avoid an accident or reduce the consequences of an accident.

Emergency Assist uses the same sensor technology as the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) and Lane Keeping System (Lane Assist). Carefully read all the information about the ACC ⇒ *Adaptive Cruise Control* and Lane Assist ⇒ *Lane Keeping System* and pay attention to the system limitations and notes specified in those sections.

Driver intervention request

Using warning chimes and brief braking maneuver, Emergency Assist prompts an inactive driver to take over control of driving. In addition, a message is shown in the instrument cluster display and the volume of the Infotainment system is decreased.

System intervention

If you do not respond, the system can brake the vehicle and keep it in its lane. The following indicator light will come on in the instrument cluster display:

System is regulating.

You can override the regulation at any time by steering, accelerating rapidly or braking.

If Emergency Assist is active, other road users will be warned as follows:

- The emergency flashers are switched on after a short delay.
- The vehicle's horn sounds, depending on the speed.

If the remaining stopping distance is sufficient, the vehicle slows down, if necessary, to a stop.

As soon as the vehicle comes to a standstill, the following happens:

- The electronic parking brake is switched on.
- Gear **P** is engaged.
- The doors are unlocked.
- The interior lighting is switched on.

Switching on and off

You can switch Emergency Assist on and off in the Assistance systems menu in the Infotainment system.

When it is switched on, Emergency Assist is only active under the following conditions:

- Travel Assist or Lane Assist is switched on.
- The system must detect lane markers on the left and right side of the vehicle.

If there is a system malfunction, Emergency Assist may turn off automatically.

If the Lane Keeping System (Lane Assist) is not available, Emergency Assist is not available either.

Semi-automatic vehicle control in a medical emergency (Emergency Assist) not available

Malfunction or fault. The yellow indicator light turns on. In addition, a message is shown in the instrument cluster display.

1. Stop the engine and restart.
2. If the problem persists, turn off Emergency Assist and contact suitably qualified professionals. Volkswagen recommends contacting your Volkswagen dealership.

Controls are responding differently than expected

Moisture, dirt and grease may limit the functioning of the controls.

1. Always keep the controls clean and dry.

WARNING

The intelligent technology of the Emergency Assist cannot overcome the laws of physics, and it can only operate within the limits of the system. The responsibility for driving the vehicle always lies with the driver.

- Always adapt your speed and remain a safe distance to vehicles driving ahead according to the visual, weather, road, and traffic conditions.
- Emergency Assist alone cannot always avoid accidents and serious injury.
- If the radar sensor or the front camera malfunctions, is covered or misaligned, Emergency Assist may carry out unwanted braking or steering interventions.
- Emergency Assist does not react to people, animals, vehicles crossing the lane or vehicles coming towards you in the same lane.

WARNING

If Emergency Assist is triggered unintentionally, it could result in accidents or serious injury.

- If the vehicle behaves unexpectedly, you can stop intervention by Emergency Assist by accelerating rapidly, braking or steering.
- Switch off the Lane Keeping System (Lane Assist).
- Do not use the comfort drive Travel Assist.
- Seek assistance from suitably qualified professionals and have the system checked. Volkswagen recommends contacting your Volkswagen dealership.

Lane Change System (Side Assist)

Introduction

The Lane Change System (Side Assist) helps the driver by detecting traffic

behavior behind the vehicle.

Radar sensors monitor the area behind the vehicle. The system measures the distance and difference in speed to other vehicles and informs the driver through visual signals in the outside mirrors.

System limitations

Only use the Lane Change System on secure roads.

The Lane Change System may not interpret the traffic situation correctly in some situations, for example:

- In tight curves.
- When driving in the center of two lanes.
- When lanes have different widths.
- When driving at the top of a hill.
- In poor weather conditions.
- When certain types of equipment are on the side of the road, such as high or offset guard rails.

⚠ WARNING

The intelligent technology of the Lane Change System (Side Assist) cannot overcome the laws of physics and it can only operate within the limits of the system. Do not allow the increased convenience of the Lane Change System (Side Assist) to tempt you into taking risks. Careless or unintended use of the Lane Change System (Side Assist) can cause accidents and serious injuries. The system cannot replace the driver's attention.

- Always adapt your speed and remain a safe distance to vehicles driving ahead according to the visual, weather, road, and traffic conditions.
- Always keep your hands on the steering wheel so that you are prepared to steer at any time.
- Pay attention to the displays in the outside mirror housings and in the instrument cluster display, and act accordingly.
- Always pay attention to the area around your vehicle.
- Never use the Lane Change System (Side Assist) if the radar sensors are dirty, covered up, or damaged. The function of the system may be impaired in such cases.
- Sunlight may reduce the visibility of the visual display in the outside mirror.

The radar sensors calibrate once, on the first kilometer of a journey after the vehicle is delivered, and then again if the sensor technology has been repaired. The range of the sensors may be limited during the calibration phase.

Driving with the lane change system

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ *Introduction*.

Switching on and off

In the instrument cluster display:

1. Press the button.
2. Switch the Lane Change System (Side Assist) on or off.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the button is located either on the multi-function steering wheel or the turn signal and high beam lever.

In the Infotainment system:

1. Open the Assistance systems menu.
2. Switch the Lane Change System (Side Assist) on or off in the corresponding submenu.



Fig. 108 In the outside mirror housing: Visual indicators for Side Assist.

When the Lane Change System (Side Assist) is switched on, the yellow indicator light comes on once briefly in the outside mirror.

The last saved system setting is also kept after the ignition is switched off and back on.

System function

The switched on lane change system is active from approximately 9 mph (approximately 15 km/h). The lane change system deactivates at a speed below approximately 6 mph (approximately 10 km/h).

In the following driving situations, the yellow indicator light in the outside mirror will come on:

- When your vehicle is passed.
- When passing another vehicle and the difference in speed between the two vehicles is up to approximately 9 mph (approximately 15 km/h). There is no indicator if the passing speed is clearly faster.

When a potentially critical situation is detected while the turn signal is activated in the direction of the detected vehicle, the yellow indicator light flashes.

The faster another vehicle approaches, the sooner the display in the outside mirror will turn on.

Lane change system “Side Assist Plus”

When driving with the Lane Keeping System (Lane Assist), a corrective steering intervention warns drivers when a possibly critical situation is detected when changing lanes (level, warning level), if the Lane Keeping System (Lane Assist) is switched on. Corrective steering also occurs if the turn signal is activated for the respective side. If the corrective steering is overridden by the driver, an additional warning is given with a steering wheel vibration. Steering wheel vibration must also be activated in the Assistance systems menu in the Infotainment system.

Automatic deactivation

The lane change system switches off automatically if the radar sensors are permanently covered. For example, this could be from ice or snow covering the radar sensor.

A message will appear in the instrument cluster display.

Brightness

The brightness of the visual display adapts it self automatically to the ambient brightness.

You can set the default brightness of the display in the Assistance systems menu in the Infotainment system. The lane change system is not active while making th settings.

Troubleshooting

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ *Introduction*.

Lane change system malfunctioning

Malfunction or fault. The yellow indicator light turns on. In addition, the yellow central warning light comes on.

1. Contact a suitably qualified professional. Volkswagen recommends contacting your Volkswagen dealership.

Malfunctioning sensor view, malfunction message, system switches off automatically

- Clean the radar sensors and remove labels or accessories from the radar sensors ⇒ *Exterior care and cleaning*.
- Check if there is any noticeable damage.

The system is functioning differently than expected

- The radar sensors could be dirty ⇒ *Exterior care and cleaning*. In addition to dirt and snow, the sensor range can also be impaired by soap residue or other coatings.
- The system conditions are not met ⇒ 🕮 *Introduction*.
- The radar sensors could be covered by water.
- The vehicle could be damaged in the radar sensor area, for example from parking barriers.
- The coverage areas of the radar sensors could be blocked by attachments, for example by bicycle carriers.
- The paint may have been changed or other structural modifications may have bee made near the radar sensors, for example to the front of the vehicle or to th suspension.
- The side mirrors may be covered with after-market tinting films.

Controls are responding differently than expected

Moisture, dirt and grease may limit the functioning of the controls.

1. Always keep the controls clean and dry.

Parking and maneuvering

Parking

Parking the vehicle

⚠ WARNING

Parking the vehicle incorrectly can result in the vehicle rolling, even on slight downhill slopes. This can cause accidents and serious injuries.

- When parking, always follow the steps in the specified order.
- Make sure the parking brake is set before exiting the vehicle and the red PARK indicator light in the instrument cluster display is on after switching off the ignition.

1. Press and hold the brake pedal.
2. In vehicles with a manual transmission, press the clutch pedal down *completely* or disengage the clutch.
3. In vehicles with an automatic transmission, move the selector lever into the **P** position.
4. Set the electronic parking brake ⇒ *Electronic parking brake*.
5. On uphill and downhill slopes, turn the steering wheel so that the vehicle will roll into a curb if it begins moving.
6. Stop the engine and switch the ignition off ⇒ *Stopping the engine*. The red PARK indicator light in the instrument cluster display will turn on.
7. Remove your foot from the brake pedal.
8. Exit the vehicle ⇒ ⚠. Pay attention to other road users.
9. Take all vehicle keys with you and lock the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

If children, people requiring assistance or animals are left unattended in the vehicle, there is a risk of accidents and serious injuries.

- Never leave children, people requiring assistance or animals unattended in the vehicle. They could touch the selector lever, switching off the electronic parking brake. The vehicle could move.
- Never leave children, people requiring assistance or animals in the vehicle. Depending on the season, the temperature inside the vehicle could become very high or low.
- Always take all vehicle keys with you when leaving the vehicle.

To avoid damage and dangerous situations, always park the vehicle in a suitable parking area ⇒ ⓘ.

ⓘ NOTICE

Any unevenness in the ground, as well as sand and mud may mean that the vehicle cannot be parked safely and may be damaged.

- Always park the vehicle on solid and level ground.

ⓘ NOTICE

Vehicle components that are low to the ground such as the bumpers, spoilers, and parts of the suspension could be damaged when driving over objects protruding up from the ground.

- Drive carefully over driveways, ramps, curbs and fixed barriers, as well as when driving through dips.

Electronic parking brake

Using the electronic parking brake



Fig. 109 In the center console: Button for the electronic parking brake (manual transmission).



Fig. 110 In the center console: Button for the electronic parking brake (automatic or DSG automated transmission).

Switching on

1. When the vehicle is stationary, pull and hold the button for the electronic parking brake *fig. 109* or *fig. 110* (P).

PARK **If the electronic parking brake is switched on, the red indicator light comes on in the instrument cluster.**

The yellow indicator light in the (P) button turns on.

If the electronic parking brake is switched on, the brake pedal moves slightly.

Manual transmission: Automatic switching on of the electronic parking brake when the ignition is switched off can be deactivated in the Infotainment system:

1. Open the vehicle settings in the Infotainment system ⇒ *Vehicle settings menu*.

2. Open the Vehicle menu.
3. Open the Exterior menu.
4. Open the Brakes submenu.
5. Deactivate function.

Switching off

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Press the brake pedal and press the Ⓟ switch.

   Or: When the engine is running, press the accelerator pedal lightly **without** pressing the brake pedal.

The indicator light in the Ⓟ button and the red PARK indicator light in the instrument cluster will turn off.

Automatic switch-on if you leave the vehicle incorrectly

If it is detected that the vehicle has been exited improperly, the electronic parking brake can be activated automatically ⇒ ⚠.

In vehicles with automatic transmission or DSG® automated transmission: if the selector lever is in the **N** position, the electronic parking brake will **not** be activate automatically.

⚠ WARNING

Exiting the vehicle incorrectly can result in the vehicle rolling. This can cause accidents, serious injuries, and property damage.

- Always follow the specified steps in the correct order when parking the vehicle → *page , Parking*.
- Before exiting the vehicle, make sure the electronic parking brake is activated and the red PARK indicator light in the instrument cluster display comes on after switching off the ignition.

Automatic switch-off when starting to drive

The parking brake releases automatically as you drive off if **one** of the following situations occurs when the driver's door is closed ⇒ ⚠:

- Manual transmission: The clutch is pressed all the way down before starting to drive.
- Automatic transmission: A gear is engaged or changed.
- DSG automated transmission: A gear is engaged or changed.

Starting to drive on steep inclines or with increased vehicle weight

You can prevent the electronic parking brake from releasing automatically if you pull the Ⓟ switch upward and hold it up while starting to drive.

If more engine power is required when starting to drive, the electronic parking brake will release only after the Ⓟ switch is released.

Driving through a car wash

If you would **not** like the electronic parking brake to switch on automatically, e.g. in a car wash, note the following:

1. Automatic transmission or DSG automated transmission: Engage the selector lever in position **N**.

   Manual transmission: Press the brake pedal and press and hold the electronic parking brake button Ⓟ until the ignition switches off.

Emergency braking function

Only use the emergency braking function in an emergency, if the vehicle cannot be stopped using the brake pedal ⇒ ⚠.

1. Pull and hold the Ⓟ switch.

The vehicle will brake abruptly. A warning chime will also sound at the same time.

⚠ WARNING

Using the electronic parking brake incorrectly can cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Do not use the electronic parking brake to brake the vehicle unless it is an emergency. The braking distance will be significantly longer because only the rear wheels will be braked under certain circumstances. Always use the brake pedal.
- Do not press the accelerator pedal when the engine is running and a gear is engaged if the vehicle is to be brought to a standstill. The parking break may release and the vehicle could start to move.

Troubleshooting

PARK The holding force is too low for the current situation

The red PARK warning light flashes.

It is not possible to park the vehicle safely.

1. Park the vehicle in another location or on a flat surface.

Electronic parking brake malfunction

The yellow central warning light comes on. The symbol with a message is additionally shown in the instrument cluster display.

1. Contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

The electronic parking brake does not switch off

- The requirements for switching off the electronic parking brake are not met ⇒ *Using the electronic parking brake* .
- The 12 V vehicle battery is drained ⇒ *Jump-starting*.

The electronic parking brake is making noise

Noises can be heard when you switch the electronic parking brake on and off.

If the electronic parking brake has not been used for a long time, the system will perform occasional automatic checks when the vehicle is parked which can be audible.

Auto Hold



Fig. 111 In the center console: Auto Hold button (manual transmission).



Fig. 112 In the center console: Auto Hold button (automatic or DSG automated transmission).

Auto Hold secures the vehicle from rolling away when it is stationary, without having to hold the vehicle with the brake pedal.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, your vehicle may feature the Auto Hold function.

Requirements

✓ The driver door must be closed.

✓ The engine must be stopped.

Auto Hold does **not** switch on or it switches off automatically if you shift into the **N** position. As a result, the vehicle will not be secured from rolling away ⇒ ⚠.

Switching on

1. Press the AUTO HOLD button *fig. 111* , *fig. 112*.

The yellow indicator light in the AUTO HOLD button turns on.

Auto Hold is ready to use, but the vehicle may not be kept stationary ⇒ ⚠.

Auto Hold remains switched on after the ignition is turned on again.

Keeping the vehicle stationary using Auto Hold

1. When Auto Hold is switched on, bring the vehicle to a stop using the brakes ⇒ *Parking*.

   Manual transmission: Either keep the clutch pedal pressed down *completely* or shift into neutral.

2. Release the brake pedal ⇒ ⚠.

The vehicle is kept stationary.

AUTO HOLD **The green indicator light comes on in the instrument cluster when Auto Hold is active.**

The hold on the vehicle will end when the vehicle starts to drive or the requirements for Auto Hold are not met.

Switching off

1. Press the AUTO HOLD button ⇒ ⚠.

The indicator light in the AUTO HOLD button turns off.

The electronic parking brake switches on automatically to keep the vehicle stationary.

However, if you press the brake pedal when switching off Auto Hold, the electronic parking brake will **not** switch on ⇒ ⚠.

Temporary switch-off with the (P) button

It may be necessary to switch off Auto Hold temporarily, for example when maneuvering the vehicle to make it easier for the vehicle to roll.

1. With the engine running, press the brake pedal.
2. Press the Ⓟ button.

Auto Hold is switched off.

Auto Hold will switch on again once the brake pedal is pressed while the vehicle is stationary.

⚠ WARNING

The intelligent technology of Auto Hold cannot overcome the natural laws of physics and it can only operate within the limits of the system. Do not allow the increased convenience provided by Auto Hold to tempt you into taking risks.

- Make sure that the green AUTO HOLD or red Ⓟ indicator light turns on in the instrument cluster if the vehicle is to be kept stationary. If the green indicator light is on, the vehicle will kept stationary with Auto Hold. If the red indicator light is on, it will be kept stationary with the electronic parking brake.
- Never exit the vehicle when the engine is running and Auto Hold is switched on.
- In some situations, such as when the ground is slippery or icy, Auto Hold will not be able to keep the vehicle stationary on hills or brake it adequately when going downhill.

ⓘ NOTICE

Damage can result if the electronic parking brake switches on automatically in a car wash.

- Always switch off Auto Hold before going through a car wash.

Exit warning system

The exit warning system gives a warning when opening doors if other road users are approaching from behind.

⚠ WARNING

The intelligent technology of the exit warning system cannot overcome the natural laws of physics and can operate only within the limits of the system. The exit warning system is not a replacement for the vehicle occupant's attention. Not paying attention can result in accidents, serious injuries and vehicle damage.

- Pay attention to the traffic situation and the vehicle environment.
- Pay attention to the indicator lights in the outside mirror housing and the audible warning signal before getting out.
- The indicator may not light up or may not light up in time if vehicles approach very quickly.

⚠ WARNING

The exit warning system does not provide a warning for stationary or slowly moving objects or people. Not paying attention can result in accidents, serious injuries and vehicle damage.

- When opening the doors, pay attention to the vehicle environment, e.g. pedestrians.

Requirements

✓ The vehicle is stationary.

✓ The vehicle is unlocked.

✓ The function has been activated in the Infotainment system.

Switching on and off

1. Press the P MENU control for parking functions ⇒ *Driver side*.
2. Tap the ⚙ function key in the Infotainment system.
3. Switch on the exit warning system.

When the ignition is switched off, the exit warning system is available for around three minutes, e.g. after unlocking or parking the vehicle.

System function

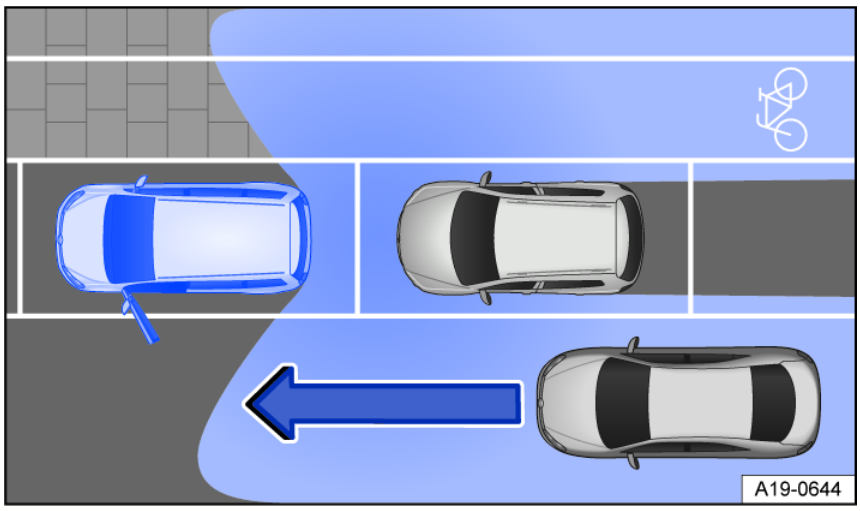


Fig. 113 General example: Monitored area behind your own vehicle.



Fig. 114 In the outside mirror housing: Visual indicator for the exit warning system.

The exit warning system works using the rear radar sensors.

If the system detects an approaching obstacle from behind when opening the door, the indicator lights in the outside mirror housing blink yellow and then light up continuously *fig. 114*. A warning signal will also sound at the same time ⇒ ⚠.

If an obstacle is detected, keep the door shut.

Take note of the safety instructions for the parking systems ⇒ *Safety instructions*.

Malfunction

In the event of an error, the exit warning system is deactivated. An error message is displayed in the Infotainment system display.

Take note of additional requirements for the parking systems ⇒ *Requirements*.

Also take note of the information regarding troubleshooting ⇒ *Troubleshooting*.

Be aware that no error messages are shown in the Infotainment system when the ignition is switched off.

General information about the parking systems

Safety instructions

⚠ WARNING

The intelligent technology of the Park Distance Control (PDC) cannot overcome the natural laws of physics and it can only operate within the limits of the system. Do not allow the increased convenience provided by the parking systems to tempt you into taking risks. The parking systems cannot replace the driver's attention.

- Always adapt your speed and driving style to the visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- Always keep an eye on the parking direction and the vehicle surroundings. Pay particular attention to small children, animals and objects.
- Bear in mind that the parking system may not be able to react if the vehicle approaches too quickly and no warning is issued.
- Do not allow the parking system's display to distract you from the traffic around you.

⚠ WARNING

Camera lenses enlarge and distort the field of vision. Using the camera image to estimate the distance to people or obstacles may not be precise and can cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Do not rely on the camera system image.

NOTICE

In parking spaces without a curb, park at least 20 inches (50 cm) away from walls and buildings to reduce the risk of vehicle damage.

Sensor and camera boundaries

Various sensors and cameras that detect the vehicle surroundings ultrasonically, by radar waves, and visually are located on and in the vehicle. The various parkin systems use different combinations of sensors. All sensors have technical and physical limits ⇒ ⚠:

- In some situations, some objects may not be detected, e.g. trailer draw bars, narrow poles, fences, posts, and trees, extremely low or high obstacles, or trunk lids that are opening or already open ⇒ ⓘ.
- The parking system coverage areas have “blind” spots in their range where they cannot detect people and objects.
- Dirt, ice, or water on the sensors and cameras may be detected as obstacles or prevent the detection of objects in some cases. In addition to dirt and snow, soap residue or other coatings can also impair the sensor range ⇒ *Troubleshooting*.
- External noises and certain surfaces on objects and clothing can affect the sensor signals. In some situations, people and objects may not be detected or may be detected incorrectly.
- Certain objects, such as small posts or grating, cannot be shown or cannot be adequately shown due to the resolution of the screen and if there is insufficient lighting.
- The cameras only show two-dimensional images on the screen. Due to the lack of depth of field, it may be difficult or impossible to identify protruding objects c recesses in the road.

Volkswagen recommends practicing with the parking systems in a location or parking space with no traffic in order to become acquainted with the systems and their functions.

Requirements

General information

To ensure that the sensors and cameras can detect the area surrounding the vehicle as well as possible and display this image on the Infotainment system, the following requirements must be met:

- ✓ The doors and trunk lid are closed.
- ✓ The outside mirrors must not be folded in.
- ✓ The sensors or cameras are not covered by attachments or decorative license plate frames. The decorative number plate frame and the number plate itself must not protrude at the sides or bottom.
- ✓ The vehicle must be on level ground.
- ✓ The vehicle must not be loaded primarily in the rear or on one side.
- ✓ The engine must be running.
- ✓ Braking assistance systems are switched on ⇒ *Information about braking assistance systems*.

If you use any other functions in the Infotainment system while you are parking, the parking function and its warning chimes will be deactivated.

Finding a suitable parking space

The following requirements should be met so that a suitable parking space can be shown or detected correctly:

- ✓ The length and width of the parking space must be larger than the vehicle measurements and provide enough space to maneuver.
- ✓ The distance when driving past the parking space is approx. 3 feet (1 meter).
- ✓ **Vehicles with Park Assist:** The speed when passing the parking space is maximum 25 mph (40 km/h) for **parking spaces parallel to the road** and 12 mp (20 km/h) for **parking spaces perpendicular to the road**.

Displays in the Infotainment system

The settings that can be selected may vary depending on the country, the device, and the vehicle equipment.

When the vehicle approaches an obstacle, the approach is displayed in segments in the Infotainment system and warning chimes sound. The display may vary depending on the situation.

The collision area has been reached when the next to last segment is displayed. **Do not continue driving!**

All options and models are described. Optional equipment or different model versions are not specifically identified as such. Which systems are available depend o the vehicle equipment.

Control panel for parking systems



Fig. 115 Upper center console: control for the parking systems.

1. Tap the P MENU control in the upper section of the center console to open the menu with the parking systems in the Infotainment system *fig. 115* (arrow).
2. If necessary, tap the function key to open additional settings.

General displays

Mute the warning chimes. Adjust the brightness, contrast, and color. Close the current view and end the function.

Additional information for vehicles with Park Distance Control

Switch Park Distance Control on and off ⇒ *Switching Park Distance Control (PDC) on and off*. Switch to the Rear View Camera system ⇒ *Switching the Rear View Camera system on and off*. Maneuver braking deactivated or malfunctioning ⇒ *Automatic braking intervention*. Red section of the image: Nearby obstacle. The vehicle is at risk. Apply the brakes. Yellow section of the image: Obstacle in the path of the vehicle. The vehicle is at risk. Steer around the obstacle. Grey section of the image: Obstacle outside of the vehicle's path or a malfunction in the sensor area. There is a system malfunction in the area that is detected (depending on vehicle equipment). The colors may vary.

Additional information for vehicles with a Rear View Camera system

Switch to the parking system ⇒ *Switching Park Distance Control (PDC) on and off*. Switch to perpendicular parking mode ⇒ *Parking (Rear View Camera system with parking mode selection)*. Switch to cross traffic parking mode ⇒ *Parking (Rear View Camera system with parking mode selection)*. Red line: Boundary or safety distance. Yellow lines: the vehicle's path based on the steering angle. Green horizontal lines: Boundaries.

USA and Canada: If the camera image on a parking system has been switched on by engaging the reverse gear, no function keys are displayed for safety reasons. These function keys can be displayed again by tapping the function key MENU.

Additional features for vehicles with Park Assist

Switch Park Assists on and off ⇒ *Searching for parking spaces*.

NOTICE

The system will only provide visual and audible warnings for obstacles within the vehicle's path.

The orientation lines superimposed on the camera image are shown by the system regardless of the vehicle's surroundings. There is no automatic obstacle detection by the camera while it is active. The driver must evaluate whether the vehicle will fit in the parking space.

In the area around the rear view camera, all orientation lines are hidden if a camera is installed in the trunk lid and the trunk lid is open.

Automatic braking intervention

A parking system's automatic braking support helps to avoid collisions, if an obstacle is detected during the parking process.

Braking functions

The following systems are available depending on the vehicle equipment:

- Maneuver braking for Park Distance Control ⇒ *Park Distance Control*.
- Emergency braking function for Park Assist ⇒ *Park Assist*.

- Emergency braking function for Rear Traffic Alert ⇒ *Rear Traffic Alert* .

⚠ WARNING

The increased comfort offered by the parking system automatic braking intervention should not cause you to take safety risks. In some situations, function of the automatic braking intervention may be limited or it may not function at all. Collisions with obstacles can lead to injuries and vehicle damage. The system cannot replace the driver's attention.

- Stay attentive and do not rely only on the parking systems.
- Always be ready to take over braking and steering.
- Do not take any risks when it comes to safety.
- React to the warnings and recommendations from the parking systems.

Requirements

✓ When maneuvering, the vehicle is not driving faster than about 6 mph (10 km/h).

✓ A parking system has been switched on.

What happens during an automatic braking intervention?

If there is an obstacle, the brakes are applied until the vehicle comes to a stop and the vehicle is kept stationary for approximately 2 seconds.

1. Following an automatic braking intervention, press the brake pedal to keep the vehicle stationary.

Park Assist: This will reduce the vehicle's speed if it is moving too quickly. The parking process can then be resumed.

Switch automatic braking on or off

Automatic braking is activated or deactivated when a parking system is switched on or off by the driver.

1. Tap the ⚙ function key on the Park Distance Control screen to access the settings, where you can temporarily deactivate or reactivate maneuver braking.

Maneuver braking for Park Distance Control

The maneuver braking is automatically switched on each time the ignition is switched on.

1. Briefly press the accelerator pedal to cancel the automatic braking support ⇒ ⚠.

If there is an obstacle in the front area of the vehicle, automatic braking support will not happen if Park Distance Control was activated automatically while driving forward ⇒ *Switching Park Distance Control (PDC) on and off* .

Switch the parking system off if automatic braking support happens too frequently, like when driving off-road.

If the vehicle has been braked by maneuver braking for Park Distance Control, the function remains inactive in the same direction of travel for five meters or is operational again after changing a gear.

The parking process is canceled following Park Assist emergency braking due to an obstacle.

Following a Rear Traffic Alert emergency braking intervention, it will take 10 seconds before an automatic braking support can occur again.

Troubleshooting

The parking system is functioning differently than expected

There are several possible causes:

- The system conditions are not met ⇒ *Requirements*.
- The sensors or camera may be dirty or covered with ice ⇒ *Exterior care and cleaning*.
- The camera lens is dirty and the camera image is not clear ⇒ *Exterior care and cleaning*.
- Sources of noise, such as a jackhammer or driving over cobblestones, can interfere with the ultrasonic signal.
- The vehicle may be damaged in the radar sensor area, for example, from parking barriers.
- The areas detected by the sensors or camera may be blocked by accessories such as bicycle racks.
- There may have been changes to the paint or vehicle structure in the area where the sensors or camera are located, for example on the front of the vehicle or the suspension.

Pay attention to the text messages shown in the instrument cluster display and in the Infotainment system.

No sensor or camera view or the parking system has been switched off

If a sensor malfunctions, the sensor area is deactivated. The affected sensor area can be displayed in the Infotainment system with the ❗ symbol and a grey secti of the image ❑. The parking system may be completely switched off.

If Park Distance Control is malfunctioning, a continuous tone will sound for several seconds when you switch it on. Where applicable, a message will appear in the

instrument cluster display.

1. Check if one of the causes listed is responsible.
2. Once the source of the issue has been resolved, switch the system on again.
3. If the problem persists, contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Park Assist is active and the vehicle brakes

In some countries, Park Assist can assist the driver with automatic braking in certain situations ⇒ *Automatic braking intervention*.

Depending on the vehicle equipment and certain conditions, such as the weather, vehicle load, or angle of the vehicle, Park Assist may automatically apply the vehicle brakes if there is an obstacle. The driver must then press the brake pedal.

The parking process will be canceled if automatic braking occurs.

Park Assist is active and the parking process is automatically canceled

Park Assist will end the parking process if one of the following situations occurs:

- The P function key is pressed.
- **Or:** The driver takes over steering.
- **Or:** The driver door is opened.
- **Or:** The time limit or number of movements for the parking process is exceeded.
- **Or:** The traction control system is switched off or it engages.
- **Or:** There is a system malfunction.

Restart the parking process ⇒ *Searching for parking spaces*.

Park Assist is active and supports steering movements when the vehicle is stationary

If Park Assist attempts to turn the steering while the vehicle is stationary, the white symbol appears in the instrument cluster display.

1. Press the brake pedal.

After a wheel change, Park Assist drives into and out of parking spaces inaccurately

If, after a wheel change, Park Assist parks inaccurately, e.g. with an increased or reduced distance from the curb, the system may have to take over the wheel sizes again.

1. Drive the vehicle over a longer distance, including around bends.

The Park Assist system automatically learns the new wheel sizes.

Park Distance Control (PDC)

Introduction

The Park Distance Control system (PDC) assists the driver when parking and maneuvering.

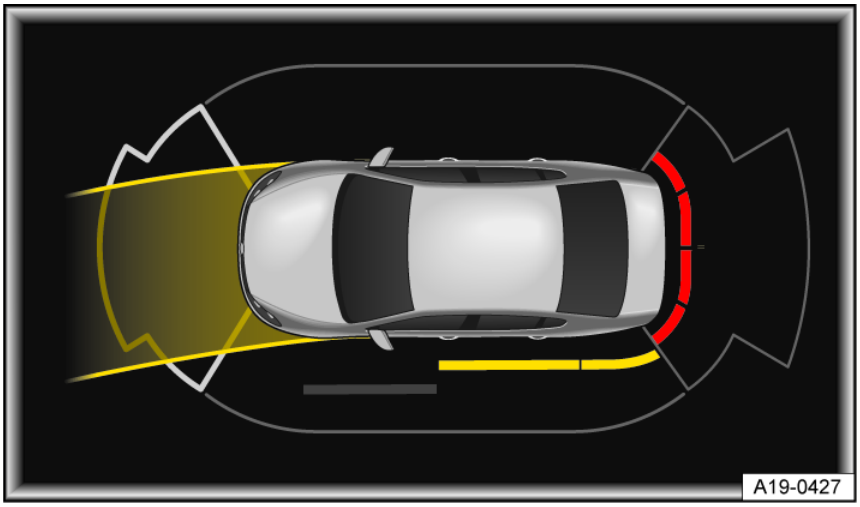


Fig. 116 Infotainment system: obstacle detection and steering lock for Park Distance Control (general example).

System function

The Park Distance Control system (PDC) detects the distance to an obstacle using sensors in the front and rear areas of the vehicle ⇒ *View from the front*, ⇒ *Rear view*.

WARNING

The intelligent technology of the Park Distance Control (PDC) cannot overcome the natural laws of physics and it can only operate within the limits of the system. Not paying attention can result in accidents, serious injuries and vehicle damage.

- The PDC cannot replace the driver's attention.

The Park Distance Control warns you of an obstacle via colored segments on the screen of the Infotainment system and via warning chimes *fig. 116* , ⇒ .

NOTICE

Do not continue driving! The collision area has been reached when the next to last segment is displayed.

NOTICE

In order to fully scan and display the side areas, you must move the vehicle a few yards forward or back. Any obstacles that enter these areas from the outside are not displayed.

If the driver does not respond to an approaching obstacle, automatic braking support may kick in ⇒ *Automatic braking intervention*.

Park Distance Control settings

Settings for Park Distance Control can be adjusted in the menu for parking systems, e.g. automatic activation when driving forwards or maneuver braking.

1. Press the P MENU control for parking functions ⇒ *Driver side*.
2. Tap the function key.
3. Select the setting.

To operate the volume reduction, first engage the electronic parking brake if necessary.

Switching Park Distance Control (PDC) on and off

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ and *Safety instructions*.

Switching on

1. Select the reverse gear.

   Or: Press the P MENU control panel for parking functions ⇒ *Driver side*. Then tap the P function key in the Infotainment system, if necessary.

   Or: The vehicle will roll backward.

Switching off

1. The vehicle is driving forward at more than 6–9 mph (10–15 km/h).

   Or: Tap the P function key.

   Or: Press the P MENU control panel for parking functions.

   Or: engage parking lock **P**.

Automatic activation when driving forward

If the vehicle slowly approaches an obstacle, Park Distance Control is automatically activated.

1. Tap the P MENU control in the instrument panel to open the menu for parking systems in the Infotainment system.
2. Switch the function on or off ⇒ *Displays in the Infotainment system* .

If the driver switches off Park Distance Control, no further automatic activation occurs.

Automatic activation is available again under following conditions:

- The vehicle has been accelerated to more than about 9 mph (15 km/h) and then the speed has fallen below this again.
- **Or:** the ignition has been switched off and on again.
- **Or:** parking lock **P** has been changed to a gear.

If an obstacle is detected in front of the vehicle, the display in the Infotainment system is activated. If the vehicle approaches further, warning chimes also sound.

Rear View Camera (Rear View)

Introduction

The Rear View Camera system in the rear of the vehicle makes it easier for

the driver to see behind the vehicle and assists when parking.

System function

The Rear View Camera system shows the area behind the vehicle on the Infotainment system screen. Depending on the mode and vehicle equipment, orientation lines may assist in the view toward the rear.

⚠ WARNING

The intelligent technology of the Park Distance Control (PDC) cannot overcome the natural laws of physics and it can only operate within the limits of the system. Not paying attention can result in accidents, serious injuries and vehicle damage.

- The PDC cannot replace the driver's attention.

Park modes

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the following screen views may be available:

Perpendicular parking:
Guide lines help when parking in reverse perpendicular to the road.

Trailer support or **off-road support** (depending on the country):
Depiction of the area immediately behind the vehicle with a high zoom factor and guide lines.

Cross traffic:
Depiction of the area behind the vehicle and the areas to the side of the vehicle at a wide angle.

Please also note the information on the parking systems' screen displays ⇒ *Displays in the Infotainment system*.

⚠ CAUTION

Vehicles with a swiveling emblem: The Rear View Camera system extending can cause serious injuries due to entrapment.

- When engaging reverse gear, make sure that there are no persons directly behind the vehicle and that nobody can intervene in the range of operation of the Volkswagen emblem on the trunk lid.

Switching the Rear View Camera system on and off

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ ⚠ and ⓘ *Safety instructions*.

Switching on

1. Select the reverse gear.

   Or: Press the P MENU control panel for parking functions. If available, tap the P function key in the Infotainment system.

Switching off

1. The vehicle drives forward at more than 9 mph (15 km/h).

   Or: Tap the P or ✕ function key on the screen of the Infotainment system.

Parking (Rear View Camera system with parking mode selection)

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ ⚠ and ⓘ *Safety instructions*.

Parking mode: Parking perpendicular to the road

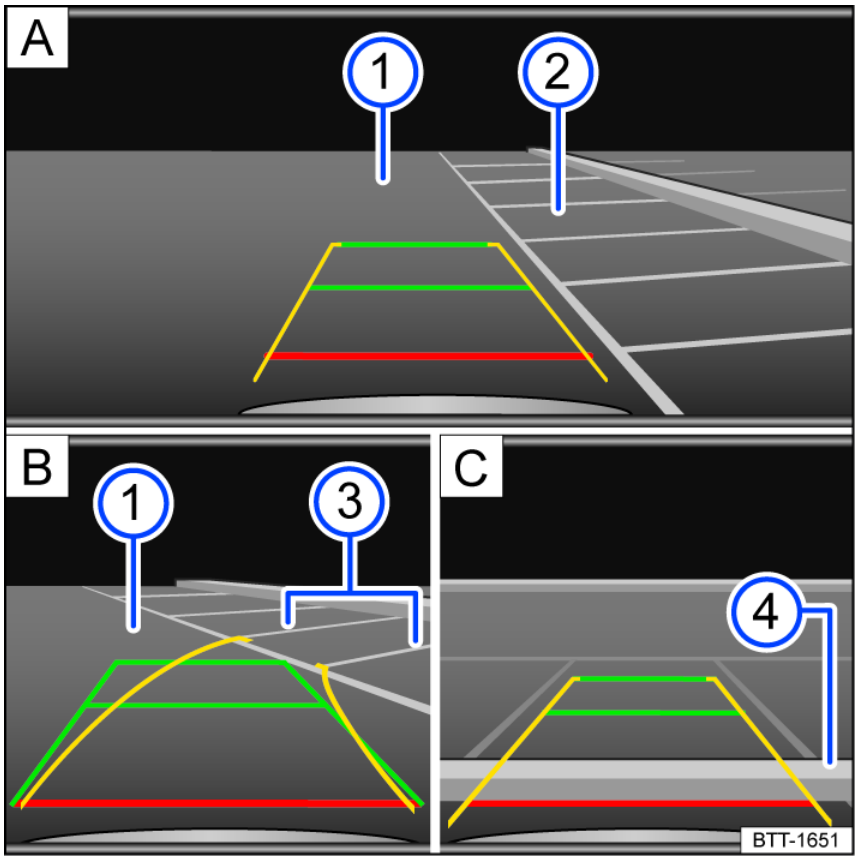


Fig. 117 Infotainment system: Parking perpendicular to the road.

A Searching for a parking space.

B Steering toward the selected parking space.

C Aligning the vehicle within the parking space.

(1) Road surface.

(2) Parking space.

(3) Side boundary of the parking space.

(4) Rear boundary of the parking space.

1. Press the P MENU control panel for parking functions before driving past the selected parking space. Then tap the P function key in the Infotainment system.
2. Tap the function key in the Infotainment system to select the parking mode.
3. Position your vehicle in front of the parking space *fig. 117* A (2).
4. Steer so that the yellow lines lead into the parking space. The green and yellow lines must align with the side boundary lines *fig. 117* B (3).
5. Stop when the red line reaches the rear boundary *fig. 117* C (4).

Park Assist

Introduction

Park Assist displays a suitable parking space and assists the driver when parking and leaving the parking space.

Park Assist is an extension of the parking system ⇒ *Introduction*.

Park Assist steers the vehicle into a parking space while you operate the accelerator pedal, the gears and the brake ⇒ !

WARNING

The intelligent technology of the Park Distance Control (PDC) cannot overcome the natural laws of physics and it can only operate within the limits of the system. Not paying attention can result in accidents, serious injuries and vehicle damage.

- Pay close attention to the parking process and the traffic. Keep an eye on the parking direction at the same time.
- In a hazardous situation, apply the brakes using the brake pedal.

The following functions are supported:

- Display suitable parking spaces.

- Select parking mode.
- Driving into a suitable parallel parking space or parking bay.
- Driving out of a suitable parallel parking space.

Pay attention to the message in the instrument cluster display.

NOTICE

Park Assist orients itself to parked vehicles, curbs, or other objects. Make sure the vehicle tires and rims are not damaged when parking.

- If necessary, stop the parking process at the correct time.

Aftermarket accessories mounted on the vehicle, such as bicycle racks, can interfere with Park Assist and can cause damage.

Automatic braking support may occur during parking processes if the driver accelerates too much.

Searching for parking spaces

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ and *Safety instructions*.

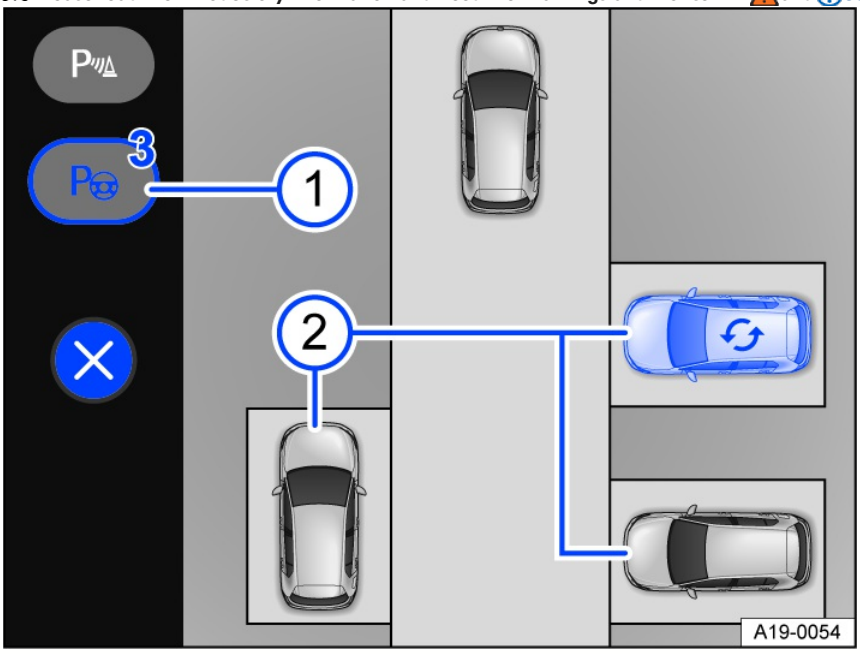


Fig. 118 In the Infotainment system: Preferred parking space (blue vehicle) and other parking spaces (general example).

(1) Number of detected parking spaces.

(2) Possible parking modes (maximum of two parking spaces per side of the road):

- Parallel parking in reverse.
- Cross parking driving forward.
- Cross parking in reverse.

Searching for parking spaces

1. Press the P MENU control for parking functions.
2. While paying attention to traffic around your vehicle, drive slowly past a row of parked vehicles.
3. The Park Assist will automatically look for possible parking spaces.
4. The Park Assist will automatically select a parking space and displays it as the preferred parking space (blue vehicle) in the Infotainment system *fig. 118* (2)
   The number of detected parking spaces is displayed on the function key, e.g. **3** *fig. 118* (1).

Changing parking spaces

If several parking spaces are displayed along the street, you can switch between the parking spaces, e.g. switching from perpendicular to parallel parking:

1. Tap the desired parking space on the Infotainment system screen *fig. 118* (2).
2. Tap the ↻ symbol *fig. 118* (2).
3. The display will be updated. The desired parking space will now be displayed as the preferred parking space (blue vehicle).

Park Assist can be activated afterwards. If you drive past a suitable parking space and then drive into the parking space yourself, this will be displayed

afterwards.

If Park Assist is not activated, detected parking spaces *fig. 118* (1) are shown in the Park Distance Control screen display, if necessary.

Driving into parking spaces

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ ⚠ and ⓘ *Safety instructions*.

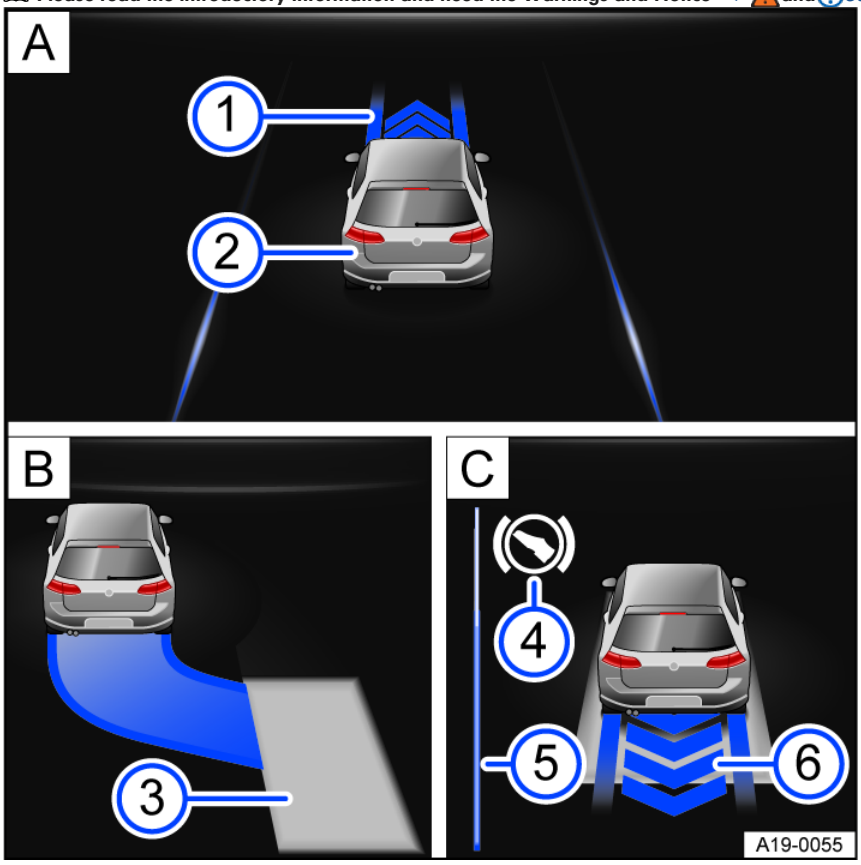


Fig. 119 On the instrument cluster display: drive into a parking space along the road (general example).

A Search for a parking space.

B Driving into a parking space.

C Maneuvering into a parking space.

(1) Prompt to drive forward.

(2) Your vehicle.

(3) Detected parking space.

(4) Request to brake.

(5) Progress bar (relative distance remaining).

(6) Request to drive backwards (with driving direction arrow).

Driving into parking spaces

Requirements:

✓ Park Assist was activated.

✓ A parking space has been found and selected.

1. Tap the START function key in the Infotainment system.

   Or: When driving in reverse into a parking space, engage the reverse gear **R**.

2. Release the steering wheel.
3. Observe the text messages as well as the display for the parking process on the instrument cluster display.
4. Accelerate carefully.
5. Apply the brakes if a warning chime sounds, the ⦸ indicator lights up, or a message appears on the instrument cluster display.
6. If a change of driving direction is shown in the instrument cluster, maneuver the vehicle accordingly *fig. 120*. Follow the text messages.
7. It may be necessary to complete the parking maneuver in several moves. When the process of driving into a parking space is finished, a text message appears in the instrument cluster display.

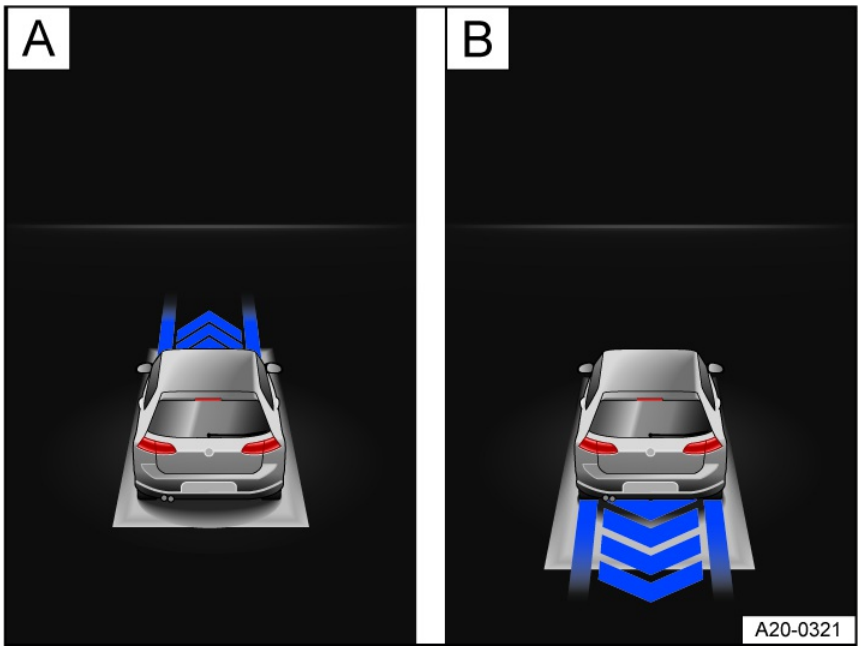


Fig. 120 On the instrument cluster display: prompt for changing driving direction (general example).

A Driving forwards.

B Driving backwards.

At the end of a parking maneuver, always wait until Park Assist has completed all rotational movements of the steering wheel in order to achieve an optimum parking result.

Park the vehicle and turn off the engine ⇒ *Parking*.

Activating Park Assist later

Requirements:

✓ Park Assist is not activated.

✓ It is driven forwards or backwards into a parking space ("parked").

Reversing into a parking space

The rear of the vehicle is in a parking space that had previously been passed by.

1. Stop the vehicle with the brake pedal.
2. In the Infotainment system, the P function key indicates a detected parking space, e.g. **1**.
3. Tap the P function key to switch to Park Assist.
4. Tap the START function key to start the parking process.

   Or: Engage reverse gear.
5. Let go of the steering wheel and follow all the actions as described above ⇒ ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

Turning the steering wheel too quickly can cause serious injuries.

- Do not grab the steering wheel during the maneuver until the system prompts you to do so.
- If the vehicle is approaching a dangerous situation, intervene and take over steering.

Driving forwards into a parking space

The front of the vehicle is in a parking bay.

1. Press the P MENU control for parking functions.
2. Tap the START function key to start the parking process.

   Or: Engage reverse gear **R**.
3. Let go of the steering wheel and follow all the actions as described above.

If you stop a reverse parking process and reactivate Park Assist, the parking process can be started again.

The lane shown on the Infotainment system during a parking process is a general example. It does not correspond to the actual parking process by Park Assist.

Exiting a parking space

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ and *Safety instructions*.

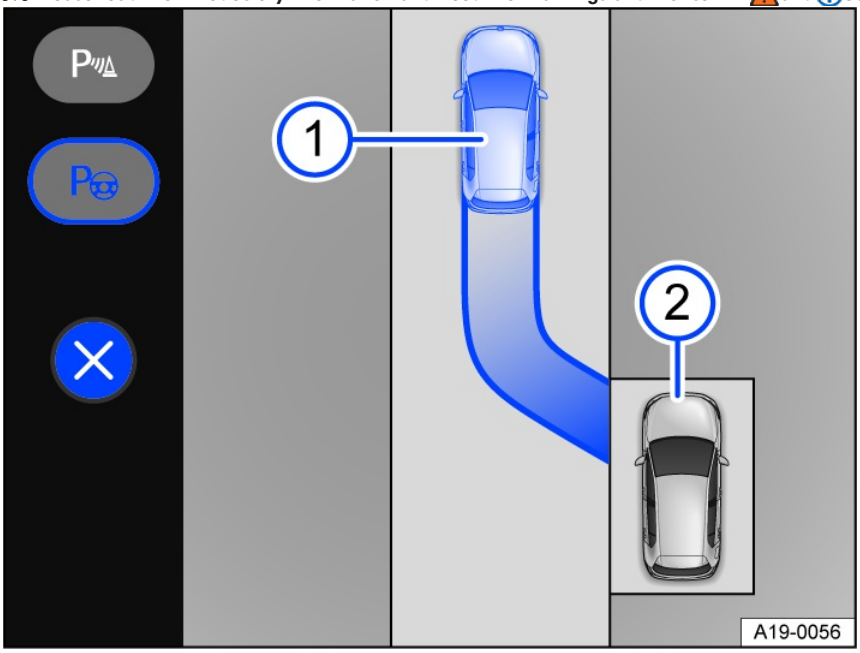


Fig. 121 In the infotainment system: exiting procedure (general example).

(1) Target position.

(2) Vehicle in the current parking space.

Option 1:

1. Start the engine.
2. Press and hold the brake pedal.
3. Activate the turn signal for the side of the road where the vehicle should drive out of the parking space.
4. Activate Park Assist ⇒ *Searching for parking spaces*.
5. Tap the function key START on the Infotainment system screen.
6. Follow the text messages in the instrument cluster display.

The vehicle is guided fully onto the road by Park Assist ⇒ ⚠.

Option 2:

1. Start the engine.
2. Press and hold the brake pedal.
3. Activate the turn signal for the side of the road where the vehicle should drive out of the parking space.
4. Activate Park Assist ⇒ *Searching for parking spaces*.
5. Select the reverse gear.
6. Follow the text messages in the instrument cluster display.
7. Apply the brakes if a chime sounds, the indicator comes on, or a prompt to drive forward appears in the instrument cluster display.
8. Perform the procedure for exiting the parking space until a message appears in the instrument cluster display and possibly a tone signaling the end of the parking space exit procedure.

The vehicle is guided fully onto the road by Park Assist.

⚠ WARNING

Only drive the vehicle out of the parking space when the traffic situation allows it.

The lane shown on the Infotainment system during a parking process is a general example. It does not correspond to the actual parking process by Park Assist.

Rear Traffic Alert

Rear Traffic Alert monitors the cross traffic when reversing out of a space or maneuvering.

⚠ WARNING

The intelligent technology of the Park Distance Control (PDC) cannot overcome the natural laws of physics and it can only operate within the limits of the system. Not paying attention can result in accidents, serious injuries, and vehicle damage.

- Pay attention to the traffic situation and the vehicle environment.
- The Rear Traffic Alert may potentially not detect all approaching objects, e.g. pedestrians or objects approaching quickly.

Switching on and off

1. Press the button.

   Or: Press the MENU control panel for parking functions.

   Tap the function key in the Infotainment system.

2. Switch the Rear Traffic Alert on or off.

System function

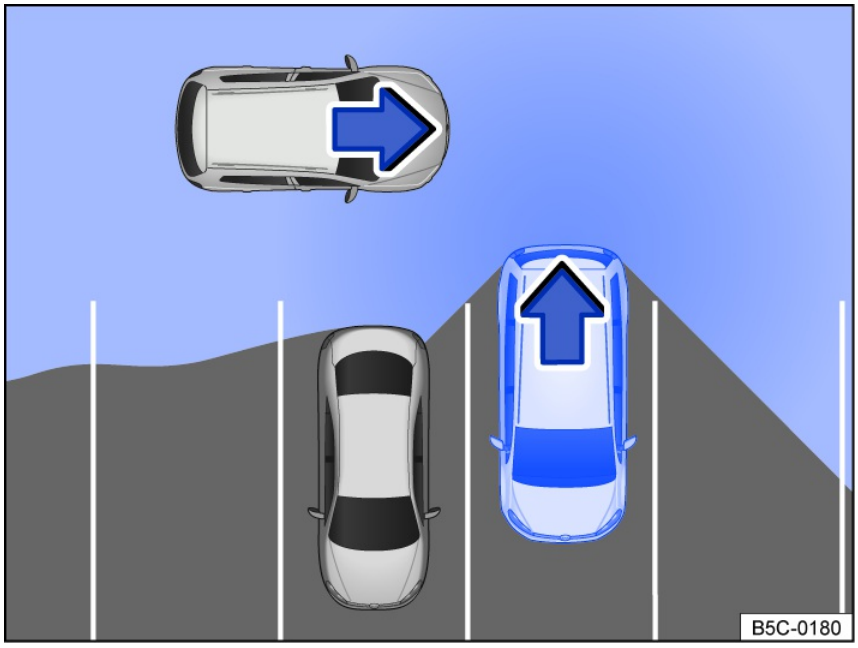


Fig. 122 Rear Traffic Alert, general example: monitored area around the vehicle that is exiting a parking space.

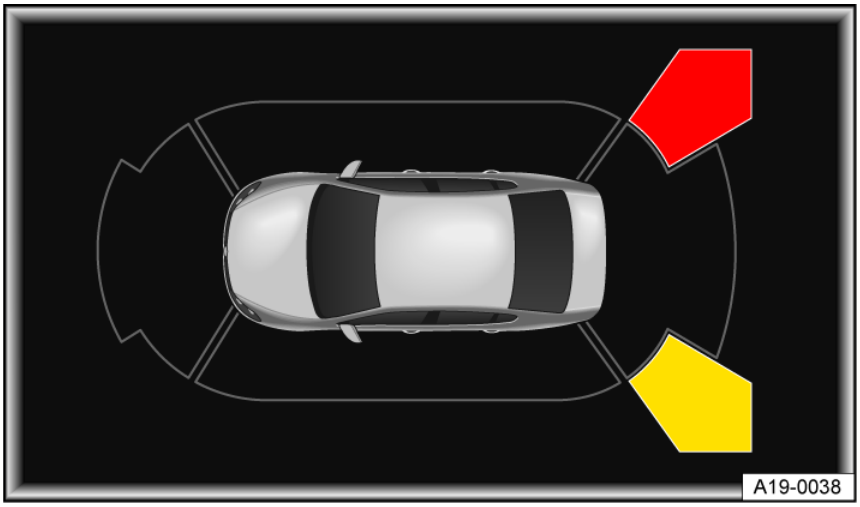


Fig. 123 Infotainment system: Rear Traffic Alert display.

The Rear Traffic Alert functions with radar sensors in the rear bumper.

The system detects approaching or moving objects in the surrounding area to the rear and to the side *fig. 122* and warns the driver if there is an obstacle ⇒ ⚠.

If there is an obstacle, a warning signal will sound and there will be a colored display of the area of the obstacle in the Infotainment system *fig. 123*.

The following indicator light is displayed in the instrument cluster:

Automatic braking intervention by Rear Traffic Alert.

Press the brake pedal to bring the vehicle to a standstill.

If the driver does not respond, automatic braking support may kick in ⇒ *Automatic braking intervention*.

Malfunction

If Rear Traffic Alert is malfunctioning, the following indicator light comes on in the Volkswagen Digital Cockpit:

 **Rear Traffic Alert malfunction (for example. dirty sensors or system error).**

Braking assistance systems

Information about braking assistance systems

Braking assistance systems can assist the driver in critical driving and braking situations. The driver is always responsible for safe driving ⇒ ⚠.

If a braking assistance system is regulating, continue braking with the necessary force and, if necessary, steer the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

The intelligent technology in the braking assistance systems cannot overcome the natural laws of physics and it can only operate within the limits of the system. Driving fast on icy, slippery, or wet roads can lead to loss of vehicle control and serious injuries to the driver and passengers.

- Always adapt your speed and driving style to the visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions. Do not take any risks.
- Braking assistance systems cannot prevent a collision, for example if you are driving too close to other vehicles.
- Always use suitable tires. Driving stability depends on the tires' ability to grip the road.
- Always keep the footwell beneath the pedals clear so that the brake pedal is unobstructed and can move freely.

- ESC, ABS and ASR only function correctly when all four wheels have the intended tires ⇒ ⚠.
- If the ABS malfunctions, the ESC, ASR and EDS also fail.

When the ignition is switched on, the condition of the braking functions is automatically checked. The indicator lights will come on briefly and then turn off. If an indicator light remains on permanently, there is a malfunction. Contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility immediately. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

⚠ WARNING

The effectiveness of the ESC can be reduced considerably if other components and systems that affect driving dynamics are not maintained correctly or are malfunctioning. This applies in particular to changes made to the suspension and any non-approved wheel and tire combinations.

- Ensure that conversion and modifications to the vehicle are only performed by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
- Always use suitable tires. Driving stability depends on the tires' ability to grip the road.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC)

 ESC is regulating the vehicle to reduce the risk of skidding and improve driving stability ⇒ ⚠. The indicator light flashes yellow.

Anti-Slip Regulation (ASR)

 ASR is regulating the vehicle to reduce the risk of the wheels spinning. The indicator light flashes yellow.

ASR reduces drive power at wheels that are spinning and adapts the drive power to the road conditions. ASR makes it easier to start, accelerate, and drive up hills ⇒ ⚠.

Anti-Lock Braking System (ABS)

ABS prevents the wheels from locking during braking so that the vehicle can be steered ⇒ ⚠.

Brake Assist System (BAS)

BAS can help to reduce the vehicle braking distance. BAS increases braking power when the driver presses the brake pedal quickly in emergency situations ⇒

Electronic Differential Lock (EDL and XDL)

EDS automatically applies the brakes to a wheel that starts spinning and transfers the drive power to the other driving wheels.

XDS improves traction with braking support to help keep the vehicle in its lane.

Multi Collision Brake

The Automatic Post-Collision Braking System automatically brakes the vehicle if the airbag control module has detected a collision in an accident situation.

Requirements for automatic braking:

✓ The driver does not press the accelerator pedal.

Electronic braking distribution (EBD)

The electronic braking distribution (EBD) regulates the braking force between the front axle and the rear axle, even outside of ABS regulation. Overbraking of the rear axle is avoided and the vehicle remains stable when braking.

Electromechanical brake booster (eBB)

The electromechanical brake booster (eBB) supports the foot pressure only when the ignition is switched on and enhances the pressure applied to the brake pedal by the driver ⇒ ⚠. In case of a braking intervention by a driver assist system, such as during control by the ACC or during emergency braking, the brake pedal may move itself.

After switching off the ignition, braking assistance will be gradually reduced. If the vehicle is still being held by the brake pedal, text messages will appear on the instrument cluster display. Brake support is limited in this case.

Secure the stationary vehicle against rolling away ⇒ *Parking*.

⚠ WARNING

Driving without the brake booster or when the brake booster's functionality is limited can increase the braking distance significantly, increasing the risk of accidents and serious injury.

- Never stop the engine or switch the ignition off while the vehicle is moving.
- If the brake booster is not working, you will need to press the brake pedal harder because the lack of braking assistance will increase the braking distance.
- Always keep the footwell beneath the pedals clear so that the brake pedal is unobstructed and can move freely.

Switching the braking support system on and off

Driving situations

The braking assistance systems should not be switched off under normal conditions in order to avoid risks ⇒ ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

When ESC is switched off, the risk of the vehicle swerving is significantly higher. The vehicle can be difficult for inexperienced drivers to handle at high speeds. Accidents and serious injuries could result.

- Only switch off ESC completely if you are driving on a closed track and are experienced in sporty driving.
- Only switch on ESC Sport if you are driving on a closed track and are experienced in sporty driving.
- Never take risks, and note the physical limits of the vehicle.

Switching on and off

1. Open the vehicle settings of the Infotainment system ⇒ *Vehicle settings menu*.
2. Open the settings for parking systems.
3. Select the function.

If the driving situation no longer exists, the brake system should be switched on again completely ⇒ ⚠.

ASR

It can be helpful to switch off ASR when the vehicle is driven on loose ground or when "rocking" the vehicle out of place because it is stuck ⇒ ⚠.

OFF ASR is manually switched off. The yellow indicator light turns on.

ESC Sport

Golf GTI, R model: The function assists with sporty driving. The ESC intervenes later to stabilize the vehicle, e.g. during fast cornering ⇒ ⚠.

OFF ESC Sport is switched on. The yellow indicator light turns on.

ESC Off

Golf GTI, R model: The function assists with sporty driving for experienced drivers. The ESC is switched off and stabilizing interventions are not performed. Always read the safety instructions ⇒ ⚠.

OFF ESC is manually switched off. The yellow indicator light turns on.

Defining ESC mode as a favorite in the Infotainment system

To access ESC settings directly, you can save a favorite function, e.g. for switching off ESC, in the drop-down menu in the Infotainment system. This function depends on the vehicle equipment ⇒ *Personalizing the Infotainment system*.

Troubleshooting

BRAKE Electromechanical brake booster failure

Do not continue driving!

The red warning light comes on.

A message is displayed if necessary. Press the brake pedal harder, as the lack of braking assistance will increase the braking distance.

1. Contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility immediately for assistance. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Electromechanical brake servo faulty

The yellow indicator light turns on.

A message is displayed for a few seconds.

The brake pedal might pulse when pressed. Press the brake pedal harder, because the reduced braking assistance will increase the braking distance.

1. Contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

ABS or ABS failure or malfunction

The yellow indicator light turns on.

1. Contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

The vehicle can be braked without ABS.

ESC malfunction

The yellow indicator light turns on. ESC has been switched off.

There is a fault or malfunction.

1. Switch the ignition off and on.
2. If necessary, drive a short distance at speeds between 15-20 mph (9-12 km/h).
3. If the indicator light stays on, contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Noises in the braking assistance systems

When the braking assistance systems are actively regulating, the brake pedal may move or noises may occur.

1. Continue braking with the necessary force and, if necessary, steer the vehicle.

WARNING

If the brake warning lamp BRAKE or turns on together with the ABS or indicator light, the regulating function of the ABS could be malfunctioning. This could cause the rear wheels to lock relatively quickly when braking. Locked rear wheels can lead to loss of vehicle control.

- If possible, reduce your speed and drive slowly and carefully to the nearest authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility to have the brake system checked. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
- Avoid sudden braking or driving maneuvers.
- If the indicator light ABS does not turn off, or turns on during the journey, the ABS is not working correctly. The vehicle can only be stopped with the normal brakes (without ABS). The security provided by the ABS is not available. Visit an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility as soon as possible. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Practical equipment

Storage compartments

Introduction

WARNING

Loose objects can be thrown around the inside of the vehicleduring sudden driving or braking maneuvers. This can cause serious injuries and loss of vehicle control.

- Store objects in only closed storage compartments.
- Always keep the storage compartments closed while driving.
- Only hang lightweight clothing, up to a maximum of 5.5 lbs (approximately 2.5 kg), from the coat hooks in the vehicle. Never leave heavy, hard or sharp objects in the pockets.

WARNING

An open glove compartment can increase the risk of serious injuries in the event of a collision or during sudden braking or driving maneuvers.

- Always keep the glove compartment closed while driving.

WARNING

Lighters in the vehicle can become damaged or ignite unintentionally. This can cause severe burns and vehicle damage.

- Before closing compartments or storage areas, always make sure that there are no cigarette lighters near the sections that will be closing.
- Never place lighters in compartments, in storage areas, or on other surfaces in the vehicle. Lighters may ignite as a result of high surface temperatures, especially in summer.

WARNING

Incorrect usage of the cup holders can cause injuries.

- Do not place hot beverages in the cup holders. Hot beverages in the cup holders could spill and cause burns while driving, during sudden braking maneuvers, or in collisions.
- Take care that only suitably sized drinks are stored in the cup holder. Drinks must always be steady and secure in the cup holder.

WARNING

Closed beverage bottles can explode from heat and burst from frost.

- Never leave closed beverage bottles in an extremely hot or extremely cold vehicle.

NOTICE

- Never leave any objects, groceries, or medications that are sensitive to temperature in the vehicle interior. Hot and cold conditions could damage these objects and make them unusable.
- Objects made out of transparent materials in the vehicle, for example transparent suction cups on the window glass, can concentrate sunlight and cause damage to the vehicle.

Sockets

Introduction

Electrical devices can be connected to the sockets in the vehicle.

The 12 V socket only works when the ignition is switched on.

WARNING

Using sockets and electrical devices incorrectly can cause fires and serious injuries.

- Never leave children unattended in the vehicle. Sockets and the devices connected to them can be used when the ignition is switched on.
- If the electrical devices become too warm, turn off the devices immediately and disconnect them.

NOTICE

- To reduce the risk of damage to the electrical system, never attempt to charge the 12 V vehicle battery by connecting electrical devices that provide power to the 12 V sockets, such as solar panels or battery chargers.
- Only use electrical devices that have been tested for compliance with the applicable directives for electromagnetic compatibility.
- Do not use any malfunctioning devices.
- To reduce the risk of damage from voltage fluctuations, turn electrical devices off before switching the ignition on or off and before starting the engine.
- Never connect electrical devices that draw more than the specified load of a 12 V socket. The vehicle electrical system can be damaged when the maximum load is exceeded.
- Refer to the operating instructions for the electrical devices.

The 12 V vehicle battery will drain if the ignition and electrical devices are switched on while the engine is switched off.

Unshielded devices can cause malfunctions in the radio, the Infotainment system and in the vehicle electronics, depending on the vehicle equipment.

Sockets in the vehicle

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ and *Introduction*.



Fig. 124 In the lower part of the center console and in the luggage compartment: Folding 12-volt socket (general example).

Do not exceed the maximum power of the sockets. The power draw of the external devices is indicated on the identification labels.

The total continuous output of all 12 V sockets in the vehicle is 120 watts ⇒ *Introduction*.

The maximum power of a 12 V socket in the vehicle **with the engine running** totals 180 watts.

NOTICE

Using 12 V sockets for too long at maximum power can cause the fuse to blow.

- **Never** use 12 V sockets at their maximum power for longer than 10 minutes.
- Only ever use **a single** 12 V socket at maximum power.

Data transmission

Cyber security

Cyber security describes measures that reduce the risk of illegal access to vehicle functions, data and control modules caused by malware or an Internet attack.

What are connectivity components?

Control modules for data transmission, interfaces, media and diagnostic connections are connectivity components, through which information and data can be exchanged between the vehicle and external devices or the Internet. The following connectivity components may not be available in all vehicles:

- Diagnostic connection port
- Control module with installed eSIM card (OCU).
- Mobile phone interface
- App-Connect.
- Wi-Fi hotspot.
- NFC radio technology.
- Bluetooth interface.
- USB port.
- SD card slot.
- SIM card slot.

Connectivity components are the key points for cyber security. Connectivity components are also equipped with security mechanisms that minimize the risk of unauthorized access to vehicle systems.

Security mechanisms

Software and security mechanisms available in the vehicle undergo continuous development. Similar to computers or operating systems on cell phones, software and security mechanisms in the vehicle may also be updated at various times.

Generally, system updates improve the security, stability, and processing speeds of the vehicle systems in vehicles that have already been produced.

⚠ WARNING

In spite of the integrated security mechanisms, malware can cause malfunctions in control modules and vehicle functions. This can cause serious accidents and fatal injuries.

- If the vehicle works or reacts differently to normal, reduce your speed in a controlled manner.
- Contact suitably qualified professionals for assistance. Volkswagen recommends contacting your Volkswagen dealership.

Malware can also access data and information that are stored in the control modules, in the Infotainment system, on connected data carriers, and in paired cell phones.

Minimizing risks

You can actively help to reduce the risk of unauthorized access to vehicle systems and functions by following these guidelines:

- Only use data carriers, Bluetooth devices and cell phones in the vehicle that do not contain any manipulated data or malware.
- Only have the vehicle repaired and serviced by suitably qualified professionals. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

⚠ WARNING

Computers, data carriers and cell phones that are connected to the Internet or are used in public or private networks can be infected by manipulated data and malware.

- Protect computers, data carriers and cell phones with a suitable antivirus program and by taking generally recognized precautions.
- Regularly update the antivirus program using the provided system updates or upgrades provided by the vendor.

VW Car-Net®

Introduction

VW Car-Net Ready

Your vehicle is equipped with VW Car-Net hardware, including a three-button module in the roof console. In order to use the VW Car-Net services, you need a subscription to them and to activate them. Many of the services come at an additional cost. Some services may be offered as a trial subscription for a limited perioc of time.

VW Car-Net requires a mobile network connection and GPS signal availability.

⚠ WARNING

Using apps while driving can distract from traffic. Driver distraction can cause accidents and injuries.

- Always drive attentively and responsibly.
- Only use apps and functions when the vehicle is stationary.

Once you have registered with VW Car-Net, positional information from the vehicle is transmitted every time one of the Car-Net buttons is tapped. This also occurs in the event of an automatic emergency call or periodically in conjunction with using the VW Car-Net functions. Volkswagen has the capability to determine the exact position of the vehicle at any time, should this be required legally, by order or compulsory measure, or be necessary in emergencies, provided that the VW Car-Net equipment has not been deactivated. For further information, please contact the VW Car-Net Response Center on 1-833-648-2735. Calls may be monitored or recorded.

Volkswagen collects, processes, shares and transmits information about you and your vehicle in compliance with the VW Car-Net terms and conditions and privacy provisions. For more information, please visit our website at www.vw.com/carnet.

Situations that can affect system functions

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ ⚠ *Introduction*.

Even if requirements for the usage of these services have been met, the performance of VW Car-Net® may be impaired or blocked by various factors that are outside of the control of Volkswagen. In particular, this includes:

- Maintenance, repairs, deactivations, software updates, and technical improvements to the telecommunications systems, satellites, servers, and databases.
- Switching the mobile network standard to transmit mobile data through the telecommunications provider, for example, from UMTS to EDGE or GPRS.
- If an existing mobile network standard is switched off by the telecommunications provider.
- Malfunction, impairment, or interruption of the mobile network and GPS reception, for example due to high speeds, solar storms, weather conditions, regional circumstances, malfunctioning equipment, and high mobile network usage in the applicable radio cells.
- If you are in a location with no or very poor cell phone or GPS reception. These locations may include tunnels, areas between tall buildings, garages, parking ramps, underpasses, mountains, and valleys.
- Limited availability of information or incomplete or incorrect information from third-party providers, such as on map displays.
- In countries, federal states and regions where VW Car-Net® is not offered.

VW Car-Net® Portfolio

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ ⚠ *Introduction*.

VW Car-Net is part of Connected Vehicle Services and makes driving a Volkswagen more convenient. The In-Vehicle Services can be used via the control for voice services in the roof console.

Emergency Call Service

If you or your passengers require medical assistance or help from the police, press the emergency call button. You will be connected to a contact partner at the Volkswagen emergency call center, who will assess your situation and, if required, will send the police or medical help to the GPS location of your vehicle.

Only press the emergency call button if you require medical assistance or help from the police via VW Car-Net.

Volkswagen is not responsible for the reaction time of police or medical emergency services, or the assistance they provide on site.

Roadside assistance call

In the event of a breakdown, press the roadside assistance call button. You will be connected to a contact partner at VW Roadside Assistance, who will send help t your GPS location.

Do not use the roadside assistance call button or the information call button to request police or medical help.

Information call

Press the information call button. You will be connected to a contact parter at the VW Car-Net call center, who can help you in the following cases, amongst others:

- Logging in and registering services.
- Finding and sending routes to the navigation system.
- Locating VW service partners.

Registration required

If you want to use VW Car-Net, you must log in and activate the functions. Many functions require a paid subscription. Some functions can be provided with a time-limited trial subscription. For more information on VW Car-Net functions, visit our website at www.vw.com/carnet.

After registering successfully, inform all users of the vehicle that the following data from the vehicle is sent or automatically received:

- Speed
- Location.
- Further information.

Functions and services of VW Car-Net and every trial or paid subscription may be adjusted, ended, deactivated, reactivated or enhanced without additional notifications. Visit www.vw.com/carnet for details regarding subscription, Terms of Use and privacy policy.

If you have any questions or would like to start a subscription, contact our VW Car-Net Response Center on 1-833-648-2735, or visit our website at www.vw.com/carnet.

Wi-FI hotspot

Introduction

The Wi-Fi hotspot function is not available in all markets and vehicles.

Some Infotainment systems can be used as a Wi-Fi hotspot for Internet access on up to eight Wi-Fi devices.

Some Infotainment systems can use the Wi-Fi hotspot on an external Wi-Fi device (Wi-Fi client) ⇒ *Setting up a Wi-Fi client*.

A data connection is required for connecting to the Internet and for certain functions, such as using Volkswagen We Connect.

A data connection is required for connecting to the Internet and for certain functions, such as using VW Car-Net.

The Wi-Fi connection is encrypted by default with WPA2 encryption for security reasons. Volkswagen recommends always using WPA2 encryption. Observe legal regulations for the country where you are operating the vehicle.

There may be fees for the required data connection. Volkswagen recommends using a mobile phone plan with a flat rate data package due to the possible volume of data. Information on this can be obtained from the mobile network provider.

Depending on your mobile data rate, additional costs (such as roaming fees) may result from downloading and using data packets online, especially in other countries.

In the event of border crossings into countries with different permissible radio frequencies than your own country, use of the wireless function/Wi-Fi must be deactivated due to legal provisions. The wired functions are not affected by this restriction and can still be used.

Establishing a data connection

Wi-Fi (10 inch variant)

- Wi-Fi in accordance with IEEE 802.11 a/b/g/n/ac.
- 2.4 GHz and 5 GHz data transfer.
- Three Wi-Fi modes at once:
  - Tethering (2.4 GHz or 5 GHz).
  - 2.4 GHz access point.
  - 5 GHz access point.
- Wi-Fi antenna.
  - One multi-band aerial each for 2.4 GHz and 5 GHz.
- Up to eight Wi-Fi devices can be connected at the same time.
- Internet connection via Wi-Fi:
  - Tethering via cell phone.
  - Hotspot for clients in the vehicle.
- Apple CarPlay™ via Wi-Fi.
- Android Auto™ via Wi-Fi.
- Audio and video streaming via Wi-Fi.
- Simplified pairing process via WPS, NFC or QR code .

Possible data connection types

eSIM (embedded SIM): The vehicle has a OCU with an embedded SIM card (eSIM). In order to use this eSIM, you need to purchase data plans for use via the In-Car Shop.

External Wi-Fi device: Use the Wi-Fi hotspot on an external cell phone ⇒ *Setting up a Wi-Fi client*.

The types of possible data connections depend on the country and equipment.

Setting up and deactivating a Wi-Fi hotspot

The Infotainment system can be used as a Wi-Fi hotspot for Internet access on up to eight Wi-Fi devices.

A data connection, for example through an internal eSIM or external Wi-Fi device, is also required for connecting to the Internet and for certain functions, such as using We Connect. The possible types of data connections depend on the country and the Infotainment system being used.

Connecting to Wi-Fi

1. Tap HOME ▶ ⚙ ▶ Wi-Fi ▶ Infotainment system as hotspot.
2. Activate the ☑ Use as hotspot checkbox.
3. Search for the Wi-Fi hotspot's name on the Wi-Fi device.
4. Enter the network key that is displayed on the Wi-Fi device and confirm it.

   The Wi-Fi connection will be established. If necessary, you may need to enter additional information on the Wi-Fi device.
5. Repeat the process to connect additional Wi-Fi devices.

The hotspot name and network key are automatically generated. You can change these and set your own hotspot name and network key.

Deactivating a Wi-Fi hotspot

1. Open the Hotspot settings (Wi-Fi) menu. To do this, tap HOME ▶ ⚙ ▶ Wi-Fi ▶ Infotainment system as hotspot.
2. Deactivate the ☑ Mobile hotspot checkbox.

   The Wi-Fi hotspot is deactivated.

Quick connection

Quick connection makes it possible to easily and quickly set up a wireless local network with encryption. In several countries, the function can alternatively be executed by scanning in a code.

WPS with the Infotainment system as a Wi-Fi hotspot

✓ The Wi-Fi hotspot of the Infotainment system must be activated.

✓ The Wi-Fi device must support WPS.

1. Tap HOME ▶ ⚙ ▶ Wi-Fi.
2. Tap Quick connection with Infotainment system.
3. Activate WPS on the external Wi-Fi device to be connected.

   The Wi-Fi connection will be established. If necessary, you may need to enter additional information on the Wi-Fi device.
4. Repeat the process to connect additional Wi-Fi devices.

Only one WPS connection can be established at a time. If multiple connection attempts start at the same time, all connection attempts will fail.

Setting up a Wi-Fi connection via NFC

The Wi-Fi connection can be established via NFC using the shelf of the cordless charging station.

Prerequisites for using NFC connections:

✓ NFC technology and the shelf of the wireless charging station are installed in the vehicle.

✓ NFC Is activated on the Wi-Fi device.

✓ The Wi-Fi hotspot of the Infotainment system is activated.

1. Tap HOME ▶ ⚙ ▶ Wi-Fi.
2. Tap Quick connection with Infotainment system.
3. Unlock the Wi-Fi device and place it on the shelf of the cordless charging station ⇒ *Wireless charging function*.

   The Wi-Fi device is connected as client to the Wi-Fi hotspot of the Infotainment system.

The wireless charging function is deactivated while the Infotainment system is in the Wi-Fi settings menu. Wireless charging is reactivated if you leave the settings menu.

On older Wi-Fi devices, the functionality may be restricted or not work at all. Ensure that you always use the recent software version for your Wi-Fi device.

Setting up a Wi-Fi connection via QR code

The Wi-Fi connection can also be established by scanning the corresponding QR code.

✓ The Wi-Fi hotspot of the Infotainment system must be activated.

✓ A suitable application for scanning QR codes must be installed on the Wi-Fi device.

1. Tap HOME ▶ ⚙ ▶ Wi-Fi.

2. Tap Quick connection with Infotainment system.
3. Scan the QR code on the screen of the Infotainment system with the Wi-Fi device.

   The Wi-Fi device is connected as client to the Wi-Fi hotspot of the Infotainment system.

Setting up a Wi-Fi client

The Infotainment system can also use the Wi-Fi hotspot on an external Wi-Fi device (such as a cell phone) to connect to the Internet and use online services.

Connecting to Wi-Fi

1. Activate the Wi-Fi hotspot on the Wi-Fi device. Refer to the manufacturer's operating instructions.
2. Tap HOME ▶ ⚙ ▶ Wi-Fi ▶ Wi-Fi:.
3. Tap Search for Wi-Fi.

   The Infotainment system scans for Wi-Fi hotspots in the area. This scan process can take a few seconds.
4. Select the Wi-Fi network of the preferred Wi-Fi device.
5. Enter the Wi-Fi hotspot network key on the Infotainment system and confirm with OK.

   The Wi-Fi connection will be established. If necessary, you may need to enter additional information on the Wi-Fi device.

Due to the large number of Wi-Fi devices that are available, there is no guarantee that all functions will always be available.

The Wi-Fi function may not be available in all countries and may vary.

WPS with Infotainment system as client

✓ The Wi-Fi device must support WPS.

1. Tap HOME ▶ ⚙ ▶ Wi-Fi ▶ Wi-Fi:.
2. Tap WPS quick connection (WPS button).
3. Activate WPS on the external Wi-Fi device.

   The Wi-Fi connection will be established. If necessary, you may need to enter additional information on the Wi-Fi device.

WPS is not supported by all Wi-Fi devices. In this case, connect manually:

Adjusting settings

Opening Wi-Fi settings

Tap HOME ▶ SETUP ▶ Wi-Fi.

The following settings are possible:

- Setting up the Infotainment system as a hotspot.
- Connecting to the Infotainment system via a quick connection.
- Connecting with the Wi-Fi.

1. Make corresponding entries or tap function keys.

   Changes will be automatically applied when the menu is closed.

App-Connect

Introduction

App-Connect makes it possible to display and control content and functions displayed on the cell phone through the Infotainment system screen.

To do this, the cell phone must be connected to the Infotainment system via a USB interface with a data transfer function.

Some technologies can also be used with the Wireless App-Connect via the Bluetooth interface and a Wi-Fi connection.

The following technologies may be available:

- Apple CarPlay™.
- Apple CarPlay™ Wireless.
- Android Auto™.
- Android Auto™ Wireless.
- MirrorLink®.

Which App-Connect technologies are available to you depends on the country and on the cell phone in use.

MirrorLink, Apple CarPlay and Android Auto are technologies which are operated by third parties and provided by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG is not

responsible if these technologies are canceled, discontinued or deactivated during the service life of the vehicle.

You can find more information on the Volkswagen website.

App-Connect wireless function in the event of border crossings

In the event of border crossings into countries with different permissible radio frequencies than your own country, please note the following:

- The App-Connect wireless function may be limited due to legal provisions, or may not be possible at all. This can be indicated by a message in the Infotainmer system.
- The App-Connect wireless function must be deactivated due to legal provisions. The Wi-Fi hotspot must be deactivated.

This does not apply to wired functions.

Opening the App-Connect main menu

Navigation to the App-Connect main menu depends on the Infotainment system being used.

1. Tap (HOME) ▶ .

   Or: press (APP).

Setting-up Wireless App-Connect

In order to use Wireless App-Connect, first pair the cell phone with the Infotainment system. Then proceed as follows:

Connecting a cell phone for the first time

1. Unlock the cell phone.
2. Activate Wi-Fi reception and Bluetooth on the cell phone.
3. Connect the cell phone to the Infotainment system via a USB cable or Bluetooth.
4. Open the App-Connect main menu if it does not open automatically.
5. Select the cell phone and your preferred technology.
6. Allow the Infotainment system the required access. To do this, confirm authorization requests on the cell phone.
7. Disconnect the USB connection and re-connect with the Infotainment system using Wi-Fi or Bluetooth.

   Wireless App-Connect set-up is complete.

   Pairing is complete. The paired cell phone can now use Wireless App-Connect in the future without a USB connection.

If any pop-up menus were dismissed during the connection process, Wireless App-Connect will not be available. In this case, Volkswagen recommends deleting th devices from the cell phone settings and Infotainment system and restarting the connection process.

Wireless App-Connect may not be supported by all technologies.

⚠ WARNING

Using apps while driving can distract from traffic. Driver distraction can cause accidents and injuries.

- Always drive attentively and responsibly.
- Only use apps and functions when the vehicle is stationary.

⚠ WARNING

If apps are used that are not suitable or that are not used correctly, this may result in vehicle damage, accidents, and serious injuries.

- Protect the cell phone and its apps from misuse.

NOTICE

Volkswagen is not responsible for vehicle damage that is caused by low-quality or malfunctioning apps, inadequate programming of apps, insufficient network strength, data loss during transmission, or misuse of cell phones.

Apps

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ ⚠ and ! *Introduction*.

Content from Volkswagen apps and third party provider apps displayed on cell phones can be displayed on the Infotainment system screen using Volkswagen App-Connect.

Apps from third-party providers may be incompatible.

The use of apps and the required mobile phone connection may be subject to additional charges.

Apps can be based on many different designs and can also differ depending on the vehicle and country. The content, scope, and providers of the apps may vary.

Furthermore, some apps depend on the availability of services from third party providers.

It cannot be guaranteed that the apps that are offered will be able to run on all cell phones and with all operating systems.

The apps provided by Volkswagen can be changed, canceled, deactivated, reactivated, and enhanced without notice.

To avoid driver distraction, only certified apps can be used while driving.

Symbols and settings for App-Connect

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ and *Introduction*.

Symbols in the App-Connect menu

The symbols present depend on the type of Infotainment system and the vehicle model.

Show further information. Open the App-Connect settings menu. Open the App-Connect settings menu. Select Apple CarPlay technology. Select Android Auto™ technology. MirrorLink Select Mirror Link® technology.

Setting options in the App-Connect settings menu

The setting options depend on the integrated Infotainment system.

Mobile devices Open the device manager.

☑ Activate data transmission for VW apps: Data transmission for VW apps is activated.

☑ Allow MirrorLink notes to display Messages are displayed when using MirrorLink®.

Apple CarPlay™

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ and *Introduction*.

Apple CarPlay requirements

Checklist

The following requirements must be met in order to use Apple CarPlay:

- ✓ The iPhone **must** support Apple CarPlay.
- ✓ Voice control (Siri) **must** be activated on the iPhone.
- ✓ Apple CarPlay **must** be activated in the iPhone settings without restrictions.
- ✓ The iPhone **must** be connected to the Infotainment system with a USB connection. Only USB ports with data transfer are suitable for use with Apple CarPlay
- ✓ The USB cable being used **must** be an original cable from Apple.

Apple CarPlay Wireless: Bluetooth and Wi-Fi **must** also be activated on the iPhone.

These technologies may not be available in all countries.

Information on technical requirements, compatible iPhones, certified apps and availability can be found at the Volkswagen and Apple CarPlay website or at an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Connecting

When connecting an iPhone for the first time, follow the instructions on the Infotainment system screen and the iPhone display.

The requirements must be met in order to use Apple CarPlay.

Start Apple CarPlay:

1. Open the App-Connect main menu. To do this, tap MENU ▶ App-Connect.

   Or: press APP.
2. Connect to the iPhone. To do this, tap Apple CarPlay.

Disconnecting

1. In Apple CarPlay mode, tap the to go to the App-Connect main menu.
2. Tap or to end the active connection.

The presentation of the function keys in the display may vary.

Special conditions

During an active connection with Apple CarPlay, the following conditions apply:

- Bluetooth connections between the iPhone and the Infotainment system are **not** possible.
- If there is an active Bluetooth connection, it will be automatically ended.
- Phone functions are only possible through Apple CarPlay. The functions described for the Infotainment system are **not** available.
- The connected iPhone **cannot** be used as a media device in the Media main menu.

- It is **not** possible to use the internal navigation and Apple CarPlay navigation at the same time. The route guidance which was started last ends the previous active one.
- Depending on your Infotainment system, you can view information about telephone operation in the instrument cluster display.
- Depending on your Infotainment system and the navigation app used, you can view upcoming turns in the instrument cluster display.
- You can accept or decline incoming calls or end a call in progress using the buttons on the multi-function steering wheel.

Voice control

The “voice control” function depends on the vehicle equipment.

1. Tap **briefly** to start the Infotainment system voice control.

   Or: to start voice operation (Siri) on the connected iPhone, tap **and hold** .

Android Auto™

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇛ and *Introduction*.

Android Auto requirements

Checklist

The following requirements must be met in order to use Android Auto:

- ✓ The cell phone – hereafter referred to as a smartphone – **must** support Android Auto.
- ✓ An Android Auto app **must** be installed on the smartphone.
- ✓ The smartphone **must** be connected to the Infotainment system via a USB connection with a data transfer function.
- ✓ The USB cable used **must** be an original cable from your mobile device manufacturer.

Android Auto Wireless: Bluetooth and Wi-Fi **must** also be activated on the smartphone.

These technologies may not be available in all countries.

Information on technical requirements, compatible smartphones, certified apps and availability can be found on the Volkswagen and Android Auto websites or at an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Connecting

When connecting a smartphone for the first time, follow the instructions on the Infotainment system screen and the smartphone display.

The requirements must be met in order to use Android Auto.

Start Android Auto:

1. To open the App-Connect main menu, tap MENU ▶ App-Connect .

   Or: press APP.

2. Tap Android Auto to establish the connection with the smartphone.

Disconnecting

1. In Android Auto mode, tap Close to go to the App-Connect main menu.
2. Tap to end the active connection.

Special conditions

During an active connection with Android Auto, the following conditions apply:

- An active Android Auto device can also be connected with the Infotainment system via Bluetooth (HFP profile) at the same time.
- Phone functions are possible through Android Auto. The Infotainment system phone function can also be used if the Android Auto device is connected to the Infotainment system via Bluetooth at the same time.
- An active Android Auto device **cannot** be used as a media device in the Media main menu.
- It is **not** possible to use the internal navigation and Android Auto navigation at the same time. The route guidance which was started last ends the previous active one.
- You can view information about telephone operation in the instrument cluster display.
- Depending on your Infotainment system and the navigation app used, you can view upcoming turns in the instrument cluster display.
- You can accept or decline incoming calls or end a call in progress using the buttons on the multi-function steering wheel.

Voice control

The voice control function depends on the vehicle equipment.

1. Tap **briefly** to start the Infotainment system voice control.

Or: tap and **hold** the button to start voice control of the connected smartphone.

MirrorLink®

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ and *Introduction*.

Function keys

Returns to the App-Connect main menu. Here you can end the MirrorLink connection, connect another cell phone, or select another technology. Tap to clo apps that are open. Then tap the apps to be closed or tap the Close all function to close all open apps. Tap to display the cell phone on the Infotainment system screen. Open the MirrorLink settings. Tap to return to the MirrorLink main menu.

MirrorLink requirements

Checklist

The following requirements must be met in order to use MirrorLink:

- ✓ The cell phone **must** support MirrorLink.
- ✓ The cell phone **must** be connected to the Infotainment system via a USB connection with data transfer.
- ✓ The USB cable used **must** be an original cable from your cell phone manufacturer.
- ✓ Depending on the cell phone in use, an appropriate Car Mode app **must** be installed on the device to use MirrorLink.

Connecting

When connecting a cell phone for the first time, follow the instructions on the Infotainment system screen and the cell phone display.

The requirements must be met in order to use MirrorLink.

Start MirrorLink:

1. To open the App-Connect main menu, tap MENU ▶ App-Connect.

   Or: press APP.
2. Tap MirrorLink to connect to your cell phone.

Disconnecting

1. In MirrorLink mode, tap APP to go to the App-Connect main menu.

   Or: tap to go to the MirrorLink main menu.
2. Tap to end the active connection.

Special conditions

When there is an active connection with MirrorLink, the following conditions apply:

- An active MirrorLink device can also be connected with the Infotainment system at the same time via Bluetooth.
- If the MirrorLink device is connected to the Infotainment system via Bluetooth, you can use the Infotainment system phone function.
- An active MirrorLink device **cannot** be used as a media device in the Media main menu.
- You can view information about telephone operation in the instrument cluster display.
- The instrument cluster display will not show upcoming turns or display information about media mode.
- You can accept or decline incoming calls or end a call in progress using the buttons on the multi-function steering wheel.

Information about technical requirements, compatible cell phones, certified apps and availability can be found via the Volkswagen and MirrorLink website or at your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Wired and wireless connections

Introduction

Some external devices can be connected to the Infotainment system using the wired and wireless connections in the vehicle, if available.

The type and quantity of wired and wireless connections depend on the vehicle equipment and country. The connections may differ within a model line or in a mode with optional equipment.

In wired connections, only use the original connecting cable that belongs to the device or the connecting cable that was placed in the vehicle at the factory, if available.

If the plug on the connector cable cannot be inserted, check the position and the connections.

NOTICE

Only use a suitable and undamaged connector cable for wired connections.

- Hold the plug on the connector cable in the correct position and insert it into the intended socket while pressing lightly. Pressing strongly can damage the

device connection and the plug on the connector cable.

- The connector cable must not be pinched or bent sharply.
- Using unsuitable or damaged connector cables can cause malfunctions and damage to the device.

If a connected device is not recognized, disconnect all connected devices and then reconnect the device. Check the function of the connecting cable, if necessary.

If malfunctions occur in a connected device, restart the device. This sometimes fixes the error.

USB port

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ *Introduction*.

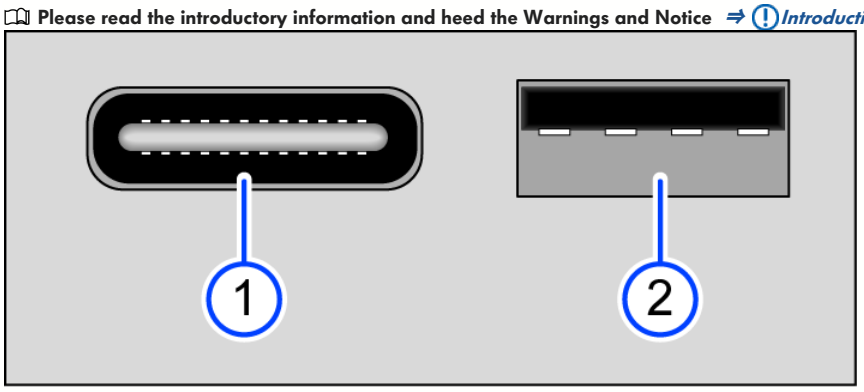


Fig. 125 Possible USB ports in the vehicle (general example).

(1) USB port, type C.

(2) USB port, type A.

USB port types

The vehicle may contain the following USB ports:

- Type A : Suitable for data transfer and charging function.
- Type A : Only suitable for charging function.
- Type C : Suitable for data transfer and charging function.
- Type C or : Only suitable for charging function.

Every USB port is a wired connection that may only be used with a suitable connector cable.

The USB connection supplies 5 volts, commonly used by USB devices.

The USB type, number, and locations of the USB ports depend on the vehicle and country.

Only supported audio files are shown. Other files will be ignored.

When in “mass storage mode”, the Infotainment system only supports mass storage devices and audio sources. Refer to the instructions for your audio source to learn how to activate this mode.

Audio files on an external data carrier connected to the USB port can be played and controlled through the Infotainment system.

Before connecting an audio source, check which USB connection is installed in your vehicle. Only use suitable USB connector cables that match the relevant USB type.

Possible USB port installation locations

- On the front of the Infotainment system.
- In the front center armrest storage compartment
- In the center console.

Connecting an external data carrier to the USB port .

1. Lower the volume on the Infotainment system.
2. Connect an external data carrier to the USB port .
3. Start playback on the external audio source.
4. Tap to open the Media menu.
5. Tap Source and select My Media as the media source.

For iPods specifically, list views (Playlists, Artists, Albums, etc.) can be displayed.

Instructions and restrictions

The number of USB ports and the compatibility with Apple devices and other media players depend on the vehicle equipment.

Due to the large number of different types of data carriers and different iPod, iPad, and iPhone generations, there is no guarantee that functions will perform as described on all devices.

Depending on the Infotainment system being used, external hard drives with a capacity larger than 32 GB may have to be reformatted to the FAT32 file system. Programs and instructions for this can be found online.

Do not connect or use USB extension cables or USB hubs.

Bluetooth® interface

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ *Introduction*.

The Bluetooth interface is a wireless connection.

In Bluetooth audio mode, audio files that are on a Bluetooth audio source that is connected via Bluetooth, such as a cell phone, can be played through the vehicle speakers.

Bluetooth audio mode is only possible in vehicles equipped with a factory-installed mobile phone interface that supports this function.

Bluetooth profiles

The Infotainment system is equipped with a Bluetooth interface at the factory.

A maximum of three Bluetooth devices can be connected at the same time.

The following Bluetooth profiles may be available in the specified version or in another version:

- HFP 1.7.
  - Telephony and handsfree mode.
- A2DP 1.3.
  - Music playback.
- AVRCP 1.6.
  - Display and operation for music playback.
  - Transfer of cover art.
- PBAP 1.2.
  - Access to phone book and call lists.
- MAP 1.4.
  - Access to SMS and e-mail.
- SPP 1.2.
  - Serial data transfer via Bluetooth.

Starting Bluetooth audio

Requirements

✓ The Bluetooth audio source is paired with and connected to the Infotainment system ⇒ *Coupling, connecting and managing*.

✓ The Bluetooth audio source must support the A2DP Bluetooth profile.

1. Lower the volume on the Infotainment system.
2. Activate Bluetooth visibility on the external Bluetooth audio source, such as a cell phone.
3. Open Media menu.
4. Tap on Source and select Bluetooth audio.
5. If necessary, start playback on the Bluetooth audio source manually.

When playback from the Bluetooth audio source is finished, the Infotainment system remains in Bluetooth audio mode.

Controlling playback

The extent that the Bluetooth audio source can be controlled by the Infotainment system depends on the type of Bluetooth audio source that is connected.

For media players that support the AVRCP Bluetooth profile, playback from the Bluetooth audio source can be started or stopped automatically when Bluetooth audio mode or another audio source is selected. Depending on the Bluetooth audio source, it may also be possible to display and play the track on the Infotainmen system.

Because of the large number of possible Bluetooth audio sources, it is not possible to guarantee that all functions described can be performed correctly.

On a connected Bluetooth audio source, all warning and operation tones, such as touch tones on a cell phone, should generally be switched off to avoid interference and malfunctions.

Depending on the device, if an external media player is connected to the Infotainment system via Bluetooth and the USB port at the same time, the Bluetooth audio connection may be automatically disconnected.

Infotainment system

First steps

Introduction

The functions and settings of the Infotainment system are dependent on the country and the vehicle equipment.

Prior to the first use

Before your first use, observe the following points to be able to fully use the available functions and settings:

- Observe the basic safety instructions ⇒ *Safety instructions*.
- Reset the Infotainment system to factory settings.
- Find your favorite radio stations and save them on the station preset buttons to quickly access them ⇒ *Radio mode*.
- Only use suitable audio sources and data carriers ⇒ *Media mode*.
- Use current map data for the navigation system.
- Pair a cell phone in order to use the phone interface to make calls ⇒ *Mobile phone interface*.
- Register on VW Car-Net to use related services.

Other applicable documents

In addition to this manual, please refer to the following documentation when using this Infotainment system and its components:

- Supplements to your Owner's Manual.
- Operating instructions for the cell phone or audio sources.
- Operating instructions for external data carriers and players.
- Instructions for retrofitted or additional Infotainment accessories.
- Service description when using VW Car-Net services.

Safety instructions

Refer to ⇒ and .

- Some functions may contain links to websites that are administered by third parties. Volkswagen AG does not assume ownership of third-party sites accessed through links and is not responsible for their content.
- Some functions may contain third-party information that originates from third-party providers. Volkswagen AG is not responsible for the accuracy, currentness, and completeness of this non-proprietary information, and for ensuring that the rights of third parties are not violated.
- The radio stations and owners of the data carriers and audio sources are responsible for the transmitted content.
- Parking ramps, garages, underpasses, tunnels, tall buildings, mountains and valleys or electrical devices such as battery chargers can also interfere with cell phone, GPS and radio signal reception.
- Foil stickers or stickers with a metal layer placed on the antenna and on the windows can impair radio reception.
- Read and follow the applicable manufacturer's operating instructions when using cell phones, data carriers, external devices, and external audio and media sources.

WARNING

The Infotainment system's central processor is networked with the control modules installed in the vehicle. As a result, if the central processor is incorrectly repaired, removed or reinstalled, there is an increased risk of accident and injury.

- Never replace the central processor with a used central processor from a scrap vehicle or from recycling.
- Always have the central processor repaired, removed and reinstalled by suitably qualified professionals. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

WARNING

Driver distraction can cause accidents and injuries. Reading information on the screen, operating the Infotainment system and connecting, inserting or removing a data carrier or audio source while driving can distract from traffic and cause accidents.

- Always drive attentively and responsibly.

WARNING

Displays and information on the screen may be difficult to read if the lighting conditions are unfavorable or if the screen is damaged or dirty.

- Never allow displays and information on the screen to cause you to engage in behavior that poses a safety risk. Always drive attentively and responsibly.

⚠ WARNING

Setting the volume too high prevents warning chimes from being heard from outside and can cause hearing damage. This is true even if you are exposed to a loud volume for only a short time.

- Adjust the volume settings in the Infotainment system so that audible signals from outside the vehicle (such as sirens on emergency service vehicles) can still be heard.

⚠ WARNING

Sudden volume fluctuations may occur when the audio or media source is changed or connected.

- Reduce the volume level before changing or connecting an audio or media source.

⚠ WARNING

The following conditions may prevent or cause interruptions to emergency calls, phone calls, and data transmission:

- If you are in a location with no or very poor cell phone or GPS reception.
- If you are in a location where there is good cell phone and GPS reception, but the telecommunications provider's mobile communications network is malfunctioning or unavailable.
- If the vehicle components required for emergency calls, phone calls, and data transmission are damaged, not operating, or have insufficient power.
- If the cell phone battery is drained or if the battery charge level is too low.

⚠ WARNING

Radio stations can broadcast messages about disasters and dangers. It may not be possible to receive or send messages under the following conditions:

- If you are in a location with no radio reception, or insufficient reception.
- If the radio station's frequency bands are malfunctioning or not available.
- If the speakers and vehicle components required for radio reception are damaged, not operating, or have insufficient power.

⚠ WARNING

In some countries and mobile networks, emergency calls can only be made under the following conditions:

- A cell phone with an unlocked SIM card and sufficient calling credit is connected to the vehicle's phone interface.
- Adequate network coverage is available.

⚠ WARNING

Using a cell phone or CB radio inside the vehicle without a separate outside antenna that is installed correctly may create electromagnetic energy that exceeds permissible limits. This may be dangerous to your health and that of your vehicle occupants. This also applies if the exterior antenna is not installed correctly.

- Keep the cell phone antenna at least approximately 8 inches (20 cm) away from any active medical implants, such as pacemakers, because cell phones can impair the function of active medical implants.
- Do not place a cell phone that is turned on directly above or in the immediate vicinity of any active medical implants, for example by keeping the cell phone in a shirt pocket.
- Immediately switch off cell phones if you suspect there is interference with an active medical implant or other medical device.

⚠ WARNING

Unsecured or incorrectly mounted cell phones, external devices, and accessories can be thrown through the vehicle interior and cause injury in the event of sudden driving or braking maneuvers or a collision.

- Secure cell phones, external devices and accessories outside of the airbag deployment zone or stow them securely.
- Arrange cables for external devices and audio sources so that they are not in the way of the driver.

WARNING

Driving recommendations and traffic signs displayed in the navigation system may differ from the actual traffic situation.

- Traffic signs, signal systems, and traffic regulations take priority over the driving recommendations and displays in the navigation system.
- Adapt your speed and driving style to the visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- Certain events, such as road closures, can considerably increase the original estimated driving time and distance to the destination, or navigation there may be temporarily impossible.

NOTICE

Radiation from cell phones that are switched on can interfere with sensitive technical and medical devices, potentially causing malfunctions or damage to the devices.

- Always switch off the cell phone in areas with special regulations relating to or prohibiting the use of cell phones.

NOTICE

Setting the volume too high and excessively loud or distorted playback can damage the speakers.

- Select the volume setting so that the speakers are not damaged.

User information

Refer to ⇛ and *Safety instructions*.

- The Infotainment system requires a few seconds to perform a complete system start, and will not respond to inputs during that time. During the system start, only the Rear Assist camera can be displayed.
- The Infotainment system must start completely before all displays can appear and functions can be performed. The length of time that it takes for the system t start depends on the scope of functions in the Infotainment system, and it can take longer to start at low and high temperatures.
- Observe local regulations and legal requirements when using the Infotainment system and corresponding accessories, such as a headset or headphones.
- For the Infotainment system to function correctly, it must be switched on and it must be set to the current date and time in the vehicle if necessary.
- A missing function key in the screen is not the result of a device error, but instead corresponds to the country-dependent equipment.
- Some Infotainment system functions can only be selected when the vehicle is stationary. In some countries, the selector lever must also be in the P or N position. This is not a malfunction, but rather compliance with legal regulations.
- Some countries may have restrictions regarding the use of Bluetooth® devices. Information can be obtained from the local authorities.
- If the 12 V battery has been disconnected, switch on the ignition before switching on the Infotainment system.
- Displays on the screen may vary due to differences in the settings, and the Infotainment system may function differently than described in this manual.
- The Infotainment system will switch off automatically when the electric motor stops and if the 12 V vehicle battery charge level is low.
- In some vehicles with a parking system, the volume of the current audio source may be automatically lowered when you shift into reverse. The volume reduction level can be adjusted.
- The Infotainment system contains information about the software contained in the system and the licensing terms under: Setup ▶ Copyright.
- If selling or loaning your vehicle, make sure that all saved data, files and settings are deleted, and that the SD card, external audio sources and data carriers are removed, if necessary.

Overview and controls of the 10" version

Refer to ⇛ and *Safety instructions*.

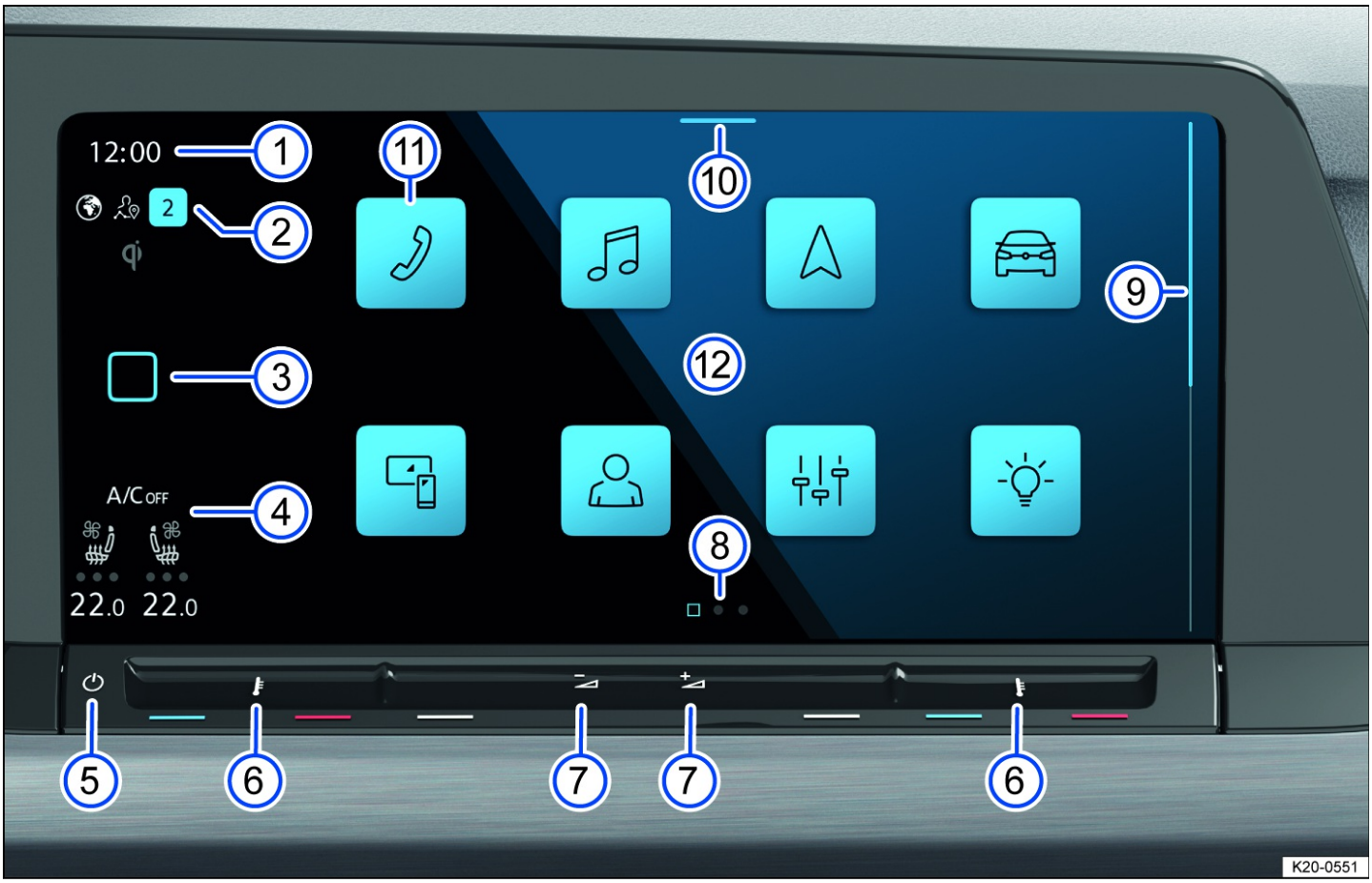


Fig. 126 Overview: display and control unit, 10" version.

(1) Time.

(2) Status display for the “Privacy settings” function (not available in all countries) and number of notifications.

(3) HOME button: ☐.

(4) Status display for seat heating and seat ventilation. Temperature display (can be adjusted via (3)).

(5) Sensor area (Infotainment system on or off).

(6) Touch control for temperature.

(7) Touch control for volume.

(8) Views (current view is highlighted).

(9) Scroll bar.

(10) Drop-down menu.

(11) Function keys for main menus.

(12) Screen (touchscreen).

Further information and tips for operating the Infotainment system are available at → *page , Operating the Infotainment system*.

(3) Home Button: ☐

1. To open the home screen, tap HOME.

(5) Sensor area (Infotainment system on or off)

1. Tap the sensor area to manually switch the Infotainment system on or off.

(6) Touch control for temperature

Touch control for the driver seat and touch control for the front passenger seat.

- Swipe left to reduce the temperature.
- Swipe right to increase the temperature.

(7) Touch control for volume

- Swipe left to reduce the volume.
- Swipe right to increase the volume.

(8) Views (current view is highlighted)

Certain menus and functions have multiple views with different content. The current view is highlighted.

- Tap a selection to switch to a view.
- Swipe left or right on the screen to switch between views.

(9) Scroll bar

Certain menus and functions contain additional content above and below the content currently displayed on the screen.

1. Tap the scroll bar and drag down or up to display additional content.

(10) Drop-down menu

The drop-down menu contains additional function keys for functions and notifications. Displayed functions can be configured ⇒ *Personalizing the Infotainment system*.

1. Tap the selection and drag it down to open the drop-down menu.

(11) Function keys for main menus

You can configure the position of the function keys ⇒ *Personalizing the Infotainment system*.

1. To open a main menu, tap the corresponding function key e.g. for the phone interface.

(12) Screen (touchscreen)

You can operate the Infotainment system functions via the screen. You will find detailed explanations of the different finger movements in the digital manual for the Infotainment system, if available ⇒ *Operating the Infotainment system*.

1. Tap HOME ▶ ? ▶ ▶ Operation.

Gesture control (without position numbers)

Gesture control can also be switched on. If gesture control is switched on, this is shown on the screen.

1. Tap HOME ▶ ▶ Screen ▶ Hand gesture.

Overview and controls of the 8.25" version

Refer to ⇒ ⚠ and ⓘ *Safety instructions*.



Fig. 127 Overview: display and control unit, 8.25" version.

(1) Rotary knob.

(2) Time.

(3) Status display for the “Privacy settings” function (not available in all countries).

(4) HOME button: ☐.

(5) Status display for seat heating and seat ventilation.

(6) Function keys for main menus.

(7) Drop-down menu.

(8) Screen (touchscreen).

(9) Scroll bar.

(10) Menu knob.

Further information and tips for operating the Infotainment system are available at → *page , Operating the Infotainment system* .

(1) Rotary knob

- Press to switch the Infotainment system on or off.
- Turn left to decrease the volume.
- Turn right to increase the volume.

(4) Home Button: ☐

1. To open the home screen, tap HOME.

(6) Function keys for main menus

It is not possible to configure the position of the function keys.

1. To open a main menu, tap the corresponding function key e.g. for the phone interface.

(7) Drop-down menu

The drop-down menu contains additional function keys for functions and notifications. Displayed functions can be configured ⇒ *Personalizing the Infotainment system*.

1. Tap the selection and drag it down to open the drop-down menu.

(8) Screen (touchscreen)

You can operate the Infotainment system functions via the screen. You will find detailed explanations of the different finger movements in the digital manual for the Infotainment system, if available.

1. Tap HOME ▶ ? ▶ ▶ Operation.

(9) Scroll bar

Certain menus and functions contain additional content above and below the content currently displayed on the screen.

1. Tap the scroll bar and drag down or up to display additional content.

(10) Menu knob

1. Turn to control the list selection.
2. Press to confirm a selection.

Operating the Infotainment system

Refer to ⇒ ⚠ and ⓘ *Safety instructions*.

Opening the instructions (if available)

Further information and tips on operation can be found in the digital manual for the Infotainment system.

1. Tap HOME ▶ ? ▶ .

Switching the Infotainment system on and off

The Infotainment system starts up when the ignition is switched on, unless it was previously switched off manually.

The Infotainment system starts at the volume that was last set, as long as this does not exceed the preset maximum switch-on volume.

If you leave the vehicle while the ignition is not active, the Infotainment system switches off automatically.

If you switch on the Infotainment system manually while the ignition is not active, it will switch off automatically after approximately 30 minutes without user input.

Configuring the HOME screen

In the display and control unit, you can configure the arrangement of the function keys, views and displays on the home screen or have them positioned by means of factory-supplied layout templates.

1. Tap the function key and hold until the function key is highlighted.
2. Move the function key to the preferred position and release it.

The following main menus may be shown as function keys on the home screen:

Ambient lighting. App-Connect ⇒ *App-Connect*. Apps. Assistance systems ⇒ *Driver assistance systems*. Vehicle ⇒ *Driver information*. Help: Here, you can find additional information about Infotainment system functions and operation, e.g. the quick guide . Climate control ⇒ *Heating and A/C system*. Sound ⇒ *System and sound settings*. Navigation ⇒ *Navigation*. Radio/Media ⇒ *Radio mode*, ⇒ *Media mode*. Setup ⇒ *System and sound settings*. Stationary air conditioning: Auxiliary heater. Telephone ⇒ *Mobile phone interface*.

Scrolling through lists, switching titles

Select your desired function, setting or track via the touchscreen or the control knob.

Moving objects, adjusting volume

To adjust settings, e.g. those using sliders, or move areas of a menu around, move the objects around on the screen.

Personalize function keys and views depending on the vehicle equipment ⇒ *Personalizing the Infotainment system*.

Zooming in and out of pictures and maps shown on the screen

Recommendation: Use thumb and index finger.

1. Tap and hold the screen with two fingers at the same time.

- To zoom in on the pictures and maps shown, slowly move your fingers apart.
- To zoom out of the pictures and maps shown, slowly move your fingers together.

Personalizing the Infotainment system

Refer to ⇒ and *Safety instructions*.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, you can personalize the Infotainment system to access your favorite and frequently used functions quicker.

Configuring tiles

The Infotainment system views contain tiles for accessing additional menus and functions. Configure the tiles by removing or adding views.

1. Tap and hold tiles until an additional window appears.
2. To open the configuration screen, tap .
   - To add a new view with tiles, tap and tap on the desired template. New tiles are created without any functions.
   - Tap to remove a view with tiles.
3. Tap to close the configuration screen.
4. To return to View, tap or tap any free area of the screen.

There are always at lease two tiles available. They cannot be removed. Depending on the vehicle equipment, you can add two further tiles. A maximum of four tiles can be displayed.

Adjusting tiles

Adjust the tiles and displayed tile functions in the Infotainment system views to manage the Infotainment system as you wish.

1. Tap and hold tiles until an additional window appears.
2. To add functions to a tile, tap on the desired tile.
3. Tap the desired function in the additional window. Various functions are available depending on the size of the tile.
4. To remove a function from a tile, tap on the desired tile and tap .
5. To return to View, tap or tap any free area of the screen.

For some tiles, more functions are available than can be seen initially in the additional window. Swipe to the left or right in the additional window to see all the functions.

Adapting the drop-down menu

Personalize the Infotainment system drop-down menu to access your favorite and frequently used functions quicker.

1. Tap and hold the function until an additional window appears.
2. Tap the desired function in the additional window and hold until the function is highlighted.
3. Move the function to the preferred position and release it.

   The active function is automatically removed from the drop-down menu and added to the additional window.

For the drop-down menu, more functions are available than can be seen initially in the additional window. Swipe to the left or right in the additional window to see all the functions.

Opening the instructions (if available)

Further information and tips on personalization can be found in the digital manual for the Infotainment system.

1. Tap HOME ▶ ? ▶ ▶ Adjustment.

System and sound settings

Refer to ⇛ and *Safety instructions*.

Changing settings

The meanings of the following symbols apply to all system and sound settings.

Changes will be automatically applied when the menu is closed.

or The setting is selected and activated or switched on. or The setting is not selected and deactivated or switched off. or Open the drop-down list. Increase the set value. Reduce the set value. Go back stepwise. Go forward stepwise. Use the slide control to continuously change the set value.

System settings

The system settings may include the following functions, information, and setting options:

- Screen.
- Time and date.
- Language.
- Additional keyboard languages.
- Units.
- Voice control.
- Wi-Fi.
- Data connection.
- Mobile devices.
- Restore factory settings.
- System information.
- Copyright.
- Configuration assistant.

Opening the system settings

1. Only in the 10" version, tap HOME ▶ Settings.

Sound settings

The sound settings may include information and setting options for equalizer, position, volume and setup.

Opening the sound settings

1. Only in the 10" version, tap HOME ▶ Sound ▶ .

Adjusting the volume of external audio sources

Lower the volume of the Infotainment system before turning up the volume of an external audio source.

If the connected audio source plays too quietly, increase the output volume of the external audio source. If that does not correct the problem, set the input volume to Medium or Maximum.

If the connected external audio source plays too loudly or the sound is distorted, lower the output volume of the external audio source. If that does not correct the problem, set the input volume to Medium or Minimum.

Cleaning the screen

Refer to ⇛ and *Safety instructions*.

When cleaning the screen, please note this checklist:

✓ The Infotainment system is switched off.

✓ Use a soft, clean cloth that has been moistened with water.

Or: use a cleaning cloth which is available from an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

✓ For stubborn dirt:

NOTICE

If you clean the screen with incorrect cleaning agents or when dry, you may damage it.

- Only apply gentle pressure.
- Do not use any aggressive cleaners or products which contain solvents. These types of cleaners can damage the device and cause glare on the screen.

NOTICE

If the cloth used to clean the screen is too moist, the screen can no longer be operated or switched off.

- Dry the screen and then leave the vehicle locked from the outside for at least two minutes.

Brands, licenses, copyright

Refer to ⇛ and *Safety instructions*.

Brands and licenses

Certain terms in this manual have the ® or ™ symbols. These indicate emblems or registered trademarks. However, the absence of this symbol does not constitute a waiver of any rights associated with intellectual property.

Other product names are registered trademarks for the respective rights holder.

- Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. Dolby and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.
- Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. Dolby, Pro Logic and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.
- All SiriusXM services require a subscription. See the SiriusXM Customer Agreement for complete terms at www.siriusxm.com (US) or www.siriusxm.ca (Canada). All fees, content and features are subject to change. Satellite and streaming lineups may vary. SiriusXM, Pandora and all related logos are trademarks of Sirius XM Radio Inc. and its respective subsidiaries. All rights reserved.
- HD Radio Technology manufactured under license from iBiquity Digital Corporation. U.S. and Foreign Patents. For patents see http://dts.com/patents. HD Radio, Artist Experience, and the HD, HD Radio, and "ARC" logos are registered trademarks or trademarks of iBiquity Digital Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.
- Android Auto™ is a certified trademark of Google, Inc.
- Apple CarPlay™ is a certified trademark of Apple, Inc.
- Bluetooth® is a registered trademark of Bluetooth® SIG, Inc.
- iPod®, iPad®, and iPhone® are registered trademarks of Apple Inc.
- MirrorLink® and the MirrorLink® logo are certified trademarks of the Car Connectivity Consortium LLC.
- MPEG-4 HE-AAC audio coding technology and patents licensed from Fraunhofer IIS.
- SD® and SDHC® are brands or registered trademarks of SD-3C, LLC in the USA and other countries.
- Windows® is a registered trademark of Microsoft Corporation, Redmond, USA.
- This product is protected by the intellectual property rights of Microsoft Corporation. Use or distribution of such technology outside of this product is prohibited without a license from Microsoft or an authorized Microsoft subsidiary.

Copyright

Audio and video files saved on data carriers and audio sources are generally subject to copyright regulations in compliance with applicable international and nation laws. Observe legal regulations.

Radio mode

Introduction

In radio mode you can receive various available radio stations on different frequencies and save your favorites to the station buttons for quick access.

Available reception modes and frequency bands depend on the vehicle equipment and the country. Frequency bands in individual countries may be discontinued, switched off or no longer offered.

Opening the RADIO menu

1. Tap HOME ▶ ♫ ▶ 📻.

   Or: tap MENU ▶ 📻.

   Or: tap RADIO.

Open set-up

1. Tap HOME ▶ ♫ ▶ ⚙ ▶ Radio.

Or: tap MENU ▶ ▶ .

The radio stations are responsible for transmitted content.

Other electrical devices connected in the vehicle can impair radio signal reception and cause noise in the speakers.

Decals or metal-coated stickers on the vehicle windows can impair radio reception in vehicles with window antennas.

Equipment scope and radio symbols

Refer to ⇛ and *Safety instructions*.

Radio

The available function scope as well as possible reception modes depend on the equipment and the country.

- FM multiple tuner (diversity antenna).
- Station list of FM stations.
- Summarized memory list.
  - Merging of all stations stored on station preset buttons in a list.
  - 36 station preset buttons as storage locations for favorites.
- Station logos.
- Antenna amplifier
- HD Radio™.
- SiriusXM™ 360L.

General symbols for radio operation

FM Select a FM reception mode. SXM Select the satellite radio reception mode. < Select the previous station from the station list or station on the previous station preset button. > Select the next station from the station list or station on the next station preset button. Display the station preset buttons. Stations already stored on a station preset button in a station list.

Symbols in the AM frequency band

Show the station list of AM stations. Manually update the station list. Display the frequency band for manual selection of the AM frequency.

Symbols in the FM and FM/DAB frequency band

Show the station list of FM and DAB stations. Display the frequency band for manual selection of the FM frequency.

Only possible when the summarized station list is switched off.

Symbols for HD radio operation

Station supports HD Radio. HD Radio Tune the HD Radio substations. Open the Emergency list of the HD Radio Emergency Alerts function. HD Radio HD Radio logo.

Symbols for satellite radio operation

Display the channel list. Open the window for entering the channel number.

Selecting, tuning, and storing stations

Refer to ⇛ and *Safety instructions*.

Selecting the frequency band

Before selecting a station, you must first select a frequency band or reception mode. Various stations are available, depending on the selected frequency band or reception mode.

The available frequency bands or reception modes depend on the equipment and country.

1. Tap Source to open the list of frequency bands and reception modes.
2. Select the frequency band or reception mode:
   - AM.
   - FM/DAB.
   - FM.
   - DAB.
   - Internet radio.
   - SiriusXM.

Searching for and selecting a station

There are different ways to select a radio station. The options vary based on the frequency band and reception mode.

Selecting via the frequency band (AM and FM)

1. Tap .
2. Tap the cursor to press and slide to the frequency band and release at the desired frequency.

   Or: tap a point on the frequency band. The cursor automatically jumps to the corresponding frequency.

   The station at the set frequency will be tuned.

Selecting from a station list (AM, FM and FM/DAB)

The station list displays the stations that currently can be received. Depending on the vehicle equipment, it is possible that the station list must be manually updated if you have left the area since the last time the station list was opened. The station list in the FM/DAB frequency band generally updates automatically.

1. Open the station list.
2. Tap the desired station.

   The selected station will be tuned.

SCAN Search in SCAN mode (AM, FM and FM/DAB)

In SCAN mode, the stations in the frequency band are set automatically in succession and played for approx. 5 seconds each.

1. To start SCAN mode, tap SCAN.

   SCAN mode starts and the current station is shown on the display.

   The SCAN function key is shown.
2. To select a station, tap SCAN.

   SCAN mode stops and the station is tuned.

Storing stations on the station preset buttons

You can save up to 36 stations from different frequency bands and reception modes as favorites on the station preset buttons.

1. Tune the desired station.
2. Open the station preset buttons.
3. Tap ⊕.

   Or: tap on an already occupied station preset button and hold for approx. three seconds.

   Or: tap and hold the station on the station list. The station preset buttons are displayed.
4. Tap the station preset button.

   The station is saved on the selected station preset button.

   If a station was already saved on the station preset button, this station will be removed from the station preset button and replaced by the new station.

Special functions in radio mode

Refer to ⇒ ⚠ and ⓘ *Safety instructions*.

The special functions in radio mode listed below may not be available for all Infotainment systems, depending on the country and the vehicle equipment.

Station logos

Station logos can be preinstalled for some frequency bands in the Infotainment system.

If the Automatic station logo selection function is activated in the settings, the station logos are automatically assigned to the stations.

Assigning station logos manually

1. In radio mode, tap ⚙ ▶ Radio ▶ Station logos.
2. Select the station to which a station logo should be assigned.
3. Select the station logo.
4. This process can be repeated for additional stations.
5. To finish assigning station logos, tap ⮌.

SiriusXM

Refer to ⇒ ⚠ and ⓘ *Safety instructions*.

SiriusXM is a satellite radio station that can be received in the USA and Canada. Satellite radio services are subject to fees and must be enabled for the Infotainment system by phone or online.

Displaying the SiriusXM ID

Each radio has its own SiriusXM ID with which you can manage your subscription.

1. In satellite radio mode: Tap ▶ Subscription information.

   Or: tap .

   The channel selection window will open.

2. Enter channel number 0 and press OK to confirm.

The SiriusXM ID, the services that have already been enabled and the website and phone number for the SiriusXM activation hotline will be displayed on the scree

SiriusXM channels

The channels available depend on the enabled services. All available channels are displayed in the channel list.

The channel list can be sorted either alphabetically, by channel number or by channel category and genre. In the settings menu, individual channels can be filtered out of the channel list.

Each channel is assigned a number. The channels can be called up directly via their channel number under .

1. To search for channels with content related to the content currently being played, tap Related in the station display.

A list with related content will be displayed.

SiriusXM seek function

Current program content can be saved as a favorite using the seek function.

If such program content is sent on an available channel, a message is displayed in the Infotainment system. This message gives you the option to switch directly to the relevant station.

You can save a maximum of 36 favorites.

Save favorites

1. While the program that is to be saved is running, tap ((SXM)) ▶ SiriusXM™ seek. The Save Seek menu is opened.
2. Tap Save next to the desired program content.

   The following program content can be saved as favorites:

   - Title.
   - Artist name.
   - Sports team.

The desired program content will be added to the favorites list.

With the Play Ahead Controls function, you can play forward and backward the content currently being played for both live and on-demand content and jump to previous or future content.

Setting up a listener profile

The personalized listener profile saves recommendations based on the program content currently being listened to and the latest listening history, and is regularly updated.

The listener profile is set up in the user account and can be used with the SiriusXM app.

1. To set up a new listening profile, tap in the station display.

   Or: tap ▶ Radio ▶ Set up new listening profile in radio or media mode.

For each listener profile, a list of SiriusXM content recently listened to is displayed. This listening history can be reset at any time.

HD Radio

Refer to ⇒ and *Safety instructions*.

HD Radio is a digital radio station that can be received in the USA and Canada.

HD Radio Technology

Some AM and FM radio stations also transmit their content digitally via HD Radio™ Technology.

When the function is activated in settings in the AM or FM band and the current station supports HD Radio™ Technology, the function key appears on the Infotainment system display. The Infotainment system switches automatically between digital and analog reception depending on the reception quality. If the station is currently received in analog mode, the function key is grayed out.

Some stations offer additional substations via HD Radio Technology (multicast programming). If this is the case, HD1 is displayed after the station frequency of the main station. Substations are marked accordingly with HD2, HD3 etc.

Tuning the HD Radio substations

1. Tap HD Radio ▷| to cycle through the available substations.

   Or: Select an additional station from the station list.

   Or: to cycle through the additional stations individually, tap ◁ or ▷.

The substation that is currently selected is displayed after the main station on the screen (for example ... HD3 for the second substation).

The available substations of the current stations are displayed on the station list.

Additional HD Radio Technology services

1. To select your chosen additional service, tap View.

HD Radio Emergency Alerts

The HD Radio Emergency Alerts function can be used to receive reports of unusual, potentially life-threatening events, such as natural disasters. These notifications are played as pop-up notifications while the radio is on. This function is activated in the factory.

If you tap Remind me later when a notification appears, the notification will appear again about ten minutes later. If you tap Close, the notification will be moved to t Alert list. If the HD Radio Emergency Alerts function is deactivated, these notifications are moved directly to the Alert list and indicated by ⚠ and a number in the status bar. The number on the symbol displays the number of notifications.

Activating or deactivating HD Radio Emergency Alerts

1. In radio mode, activate or deactivate ⚙ ▶ Radio ▶ Emergency notifications.

Opening the Alert list

Up to five notifications can be displayed in the Alert list.

1. Tap ⚠ in radio mode.

Media mode

Introduction

In media mode, you can play back media files from data carriers in the Infotainment system.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the following data carriers can be used:

- USB storage medium, e.g. USB flash drive.
- Bluetooth device, e.g. cell phone.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the following types of media files can be played:

- Audio files, e.g. music.
- Video files.

Opening the MEDIA main menu

1. Tap HOME ▶ ♫ ▶ ▷.

Open set-up

1. Tap HOME ▶ ♫ ▶ ⚙ ▶ Media.

Restrictions and instructions for data carriers

Dirty, overheated or damaged data carriers are not to be used. Read and heed the information provided by the manufacturer.

Difference in quality between data carriers from different manufacturers can cause problems with media playback.

Wrong configuration of data carriers can lead to the data carriers being unreadable.

The storage volume, condition (copy and delete processes), file system, folder structure and the amount of saved data can increase the time taken to read data carriers.

Playlists only define the order of play and refer to the saved location of the media files within the folder structure. No media files are saved in playlists. To play a playlist, the media files must be present on the data carriers in the saved locations to which the playlist is linked.

Volkswagen is not responsible for damaged, altered or lost files on data carriers.

Equipment features and media symbols

Refer to ⇒ ⚠ and ⓘ *Safety instructions*.

Audio, media, connectivity

- Media playback and media control via Bluetooth.
- Audio playback in these formats:
  - AAC.
  - ALAC.
  - AVI.
  - FLAC.

- MP3.
- MP4.
- WMA.

- Video playback in these formats:
  - MPEG-1 and MPEG-2 (.mpg, .mpeg).
  - ISO MPEG4; Xvid (.avi).
  - ISO MPEG4 H.264 (.mp4, .m4v, .mov).
  - Windows Media Video 9 (.wmv, .asf).
- Cross-device playlists.
- Cross-source media database:
  - Data from all media sources connected to the Infotainment system are stored in a media database.
- Media streaming (online).
- Media search.

Symbols for media sources

Select My media as a media source. Connected USB devices may be selected under My media. Select a device connected via Bluetooth as a media source. Set up available streaming services.

Streaming services which have already been set up are represented by their own logos in the list of media sources.

General symbols for media operation

Start replay. Pause replay. Go to the previous track. Skip to the next track. Repeats the current track. Repeats all tracks. Activate random playback. Display favorites list. Go back one folder level in the media source.

Symbols for categories and groups of media files

Music tracks. Videos. Playlists. Albums. Artists. Genres. Podcasts. Audiobooks.

Video replay symbols

Replay video in full-screen mode. Minimize replay.

Selecting and playing a media source

Refer to ⇛ and *Safety instructions*.

Selecting a media source

1. If you want playback from an external media source, connect the external media source.
2. Select the connected media source to be used for playback.

▷ Playing audio and video files

A media source must be connected and selected before media files can be played back.

There are different ways to search for and play media files from an available media source.

♪≡ Searching the folder structure

All media files from USB devices are filtered by category, e.g. album. This category view is always displayed In My Media. The classic folder structure of the individual USB data carriers can also be found under My Media.

1. Display the folder structure.

   The folder structure of the selected media source is displayed. If My Media is selected, the categories (e.g. music) and connected media sources are displayed
2. Searching the folder structure for a desired track.

   Or: to start the full-text search, tap .

   The input line is displayed.
3. Enter the name of the desired track.

   The list of the found tracks updates automatically during input.
4. Tap the desired track.

   When playback starts, if the selection is located in a folder on a media source, all of the media files located in the folder will be added for playback.

   If a playlist is played back, all available tracks on the playlist will be added for playback.
5. Close the selection with .

♡ Selecting from favorites

You can save individual tracks, albums, artists and genres under favorites for playback.

1. Tap ♡.
2. Tap on your favorites.

   Depending on the selection, all tracks heard during the current playback will be added to favorites.

♡ Saving favorites

Only media files that are displayed in My Media in the Music and Video folders can be saved as favorites. You can save individual tracks, albums, artists and genre as favorites.

1. Start playback of the desired track.
2. Tap ♡.
3. Tap ⊕.

   Or: tap on an already occupied favorite position, and press and hold for approx. three seconds.
4. Select from the selection list:
   - Title.
   - Albums.
   - Artists.
   - Genres.
   - Playlists.

   The selection is saved in the selected favorite position as a favorite. If the favorite position was already occupied, the previously saved favorite is overwritten.

The selection options in the selection list depend on the data attached to the media file. If a genre is not indicated for music files, the genre cannot be saved as a favorite.

If a video file is currently being replayed, only this video can be saved as a favorite.

Setting up streaming services

Depending on the equipment and country, you can use streaming services directly through the Infotainment system ⇒ 🕮 *Introduction*. There must be an internet connection to use streaming services ⇒ 🕮 *Introduction*.

1. Select Media Streaming as the media source.

   A list of available streaming services is displayed.
2. Select the desired streaming service.

   The input field for entering login data is displayed.
3. Enter the login data for the desired user profile and confirm.

   The streaming services will be added as a new function key in the list of media sources.

You may need to log in to the streaming service again if you change your privacy settings, for example.

Entertainment playback via the Infotainment system

🕮 Refer to ⇒ ⚠ and ⓘ *Safety instructions*.

The Infotainment system can play music and videos.

Video mode

In video mode, the Infotainment system display can play a video from a data carrier or, depending on your country, from a streaming service ⇒ *Selecting and playing a media source*. The video sound is played back via the vehicle speakers.

The video image is only displayed when the vehicle is stationary. The Infotainment system display will be switched off when the vehicle is moving. The video sound will continue to be played.

Navigation

🕮 Introduction

The current vehicle position is determined by a global satellite system. All measured values and possible traffic reports are compared with the available map material to enable optimum navigation to your destination.

You operate the navigation system on the screen.

Audible navigation aids and graphic representations lead you to your destination.Audible navigation aidsAcoustic navigation announcements and graphic displays lead you to your destination.

Depending on the country, it may not be possible to select some Infotainment system functions on the screen when driving above a certain speed. This is not a malfunction, but rather compliance with legal regulations.

WARNING

Only adjust settings, enter destinations, or change navigation information when the vehicle is stationary.

If you missed a turn on your route, the navigation system may recalculate the route.

The quality of the driving directions depends on the available navigation data and any reported traffic incidents.

Traffic reports are only given in the navigation system if the available VW Car-Net service has been activated.

Opening the navigation system main menu

1. Tap (HOME) ▸ .

   Or: Tap (HOME) ▸ ▸ .

   Or: tap (MENU) ▸ .

Open set-up

1. Tap (HOME) ▸ ▸ .

   Or: Tap (MENU) ▸ ▸ .

Voice guidance

Navigation messages are acoustic driving directions for the current route.

The type and frequency of navigation messages depends on the settings and the driving situation, like the start of the route guidance and whether you are driving o a highway or roundabout.

If the destination cannot be reached exactly, for example because it is not in a digitized area, there will be a navigation announcement that the Destination area has been reached. Messages about the direction and distance to your destination will also be displayed on the screen.

During dynamic route guidance, reported traffic incidents on the route are announced. There will be an additional navigation announcement if the route is recalculated due to a traffic incident or a change in driving style ⇒ *Function descriptions*.

You can adjust or mute the volume during a traffic announcement. All other navigation announcements will be given at that volume or will be muted.

Navigation messages will not be given if the Infotainment system is muted.

Navigation restrictions

If the Infotainment system cannot receive data from GPS satellites, for example in a tunnel or in an underground garage, navigation will still be possible using the vehicle's sensors.

In areas that are not digitized or only partially digitized in the Infotainment system memory, the Infotainment system will still try to provide route guidance.

If navigation data is missing or incomplete, the vehicle position may not be determined accurately. This may result in navigation that is not as accurate as usual.

Routing is subject to ongoing changes, like new streets, construction zones, road closures, or changes to street names or house numbers. Using outdated navigation data can lead to errors or uncertainty when using route guidance.

Control navigation map

To ensure an optimum view, you can also operate the navigation map using enhanced finger movements.

Moving the navigation map

Recommendation: Use index finger.

1. Move the navigation map with your finger.

Enlarging the map view

Recommendation: Use index finger.

1. To zoom in to a specific position, tap the map twice.

Minimizing the map view

Recommendation: Use index and middle finger.

1. To zoom out to a specific position, tap the map with two fingers simultaneously.

Zooming in and out on the map view

Recommendation: Use index finger.

1. Tap and hold the map twice in a row.
2. To zoom out of the map view, move your finger upwards. To zoom in on the map view, move your finger downwards.

Zooming in and out on the map view

Recommendation: Use thumb and index finger.

1. Tap and hold the map with two fingers at the same time.
2. To zoom out of the map view, slide your fingers towards each other. To zoom in on the map view, slide your fingers away from each other.

Tilting the map view

Recommendation: Use index and middle finger.

1. Tap and hold the map with two fingers at the same time, held horizontally next to each other.
2. To tilt the map view to the front, move your fingers upwards. To tilt the map view to the back, move your fingers downwards.

Rotating the map view

Recommendation: Use thumb and index finger.

1. Tap and hold the map with two fingers at the same time.
2. Turn your fingers clockwise or anti-clockwise to turn the map view.

Saved data

The Infotainment system saves certain data, like frequently driven routes and positioning data, to enable quick destination entry and to optimize route guidance.

Delete saved data

1. Tap ▶ Basic functions ▶ Delete usage pattern.
2. Tap confirm to delete the data.

Equipment and symbols of the navigation system

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ and *Safety instructions*.

Navigation

The functions of the navigation system may differ depending on the equipment and country.

Equipment

- Entering a destination and route calculation.
- Simultaneous display of two navigation maps (screen and instrument cluster).
- Personal destinations.
- 3D City Maps.
- Online Map Update.
- Online Traffic Information.

Symbols on the map

The function keys and displays shown depend on the settings and the current driving situation.

Symbols for traffic reports and POIs, e.g. gas stations, are displayed on the map if the data is available to the navigation system.

Display current position. Display additional route guidance options. Display navigation map. Open saved addresses (contact list for the connected cell phone). Open the settings. Display dialog box with route options. Fully automatic map mode (orientation in the direction of travel, position, zoom and inclination). Align map to the north. Map scale. Display destination memory.

Symbols in the dialog box

- To open the additional window, tap on ≡.

Display route overview and alternative routes to the current route guidance. Repeats the last navigation announcement. Mute or adjust volume of navigation instructions.

Additional symbols

Destination search: detailed destination input for an address.

Symbols in the route plan

Display current position. Destination for the current route guidance. Ends the current route guidance. Close route plan.

Symbols for POIs

POIs are displayed on the map if the data is available to the navigation system.

To start route guidance, tap the desired POI ⇒ *Inputting destinations and starting route guidance* .

Electric vehicle charging station. Gas station. Car park. Tourist information. Train station. Restaurant.

Setting preferred POI categories

The system offers different points of interest, e.g. gas stations, using the quick select symbol when entering destinations, in the route plan and on the map. You can prioritize how these symbols are displayed under ⚙ ▶ Basic function settings ▶ Preferred POI categories. The system also automatically learns your preferred categories.

Traffic reports

Traffic reports are displayed on the map if the data is available to the navigation system.

Tap a traffic report to open a dialog box with additional details ⇒ *Function descriptions*.

Traffic jam. Accident. Ice. Road closed. Slip hazard. Danger. Construction zone. Strong wind.

Navigation data

📖 Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ ⚠ and ⓘ *Safety instructions*.
The Infotainment system is equipped with an internal navigation data storage medium. Depending on the country, the required navigation data may already be installed.

The Infotainment system always requires up-to-date navigation data to ensure that route guidance can be implemented correctly and that the functions provided are fully available.

ⓘ NOTICE

If you use outdated navigation data, there may be adverse effects on the navigation system. It may not be possible to determine up-to-date routes, or route guidance may guide you to an incorrect destination.

- Always ensure that your navigation data is kept up-to-date.

Updating navigation data manually

Up-to-date navigation data for larger regions, such as Western Europe, can be downloaded online at www.volkswagen.com and stored on a suitable USB data carrier, available to buy in stores. If the Infotainment system is switched off during the process, installation will be interrupted and it will continue automatically once the system is turned on again.

1. Download and save the navigation data onto a USB data storage device.
2. Switch the vehicle ignition on.
3. Link the USB data carrier to the Infotainment system when the vehicle is stationary.

   The navigation data for frequently driven regions is automatically updated in the background.

ⓘ While and after updating the navigation data, no message appears in the Infotainment system.

ⓘ If you update the navigation data manually, the USB data carrier must remain permanently connected. You will not receive a notification when the update is complete.

ⓘ Do not disconnect the USB data carrier from the Infotainment system for a few days until the navigation data for visited regions has been fully downloaded and installed. The installation will start automatically in the background during the journey. Doing so will cancel the update process. If you disconnect the data carrier and visit a new region, the navigation data is not updated due to the lack of a USB data carrier.

1. To display the map data version, tap HOME ▶ ⚙ ▶ System information.

   Or: tap MENU ▶ ⚙ ▶ System information.

Inputting destinations and starting route guidance

📖 Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ ⚠ and ⓘ *Safety instructions*.
Depending on country and vehicle equipment, different functions are available for the input of destinations.

For further information about symbols on the Infotainment system screen, see ⇒ *Equipment and symbols of the navigation system*.

You can further restrict your search with specific suggestions in the results list, e.g. “nearby”.

The various functions for inputting destinations are located in the navigation system main menu.

Opening the navigation system main menu

1. Tap HOME ▶ ▶ .

Opening the settings

1. Tap HOME ▶ ▶ ⚙.

Enter address

Start route guidance by entering an address. During input, the navigation system suggests already known destinations. You can also enter a new, unknown address for route guidance.

ⓘ When inputting the address, input the name of the destination, not the postcode of the destination.

Selecting the destination and starting the navigation system

1. Tap .

   Or: tap .

2. Enter the destination address and select your desired destination.

3. Tap Start.

   Or: tap .

Quick start

1. Tap .

2. Enter the address of the destination, tap the desired destination and hold for a few seconds.

Enter the destination as accurately as possible. If there is an error in the destination entered, route guidance cannot take place or may lead to the wrong destination.

Destination suggestions

Navigation uses saved data such as your last destinations, learned destinations, favorites, home address and work address to provide you with route guidance.

Selecting the destination and starting the navigation system

1. Tap Destination suggestions.

2. Tap on the desired destination.

   The route guidance starts automatically.

Last destinations

The navigation system saves up to 25 of the most recent destinations to make them available for route guidance. A new destination automatically overwrites the oldest destination.

Selecting the destination and starting the navigation system

1. Tap Last destinations.

2. Tap on the desired destination.

3. Tap Start.

   Or: tap .

Quick start

1. Tap Last destinations.

2. Tap and hold the preferred destination for a few seconds.

Favorite destinations

You can save up to 50 journey destinations as favorites.

Saving a journey destination as a favorite

1. While entering a destination, tap on ♡ in the additional window.

Selecting the destination and starting the navigation system

1. Tap Favorites.

2. Tap on the desired destination.

3. Tap Start.

   Or: tap .

Quick start

1. Tap Favorites.

2. Tap and hold the preferred destination for a few seconds.

Selecting on the map

The navigation map contains active areas at many points which are suitable for the input of a destination. To enter a destination, tap on your preferred position or preferred location on the map. If map data is available at this point, you can launch route guidance.

Entering a destination via the navigation map is dependent on data status and not possible for all positions.

Use the Offroad navigation system to enter a destination to a selected destination point with unknown data.

Offroad navigation

The Offroad navigation system calculates routes to selected destinations with unknown data. If the destination is not located on a known road or at a known position, the navigation system will calculate the route up to the next point on the known road and then complete the route to the destination using a straight line.

In order to start an Offroad navigation, tap on a free area without positioning data.

Starting the navigation

1. Tap .
2. Press and slide the map view until you can select your desired position. You can operate the navigation map using extended finger touches ⇒ *Introduction*.
3. Tap the preferred destination or any destination point on the map without positioning data.
4. Tap Start.

   Or: tap .

Using a contact's address data

Start route guidance via the saved address data for a contact. You cannot use contacts for whom you have not saved any address data for route guidance.

Starting the navigation

1. Tap .
2. Tap on the preferred contact and address data.
3. Tap Start.

   Or: tap .

NOTICE

If the address data for your contact is out of date, the route guidance will nevertheless direct you to the stored address. Please ensure the address for your contact is up to date.

Function descriptions

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ and *Safety instructions*.

Route plan

The route plan contains information about relevant events, such as waypoints and destination suggestions, if the relevant data is available to the navigation system

Tapping an event will open a dialog box with additional options. The options available depend on the event and the current settings ⇒ *Introduction*.

Opening and closing the route plan

1. Tap the route plan to open.
2. To close the route plan, tap .
3. To stop the route guidance to the destination or waypoint, tap next to the destination in the route plan.

Editing route guidance

To edit route guidance, move the stopovers or the destination in the route plan.

1. Tap and hold the desired destination until it is visibly highlighted.
2. Move the destination to the desired position and release it.

   The route will be recalculated.

Avoiding traffic disruptions

The route plan displays messages about current traffic disruptions if the relevant data is available to the Navigation system. Avoid traffic disruptions by modifying the route plan.

1. Tap the traffic report.
2. Tap Avoid.

   The route will be recalculated.

Only one traffic disruption can be avoided in this manner for each route guidance.

Additional window

Tapping the route plan entries may cause a dialog box to open with additional options for these entries. The options available depend on the entry that is tapped.

Closing the dialog box

1. Tap a free area outside of the additional window.

Functions in the split screen:

Display on map Displays the selection on the map.

Add waypoint Adds a waypoint to the route guidance.

Direct route Starts direct route guidance.

Delete Delete waypoint from route guidance.

Avoid Avoid traffic disruptions. The route will be recalculated.

Stop route guidance Ends the current route guidance.

Learning usage patterns

While driving, the Navigation system saves routes traveled and destinations reached in order to create automatic destination suggestions. Destinations are learned with reference to the time of day and the day of the week.

The navigation system can suggest pre-learned routes. Tap to show the suggested routes.

Selecting one of the suggested routes will cause route guidance to begin.

The route guidance follows the selected route until you deviate from it. The route will then be recalculated and will lead back to the selected route via the most direc path.

Relevant traffic disruptions are taken into consideration in route guidance. If an alternative route and the navigation data are available, relevant disruptions will be avoided.

If you are driving a pre-learned route without active route guidance, the destination is added to the route plan. Route guidance does not need to be actively started for a journey to a pre-learned destination. You are warned about traffic disruptions if necessary.

A predicted arrival time is displayed.

You can activate or deactivate this function at any time as well as delete the saved data for this function.

Activating and deactivating “learn usage pattern”

1. To open this function's settings, tap ▶ Basic functions.
2. To activate or deactivate the function, tap Learn usage pattern.
3. To delete saved data, tap Delete usage pattern.

Mobile phone interface

Introduction

Using the phone interface, you can connect your cell phone capable of making phone calls to the Infotainment system and control the phone functions via the Infotainment system. The sound is played back via the vehicle speakers.

You can connect up to two cell phones to the Infotainment system at the same time. However, only one device is active at a time and can be used to make calls. The second connected device can receive calls via the Infotainment system and be used to play media.

High speeds, poor weather and road conditions, a lot of background noise, even outside the vehicle, and the network quality can impair phone calls in the vehicle.

The phone interface may contain an antenna amplifier that improves the reception quality of the cell phone.

You generally only need to pair a device like a cell phone once. You can reestablish the device's connection to the Infotainment system at any time via Bluetooth or Wi-Fi without re-pairing your device.

Opening the phone interface menu

1. Tap HOME ▶ .

   Or: tap MENU ▶ .

   Or: press PHONE.

Mobile phone interface equipment and symbols

Refer to ⇒ and *Safety instructions*.

The equipment features and symbols listed here are not available in all countries and Infotainment systems.

Equipment features

- Hands-free system.
- Use up to two cell phones simultaneously.
- Phonebook with up to 5000 contact entries.
- SMS functions via Bluetooth:
  - Read SMS.
  - Write SMS (inc. templates).
  - Have an SMS read out.
  - Message thread.
- Pairing of Bluetooth and Wi-Fi devices via NFC.

- Convenience telephony.
- Connection to cable-free charging option (cable-free charging function) ⇒ *Wireless charging function*.
- Connection to in-vehicle microphone.

Symbols in the main menu

The symbols may look different depending on the Infotainment system.

Contacts. Incoming and outgoing calls lists. Dial telephone number. Text messages (SMS and e-mail). Mobile phone interface settings. Select the active device from two or more connected cell phones.

Symbols for telephone calls

The symbols may look different depending on the Infotainment system.

Handle and display a call. End or decline a call. Open contact list. Dial telephone number. Mute the hands-free system. Put a call on hold. Add participants to a phone conference or begin a phone conference. Make an emergency call. Voice mail. Receive breakdown assistance. Receive information about Volkswagen and various value added traffic and travel services.

Symbols in the contact window

1. To open the contact window, tap on .

Input to search for contacts. Editing favorites. Add favorites. Remove favorites.

Call list symbols

1. To open the call lists, tap on .

Received incoming call. Outgoing call. Missed call. Telephone number (company). Telephone number (private). Mobile telephone number. Fax device (company). Fax device (private).

Symbols for messages

The symbols may look different depending on the Infotainment system.

1. To open the text messages or e-mails, tap .

Template for text messages. Display SMS as chat. Have messages read out.

Locations with special regulations

Refer to ⇒ and *Safety instructions*.

Switch off the cell phone and phone interface at locations where there is a risk of explosions. These locations are not always clearly identified. These include, for example:

- Areas near pipes and tanks containing chemicals
- Lower decks in ships and ferries
- Areas near vehicles powered by liquefied petroleum gas, such as propane and butane.
- Areas with chemicals or particles in the air, such as flour, dust, or metal powder
- All other locations where the engine or the cell phone must be switched off.

WARNING

Switch off the cell phone and phone interface at locations where there is a risk of explosions.

NOTICE

The cell phone must always be switched off in areas with special regulations relating to or prohibiting the use of cell phones. Radiation from cell phones that are switched on can interfere with sensitive technical and medical devices, potentially causing malfunctions or damage to the devices.

Types of phone interface

Refer to ⇒ and *Safety instructions*.

Depending on the country and vehicle equipment, your vehicle may have the following mobile phone interfaces:

- Phone interface basic configuration.
- Convenience phone interface.

Phone interface basic configuration

The phone interface uses the HFP Bluetooth profile for transmission. This enables the use of phone functions via the Infotainment system and played back via the vehicle speakers.

Convenience phone interface

Just like the basic configuration of the phone interface, the Convenience phone interface uses the HFP Bluetooth profile.

The Convenience phone interface can be equipped with the wireless charging function ⇒ *Wireless charging function*.

In order to use the features of the wireless charging function, you need to place a suitable cell phone correctly in the storage compartment. Depending on the vehicle equipment, this will connect the cell phone to the vehicle antenna. This improves reception and call quality.

Wireless charging function

Refer to ⇒ ⚠ and ⓘ *Safety instructions*.

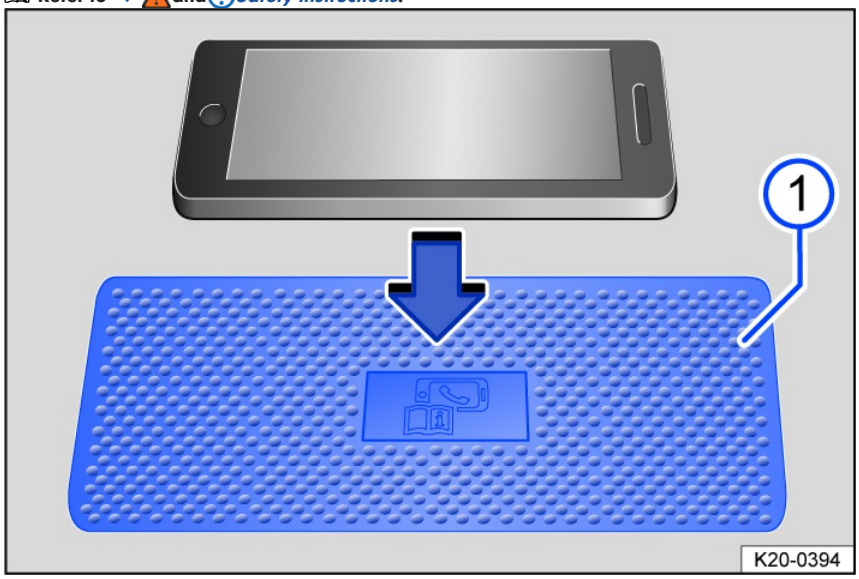


Fig. 128 Diagram: storage compartment with a liner pad for wireless charging.

The wireless charging function depends on the vehicle equipment and is not available in all countries.

Depending on the vehicle, the rear shelf with liner mat *fig. 128* for the wireless charging function is located in the center console or between the front seats in a storage compartment.

In some vehicles, the liner mat bears a phone symbol, which indicates the center position for the wireless charging function *fig. 128*. The symbol on the liner mat may look different in some vehicles.

The wireless charging function uses electromagnetic induction to transfer energy wirelessly over short distances.

The maximum charging power is 5 watts.

The Qi standard allows suitable Qi-capable cell phones to be charged wirelessly.

To find out whether a cell phone supports the Qi standard, see the cell phone operating instructions. The manufacturer of the cell phone can offer further informatio regarding compatibility.

Only a single Qi-capable cell phone without a protective case and with maximum dimensions (width x length) of 3.15 inch x 5.512 inch (80 mm x 140 mm) should ever be placed flat on the wireless charging function shelf.

Qi-capable cell phones with larger dimensions cannot be charged wirelessly.

Before charging, remove any foreign objects with metal components, such as coins, from the storage compartment and follow the cell phone operating instructions.

To charge a Qi-capable cell phone, place a suitable cell phone, without a protective case and with the display and the entire surface facing up, flat in the center of tl shelf. The charging process starts automatically.

The Infotainment system installed at the factory informs you when the charging process is starting and, if necessary, if there are any foreign objects with metal components in the storage compartment. Remove foreign objects immediately.

If a cell phone is not placed on the shelf correctly or if it is too large, it may not be detected correctly or detected at all. The Infotainment system may notify you of a foreign object in the storage compartment. If a suitable cell phone is used and its position is corrected, the fault may be eliminated.

Storage compartment cover

The storage compartment for the wireless charging function may have a cover for the cell phone display, depending on the vehicle equipment and the country.

Only a cell phone with maximum dimensions (width x length) of 3.15 inch x 5.512 inch (80 mm x 140 mm), in accordance with the specifications, may be placed in the covered storage compartment.

The cover can prevent you from being distracted by the cell phone, e.g. by incoming notifications.

The cover must always be closed while driving and the display of the cell phone must be completely covered up.

⚠ WARNING

Notifications on the display of the cell phone may distract the driver and increase the risk of a serious accident.

- Place only a single, suitable and Qi-capable (if necessary) cell phone without a protective case and with maximum dimensions (width x length) of 3.15 inch x 5.512 inch (80 mm x 140 mm), in accordance with the specifications, on the shelf in the storage compartment.
- If necessary, remove items that prevent the cover from closing.
- Always keep the cover closed while driving.

⚠ WARNING

Metal objects can become very hot. This may cause burns to the skin or a fire.

- Do not place metal objects or objects with metal components on the wireless charging shelf.

ⓘ NOTICE

Do not place any ID cards, credit cards, etc. with magnetic strips or with a chip on the wireless charging shelf. The data stored on the magnetic strips or the chip could become unusable.

Coupling, connecting and managing

🕮 Refer to ⇛ ⚠ and ⓘ *Safety instructions*.

To use the phone interface functions, pair a cell phone capable of making phone calls with the Infotainment system. Before connecting for the first time, you need to pair the cell phone with the Infotainment system. A user profile is then automatically saved in the Infotainment system.

The coupling process may take a few minutes. The available functions depend on the cell phone used and its operating system.

Pairing a cell phone

Prerequisites for coupling:

✓ Bluetooth is activated on the cell phone.

✓ Bluetooth is activated on the Infotainment system.

1. Open the list of available Bluetooth devices on your cell phone and select the device name for the Infotainment system.
2. Pay attention to messages on the cell phone and in the Infotainment system and confirm these if necessary.

   If the pairing is successful, the data on the cell phone will be saved in the user profile.
3. Optional: Confirm the message for transferring the data on the cell phone.

⚠ WARNING

If you carry out the coupling when driving, this may cause accidents or injuries.

- Only carry out the coupling when the vehicle is stationary.

ⓘ When pairing some cell phones, a PIN may be displayed on the cell phone screen. Type this PIN into the Infotainment system to finish pairing.

Bluetooth pairing via NFC

NFC is not available in all vehicle models and countries. Depending on the vehicle equipment, NFC is not available with a wireless charging function in all vehicles.

Prerequisites for one-off coupling:

✓ NFC technology and a storage compartment with wireless charging function are fitted in the vehicle.

✓ NFC is activated on the cell phone.

1. Tap ▸ Setup ▸ Select cell phone.
2. Unlock the cell phone.
3. Place the cell phone in the correct position on the shelf for wireless charging.
4. Pair Bluetooth using the displays on your cell phone and continue and confirm in the Infotainment system.

   The cell phone is paired with the Infotainment system.

ⓘ While the Infotainment system is in the Known cell phones menu, the wireless charge function is deactivated. The cable-free charging function is reactivated if you leave the menu.

Connection management

Precondition:

✓ The cell phone is paired and connected.

1. Tap HOME ▸ ⚙ ▸ Mobile devices.

2. Tap to connect the desired technology.

Active and passive connection

In order to use the phone interface functions, at least one cell phone must be connected to the Infotainment system. If several cell phones are connected to the Infotainment system, you can switch between an active and an inactive connection. In order to operate the phone interface with your preferred cell phone, establish an active connection to the Infotainment system.

Difference between the types of connection

ActiveThe cell phone is paired and connected. You can carry out phone interface functions using data from this cell phone. PassiveThe cell phone is paired and connected. You can only take incoming calls via the mobile phone interface. Other functions are not available.
Paired cell phones are saved in the Infotainment system even if they are not currently connected.

Change connection type (inactive to active)

Prerequisite: Several cell phones are connected to the Infotainment system simultaneously.

1. Tap ∨.

   The actively connected cell phone is highlighted.

2. Tap the name for the preferred cell phone.

   The connection with the other cell phones will be inactivated automatically.

User profiles

An individual user profile is automatically created for each paired cell phone. Data from this cell phone, e.g. contact data or settings, is saved in the user profile. A maximum of ten user profiles may be saved in the Infotainment system simultaneously.

Deleting a user profile

1. Tap ▸ Setup.

   The user profiles are located in the Select cell phone area or in Mobile devices.

2. Tap the desired user profile and tap to delete.

Calling and sending messages

Refer to ⇒ and *Safety instructions*.

Open the mobile phone interface

1. Tap HOME ▸ .

Using a phone

Select a telephone number to make a call. Various functions are available for selecting the telephone number.

Using contact data

If a contact has multiple telephone numbers, you must select the number you wish to call accordingly.

1. Tap ▸ and enter the data of the contact you are searching for. Tap on a contact in the list to make the call.

   Or: tap ▸ Favorites. Tap on a contact in the list to make the call.

   Or: tap ▸ All. Tap on a contact in the list to make the call.

When searching for a contact, enter the last name and first name separated by a space.

Using a call list

The mobile phone interface stores the incoming and outgoing calls on a call list. Recently used telephone numbers are saved under favorites. Make a call via the call list.

1. Tap ▸ All. Tap on a number in the list to make the call.

   Or: tap ▸ Missed. Tap on a number in the list to make the call.

   Or: tap ▸ Cell phone. Tap on a contact or number in the list to make the call.

Manually entering the telephone number

1. Tap and enter a telephone number.
2. Tap to make the call.

While you are entering a telephone number, the contact related to the number is displayed on the Infotainment system screen.

Sending text messages

Depending on the cell phone and the Infotainment system in use, you can send and receive SMS messages and e-mails via the phone interface.

Switching between SMS and e-mail

To send an SMS or e-mail, activate the corresponding option at the top left of the screen. The active option is displayed on the screen, e.g. SMS.

1. Tap ✉.
2. Tap the desired option.

Sending an SMS

1. Tap ✉ ▶ SMS ▶ New message and enter the message on the screen.
2. Enter the desired contact in the search bar. If required, a contact can be searched for using 🔍 Search.
3. Tap OK to send the message.

Phone directory, favorites and speed dial keys

📖 **Refer to ⇒ ⚠ and ⓘ *Safety instructions*.**

Phonebook

This first time a cell phone is paired with the Infotainment system, the phonebook is saved in the Infotainment system. If necessary, confirm the transfer on the cell phone.

The phone directory is updated after each new connection. During the update, the present phone directory can still be used.

If teleconferences are supported, the phonebook can be opened during a phone call and another participant can be added to the phone call.

If an image is stored for the contact, it can be displayed in the list next to the entry.

Favorites and speed dial keys

A speed dial key can be assigned with a favorite from the phone directory. If the entry contains an image, it is displayed on the speed dial key.

Speed dial keys must be programmed manually and are assigned to a user profile ⇒ *Coupling, connecting and managing*.

Programming a speed dial key

1. Tap ⊕.
2. Tap a contact in the phone directory. If a contact has multiple telephone numbers, tap a number on the list.

Editing the speed dial key

1. Press and hold the speed dial key until the phonebook opens.
2. Tap the new contact in the phone directory. If a contact has multiple telephone numbers, tap a number on the list.

Calling a favorite

1. Tap a programmed speed dial key.

Favorites are not automatically updated. If the phone number for a contact changes, the speed dial key must be reassigned.

Deleting a favorite from the speed dial key

1. Tap ✎.
2. To delete a favorite, tap the preferred speed dial key 🗑.

Voice control

📖 Introduction to using voice control

With voice control, you can have certain functions carried out by voice command.

The voice control is available depending on the vehicle equipment and the country.

Types of voice control

Depending on which language has been set in the Infotainment system, one of the following voice controls will be available in the vehicle:

- Command-based voice control (standard).
- Enhanced voice control (offline or online).

Speech recognition for individual seating positions

Additional microphones enable voice control to recognize whether the driver or passenger is speaking. For supported languages, you can open functions for individual seat positions, for example, switching on the seat heating.

Does my vehicle have voice control?

If there is a Talk button 🎙 on the multi-function steering wheel or the VOICE button is available in the Infotainment system or your vehicle understands the activation word, voice control is installed in the vehicle.

Test voice control before a journey to get to know the function.

Differences in the voice controls

Command-based voice control (standard)

Here, voice commands must follow a fixed syntax in order to be recognized correctly, e.g: “Navigate to [*city, street name, house number*]”. You can find further examples in the Infotainment system. The command-based voice control can be carried out in any available language .

Enhanced voice control (offline or online)

The enhanced voice control enables natural language interaction with the system. For example, the expression “I am cold” leads to an increase in the vehicle's set temperature. Speech commands can be freely worded in common speech. You can find suggestions for voice commands in the Infotainment system.

Enhanced voice control works both online and offline. In online mode, more functions and data are available for better recognition of voice commands. For online mode, you need a VW Car-Net contract valid for the vehicle.

If enhanced voice control is available in a language in addition to command-based voice control, enhanced voice control is always applied when voice control is activated.

Supported languages

The number of languages available in your country depends on the vehicle equipment.

Language	Standard	Offline	Online
x = Type of voice control possible in this language.			
English (US)	x	x	x
French (Canada)	x	—	—
Spanish (Mexico)	x	—	—

Starting and ending voice control

Voice commands

Voice control only recognizes voice commands in the language selected in the infotainment system.

Observe the following tips for successful voice commands:

- ✓ Speak clearly and at normal volume. Speak a little louder at higher speeds.
- ✓ Avoid excessive emphasis and strong accents.
- ✓ Do not leave long pauses in speech.
- ✓ Avoid external and background noise.
- ✓ Do not direct the air flow from the vents towards the microphone or headliner.

Open suggestions for speech commands

1. Tap HOME ▸ ? ▸ .

To ensure that names in the phonebook are identified correctly, you may need to switch the order of the first and last names of the desired contact, depending on how the phonebook entry is structured.

Starting voice control

You can use different methods to start voice control, depending on the vehicle equipment:

1. *Start speaking*: Say the activation word.
2. *Start via multi-function steering wheel*: Press the Talk button .
3. *Starting up via the Infotainment system*: Tap on VOICE.

In some cases, you can also start the voice control of the connected cell phone by keeping the Talk button or the VOICE button pressed down.

In black with blue background: Voice control is active and recognizes spoken words.

Ending voice control

1. *Finish speaking*: To open suggestions for a voice command to cancel, tap HOME ▸ ? ▸ ▸ General.
2. *End via multi-function steering wheel*: Press the Talk button twice in quick succession.
3. *End automatically*: If you use functions within the Infotainment system, activate the parking system; if telephone calls or tasks involving speech and navigation warnings occur, the voice control ends automatically.

Activation word

In the ring memory of the Infotainment system, the words spoken in the vehicle are checked for the activation word. If the Infotainment system detects the activatio

word, voice control will begin. The ring memory is automatically overwritten every 15 seconds. The ring memory is inactive when the activation word is switched off There is no transmission of data or words spoken in the vehicle.

Switching activation word on and off

If the activation word is switched off, voice control cannot be activated via the activation word.

1. Tap MENU ▶ ⚙ ▶ Voice control ▶ Voice control start/end sound or Activation word.

   Or: tap MENU ▶ ⚙ ▶ Voice control ▶ Voice control start/end sound or Activation word.

Speaking and recognizing the activation word

Precondition:

✓ The activation word is switched on in the settings.

CDN **Bonjour Volkswagen.** MEX **Hola Volkswagen.** USA **Hello Volkswagen.**

Troubleshooting

Voice control is not responding

- Voice control is not available in your language.
- Set the right language in the Infotainment system.
- Starting voice control.
- System error. • Contact suitably qualified professionals for assistance. Volkswagen recommends contacting your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Voice control is giving unsuitable responses

1. Voice control has misinterpreted the question.
2. Clearly give your voice command again.

Voice control is not performing the function

- This function cannot be performed by voice control.
- Settings within the function are preventing the device from switching on or carrying out the function.
- Voice control did not understand the voice command.
- There is insufficient data.

Transporting

Stowing luggage and cargo

Stowing luggage securely in the vehicle

- Distribute luggage as evenly as possible in the vehicle. Do not cover any vent openings.
- Always stow luggage and heavy objects in the luggage compartment ⇒ ⚠ and place them as far forward in the compartment as possible.
- Adhere to the Gross Axle Weight Rating and Gross Vehicle Weight Rating ⇒ *Technical data*.
- Secure objects in the luggage compartment using suitable cords or straps on the tie downs ⇒ *Luggage compartment features*.
- Also store small objects securely.
- If necessary, fold the rear seat backrest down and lock it securely.
- If necessary, adjust the headlight range ⇒ *Headlight range control*. Vehicles with dynamic headlight range control will adjust automatically.
- Adjust the tire pressure based on the load. Follow the tire pressure label ⇒ *Tire pressure*.

⚠ WARNING

Objects or animals that are not secured or are secured incorrectly can cause serious injuries in the event of sudden driving and braking maneuvers or a collision. This is especially true if the airbags deploy and strike objects, causing them to fly through the vehicle interior. To reduce the risk of damage, note the following:

- Store all objects securely in the vehicle. Follow the legal regulations whilst doing so.
- Stow objects in the vehicle interior in such a way that they will not enter the airbag deployment zone while you are driving.
- Secure animals in the vehicle restraint systems that are appropriate for their weight and size.
- Always keep the storage compartments closed while driving.
- Never stow objects in a location that requires you to adjust any seats to an incorrect seating position.
- If stowed objects block a seat, then no one should use this seat.
- Do not leave hard, heavy, or sharp objects loose in the open storage compartments in the vehicle, on the surface behind the rear seat backrest, or on the instrument panel.
- Remove hard, heavy, or sharp objects from clothing and bags in the vehicle interior and store them securely.

⚠ WARNING

When transporting heavy objects, the vehicle's handling performance may change because of the altered center of gravity and the braking distance may increase. If not stored or secured correctly, heavy objects can cause you to lose control of the vehicle and cause serious injuries.

- Never overload the vehicle. Both the load and the distribution of the load in the vehicle affect driving behavior and braking efficiency.
- When transporting heavy objects, the vehicle handling performance may change due to the shift in the center of gravity.
- Always distribute the load evenly and as low down in the vehicle as possible.
- Secure heavy objects in the luggage compartment as far in front of the rear axle as possible.
- Loose objects in the luggage compartment can slide around suddenly and alter the vehicle handling.
- Always adapt your speed and driving style to the visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- Accelerate with extra care and caution.
- Avoid sudden braking or driving maneuvers.
- Apply the brakes earlier than usual.

NOTICE

Abrasive objects on the rear windows can cause damage, for example to the heating elements for the rear window defroster.

NOTICE

Do not attach a luggage rack or any other kind of carrying system, e.g. bicycle rack, to the vehicle's spoiler.

Luggage compartment cover

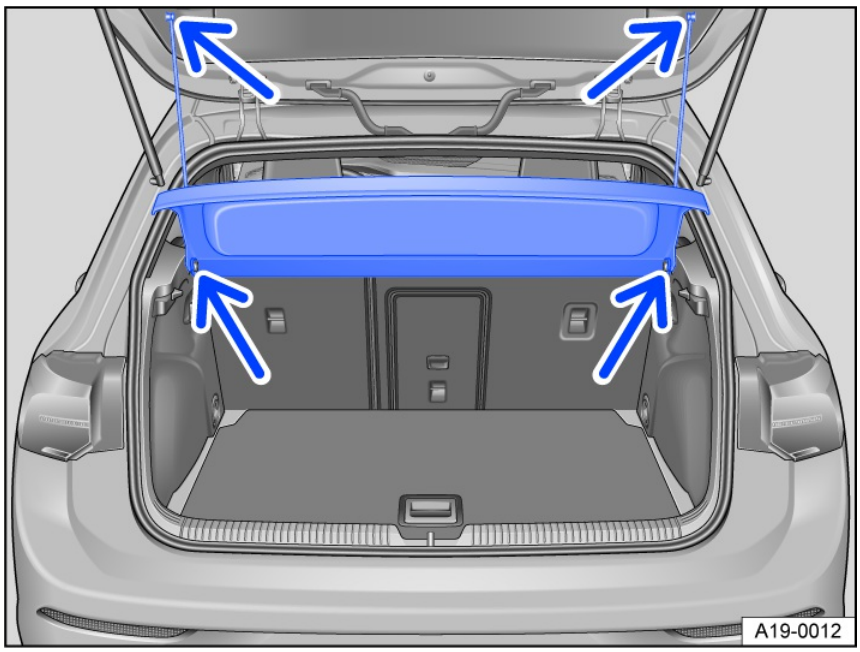


Fig. 129 In the luggage compartment: Installing and removing the luggage compartment cover.

When opening and closing the trunk lid, the luggage compartment cover is raised or lowered on the attached retaining straps.

The luggage compartment cover is not suitable for use as a storage compartment for objects ⇒ ⚠.

Removing the luggage compartment cover

1. Unhook the retaining straps from the trunk lid *fig. 129* (upper arrows).
2. Push the luggage compartment cover out of the side holders from below (lower arrows).

Installing the luggage compartment cover

1. Push the luggage compartment cover into the side holders from above *fig. 129* (lower arrows).
2. Hook the retaining straps onto the trunk lid (upper arrows).

⚠ WARNING

Unsecured or incorrectly secured objects or animals on the luggage compartment cover can damage the luggage compartment cover and cause serious injuries in the event of sudden driving and braking maneuvers and accidents.

- Never transport objects on the luggage compartment cover.
- Never allow animals to ride on the luggage compartment cover.

NOTICE

To prevent damage to the luggage compartment cover, do not load the luggage compartment so high that the luggage compartment cover presses on the load when the trunk lid is closed.

Luggage compartment floor

Variable luggage compartment floor

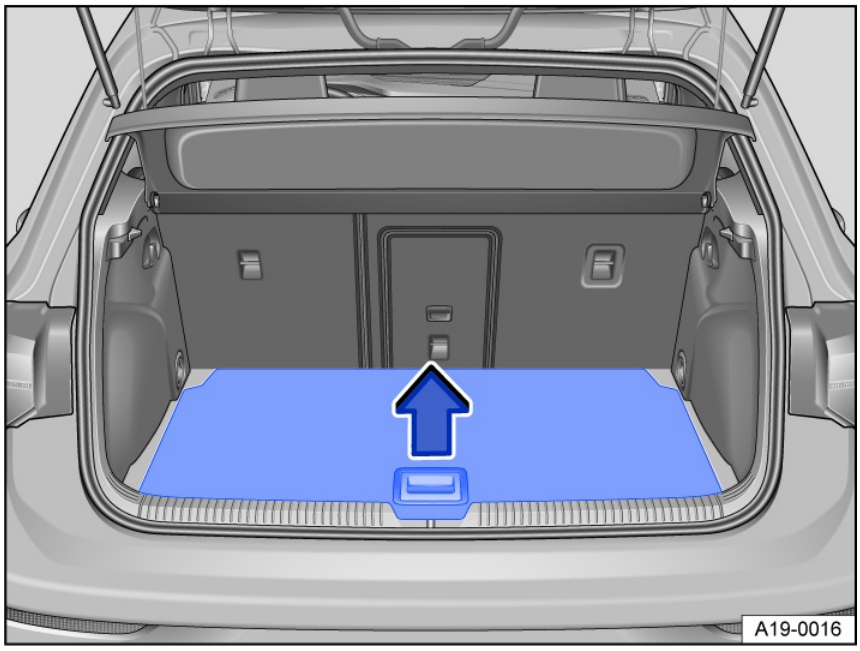


Fig. 130 In the luggage compartment: Raising the variable luggage compartment floor.

Opening the luggage compartment floor

1. To open, grasp the handle in the luggage compartment floor *fig. 130* and fold the luggage compartment floor upward until it is held by the side retainers (arrow *fig. 131*.

Closing the luggage compartment floor

1. Lowering and replacing the luggage compartment floor ⇒ ⓘ.

Adjusting the height of the luggage compartment floor

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the variable luggage compartment floor is height-adjustable.

1. Lift the luggage compartment floor and pull it backwards, out of the guides on the side of the luggage compartment.
2. Insert the luggage compartment floor into the guides at the desired height and slide it forward until it locks.
3. Guide the luggage compartment floor downward and lay it on the vehicle floor ⇒ ⓘ.

ⓘ NOTICE

Improper use may damage the variable luggage compartment floor or the luggage compartment trim.

- When closing the second luggage compartment floor, always carefully guide it downward and do not drop it.
- Always distribute loads as evenly as possible across the entire luggage compartment floor to avoid concentrating the load in a single place.

Depending on the model, the vehicle may be equipped with a removable, flexible floor covering rather than the variable luggage compartment floor.

Luggage compartment features

Tie-downs

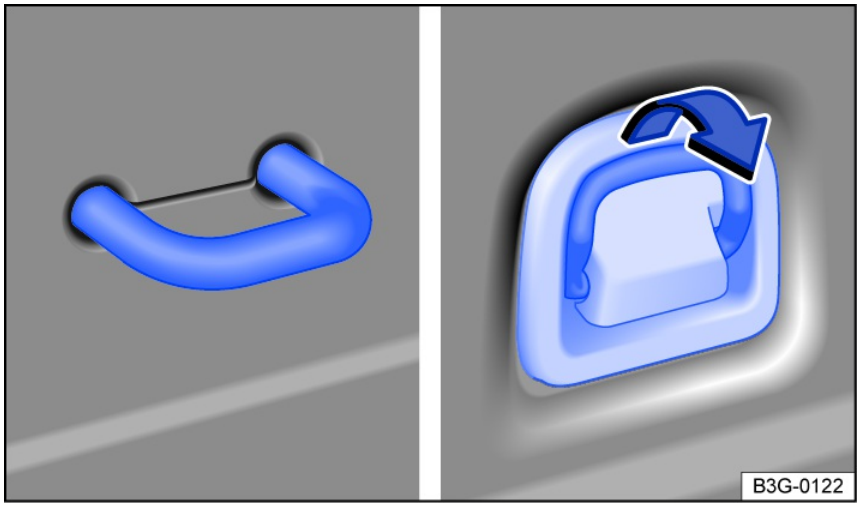


Fig. 132 In the luggage compartment: fixed and folding tie-downs.

Tie-downs are located in the luggage compartment to secure loose objects and luggage with the help of lines, fixation belts or securing straps *fig. 132*.

⚠ WARNING

Unsuitable or damaged tie-down straps or tensioning straps could break during braking maneuvers or an accident. This could result in objects being thrown through the vehicle interior and causing serious or fatal injuries.

- Use only suitable and undamaged tie-downs, fixing and tensioning straps.
- Secure cords, fixation belts and tensioning straps diagonally and tightly across the items placed on the luggage compartment floor, and fasten the cords, fixation belts and tensioning straps securely to the tie-downs.
- Make sure that the upper edge of the load is above the tie-downs, especially on flat objects.
- Depending on the vehicle equipment, follow any signs about storing cargo in the luggage compartment.
- Never secure a child restraint to the tie-downs.

⚠ WARNING

Elastic tensioning straps must be stretched for securing to the tie-downs. The hooks attached to them can cause serious injuries.

- When securing elastic tensioning straps, always protect your eyes and face from injury.
- When securing, always hold the elastic tensioning straps securely so that they cannot slip off and rebound.
- Always secure elastic tensioning straps to the tie-downs in the front part of the luggage compartment first, then pull them to the loading edge and secure them to the tie-downs there. If the tensioning straps slip they will spring away from your body.

Suitable straps and cargo securing systems are available from an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Shopping bag hooks

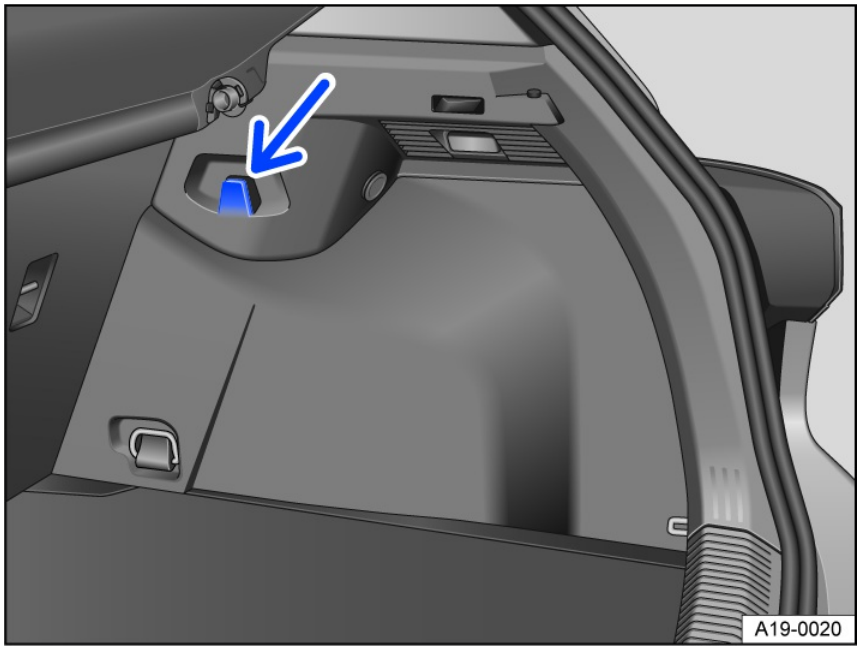


Fig. 133 Shopping bag hooks on the left and right of the luggage compartment.

You may have shopping bag hooks in your luggage compartment for hanging light shopping bags.

⚠ WARNING

Never use the shopping bag hooks to tie down pieces of luggage or objects. The shopping bag hooks could break during sudden braking maneuvers or in the event of an accident.

NOTICE

Each shopping bag hook can hold a maximum of 5 lbs (2.5 kg).

Load-through hatch



Fig. 134 In the rear seat backrest: Open load-through hatch.

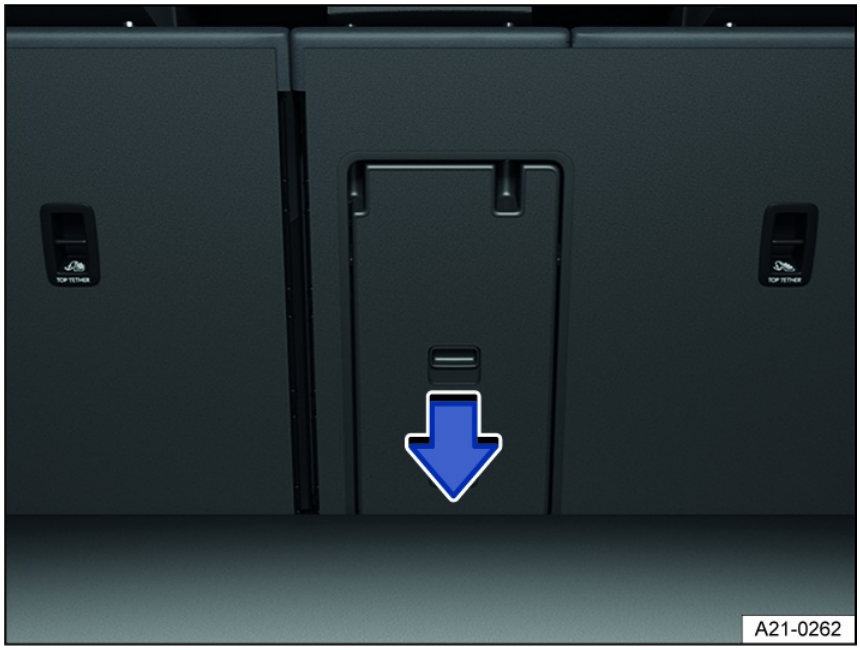


Fig. 135 In the luggage compartment: open the luggage compartment pass-through.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, there may be a load-through hatch behind the center armrest in the rear seat backrest for transporting long objects, such as skis, inside the vehicle.

Opening the pass-through from the vehicle interior

1. Fold the center armrest forward ⇒ *Center armrest*.
2. Pull the release lever in the direction of the arrow *fig. 134* and fold the luggage compartment pass-through cover all the way forward ⇒ ⚠.
3. Open the trunk lid.

Opening the pass-through from the luggage compartment

1. Press the release lever down in the direction of the arrow *fig. 135* and fold the cover forward.
2. Insert long objects from the luggage compartment side and slide them forward through the load-through hatch.
3. Secure objects with a seat belt if necessary.
4. Close the trunk lid.

Closing the load-through hatch

1. Fold the flap for load-through hatch backward until it audibly engages.

   There may be a red mark on the luggage compartment side. This should not be visible ⇒ ⚠.
2. Close the trunk lid.

3. If necessary, fold the center armrest backward.

⚠ WARNING

Folding and unfolding the load-through hatch in an uncontrolled or careless manner may cause severe injury.

- Never fold the luggage compartment pass-through forward or back while driving.
- When folding up the pass-through, make sure that the safety belt does not become trapped or damaged.
- Keep hands, fingers, feet and other body parts away from the pivot range of the pass-through when folding it forward or back.
- If a red mark is visible on the locking display, the luggage compartment pass-through may not be engaged. Always check that the red mark is not visible when the pass-through is in the upright position.
- If the load-through hatch is folded down or not properly engaged, no passengers, especially children, are to be transported on this seat.

Trailer towing

Trailer towing information

The vehicle is **not** designed for towing a trailer. No trailer hitch may be retrofitted.

⚠ WARNING

Mounting a trailer hitch on the vehicle can lead to accidents and serious injuries when operating the vehicle.

- Never mount a trailer hitch on the vehicle.

NOTICE

Mounting a trailer hitch can lead to serious vehicle damage.

Roof rack

Introduction

Depending on the model, the vehicle may be designed to have a roof rack installed.

Bulky objects can be transported on the vehicle roof using the roof rack.

If you are not sure if your vehicle is designed to have a roof rack installed, check with an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Only use roof racks that Volkswagen has approved for use with your vehicle.

Do *not* use or retrofit a roof rack if this is *not* approved for your vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

When transporting heavy or large objects on the roof rack, your vehicle's driving characteristics could change because of the different center of gravity or increased wind resistance.

- Always secure cargo correctly with suitable and undamaged cords, fixation belts or tensioning straps.
- Large, heavy, long, or flat objects can have a negative effect on the vehicle’s aerodynamics, center of gravity, and handling.
- Avoid abrupt and sudden driving and braking maneuvers.
- Always adapt your speed and driving style to the visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.

⚠ WARNING

If a roof rack that is *not* approved for the vehicle is installed or a roof rack is installed on a vehicle that is *not* designed for using a roof rack, accidents and serious injuries can occur.

- Only use roof racks that are approved by Volkswagen for your vehicle.
- Never install a roof rack on a vehicle that is not approved for using a roof rack.
- If a roof rack is not approved but is installed anyway, the rack could come loose while driving and fall off the roof.

NOTICE

Installing any type of roof rack on a vehicle where this is *not* approved can cause serious vehicle damage.

Mounting a roof rack

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ ⚠ and ⓘ *Introduction*.

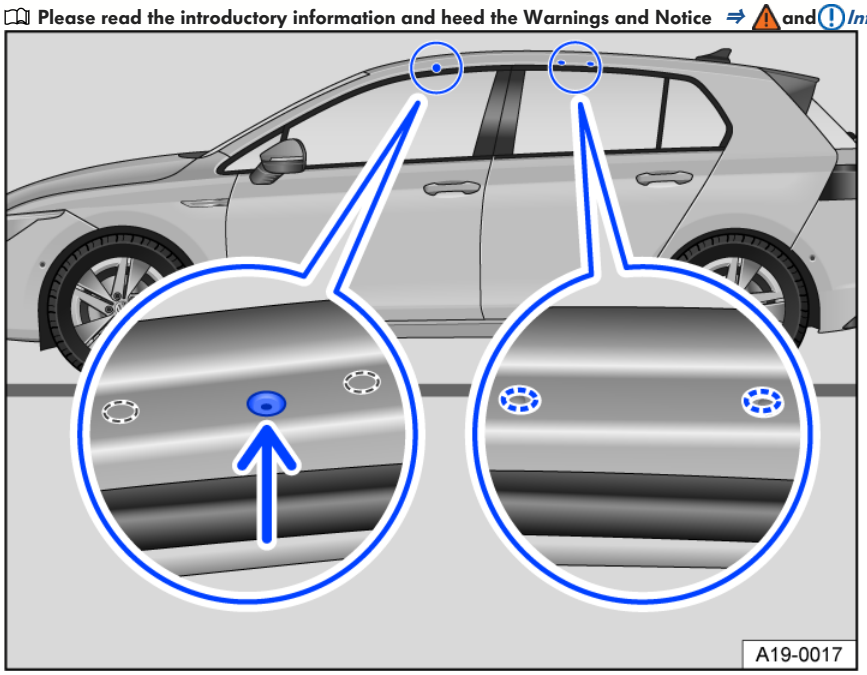


Fig. 136 Mounting points for base supports.

For safety reasons, special roof racks are needed to transport luggage, bicycles, surfboards, skis and boats safely. An authorized Volkswagen dealer can provide you with suitable accessories.

Mounting a roof rack (vehicles without roof rail)

Mount the roof rack in accordance with the instructions supplied ⇒ ⚠.

The holes or markings for securing the roof rack can only be seen when the doors are open. If necessary, unscrew the plastic screw from the hole opening.

The front holes or markings are located on the undersides of the roof pillars near the door seal.

The rear holes or markings are located on the undersides of the roof pillars near the door seal or, depending on the vehicle equipment, at the top of the rear side windows.

After the roof rack has been mounted, the rack base can now be secured to it ⇒ ⚠.

Remove the roof rack in the following scenarios

- If the roof rack is no longer needed.
- Before driving through an automatic car wash
- If the height of the vehicle exceeds the maximum height limit, for example in a garage

ⓘ NOTICE

- The height of the vehicle changes when a roof rack is installed and when there is cargo secured on it. Compare the height of the vehicle with height clearances, for example for underpasses and garage doors.
- Parts on the roof of your particular vehicle (depending on the vehicle equipment), e.g. the roof antenna or power sunroof, and the trunk lid's range of movement must not be impaired by the roof rack and the cargo.

⚠ WARNING

Securing the roof rack and base incorrectly or using them incorrectly can cause the cargo or the entire assembly to come loose from the vehicle roof, which can cause accidents and injuries.

- Only use the roof rack and base if they are undamaged and secured correctly.
- Always mount the roof rack and base correctly. Always observe the assembly instructions provided by the manufacturer.
- Secure the roof rack only at the locations intended for this.
- Always mount special rack assemblies for bicycles, skis, surfboards, etc. correctly. Always observe the assembly instructions provided by the manufacturer.
- Check the roof rack mounts before starting a journey and, if necessary, retighten them after a short distance. On long trips, check the threaded

connections and fasteners each time you take a break.

- Do not make any modifications or repairs to the roof rack or base.

A fitted roof rack increases air resistance and therefore may reduce the vehicle's range.

Loading the roof rack

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ ⚠ and ⓘ *Introduction*.

Maximum permissible roof weight

The maximum permissible roof load is **75 kg (165 lbs)**.

The roof load consists of the weight of the roof rack and the items carried on the roof rack → ⚠.

Always check the weight of the roof rack and the items that will be transported on it. Weigh the items if necessary.

When using a roof rack with a low load limit, do not load the rack with the maximum permissible roof load. In this case, only load the roof rack to the weight limit list in the installation guide.

Distributing the load

Distribute the load evenly and secure it correctly → ⚠.

Checking that everything is secure

Once you have fitted the roof rack, drive a short distance and then check all the fasteners. Keep checking them regularly.

⚠ WARNING

Accidents and serious injuries can result if the maximum permissible roof weight is exceeded.

- Never exceed the specified roof load, the Gross Axle Weight Rating, and the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating of the vehicle.
- Do not exceed the load limit of the roof rack, even if the roof load is below the limit.

⚠ WARNING

Items that are secured loosely or incorrectly could fall off the roof rack and cause accidents and injuries.

- Use only suitable and undamaged tie-downs, fixing and tensioning straps.

ⓘ NOTICE

Make sure the trunk lid does not run into the roof load when opening the lid.

Fuel and emissions control system

Safety precautions for handling fuel

⚠ WARNING

Handling fuel incorrectly can cause explosions, fires, severe burns, and other injuries.

- Before refueling, switch off the engine, the ignition and your cell phone, as well as other radio equipment.
- To reduce the risk of discharging static electricity, do not enter the vehicle while refueling.
- Make sure that the fuel tank cap is sealed correctly and no fuel is leaking out.
- Note the applicable safety precautions and local regulations for handling fuel.

⚠ WARNING

Refueling incorrectly can cause fires, serious injuries, and vehicle damage.

- Only use fuel that is approved for your vehicle.
- Do not use any fuels containing metal and only use service additives approved by Volkswagen in the respective proportion.
- Immediately remove any fuel that has spilled on vehicle components.

⚠ CAUTION

Fuel may leak out of reserve canisters. This can cause fires and injuries.

- Do transport any reserve canisters in the vehicle.

Fuels can contaminate the environment. Collect any leaking operating fluids and dispose of them according to legal regulations.

The fuel filler flap does not have an emergency release. If necessary, contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility for assistance.

Fuel types and refueling

Introduction

The fuel filler flap is located on the right rear side of the vehicle.

Designation of fuels and fuel standards

Refer to ⇒ ⚠ and ⚠ *Safety precautions for handling fuel*.



Fig. 137 On the inside of the fuel filler flap: fuel label (general example)

Fuel label

The type of fuel to use depends on the vehicle engine. When your vehicle leaves the factory there is a fuel information sticker inside the tank flap with notes about the minimum required fuel type for your vehicle *fig. 137*.

The name and limits specify which fuels are suitable for the vehicle. This is a minimum requirement. The vehicle must not be refueled with other fuels ⇒ ⓘ.

Fuel standards

The fuel used must meet one of the following standards. The vehicle must not be refueled with other fuels ⇒ (!).

If fuel with the specified standards is not available, contact suitably qualified professionals for information about which fuels are suitable for the vehicle. Volkswager recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Gasoline



Fig. 138 Gasoline that contains Ethanol.

Gasoline that contains **E**thanol. The number indicates the maximum ethanol percentage in the gasoline, for example E5 means a maximum of 5% ethanol.

Fuel standard

- EN 228
- DIN EN 228
- Resolucao ANP N° 40 (Brazil)
- Resolucion 576/2019 (Argentina)
- NOM-016-CRE-2016 (Mexico)

(!) NOTICE

Refueling with non-standard and non-approved fuels can cause reduced performance and considerable damage to the engine and the fuel system.

- Before refueling, check if the fuel specification at the fuel pump meets the vehicle specifications.
- Only refuel using fuels that conform to the specified standards and name to reduce the risk of damage to the fuel system and engine malfunctions.

Gasoline

Refer to ⇒ ⚠ and ⚠ *Safety precautions for handling fuel*.

Gasoline types

Gasoline types are differentiated by the Research Octane Number (RON). The vehicle may also be fueled with gasoline that has a higher RON than what is required by the engine. However, this will not improve fuel consumption or engine power.

The fuel information label may have multiple gasoline types, for example **RON 95** min. 91. The highlighted octane number, RON 95 in this example, is the preferre gasoline type for which the vehicle is designed and optimized. The listed alternative gasoline type, RON 91 in this example, should only be used if the preferred type is not available.

If your vehicle has a gasoline engine, fuel it only with gasoline that does not contain any metal (no lead, manganese or iron) and which has a maximum of 10% ethanol (E10) ⇒ (!).

The fuel quality affects the performance, output, and life of the engine. Fuel with gasoline that already contains the correct fuel additives ⇒ (!).

Volkswagen recommends “TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline”, which is available in some regions, for example North America, Central America and South America. Fo more information regarding “TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline”, visit the official website at http://www.toptiergas.com.

(!) NOTICE

Using incorrect fuel and unsuitable fuel additives can result in vehicle damage.

- Before refueling, check if the fuel standard listed on the fuel pump meets the vehicle specifications.
- If necessary, only use service additives approved by Volkswagen in the correct amounts.
- Only fuel with gasoline that meets or exceeds the specified Research Octane Number (RON). If you must fuel your vehicle with gasoline with a lower octane rating, only drive at moderate engine RPM and low engine load. Avoid high engine speeds and heavy engine load. Refuel your vehicle with gasoline that meets the required octane rating as soon as possible.

Refueling

Refer to ⇒ ⚠ and ⚠ *Safety precautions for handling fuel*.



Fig. 139 Behind the fuel filler flap: fuel tank cap (general example)

Refueling procedure

1. Unlock the fuel filler flap with the vehicle key or the button in the driver door.
2. Open the fuel filler flap.
3. Remove the fuel tank cap and insert it into the opening at the fuel filler flap provided for this *fig. 139*.
4. Hold the fuel pump nozzle handle down to ensure optimum refueling.
5. The fuel tank is full once the fuel pump nozzle turns off for the first time ⇒ ⚠.
6. Screw the fuel tank cap onto the fuel filler neck.
7. Close the fuel filler flap.

⚠ WARNING

Fuel may spray out and overflow if the fuel tank is overfilled. This can cause explosions, fires, and serious injuries.

- Do not continue filling after the pump nozzle switches off for the first time.

NOTICE

Every six months, if possible, run the fuel tank empty until the indicator light comes on and refuel it. This is required to maintain the system functions and fuel quality necessary for gasoline-powered engines.

Fuels can contaminate the environment. Collect any leaking operating fluids and dispose of them according to legal regulations.

Exhaust system

Introduction

The exhaust-relevant components reduce exhaust emissions:

- Catalytic converter ⇒ *Catalytic converter*
- Particulate filter (depending on vehicle equipment) ⇒ *Particulate filter*

⚠ WARNING

Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide, which can cause loss of consciousness and death.

- Do not allow the engine to run in confined spaces.
- Never start the engine in confined spaces.
- Do not leave your vehicle unattended while the engine is running.

⚠ WARNING

Exhaust system components will become very hot. This can cause fires.

- Park the vehicle in such a way so that no exhaust system components come into contact with flammable materials under the vehicle such as brush, leaves, dry grass, etc.

- Never use additional underbody protection or corrosion protection on exhaust pipes, catalytic converters, particulate filters or heat shields.

Catalytic converter

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ and *Safety precautions for handling fuel*.
To ensure that the exhaust system and the gasoline engine catalytic converter can function correctly for a long time:

- Only refuel with unleaded gasoline.
- Never drive until the fuel tank is completely empty ⇒ *Refueling*.
- Never add too much engine oil ⇒ *Checking the engine oil level and adding oil* .
- Do not tow-start the vehicle; use jump-start assistance instead ⇒ *Jump-starting*.

If there are engine misfires, loss of power, or poor engine operation while driving, reduce the speed immediately and have the vehicle checked by suitably qualified professionals ⇒ *Troubleshooting*. Volkswagen recommends contacting your Volkswagen dealership. Otherwise, uncombusted fuel could be present in the exhaust system and then enter the atmosphere. The catalytic converter may also be damaged from overheating.

The exhaust may smell like sulfur when the emissions control system is running correctly.

Particulate filter

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ and *Safety precautions for handling fuel*.

Function

The particulate filter (depends on how your vehicle is equipped) filters out soot from the exhaust gas.

Regeneration

With normal vehicle usage, the filter cleans itself. If the filter is unable to clean itself, e.g. if you only make short trips for an extended period of time, the filter can become blocked with soot. The particulate filter needs to be cleaned (regenerated).

Noises, light odors, and increased engine speeds may occur during the regeneration. The radiator fan may continue to run while driving and after turning off the engine.

To assist in particulate filter regeneration, Volkswagen recommends avoiding driving short distances too frequently.

The soot in the particulate filter is burned periodically at high temperatures. The yellow indicator light does not turn on during a periodic regeneration.

Troubleshooting

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ and *Safety precautions for handling fuel*.

If the engine does not run smoothly and malfunctions

If the engine does not run smoothly or malfunctions while driving, it can indicate poor fuel quality.

1. Reduce your speed immediately.
2. Drive with a moderate RPM and low engine load to the nearest suitably qualified professional. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
3. If these symptoms occur directly after refueling, stop the engine immediately to prevent subsequent damage.
4. Contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility for assistance.

Particulate filter clogged with soot

The yellow indicator light turns on.

The particulate filter is clogged with soot and a regeneration is necessary.

Prerequisite for the regeneration drive: The engine is at operating temperature.

For gasoline engines

1. Drive at a speed of at least 50 mph (80 km/h).
2. Take your foot completely off the accelerator pedal for a few seconds to let the vehicle roll with a gear engaged.
3. Repeat this process (acceleration and letting the vehicle roll) until the indicator light goes out.
4. If the indicator light does **not** go out after some time, immediately consult suitably qualified professionals for assistance. Volkswagen recommends contacting a authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Exhaust-related malfunction

The yellow indicator light turns **on**.

An exhaust-related component is malfunctioning, which could damage the vehicle.

1. Contact a suitably qualified professional and have the engine and the exhaust system checked. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Misfire

The yellow indicator light **flashes**.

There is misfire which could damage the vehicle.

1. Contact a suitably qualified professional and have the engine and the exhaust system checked. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

WARNING

If you perform driving maneuvers that other road users cannot anticipate, you may cause an accident.

- Always adapt your speed and driving style to the visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- Follow the road traffic laws and regulations that apply in the country you are driving in.

If the indicator lights are on or flashing, it is likely that there is an engine malfunction and that fuel consumption will increase.

Do it yourself

Vehicle tool kit

Introduction

When securing the vehicle in the event of a vehicle breakdown, follow the legal regulations applicable in the respective country.

WARNING

A vehicle tool kit, tire mobility set, spare tire, or compact spare tire that is loose or not secured correctly can be thrown around the vehicle interior during sudden driving or braking maneuvers or in a collision and cause serious injuries.

- Always make sure the vehicle tool kit, tire mobility set, and spare wheel or compact spare wheel are secured in the luggage compartment.

WARNING

An unsuitable or damaged vehicle tool kit can cause accidents and injuries.

- Never work with an unsuitable or damaged vehicle tool kit.

Placement

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ *Introduction*.

There are a number of different storage locations for the tool box in the vehicle, such as under the luggage compartment floor ⇒ *Luggage compartment floor* or in side storage compartment of the luggage compartment.

Depending on the equipment variant, the vehicle may contain a loose box with the vehicle tool kit in the luggage compartment. This supplemental vehicle tool kit is designed for a possible winter tire change and does not need to be carried in the vehicle at all times.

If used, crank the vehicle jack back down so that it can be securely stowed in the vehicle.

Vehicle tool kit components

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ *Introduction*.

The scope of the tool box depends on the country and equipment. In some countries, there may also be a tire pressure gage in the vehicle. The following information describes the full scope of items that may be included.

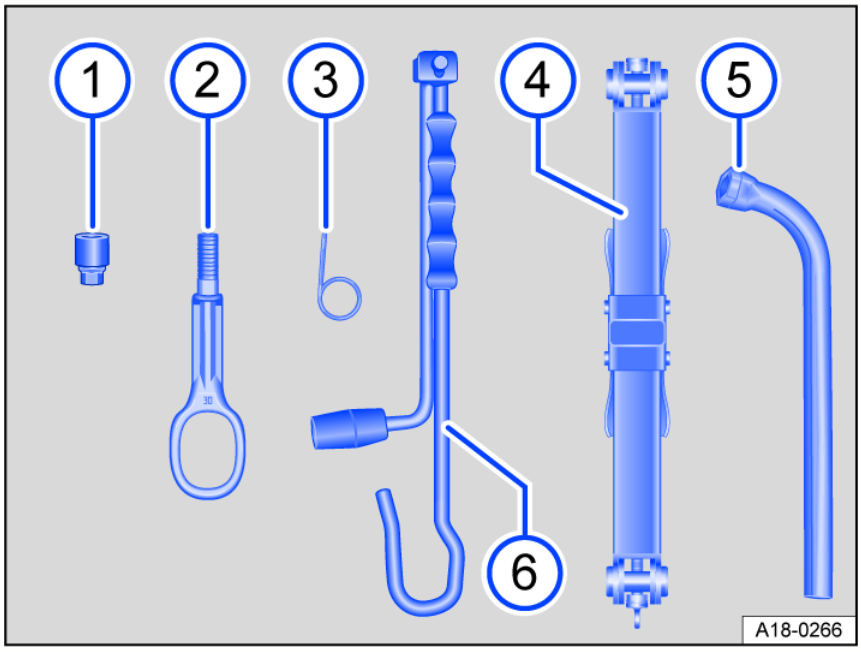


Fig. 140 Vehicle tool kit components (general example).

(1) Adapter for the anti-theft wheel bolt. Volkswagen recommends always keeping the adapter for the wheel bolts in the vehicle with the vehicle tool kit. The **code number** for the wheel bolt lock is stamped on the front of the adapter. A replacement adapter can be ordered based on this number if the adapter is lost. Note the wheel bolt lock code number and keep it separate from the vehicle.

(2) Towing eye that can be screwed in.

(3) Extraction hook for removing the center wheel covers, wheel hub covers, or wheel bolt covers.

(4) Vehicle jack. Before putting the vehicle jack away, crank the vehicle jack claw all the way down.

(5) Lug wrench.

(6) Crank.

Jack maintenance

Generally, the vehicle jack does not need any maintenance.

1. If necessary, apply universal lubricant to the vehicle jack.

Wiper blades

Service position

In the service position, the wiper arms can be lifted off of the windshield.

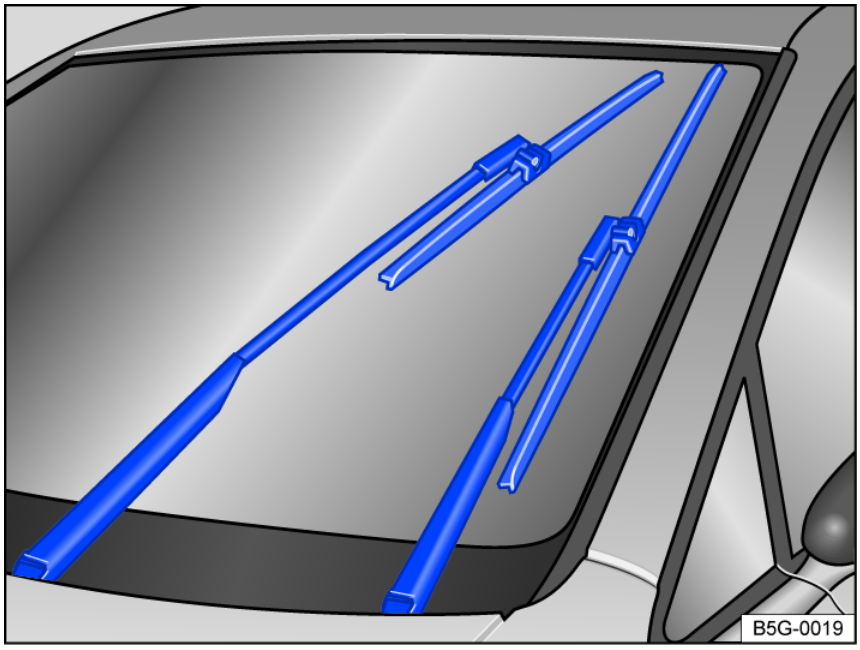


Fig. 141 Wipers in service position.

Activate the service position using the windshield wiper lever

1. Close the hood ⇒ *Opening and closing the hood*, driver and front passenger door.
2. Switch the ignition off and on again.
3. Briefly press the windshield wiper lever towards **one-tap wiping** ⇒ *Operating the windshield wiper lever*.

Activate the service position using the exit menu

The service position of the wiper blades can also be activated in the exit menu for a limited period of time ⇒ *Exit menu*. To do this, the ignition must be switched o ⇒ *Starter button*.

Lifting the windshield wiper arms

1. Move the windshield wiper arms into the service position before lifting ⇒ (!).
2. Lift the wiper arms, making sure to **only** hold the wiper arms in the area where they attach to the wiper blade.
3. Carefully place the wiper arms back in position before driving, making sure to **only** hold the wiper arms in the area where they attach to the wiper blade.
4. When the ignition is switched on, press the windshield wiper lever briefly towards **one-tap wiping** to bring the wiper arms back into the original position.

(!) NOTICE

To avoid damage to the hood, windshield and wiper arms:

- Lift the wiper arms only in the service position.
- Always place the wiper arms against the windshield before continued driving.

Cleaning and changing wiper blades

Wiper blades with a graphite coating are installed at the factory. The graphite coating allows the wiper blade to glide easily over the window. A damaged graphite coating creates an increased noise level when wiping the window.

Check the condition of the wiper blades regularly. If **wiper blades are rubbing**, replace them if they are damaged or clean them if they are dirty ⇒ ⚠.

Damaged wiper blades should be replaced immediately. Wiper blades can be obtained from suitably qualified professionals. Volkswagen recommends contacting

an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Cleaning the wiper blades

Note for the windshield wipers: move the windshield wiper arms into the service position before lifting ⇒ *Service position*.

1. Lift the wiper arms, making sure to **only** hold the wiper arms in the area where they attach to the wiper blade.
2. Clean the wiper blades carefully with a damp sponge ⇒ (!).
3. Place the wiper arms carefully on the windshield.

Changing the windshield wiper blades

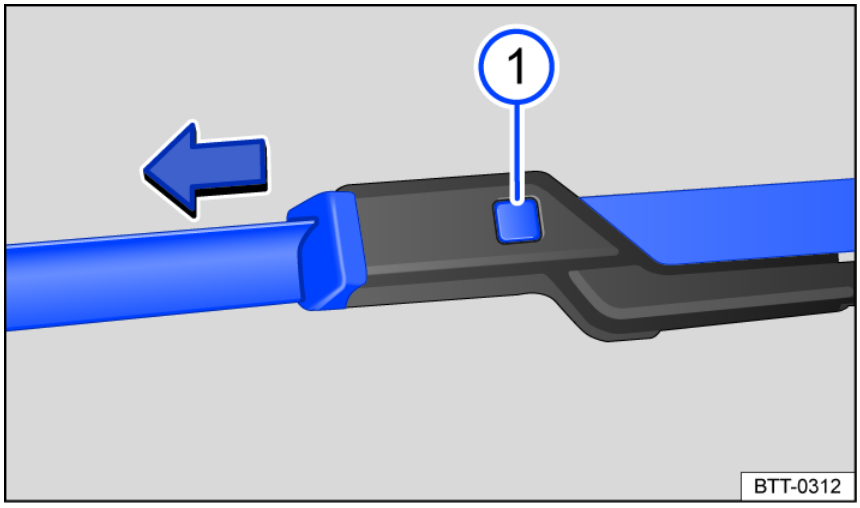


Fig. 142 Changing the windshield wiper blades.

1. Move the windshield wiper arms into the service position before lifting ⇒ *Service position*.
2. Lift the wiper arms, making sure to **only** hold the wiper arms in the area where they attach to the wiper blade.
3. Press and hold the release button and remove the wiper blade at the same time in the direction of the arrow *fig. 142* (1).
4. Insert a new wiper blade of the **same length and type** on the wiper arm until it engages.
5. Place the wiper arms carefully on the windshield.

Changing the rear window wiper blade

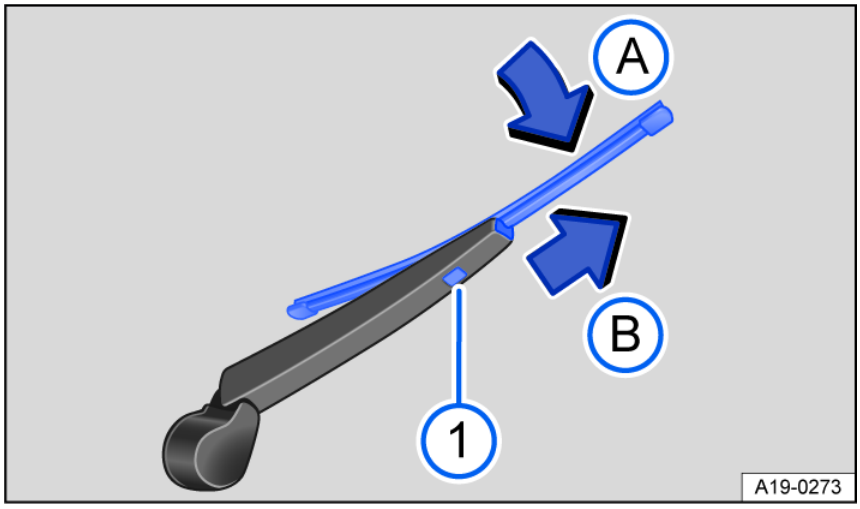


Fig. 143 Changing the rear window wiper blade.

1. To lift a windshield wiper arm, hold it **only** in the area where it attaches to the wiper blade.
2. Lift the wiper arm and fold it out.
3. Press and hold the release button *fig. 143* (1).
4. Tilt the wiper blade toward the wiper arm *fig. 143* (A) while removing it in the direction of the arrow (B). You may need to use more force to do this.
5. Slide a new wiper blade **with the same length and design** onto the wiper arm in the opposite direction to the arrow until it engages *fig. 143* (B). For this to work, the wiper blade has to be folded out *fig. 143* (A).
6. Place the wiper arm carefully on the rear window.

⚠ WARNING

Worn or dirty wiper blades reduce visibility and increase the risk of accidents and serious injuries.

- Always replace wiper blades if they are damaged or worn and are no longer cleaning the windshield sufficiently.

NOTICE

Damaged or dirty wiper blades can scratch the window glass.

- Do not use any cleaning materials containing solvents, hard sponges, and other sharp-edged objects because they can damage the graphite coating on the wiper blades.
- Do not clean the windshield and windows with fuel, nail polish remover, paint thinner, or other similar fluids.

If there is wax residue on the windshield and rear window from car wash systems and other products, this can cause wipers to rub. Remove any wax residue with a special cleaner or cleaning towels.

Exterior lighting

Introduction

Before changing a light bulb, check if it is an incandescent bulb or an LED light. Generally, light bulbs can be replaced by yourself. If the exterior lighting on your vehicle is equipped with LED technology, it is not possible to change LED lights or individual LEDs by yourself. The malfunction of individual LEDs may be an indication that more LEDs will malfunction. If this is the case, have the LEDs checked and/or replaced if necessary by suitably qualified professionals. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Driving with exterior lighting that is inoperative may be against the law.

Additional bulb specifications

Some bulbs in the headlights or in the taillights may have certain manufacturer specifications that differ from conventional light bulbs. The respective name will be on the bulb socket or glass bulb.

WARNING

Accidents can occur if the road is not well lit and the vehicle cannot be seen by others on the road, or is very difficult to see by others.

WARNING

Changing the bulbs incorrectly can cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Always read and observe the warnings before performing any work in the engine compartment ⇒ *Safety precautions for working in the engine compartment*. The engine compartment in any motor vehicle is a potentially dangerous area that can cause serious personal injury.
- Be aware that halogen bulbs are under pressure and can break during bulb replacement.
- Only change bulbs when they have cooled down completely.
- Never perform a bulb replacement if you are not familiar with the required procedures. If you are not sure what to do, have the work performed by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility qualified in this respect. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
- Do not touch the glass bulb with bare fingers. Fingerprints on the bulb will vaporize from the heat when the light is switched on and will cause the reflector to “darken”.
- Components with sharp edges are located on the headlight housing and on the taillight housing. Protect your hands during bulb replacement.

NOTICE

If the rubber cover or plastic covers on the headlight housing were not installed correctly after a bulb change, this could cause damage to the electrical system, especially if water enters.

Information about replacing bulbs

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ and *Introduction*.
Always perform the following steps for changing a bulb in the specified sequence ⇒ :

1. Park the vehicle a safe distance away from moving traffic on level and solid ground as soon as possible.
2. Set the electronic parking brake ⇒ *Using the electronic parking brake* .
3. Switch the lights off ⇒ *Switching the lights on and off* .
4. Turn off the turn signal if it is activated ⇒ *Switching the turn signals on and off* .
5. Automatic transmission: move the selector lever into the **P** position ⇒ *Automatic transmission: Selecting a position* .

6. Stop the engine ⇒ *Stopping the engine*.
7. Manual transmission: engage a gear ⇒ *Manual transmission: Engaging a gear*.
8. Allow the orientation lighting to turn off ⇒ *Entry and exit lighting (orientation lighting)*.
9. Allow the affected light bulbs to cool down.
10. Check if you can see that a fuse is burnt out ⇒ 🕮 *Introduction*.
11. Change the affected light bulb according to the instructions ⇒ ⓘ. A light bulb may only be replaced with the same type of light bulb. The respective name will be on the bulb socket or glass bulb.
12. Never touch a glass light bulb with bare hands. The fingerprints left behind would vaporize from the heat when the bulb is switched on and condense on the reflector, which would then reduce the headlight brightness.
13. Check the bulb function after a bulb is changed. If the bulb does not function, the bulb may not have been inserted correctly, may have fallen out, or the connec may not have been plugged in correctly.
14. After every bulb replacement in the front of the vehicle, have the headlight adjustment checked by suitably qualified professionals. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

⚠ WARNING

Failing to follow these instructions, which are provided for your own safety, can cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Always follow the steps in the instructions and the general safety precautions.

ⓘ NOTICE

To reduce the risk of damage to the vehicle paint or to other vehicle components, please note the following:

- Always be careful when removing and inserting the lights.

Replacing the bulb for a turn signal

🕮 **Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ ⚠ and ⓘ *Introduction*.**

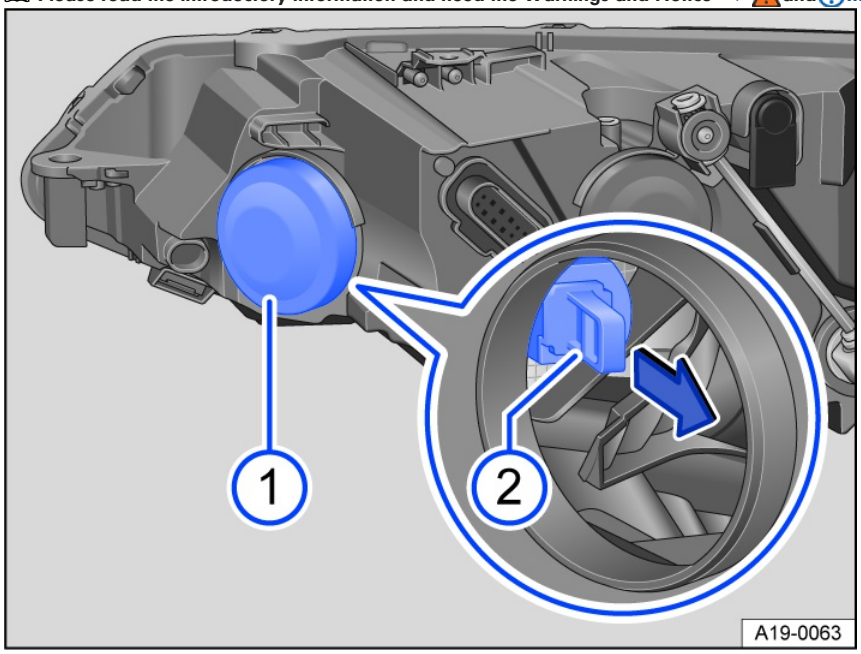


Fig. 144 In the right-side of the engine compartment: Rear side of the headlights.

Only perform these steps in the specified order:

1. Follow the checklist and perform the steps ⇒ *Information about replacing bulbs*.
2. Open the hood ⚠ ⇒ *Safety precautions for working in the engine compartment*.
3. Remove rubber cover *fig. 144* (1).
4. Pull out the lamp holder *fig. 144* (2) by the handle in the direction of the arrow. At the same time, press the handle slightly up and down alternately, in order to removal.
5. Replace the burned out bulb with a new bulb that is identical to the one being replaced.
6. Carefully insert the lamp holder in the headlight and press it forwards until it perceptibly engages *fig. 144*.
7. Press around the circumference of the rubber cover.

8. Close the hood ⚠ ⇒ *Safety precautions for working in the engine compartment*.

The figures show the right headlight. The left headlight is structured as its mirror image.

Replacing fuses

Introduction

Due to the constant development of the vehicle, equipment-dependent fuse allocations, and the combined protection of multiple electrical equipment items using one fuse, a complete overview of the fuse layout is not available at the time of print. Detailed information about fuse allocations can be obtained from suitably qualified professionals. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Generally, multiple electrical equipment items can be protected together through by fuse. On the other hand, some equipment items may use multiple fuses.

Only replace fuses if the cause for the malfunction has been fixed. If a new fuse blows again after a short time, the electrical system must be checked by suitably qualified professionals. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

⚠ WARNING

High voltage in the electrical system can cause electric shocks, serious burns, and fatal injuries.

- Never touch the electrical wires in the ignition system.
- Avoid short circuits in the electrical system.

⚠ WARNING

Using unsuitable fuses, repairing fuses, and bridging a power circuit without fuses can causes fires and serious injuries.

- Never install fuses that have a higher amp rating.
- Replace fuses only with fuses of same rating and size. Make sure that the color and label are identical to the faulty fuse.
- Never repair fuses.
- Never use metal strips, paper clips or similar objects as substitutes for fuses.

NOTICE

To prevent the risk of damaging the electrical system in the vehicle, the ignition, the lights, and all electrical equipment must be switched off before a fuse can be replaced.

- Make sure that the ignition cannot be switched on while a fuse is being replaced.

NOTICE

If a fuse is replaced by another fuse with a higher amp rating, this could also damage the electrical system in another location.

NOTICE

Dirt and moisture in the fuse boxes can damage the electrical system.

- Protect open fuse boxes from dirt and moisture.

NOTICE

To reduce the risk of vehicle damage:

- Carefully remove and correctly re-mount the covers of the fuse boxes.

There are more fuses in the vehicle than are specified in this chapter. These should only be replaced by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility qualified in this respect.

Fuses in the engine compartment

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ ⚠ and ⓘ *Introduction*.

Opening the fuse box in the engine/motor compartment

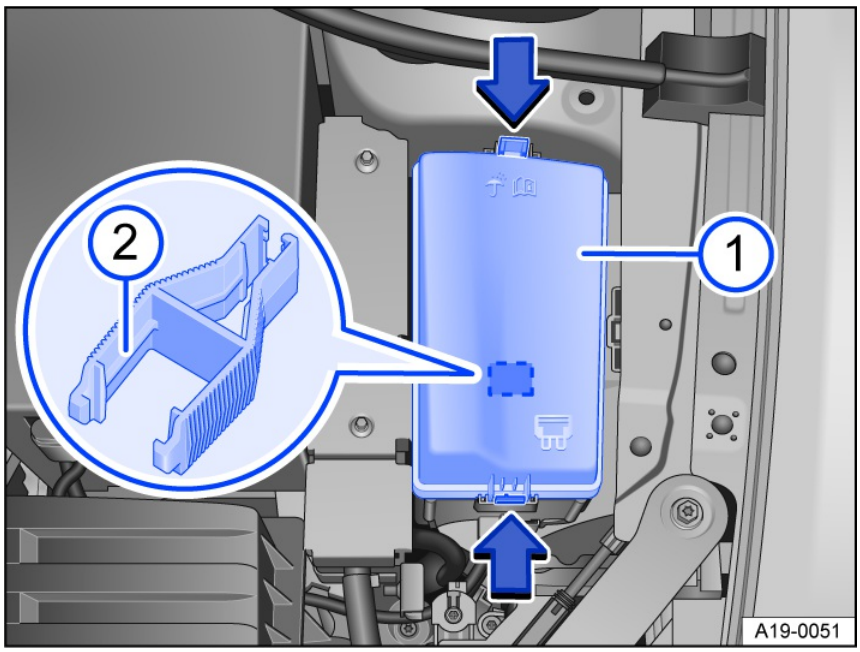


Fig. 145 In the engine compartment: fuse box with plastic tabs.

The plastic pliers *fig. 145* (2) for removing fuses can be found on the inside of the fuse box cover or on the fuse panel.

Removing

1. Open the hood ⚠ ⇒ *In the engine compartment*.
2. Press the catches in the direction of the arrow *fig. 145* (1) to release the fuse box cover.
3. Remove the cover upward.

Installing

1. Place the cover onto the fuse box.
2. Push the cover downwards until it audibly clicks into place on both sides.

Fuse table for fuses in the engine compartment

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ ⚠ and ⓘ *Introduction*.

The list shows the fuse locations for the equipment relevant to the driver. The first column of the table contains the fuse slot; the other columns include the fuse version, current rating, and the protected equipment.

Depending on the market and the vehicle equipment, there may be differences from the fuse numbers and fuse slots listed in the table. If necessary, ask for the exact fuse assignment from suitably qualified professionals. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Fuse assignment

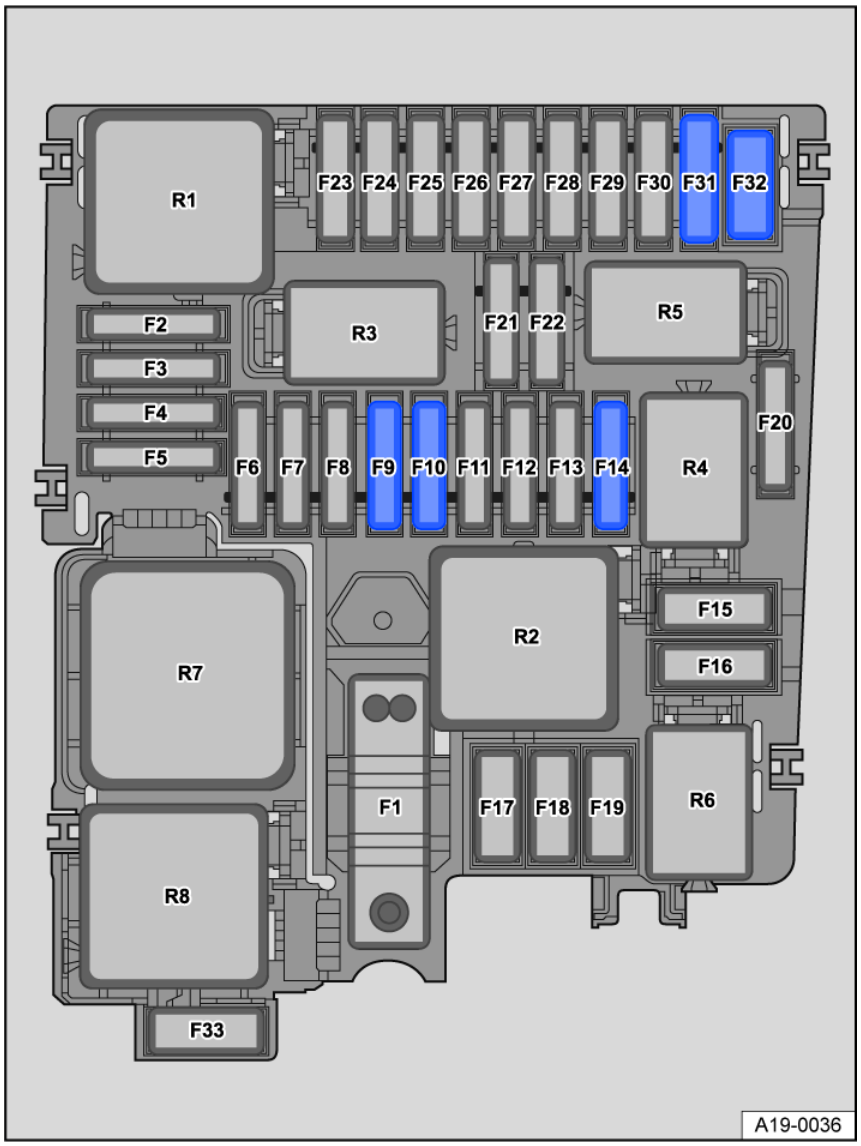


Fig. 146 Fuse locations in the engine compartment.

Fuse location *fig. 146*:

F9 **15 A, ATO®**, horn.

F10 **30 Amp, ATO®**, windshield wipers.

F31 **7.5 Amp, ATO®**, brake light sensor.

Fuses in the instrument panel

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ and *Introduction*.

Opening the fuse box in the instrument panel

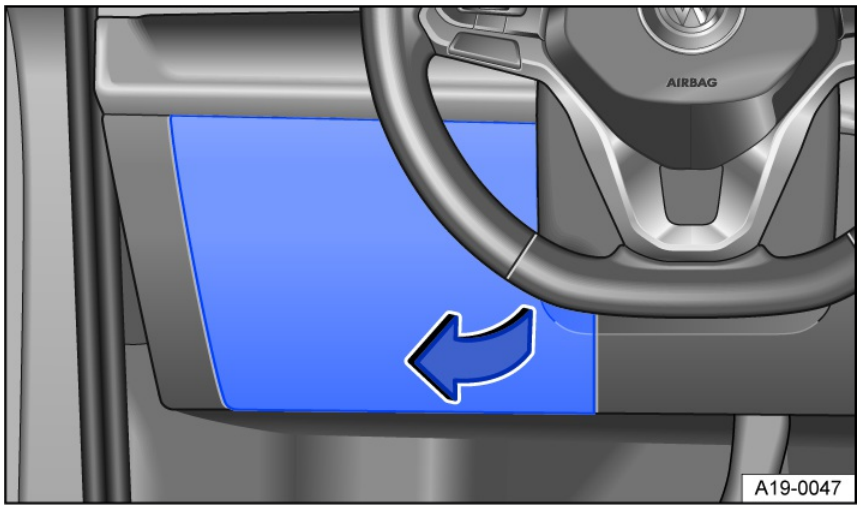


Fig. 147 On the instrument panel on the driver's side: Fuse box cover (left-hand drive vehicles).

Removing

1. Reach behind the cover and pull it off in the direction of the arrow *fig. 147*.

Installing

- Position the cover starting with the opposite side and push it closed in the opposite direction to the arrow until you hear it click into place.

Opening the fuse box in the instrument panel

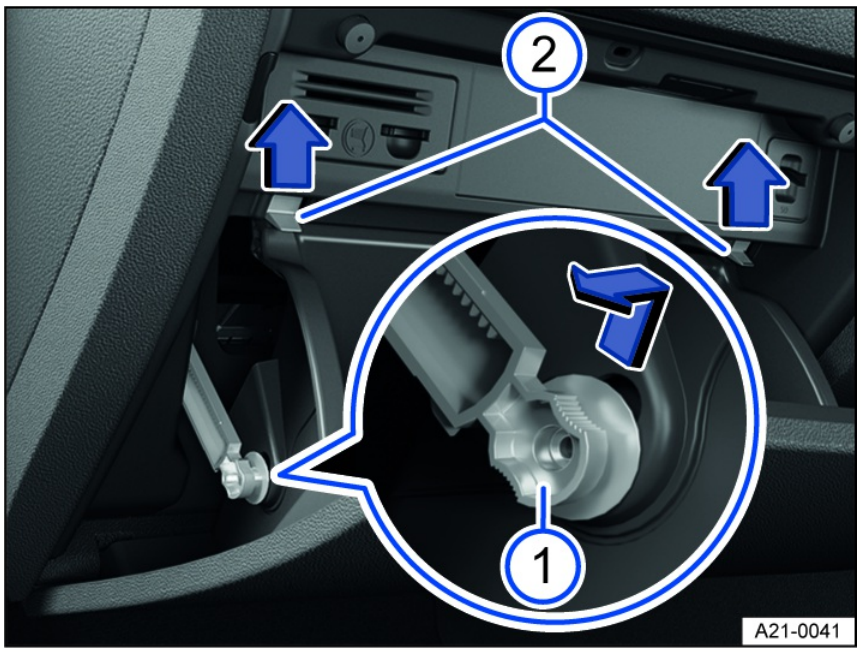


Fig. 148 On the passenger's side on the instrument panel: Fuse box cover in the instrument panel (right-hand drive vehicles).

Removing

1. Open the glove compartment and empty it if necessary.
2. Push the damper element up and into the opening in the bracket, before pulling it out sideways *fig. 148* (1).
3. Push the catches up in the direction of the arrow while at the same time opening the storage compartment further *fig. 148* (2).

Installing

1. Move the storage compartment into position.
2. Fit the damper element into the opening in the bracket and push it down until you hear it click into place.
3. Push the storage compartment carefully forwards past the resistance of the stop pin *fig. 148* (2).

Fuse table for fuses in the instrument panel

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ and *Introduction*.

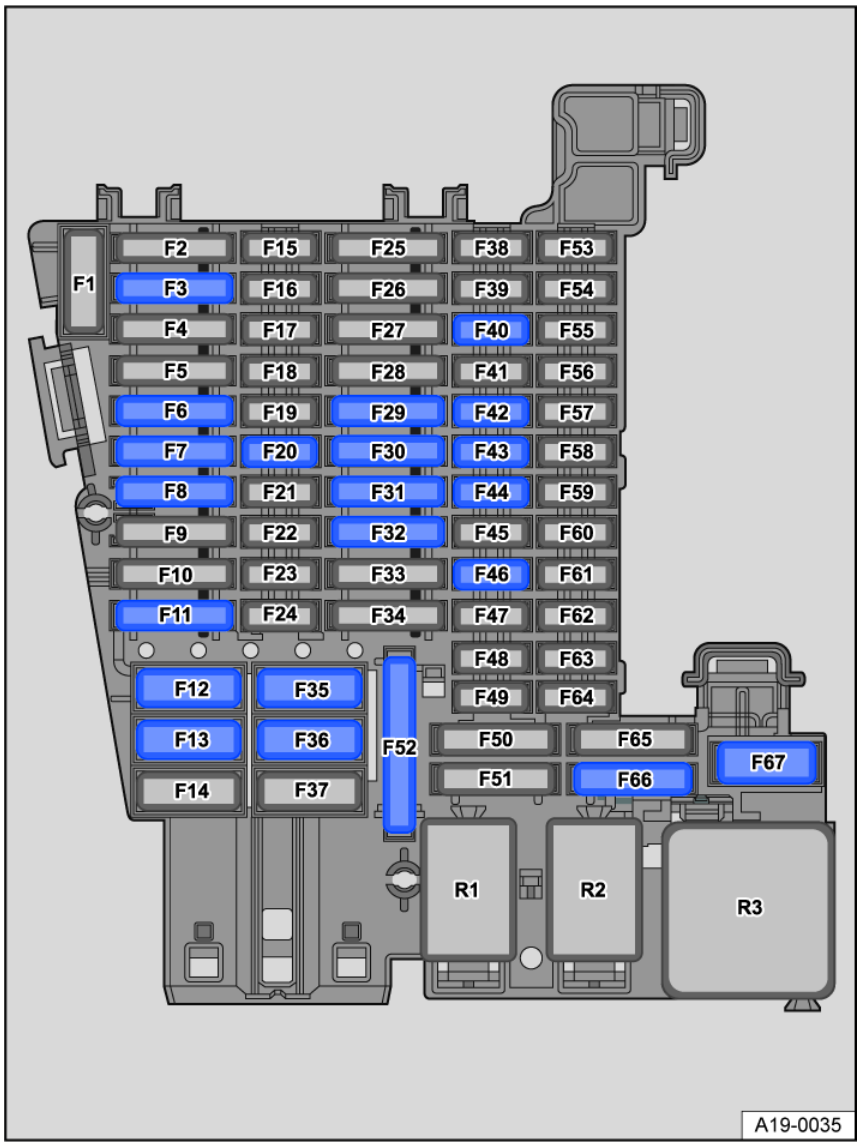


Fig. 149 Fuse assignment in the instrument panel.

The table shows the fuse locations for the equipment relevant to the driver. The first column of the table contains the fuse slot; the other columns include the fuse version, current rating, and the protected equipment.

Depending on the market and the vehicle equipment, there may be differences from the fuse numbers and fuse slots listed in the table. If necessary, ask for the exact fuse assignment at an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Fuse slot *fig. 149*:

F6 **30 Amp, ATO®**, interior lighting.

F7 **30 Amp, ATO®**, seat heating.

F8 **20 A, ATO®**, electrical tilting and sliding panoramic sunroof.

F12 **40 A, MAXI+®**, exterior lighting (right-side).

F13 **40 A, MAXI+®**, central locking.

F20 **7.5 Amp, MINI®**, telephone.

F30 **20 A, ATO®**, Infotainment system scope.

F32 **25 Amp, ATO®**, rear seat heating.

F35 **40 A, MAXI+®**, exterior lighting (left-side).

F36 **40 A, MAXI+®**, blower regulator.

F40 **7.5 Amp, MINI®**, anti-theft alarm system.

F42 **7.5 Ampere, MINI®**, selector mechanism for the automatic gearbox.

F43 **10 Amp, MINI®**, control for the air conditioner or heating and fresh air system, rear window defroster relay.

F44 **7.5 Amp, MINI®**, light switch (low beam), rain/light sensor, electronic parking brake.

F46 **7.5 Amp, MINI®**, Display, Infotainment system control panel.

F52 **20 A, ATO®** [2], cigarette lighter, socket

F66 **15 Amp, ATO®**, rear window wiper.

F67 **30 A, MAXI+®**, rear window heating.

Power windows and seats can be protected by circuit breakers, which switch back on automatically several seconds after correcting the overload, for example when power windows are frozen shut.

[2] Note the installation position. Factory-standard fuse location as shown in the illustration.

Replacing blown fuses

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ and *Introduction*.

Preparations

- Switch off the ignition, lights, and all other electrical equipment.

Detecting blown fuses

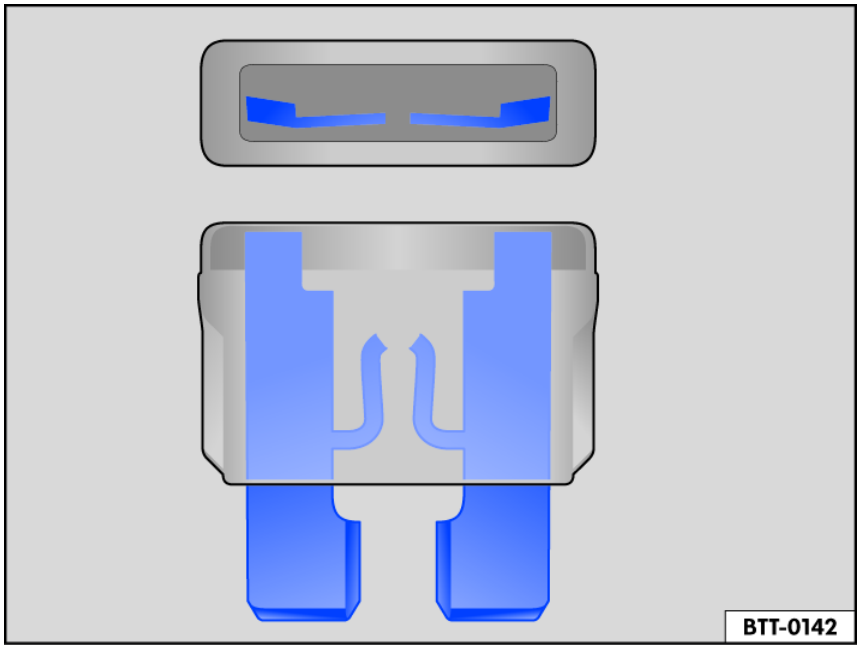


Fig. 150 Blown fuse (general example).

1. Shine a flashlight on the fuses.

A blown fuse can be recognized from above and from the side through the transparent casing, as its metal strip will be burnt through *fig. 150*.

Fuse versions

- Standard flat connector fuse (ATO®).
- Small flat connector fuse (MINI®).
- Large flat blade fuse (MAXI® or MAXI+®).

Fuse color codes

Fuses (ATO® - MINI® - MAXI® or MAXI+®).

Color	*Current rating*
Black	1 A
Purple	3 A
Orange	5 A
Brown	7.5 A
Red	10 A
Blue	15 A
Yellow	20 A
White or clear	25 A

Green 30 A

Light green 40 A

Replacing fuses

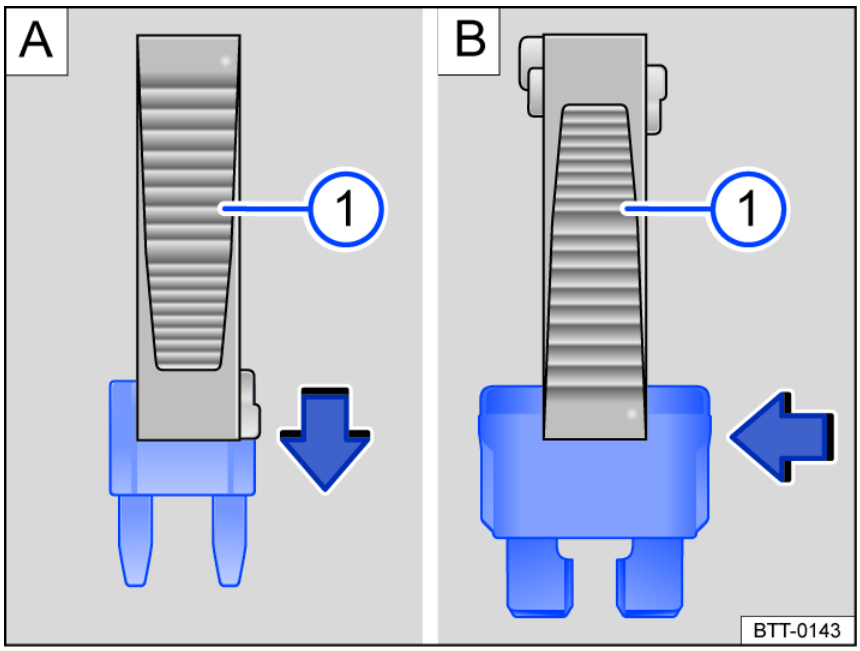


Fig. 151 Remove or install a fuse with the plastic pliers (1) (general example).

1. If necessary, remove the plastic tongs from either the fuse box or the cover of the fuse box *fig. 151* (1).
2. Depending on the design of the fuse, slide the appropriately sized clamp on the plastic pliers onto the fuse from above or from the side *fig. 151*.
3. Remove the fuse.
4. If a fuse is blown, replace with a fuse with the *same* rating (same color and same label) and the *same* size ⇒ (!).
5. After inserting the new fuse, place the plastic pliers back in the cover, if necessary.
6. Reinstall the cover or close the fuse box cover.

(!) NOTICE

If a fuse is replaced by a fuse with a higher current rating, this could damage the electrical system in another location.

Jump-starting

Introduction

For technical reasons the vehicle must not be tow-started ⇒ (!).

If the engine cannot start because the 12-volt vehicle battery has drained, the 12-volt vehicle battery on another vehicle can be used to start your vehicle.

A suitable jumper cable is required for jump-starting.

The wire diameter for the jumper cable.

- For vehicles with a gasoline engine, at least 25 mm ^{2} (0.038 in^2).

⚠ WARNING

Using jumper cables and performing a jump-start incorrectly can cause the 12 V vehicle battery to explode, which can cause serious injuries. To reduce the risk of the 12 V vehicle battery exploding, heed the following:

- Always read and heed the warnings and safety precautions before working on the 12 V vehicle battery ⇒ *Introduction*.
- Please note that the vehicle battery supplying the power must have the same voltage (12 V) and approximately the same battery capacity (see the label on the vehicle battery) as the drained 12 V vehicle battery.
- Never switch the positive battery terminal with the negative terminal or connect the jumper cable incorrectly.
- Position the jumper cable so that it will never contact rotating components in the engine compartment.
- Follow the operating instructions provided by the manufacturer of the jumper cable.
- Follow the operating instructions for the vehicle providing the jump-start.

⚠ WARNING

During a jump-start, a highly explosive gas mixture builds up at the 12 V vehicle battery.

- Always keep fires, sparks, open flames, and lit cigarettes far away from the 12 V vehicle battery.
- Never use a cell phone while connecting and disconnecting the jumper cable.

NOTICE

A drained 12 V vehicle battery can freeze at temperatures around 32 °F (0 °C).

- Never charge a frozen or thawed 12 V vehicle battery.
- Always replace a frozen or thawed 12 V vehicle battery.

NOTICE

To avoid the risk of considerable damage to the vehicle electrical system, heed the following:

- Jumper cables that are connected incorrectly can cause a short circuit.
- There must be no contact between the vehicles. Otherwise, current could already be flowing when the positive battery terminals are connected.
- Only use a jumper cable with fully insulated terminal clamps.

NOTICE

Tow-starting can cause damages.

Jump-start point (negative battery terminal)

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ ⚠ and Ⓘ *Introduction*.

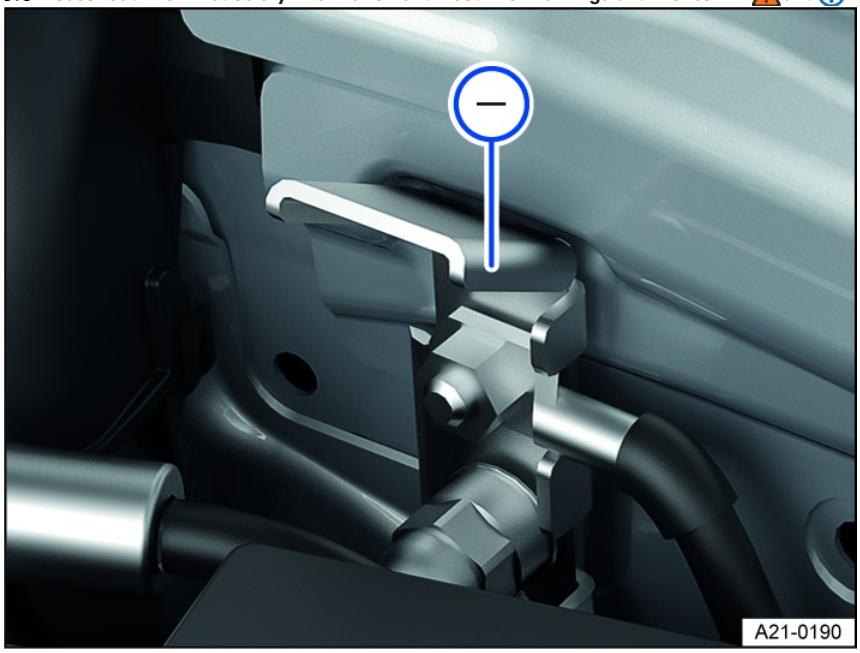


Fig. 152 In the engine compartment: jump-start point (negative terminal).

The jump-start point (negative terminal) is for connecting the *black* jumper cable *fig. 152*.

Only perform jump-starting using this jump-start point (negative terminal).

Jump-starting

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ ⚠ and Ⓘ *Introduction*.

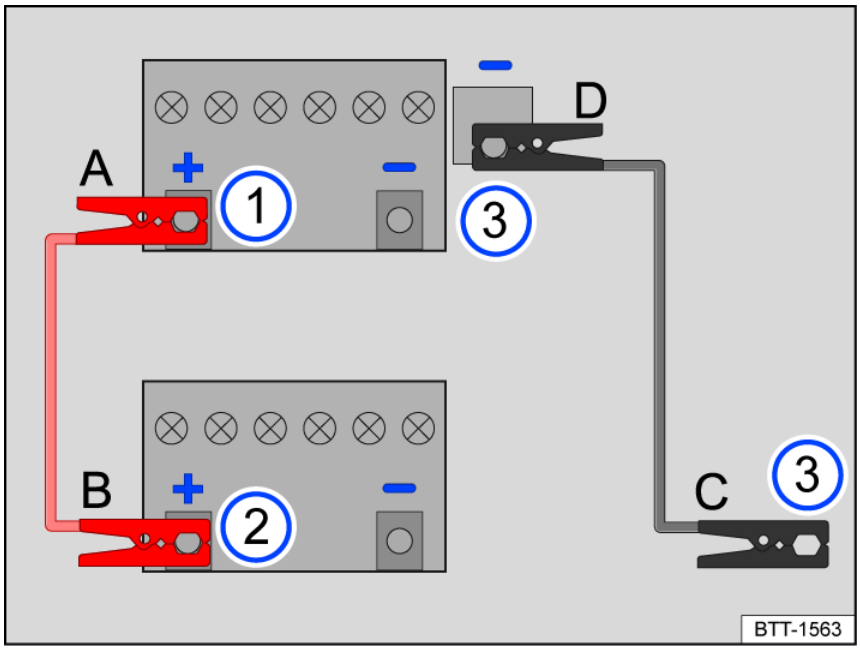


Fig. 153 Diagram for connecting the jumper cables.

(1) Vehicle with the drained 12 V vehicle battery that is receiving the jump-start.

(2) Vehicle with the 12 V vehicle battery providing power that is providing the jump-start.

(3) Suitable negative connection: preferably a jump-start point (negative connection), a large metal part that is bolted securely to the engine block, or the engine block itself.

NOTICE

Take note of the instructions on jump-starting in the other vehicle's Owner's Manual.

The drained 12 V vehicle battery must be connected correctly to the vehicle electrical system.

The vehicles must not touch each other. Otherwise, current could begin flowing when the positive battery terminal is connected.

Make sure the terminal clamps have sufficient contact with metal.

If the engine does not start, stop the starting process after ten seconds, and try again after approximately one minute.

If the engine still does not start, contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Connecting the jumper cables

Only connect the jumper cables in the sequence **A – B – C – D** *fig. 153*.

Never connect the *black* jumper cable to the negative terminal **–** on the 12 V vehicle battery. Connecting to the negative terminal can lead to an incorrect evaluatio of the status of the 12 V vehicle battery by the vehicle electronics.

1. Switch the ignition off on both vehicles ⇒ *Starting and stopping the engine*.
2. If necessary, open the cover of the positive battery terminal for the 12 V vehicle battery.
3. Connect one end of the *red* jumper cable **A** to the positive battery terminal **+** of the vehicle battery with the discharged 12-volt vehicle battery *fig. 153* (1).
4. Connect the other end of the *red* jumper cable **B** to the positive battery terminal **+** of the vehicle supplying the power *fig. 153* (2).
5. Connect one end of the *black* jumper cable **C** preferably to a jump-start point (negative connection), otherwise to a large metal part that is bolted securely to th cylinder block or to the cylinder block itself of the vehicle supplying the power *fig. 153* (3).
6. Connect the other end of the *black* jumper cable **D** for the vehicle with the discharged 12-volt vehicle battery preferably to the jump-start point (negative connection), otherwise to a large metal part that is bolted securely to the cylinder block or to the cylinder block itself *fig. 153* (3).
7. Route the jumper cables so that they cannot become caught in moving parts in the engine compartment.

Starting the engine

1. Start the engine in the vehicle that is providing current and allow it to run at idle.
2. Start the engine in the vehicle with the drained 12 V vehicle battery and wait two to three minutes until the engine is running “evenly”.

Removing the jumper cables

1. Before disconnecting the jumper cable, switch off the low beam headlights if they are switched on.
2. In the vehicle with the drained 12 V vehicle battery, switch on the blower for the air conditioner or the heating and fresh air system and the rear window defroste This will reduce any voltage surges that may occur when disconnected.

3. With the engines running, disconnect the jumper cables only in the sequence **D – C – B – A** *fig. 153*.
4. If necessary, close the cover of the positive battery terminal for the 12 V vehicle battery.
5. After successful jump-starting, have the 12 V vehicle battery checked by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

⚠ WARNING

To reduce the risk of the 12 V vehicle battery exploding, note the following:

- Always wear suitable protective eyewear and protective gloves, and never bend over the 12 V vehicle battery.
- Connect the cables in the correct sequence – first the positive cable, and then the negative cable.
- Never connect the negative terminal to parts of the fuel system or to the brake lines.
- Make sure that the terminal clamps without insulation do not touch each other.
- Make sure that the cable that is connected to the positive battery terminal on the 12 V vehicle battery does not come into contact with any vehicle components that conduct electricity.
- Avoid discharging static electricity near the 12 V vehicle battery. Sparks could form and ignite the flammable gas that is released by the 12 V vehicle battery.
- Never jump-start a vehicle if the 12 V vehicle battery is damaged, frozen or thawed.

NOTICE

After successful jump-starting, have the 12 V vehicle battery checked by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Towing

Introduction

Towing requires practice, particularly if a towing cable is used. Both drivers should be familiar with the special considerations when towing. Inexperienced drivers should not tow.

Follow all applicable laws when towing.

Always make sure the towing force does not exceed the permitted level and there are no shock loading conditions. There is always the risk of the coupling becomir overloaded when driving off-road.

Towing

Towing refers to using a vehicle to pull another vehicle that cannot be driven.

The vehicle can be towed using a tow bar or tow rope:

- The maximum permissible speed is 30 mph (50 km/h).
- The maximum permissible distance is 50 km (30 miles).

The easiest and safest way to tow is using a tow bar. You should use a towing cable only if a tow bar is not available.

The towing cable should be elastic to protect both vehicles. Use a cable made of synthetic rubber or a similar elastic material.

Towing with a tow truck

If your vehicle will be raised by one axle when towing, only the axle listed below may be raised, depending on the transmission and engine combination:

Front-wheel drive

Automatic transmission Front axle

Manual transmission Front axle

All-wheel drive (4MOTION)

Automatic transmission Front axle

Manual transmission Front axle

For R models, the vehicle must not be towed with a raised axle and, in case of damage, must be transported away with all four wheels on a recovery vehicle ⇒

⚠ WARNING

The vehicle handling and braking efficiency will change considerably when it is towed.

⚠ WARNING

Never tow a vehicle that has no electrical power.

- Never turn off the ignition with the starter button while towing. Otherwise, the electronic steering column lock could engage suddenly. The vehicle cannot be steered if this happens. This can result in crashes, serious injuries, and a loss of control of the vehicle.
- If the vehicle loses power while it is being towed, stop towing the vehicle immediately and see an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility for assistance.

NOTICE

Towing vehicles with all-wheel drive (4MOTION) and sport differential with the axle raised can cause damage to the vehicle.

- Have the immobilized vehicle towed with all four wheels on a recovery vehicle.

NOTICE

Towing with a towing cable or tow bar can cause damage to the vehicle.

- Tow the vehicle carefully when using a towing cable or tow bar.
- If possible, have the immobilized vehicle transported with a recovery vehicle.

NOTICE

When pushing the vehicle by hand, the taillights, side spoiler on the rear window, and large sections of sheet metal could be damaged and the rear spoiler could detach.

- When pushing the vehicle by hand, do not press on the taillights, side spoiler on the rear window, large sections of sheet metal, or the rear spoiler.

NOTICE

Removing and installing the towing eye and the cover can cause vehicle damage, such as paint damage.

- Remove and install the towing eye and cover carefully to reduce the risk of vehicle damage.

NOTICE

Using a towing eye that is not suitable for the vehicle can damage the vehicle.

- When towing, always use the towing eye enclosed with your own vehicle in the vehicle tool kit, or another towing eye suitable for the vehicle.

Instructions for towing

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ ⚠ and ⓘ *Introduction*.

A vehicle being towed can still signal a turn using the turn signals even if the emergency flashers are switched on. To do this when the ignition is switched on, activate the turn signal for the desired direction. The emergency flashers will stop while the turn signal is active. The emergency flashers will activate again once th turn signal lever returns to the neutral position.

When may this vehicle not be towed?

The vehicle must not be towed in the following situations:

- If the 12 V vehicle battery is drained.
- The indicator in the instrument cluster display does not function perfectly.
- The towing distance is greater than 30 miles (50 km).
- With a manual transmission, the clutch cannot be depressed *completely* and it is not possible to shift into neutral.
- The selector lever of the automatic transmission cannot be moved to neutral (position N).
- The electronic parking brake cannot be released.
- The steering column lock cannot be released.
- If the wheel clearance or the steering function can no longer be secured after an accident.

If the vehicle cannot be towed on its own wheels due to one of the conditions listed, contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility and have the vehicle transported by a rescue vehicle, if necessary. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Towing

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ and *Introduction*.
Secure the tow rope or tow bar only at the permitted points:

- Towing lug.

Preparations

- Make sure the tow rope is not twisted. Otherwise it could disconnect from the towing eye while towing.
- Switch the ignition and emergency flashers on in both vehicles. However, do not do this if it is prohibited by law.
- Read and comply with the information and instructions for towing given in the Owner's Manual for the other vehicle.

Towing vehicle (front)

1. Only start to drive when the tow rope is taut.
2. Be especially careful when accelerating.
3. Avoid sudden braking and driving maneuvers.
4. Do not exceed the permitted towing weight of the vehicle.
5. For vehicles with a manual transmission: Engage the clutch very gently when pulling away.

Vehicle being towed (rear)

1. Make sure the ignition is switched on so that the steering wheel is not locked and so that the turn signal and windshield wiper can be used if needed.
2. Release the electronic parking brake.
3. The brake booster and power steering only work when the engine is running. Otherwise, the brake pedal needs to be pressed much harder and more force is required to steer.
4. Make sure the tow rope is always taut.
5. Disengage the gear.
6. Select selector lever position **N**.

WARNING

Never secure the tow rope or the tow bar to axle or suspension components. They can be damaged and cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility and have the vehicle taken away on a recovery vehicle, if necessary.

NOTICE

The vehicle can only be towed if the battery charge level of the 12 V vehicle battery is sufficient and the electronic parking brake and steering column lock can be released. If there is a loss of power or the electrical system is malfunctioning, the engine may need to be jump-started or the vehicle's drive system may need to be reactivated in order to release the electronic parking brake and steering column lock.

Installing the front towing eye

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ and *Introduction*.
Depending on the country and vehicle equipment, the mount for the towing eye is situated behind the bumper cover.

1. Before having it towed, check that your vehicle has a threaded mount for the towing lug.
2. If it does not, get professional assistance and have the vehicle taken away by a recovery vehicle, if necessary.

The towing eye must always be kept in the vehicle.

Read and heed the information about towing ⇒ *Instructions for towing*.

Installing the front towing eye

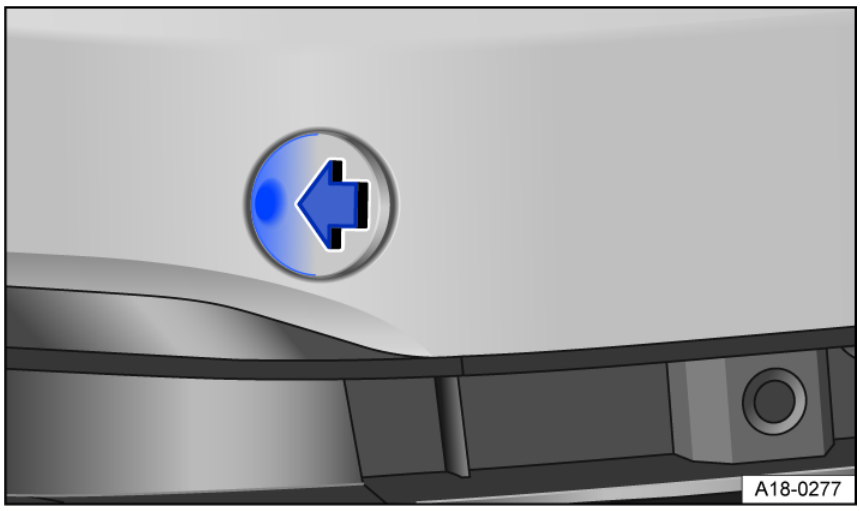


Fig. 154 In the right front bumper: Remove cover.

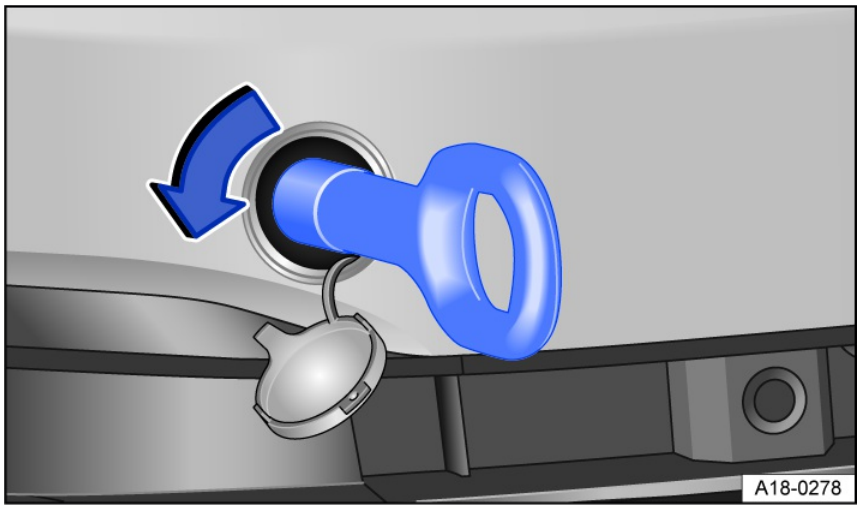


Fig. 155 In the right front bumper: Screw in towing eye.

1. Remove the towing eye from the vehicle tool kit in the luggage compartment ⇒ *Placement*.
2. Press on the marked area of the cover in the direction of the arrow to release the catch on the cover *fig. 154*.
3. Remove the cover, let it hang from the vehicle or place it in the vehicle if necessary.
4. Rotate the towing eye **in the direction of the arrow** as far as possible to install it in the mount *fig. 155* , ⇒ (!). Use a suitable object to tighten the towing ey completely and securely in the mount.
5. After the vehicle has been towed, unscrew the towing eye with a suitable object **in the opposite direction to the arrow**.
6. Insert the cap into the respective opening and press in until it engages.
7. If necessary, clean the towing eye and return it to the vehicle tool kit in the luggage compartment.

(!) NOTICE

The towing eye must always be installed completely and securely in the mount. Otherwise, the towing eye could pull out of the mount when towing the vehicle.

Installing the rear towing eye

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ ⚠ and (!) *Introduction*.

Depending on the country and vehicle equipment, the mount for the towing eye is situated behind the bumper cover.

1. Before towing, check whether a mount with screw thread is present for the towing eye.
2. Otherwise, contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility and have the vehicle taken away by a recovery vehicle if necessary. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

The towing eye must always be kept in the vehicle.

Read and heed the information about towing ⇒ *Instructions for towing*.

Installing the rear towing eye

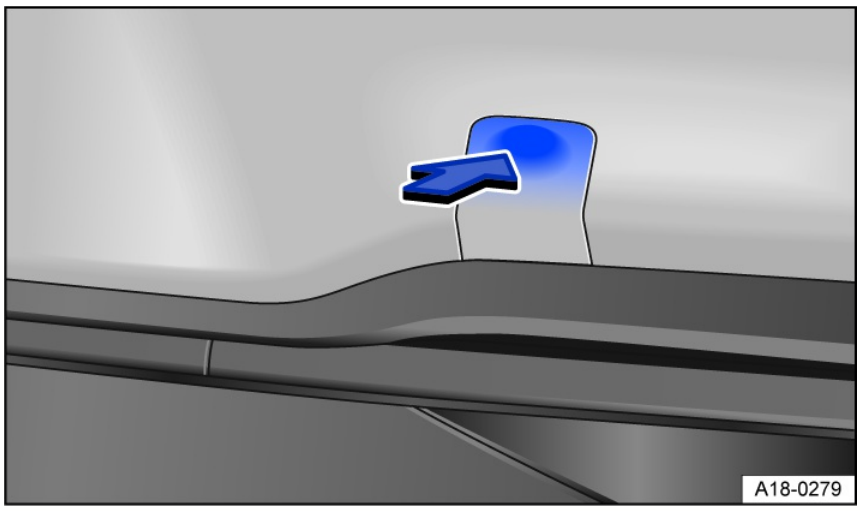


Fig. 156 In the right rear bumper: Remove cover.

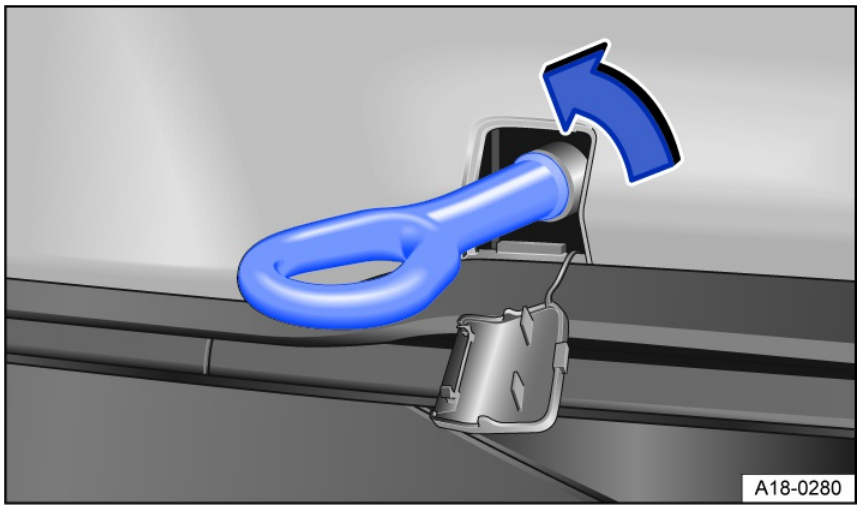


Fig. 157 In the right rear bumper: Screw in towing eye.

1. Remove the towing eye from the vehicle tool kit in the luggage compartment ⇒ *Placement*.
2. Press on the marked area of the cover in the direction of the arrow to release the catch on the cover *fig. 156*.
3. Remove the cover, let it hang from the vehicle or place it in the vehicle if necessary.
4. Rotate the towing eye **in the direction of the arrow** as far as possible to install it in the mount *fig. 157* , ⇒ (!). Use a suitable object to tighten the towing ey completely and securely in the mount.
5. After the vehicle has been towed, unscrew the towing eye with a suitable object **in the opposite direction to the arrow**.
6. Insert the cap into the respective opening and press in until it engages.
7. If necessary, clean the towing eye and return it to the vehicle tool kit in the luggage compartment.

(!) NOTICE

The towing eye must always be installed completely and securely in the mount. Otherwise, the towing eye could pull out of the mount when towing the vehicle.

Checking and filling

In the engine compartment

Safety precautions for working in the engine compartment

The engine compartment is a potentially dangerous area in the vehicle. Only perform work in the engine compartment if you are familiar with the necessary procedures and the general safety precautions, and if the correct equipment, fluids, and suitable tools are available. Work performed incorrectly can result in serious injuries ⇒ ⚠. Have all work performed by suitably qualified professionals if necessary. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Always make sure the vehicle is parked on a solid and level surface before performing any work in the engine compartment.

⚠ WARNING

Unintentional vehicle movement while working on the vehicle can cause serious injuries.

- Never work underneath the vehicle when it is not secured to prevent it from rolling. If working under the vehicle with the wheels touching the floor, the vehicle must be on a level surface and the wheels must be secured.
- If you must work underneath the vehicle, additionally support the vehicle securely with suitable stands. The vehicle jack is not sufficient for this because it could collapse, resulting in serious injuries.
- The start-stop system must be manually deactivated.

⚠ WARNING

The engine compartment in any motor vehicle is a potentially dangerous area that can cause serious personal injury.

- Always work as cautiously and carefully as possible and follow the general safety precautions when working on the vehicle. Do not take any personal risks.
- Never perform work in the engine compartment if you are not familiar with the required procedures. If you are not sure what to do, have the work performed by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility qualified in this respect. Serious injuries can result if work is not performed correctly. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
- Never open or close the hood if steam or engine coolant is escaping. Steam or hot engine coolant can cause serious burns. Always wait until you can no longer see or hear steam or engine coolant escaping from the engine compartment.
- Always allow the engine to cool down before opening the hood.
- Hot engine or exhaust system components can cause burns if touched.
- Once the engine has cooled, note the following before opening the hood:
  - Apply the electronic parking brake and move the selector lever into the **P** position or move the gearshift lever into the neutral position.
  - Switch off the ignition and store the vehicle key securely and far enough away from the vehicle to ensure that the ignition cannot switch on accidentally and the engine cannot start.
  - Always keep children away from the engine compartment and never leave them unattended.
- The engine cooling system is under pressure when the engine is hot. Never open the cap on the coolant expansion tank when the engine is hot. Engine coolant could spray out and cause serious burns or other injuries.
  - Slowly and very carefully turn the cap on the coolant expansion tank counterclockwise while pressing down lightly on the cap.
  - Always protect your face, hands, and arms from hot engine coolant or steam with a large, thick cloth.
- Do not spill any fluids on engine components or the exhaust system when adding fluids. Spilled fluids could cause a fire.

⚠ WARNING

The high voltage in the electrical system can cause electric shocks, burns, serious injuries, and death.

- Never short-circuit the electrical system. The 12 V vehicle battery could explode.
- To reduce the risk of an electric shock and serious injuries, never touch the electrical wires for the ignition system while the engine is running or being started.
- Never touch the electrical wires and connections of the gas discharge lamps.

⚠ WARNING

The engine compartment contains moving components that can cause serious injuries.

- Never reach into the radiator fan or into the area near the radiator fan. Touching the fan blades could cause serious injuries. The ventilator is temperature-controlled and may switch on by itself even if the ignition is switched off.
- If work must be performed while starting the vehicle or when the engine is running, moving components such as the ribbed belt, alterator, and radiator fan, or the high-voltage system could cause potentially fatal injuries. Always be extremely careful.
  - Always make sure that no parts of the body, jewelry, ties, loose clothing, and long hair can be caught in moving engine components. To reduce the risk of anything becoming caught in engine components, always remove any jewelry and/or ties, tie back long hair, and avoid wearing loose-fitting clothing when performing work.
  - Always press the accelerator pedal extremely carefully and never press it without paying close attention. The vehicle could begin moving, even if the electronic parking brake is set.
- Do not leave any items, such as cleaning cloths or tools, in the engine compartment. Objects left behind can cause malfunctions, engine damage, and fires.

⚠ WARNING

Additional insulation, such as covers in the engine compartment, can cause engine malfunctions or fires and result in serious injuries.

- Never cover the engine with blankets or other insulating materials.

⚠ WARNING

Fluids and some materials in the engine compartment are very flammable and can cause fires and serious injuries.

- Never smoke near the engine compartment.
- Never work near open flames or sparks.
- Never pour or spill fluids on the engine. Fluids could ignite on hot engine components and cause injuries.
- If work must be performed on the fuel system or electrical system, note the following:
  - Always disconnect the 12 V vehicle battery.

    Make sure that the vehicle is unlocked when the 12 V vehicle battery is disconnected. Otherwise, the anti-theft alarm system will be activated.
  - Never perform work near sources of heat, boilers, or other open flames.
- Always have a fully-functioning, checked fire extinguisher nearby.

NOTICE

Using incorrect fluids can result in malfunctions and engine damage.

- When filling or changing fluids, make sure the correct fluids are added to the correct reservoirs.

Fluids leaking from the vehicle can cause environmental damage. Always check the ground under the vehicle for leaking fluids. If you see spots of fluid on the ground under the vehicle, have the vehicle checked by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Dispose of leaking fluids correctly. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Preparing the vehicle for work in the engine compartment

Always perform the following preparations in the specified sequence before all work in the engine compartment ⇒ ⚠:

1. Park the vehicle safely on level and stable ground.
2. Press and hold the brake pedal until the engine has stopped.
3. Set the electronic parking brake ⇒ *Electronic parking brake*.
4. Move the selector lever into the **P** position ⇒ *Automatic transmission: Selecting a position*.
5. Stop the engine.
6. If necessary, remove the vehicle key from the vehicle and store it outside of the vehicle so that the vehicle does not start accidentally.
7. Let the engine cool down sufficiently.
8. Always keep other people away from the engine compartment.
9. Secure the vehicle against rolling away.

⚠ WARNING

Failing to follow these instructions, which are provided for your own safety, can cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Always follow the steps in the instructions and the general safety precautions.

Opening and closing the hood

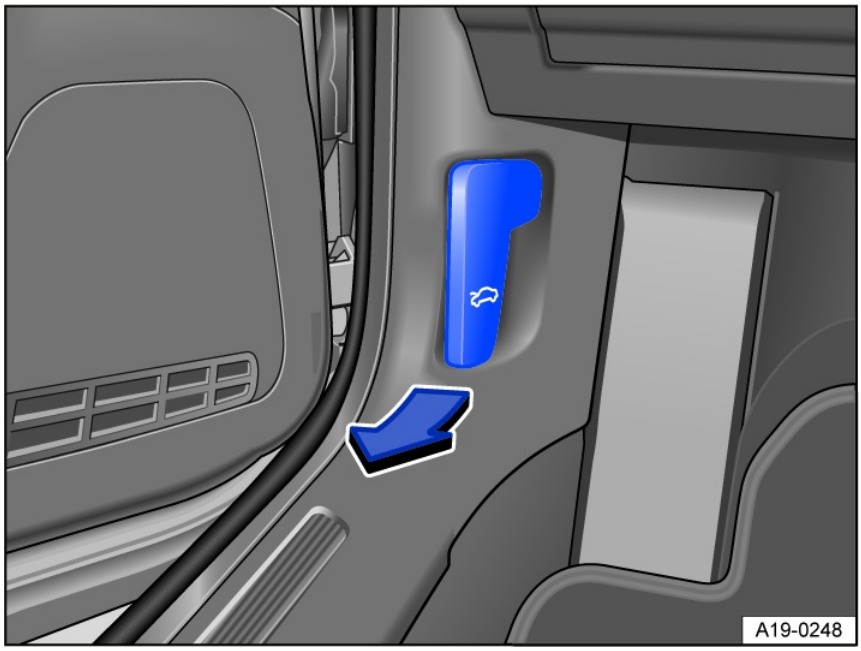


Fig. 158 In the driver's side footwell: Release lever for the hood (general example).

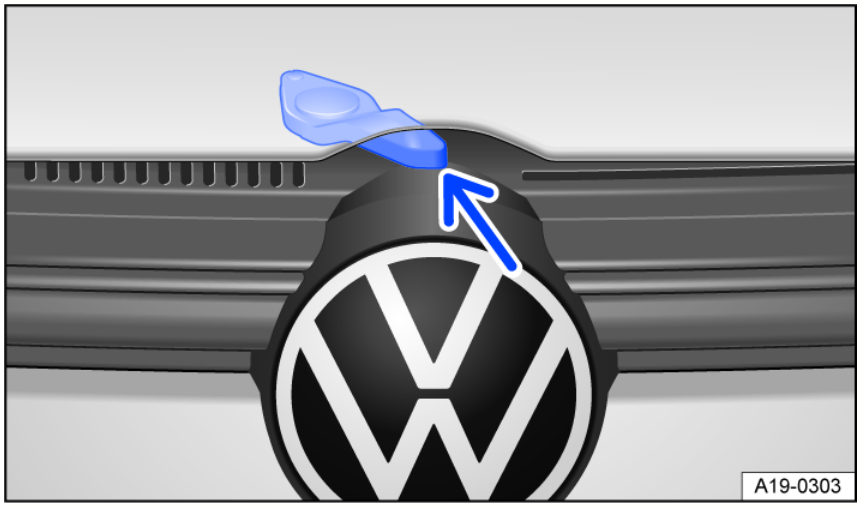


Fig. 159 Above the radiator grille: Opening lever for the hood.

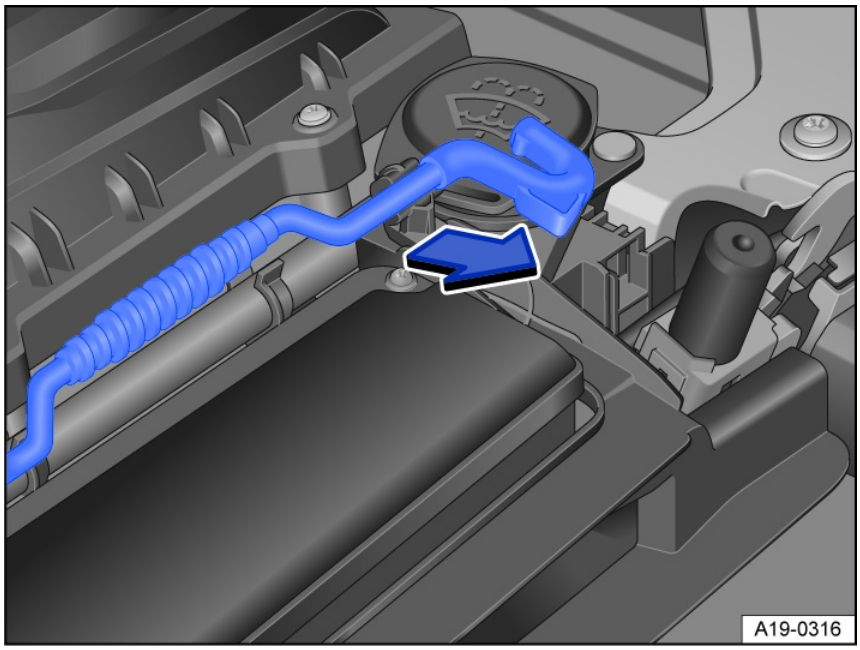


Fig. 160 In the engine compartment: Hood support in the bracket.

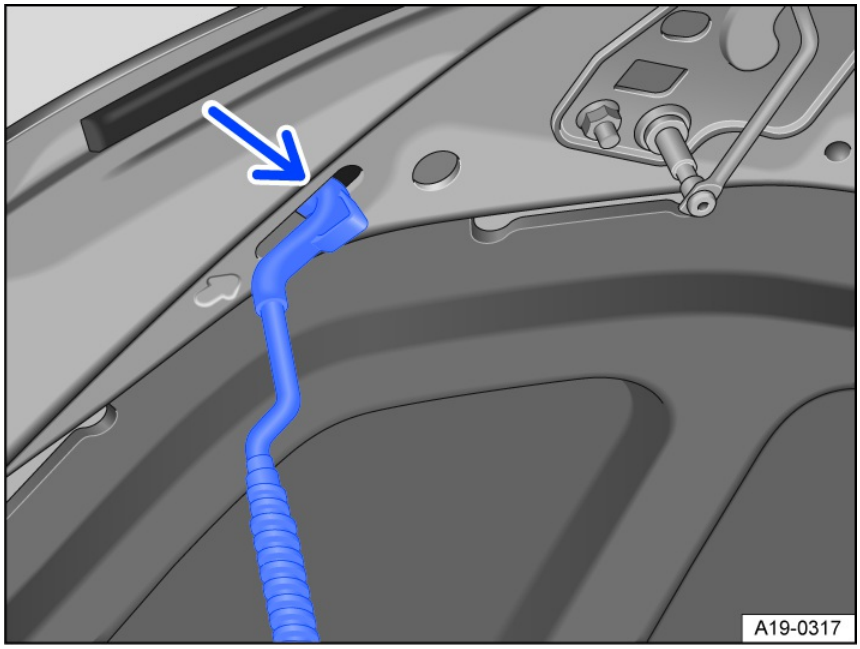


Fig. 161 On the engine hood: Hood support bracket.

Opening the hood

1. Open the driver door and pull the release lever in the direction of the arrow *fig. 158*. The hood will pop open due to spring force from the catch in the lock carr ⇒ ⓘ.
2. Lift the engine hood slightly while at the same time pushing the opening lever in the direction of the arrow *fig. 159* to open the engine hood fully.
3. Lift the hood support out of the bracket *fig. 160* in the direction of the arrow and hook it into the opening *fig. 161*.

Closing the hood

1. Lift the hood slightly and hold it.
2. Unhook the hood support from the opening *fig. 160* and clip it back into the bracket *fig. 159*.
3. Let the hood fall into the lock carrier catch from a height of approximately 8 inches (20 cm); do *not* press it down.

If the hood does not close correctly, open the hood and try to close it again.

When the hood is closed correctly, it will be flush with the surrounding sections of the vehicle body ⇒ ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

If the hood is not closed correctly, it could open suddenly while driving and block the view through the windshield. This can cause accidents and serious injuries.

- After closing the hood, check that the catch is engaged correctly in the lock carrier.
- If you realize while driving that the hood is not closed correctly, switch on the emergency flashers, carefully apply the brakes, decelerate carefully, stop immediately and close the hood.

- Do not open or close the hood if any persons are in the closing range of the hood.

NOTICE

- To reduce the risk of damaging the hood and the windshield wiper arms, only open the hood when wiper mode is switched off and the wiper arms are in the base position.

Display



Fig. 162 In the instrument cluster display: the hood is open or not closed correctly (general example).

An image in the instrument cluster display indicates if the hood is open or has not closed correctly *fig. 162*.

Do not continue driving!

1. If necessary, lift the hood and close it again.

The image is also displayed when the ignition is switched off, and it disappears several seconds after the doors are closed and the vehicle is locked.

WARNING

Disregarding warning notifications could lead to breakdowns while driving, accidents, and serious injuries.

- Never ignore warning notifications.
- Stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

The image may vary depending on the version of the instrument cluster.

Operating fluids and operating equipment

All operating fluids and operating equipment, such as engine coolant, and vehicle batteries, are continuously being developed. For internal combustion engines also engine oils. Therefore, have fluids and operating equipment replaced by suitably qualified professionals. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

WARNING

Unsuitable operating fluids and operating equipment as well as the incorrect use of them can cause accidents, serious injuries, burns, and poisoning.

- Only store fluids in their sealed original containers.
- Never use empty food cans, bottles, or other containers to store fluids, because someone could drink the fluids by mistake.
- Keep children away from all fluids and operating equipment.
- Always read and heed the information and warnings on the packaging for the fluids.
- When using products that emit harmful vapors, always work outdoors or in a well-ventilated area.

NOTICE

Using incorrect fluids can result in malfunctions and engine damage.

- When filling or changing fluids, make sure the correct fluids are added to the correct reservoirs.

Leaking operating fluids can pollute the environment. Collect any leaking operating fluids in suitable containers and dispose of them correctly according to environmental regulations.

Washer fluid



Fig. 163 In the engine compartment: cap on the washer fluid reservoir.

Check the washer fluid level regularly and fill if necessary.

There is a screen in the filler tube in the windshield washer fluid reservoir. The screen keeps large particles of contaminants from entering the washer nozzles wher you refill the washer fluid. Take the screen out only to clean it. If the screen is damaged or missing, dirt particles could enter the system when adding fluid, which could block the windshield washer nozzles.

1. Open the hood ⇒ *Opening and closing the hood*.
2. The washer fluid reservoir is identified with the symbol on the cap *fig. 163*.
3. Check that there is enough windshield washer fluid in the reservoir.
4. To add fluid, mix clean water, not distilled water, with a suitable windshield cleaner ⇒. Follow the mixing instructions on the packaging.
5. When the outside temperatures are cold, an anti-freeze agent should be added to the water so that it does not freeze ⇒.

Depending on the vehicle and vehicle equipment, the washer fluid reservoir capacity is approx. 3.1–7.9 quarts (3.0–7.5 liters).

WARNING

Never add coolant additive or similar unsuitable additives to the windshield washer fluid. Otherwise, an oily film can build up on the windshield, which would impair visibility considerably.

NOTICE

Never mix suitable cleaning agents with other cleaning agents. Otherwise, the components could coagulate and create a blockage in the washer nozzles.

Engine oil

Introduction

The engine oils are determined based on the requirements of the engines, emissions control systems, and the fuel quality. On all combustion engines, the engine o comes into contact with combustion residue and fuel, which affects the aging of the engine oil. Using the correct engine oil is essential for the function and service life of the engine. The vehicle is filled at the factory with a special multi-purpose, low-viscosity oil that can generally be used year-round.

Information about warning and indicator lights can be found in the troubleshooting section at the end of the chapter ⇒ *Troubleshooting*.

⚠ WARNING

Handling engine oil incorrectly can cause severe burns and other injuries.

- Always wear eye protection when handling engine oil.
- Engine oil is poisonous and must always be kept out of reach of children.
- Only store engine oil in its sealed original container. This also applies to used oil until it is disposed.
- Regular contact with engine oil could damage the skin. If engine oil has come into contact with the skin, always wash thoroughly with soap and water.
- Engine oil becomes very hot when the engine is running and can severely burn the skin. Always allow the engine to cool down.

Engine oil that has dripped and spilled can pollute the environment. Catch any leaking operating fluids and dispose of them correctly according to environmental regulations.

Engine oil standards

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ ⚠ and ⓘ *Safety precautions for working in the engine compartment*.

Vehicles with engine oil label

If you need to top up the engine oil, use an oil that meets the requirements of the engine oil standard listed on the label *fig. 164*.

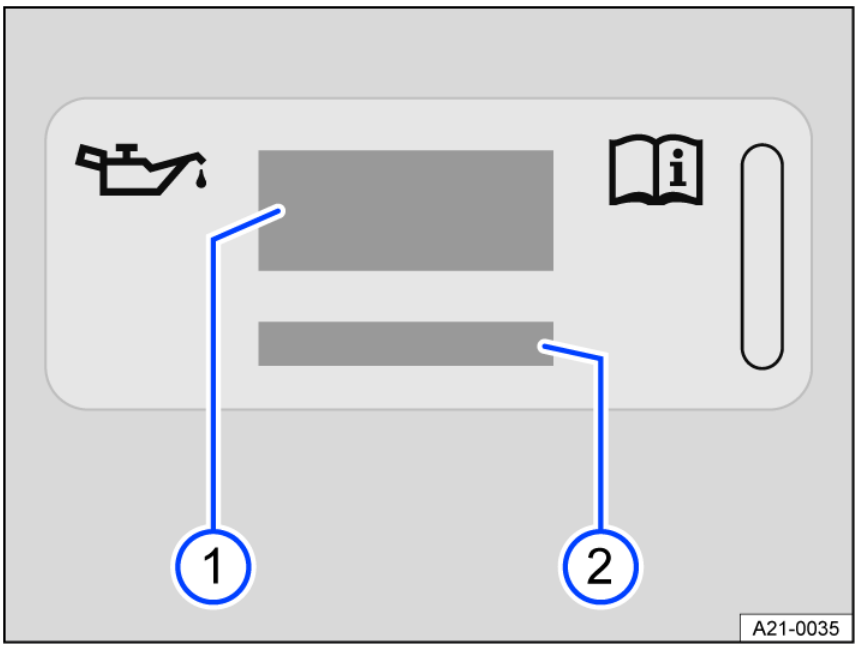


Fig. 164 Engine oil standard and engine oil viscosity label (general example).

(1) Engine oil standard information.

(2) Engine oil viscosity information.

The label with the prescribed standard is located at the front of the engine compartment next to the hood release *fig. 165*.

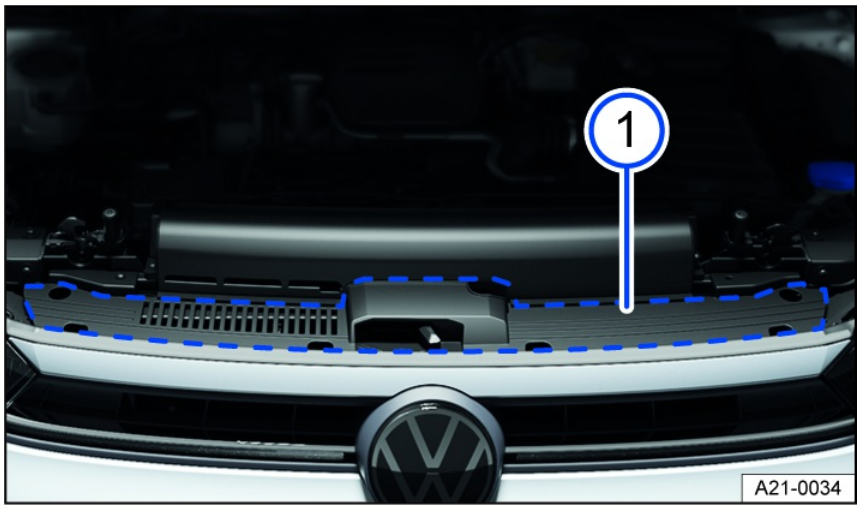


Fig. 165 Installation location: On the side next to the hood release (general example).

When using this engine oil, you can adjust the oil level as often as necessary *⇒ Checking the engine oil level and adding oil* .

Vehicles without an engine oil label

Information regarding the prescribed engine oil standard for your vehicle is provided by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. If you need to top up the engine oil, use that oil. When using the prescribed engine oil, you can adjust the oil level as often as required ⇒ *Checking the engine oil level and adding oil*.

If no engine oil that meets the prescribed standard is available, you may, in an **emergency**, top up the engine oil no more than **once** before your next standard oil change using no more than 0.5 liters of engine oil that meets the following deviating standards:

- Gasoline engines: VW 504 00 and ACEA C3 or API SP standard, viscosity 0 W-30.

Volkswagen recommends having the oil change carried out by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

NOTICE

Volkswagen recommends using the approved engine oils in accordance with the respective VW standard. The use of engine oils that do not comply with these quality requirements can cause engine damage.

Volkswagen recommends Volkswagen Genuine oil.

Changing the engine oil

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ **and** ***Safety precautions for working in the engine compartment*****.**
The engine oil must be changed regularly. Observe which service interval applies for your vehicle. You can find more information about the service intervals in the Service chapter ⇒ *Information regarding the service schedule*.

Engine oil and filter changes require special tools, technical knowledge and the correct disposal of the used oil. Therefore, always have the engine oil and filters changed by suitably qualified professionals. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Additives in the engine oil can make new engine oil appear dark after a brief engine run time. This is normal and is no reason to change the engine oil more frequently.

WARNING

If you need to change the engine oil in the vehicle yourself in exceptional situations, the following instructions must be followed:

- Always wear eye protection.
- Always allow the engine to cool down to reduce the risk of burns.
- Keep your arms horizontal when using your fingers to unscrew the oil drain plug, so that the draining oil does not drip down your arm.
- Use a container suitable for collecting used oil that can hold at least the entire quantity of oil in the engine.
- Never use empty food cans, bottles or other containers to store engine oil, because individuals may not recognize that they contain engine oil.
- Engine oil is poisonous and must be kept out of reach of children.

Before changing the engine oil, find a place that will dispose of used oil correctly.

Dispose of used oil in a way that is responsible for the environment. Never dispose of used oil in gardens, forested areas, through the sewer systems, on streets and paths, in rivers, or in bodies of water, for example.

Engine oil consumption

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ **and** ***Safety precautions for working in the engine compartment*****.**
The engine oil consumption can vary from engine to engine and can change throughout the service life of the engine.

Depending on the driving style and the usage conditions, the engine oil consumption can be up to 1 liter (1 quart) per 1200 miles (2000 kilometers); it can also be higher within the first 3100 miles (5000 kilometers) on new vehicles. Because of this, the engine oil level must be checked regularly. It is best to check each time you refuel your vehicle and before long drives.

For high engine loads, for example when driving long distances on highways in the summer or when driving through high mountains, the engine oil level should be the upper section of the permitted area ⇒ *Checking the engine oil level and adding oil* .

Checking the engine oil level and adding oil

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ **and** ***Safety precautions for working in the engine compartment*****.**

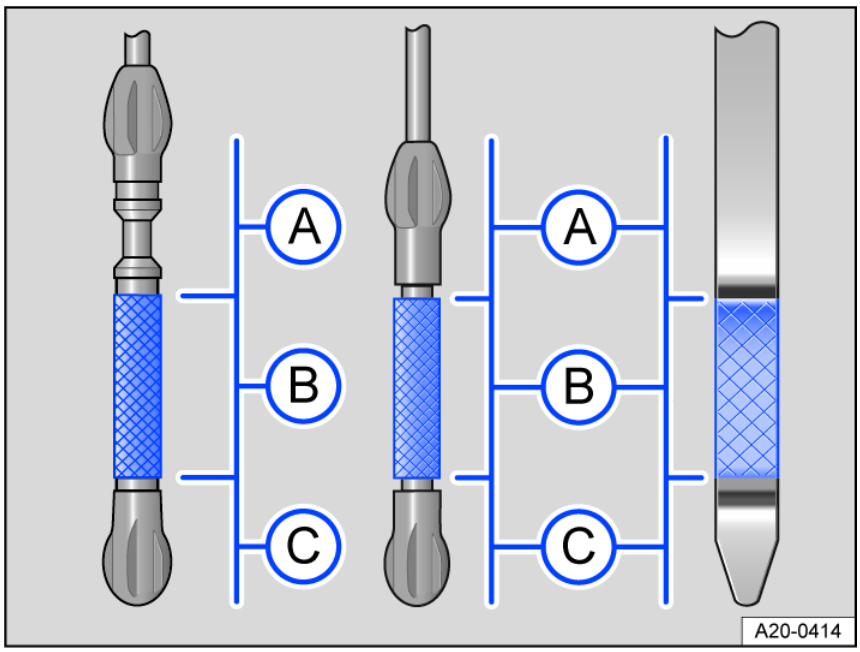


Fig. 166 Engine oil level markings on the oil dipstick (versions).

(A) Engine oil level too high – if necessary follow the messages in the instrument cluster display or contact suitably qualified professionals for assistance. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

(B) Oil level in the normal range.

(C) Engine oil level too low – if necessary follow the messages in the instrument cluster display or top up the engine oil.



Fig. 167 In the engine compartment: engine oil filler cap (general example).

Perform the steps in the order listed ⇒ ⚠:

1. With the engine at **operating temperature**, park the vehicle on a level surface to avoid an incorrect oil level reading.
2. Turn off the engine and wait at least five minutes for the engine oil to flow back into the oil pan.
3. Open the hood ⚠ ⇒ *Opening and closing the hood*.
4. Find the engine oil filler and the dipstick. You can identify these by the symbol on the engine oil filler cap *fig. 167* and the colored handle on the dipstick *fig. 166*. If you are not sure where the cap and the oil dipstick are located, contact suitably qualified professionals for assistance. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
5. Remove the dipstick from the guide tube and wipe the dipstick off using a clean cloth.
6. Reinsert the dipstick into the guide tube and push it all the way in. If there is an alignment tab on the top of the engine oil dipstick, make sure it lines up with the notch in the guide tube, and that the dipstick goes all the way in.
7. Remove the dipstick again and read the oil level on the dipstick as described below *fig. 166*:

   (A) The engine oil level is too high. If necessary follow the messages in the instrument cluster display or **contact suitably qualified professionals for assistance**. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

(B) Oil level in the normal range. Engine oil can be added up to the **upper edge of this area**, for example if there is heavy engine load. ⇒ ⚠ , ⇒ ⓘ Conti with step 8 or step 16.

(C) The engine oil level is too low. **Add engine oil immediately.** ⇒ ⚠ , ⇒ ⓘ Continue with step 8.

8. After reading the oil level, reinsert the dipstick back into the guide tube and push it all the way in.
9. Remove the cap on the engine oil filler *fig. 167*.
10. Top up the engine oil gradually in small quantities (not more than 0.5 qt (0.5 l)) Volkswagen recommends using the approved engine oils in accordance with the respective Volkswagen standard ⇒ *Engine oil standards*.
11. To avoid overfilling, you must wait at least one minute each time you add engine oil so that the engine oil can flow into the oil pan up to the marking on the oil dipstick.
12. Check the oil level on the oil dipstick again before adding a little more engine oil. Never add too much oil ⇒ ⓘ.
13. When you are done adding oil, the oil level should be in the center of area *fig. 166* (B). The engine oil level must not be in the area *fig. 166* (A).
14. If you accidentally add too much oil and the oil level is in area *fig. 166* (A), **do not start the engine**. Contact a suitably qualified professional or seek professional assistance if necessary. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
15. Close the cap on the engine oil filler when you are done adding engine oil.
16. Insert the oil dipstick all the way into the guide tube. If there is an alignment tab on the top of the engine oil dipstick, make sure it lines up with the notch in the guide tube, and that the dipstick goes all the way in.
17. Close the hood ⚠ ⇒ *Opening and closing the hood*.

⚠ WARNING

Engine oil can ignite if it comes into contact with hot engine components. This can cause burns and serious injuries.

- If engine oil spills on cold engine components, it could heat up and ignite when the engine is running.
- Always make sure that the engine oil cap is installed securely on the engine filler opening after adding oil and that the oil dipstick is inserted correctly in the guide tube. This can prevent engine oil from leaking and coming into contact with hot engine components when the engine is running.

ⓘ NOTICE

- If you accidentally add too much oil and the oil level is in area *fig. 166* (A), do not start the engine. Contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility qualified in this respect or seek professional assistance if necessary. Otherwise, the catalytic converter and the engine could be damaged.
- When topping up fluids, make sure the correct fluids are added to the correct reservoirs. Using incorrect fluids can result in malfunctions and engine damage.

(A) The engine oil level must not be in the area above *fig. 166* . Otherwise, oil could be drawn into the crankcase vent and enter the atmosphere through the exhaust system.

Troubleshooting

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ ⚠ and ⓘ *Safety precautions for working in the engine compartment*.

Engine oil pressure too low

The red warning light blinks. A message is shown in the instrument cluster display.

Do not continue driving! Engine damage could result.

1. Stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
2. Stop the engine.
3. Check the engine oil level ⇒ *Checking the engine oil level and adding oil* .
4. If the warning light flashes, do *not* continue driving or let the engine run, even if the oil is at the correct level.
5. Contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility for assistance. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Engine oil level very low

The red warning light blinks. A message is shown in the instrument cluster display.

Do not continue driving! Engine damage could result.

1. Stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

2. Stop the engine.
3. Check the engine oil level ⇒ *Checking the engine oil level and adding oil* .
4. If necessary, top up the engine oil gradually in small quantities (not more than 0.5 qt (0.5 qt) in total) or observe the top-up recommendation in the instrument cluster.
5. If the indicator light comes on, do *not* continue driving or let the engine run, even if the oil is at the correct level. Engine damage could result.
6. Contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility for assistance. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Engine oil level too low

The yellow indicator light turns on. A message is shown in the instrument cluster display.

1. Stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
2. Stop the engine.
3. Check the engine oil level ⇒ *Checking the engine oil level and adding oil* .
4. If necessary, top up the engine oil gradually in small quantities (not more than 0.5 qt (0.5 qt) in total) or observe the top-up recommendation in the instrument cluster.
5. If the indicator light comes on, do *not* continue driving or let the engine run, even if the oil is at the correct level. Engine damage could result.
6. Contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility for assistance. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Engine oil level too high

The yellow indicator light turns on. A message is shown in the instrument cluster display.

1. Stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
2. Stop the engine.
3. Check the engine oil level ⇒ *Checking the engine oil level and adding oil* .
4. If the engine oil level is too high, do *not* drive any further or leave the engine running. Engine damage could result.
5. After checking, contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility for assistance. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

or Engine oil system malfunction

The indicator light flashes yellow. A message is shown in the instrument cluster display.

1. Contact a suitably qualified professional. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Engine coolant

Introduction

Only perform work on the **engine cooling system** if you are familiar with the necessary procedures and the general safety precautions, and if the correct equipment, fluids, and suitable tools are available. Work performed incorrectly can result in serious injuries ⇒ ⚠. Have all work performed by suitably qualified professionals if necessary. Volkswagen recommends contacting your Volkswagen dealership.

⚠ WARNING

Engine coolant is poisonous!

- Only store engine coolant in the sealed original container and in a secure place.
- Never use empty food cans, bottles, or other containers to store engine coolant, because someone could drink the engine coolant by mistake.
- Store engine coolant out of the reach of children.
- Make sure that the correct proportion of engine coolant additive is provided based on the lowest ambient temperature in which the vehicle will be operated.
- In extremely low temperatures, the coolant can freeze and the vehicle could break down. Because the heater will also no longer function in that situation, vehicle occupants could die of exposure if they do not have sufficient warm clothing.

Coolant and coolant additives can pollute the environment. Catch any leaking operating fluids and dispose of them correctly according to environmental regulations.

Engine coolant specifications

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ ⚠ and ⓘ *Safety precautions for working in the engine compartment*.

The cooling system is filled at the factory with a mixture of specially prepared water and at least 40% coolant additive **G 12 evo** (TL-VW 744 L).

To protect the engine cooling system, there must *always* be at least a 40% proportion of coolant additive. If greater freeze protection is needed due to the climate, the proportion of coolant additive can be increased. However, the proportion of coolant additive must not exceed 55 %, because otherwise the freeze protection will be reduced and the cooling effect will be decreased.

The engine coolant additive can be recognized by its purple color. The mixture of water and coolant additive provides freeze protection down to -13 °F (-25 °C), protects the aluminum alloy parts of the cooling system from corrosion, prevents limescale deposits, and increases the boiling point of the coolant.

If the engine coolant is being topped up, a blend of **distilled water** and at least 40% of the engine coolant additive **G 12 evo** must be used to ensure optimum corrosion protection ⇒ ⓘ.

⚠ WARNING

Insufficient freeze protection in the engine cooling system can cause engine malfunctions, which can result in serious injuries.

- Make sure that the correct proportion of engine coolant additive is provided based on the lowest ambient temperature in which the vehicle will be operated.
- In extremely low temperatures, the coolant can freeze and the vehicle could break down. Because the heater will also no longer function in that situation, vehicle occupants could die of exposure if they do not have sufficient warm clothing.

ⓘ NOTICE

Never mix Genuine Volkswagen coolant additives with coolants that are not approved by Volkswagen.

- If the fluid in the coolant expansion tank is not pink-colored (the color comes from the mixture of the purple coolant additive with distilled water) but is, for example, brown instead, the suitable engine coolant was mixed with another engine coolant that is not suitable. In this case, have the engine coolant changed immediately. Otherwise, serious malfunctions or damage to the engine and cooling system could occur.

Engine coolant and coolant additives can harm the environment. Catch any leaking operating fluids and dispose of them correctly according to environmental regulations.

Checking and filling engine coolant

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ ⚠ and ⓘ *Safety precautions for working in the engine compartment*.

Preparations

1. Parking the vehicle on a level, secure surface.
2. Allow the engine to cool ⇒ ⚠.
3. Open the hood ⚠ ⇒ *Opening and closing the hood*.
4. The coolant expansion tank is identified with the red symbol on the cap *fig. 168*.



Fig. 168 In the engine compartment: cap on the engine coolant expansion tank.

⚠ WARNING

Hot steam and hot engine coolant can cause serious burns.

- Never open the engine hood if you can see or hear steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment. Wait until you can no longer see or hear steam or coolant escaping. Hot components can cause burns if touched.
- The engine cooling system is under pressure when the engine is hot. Never open the cap on the coolant expansion tank when the engine is hot. Engine coolant could spray out and cause serious burns or other injuries.
  - Slowly and very carefully turn the cap counterclockwise while pressing down lightly on the cap.
  - Always protect your face, hands, and arms from hot coolant or steam by placing a large, thick cloth on the coolant expansion tank cap.

Warning light

The engine coolant warning light will turn on if the engine coolant level is too low.

Do not continue driving! .

1. Stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
2. Immediately contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility for assistance. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
3. If the coolant level is too low and there are no authorized Volkswagen dealers or authorized Volkswagen Service Facilities qualified in this respect in the immediate area, check the coolant level and add coolant.

Checking the coolant level

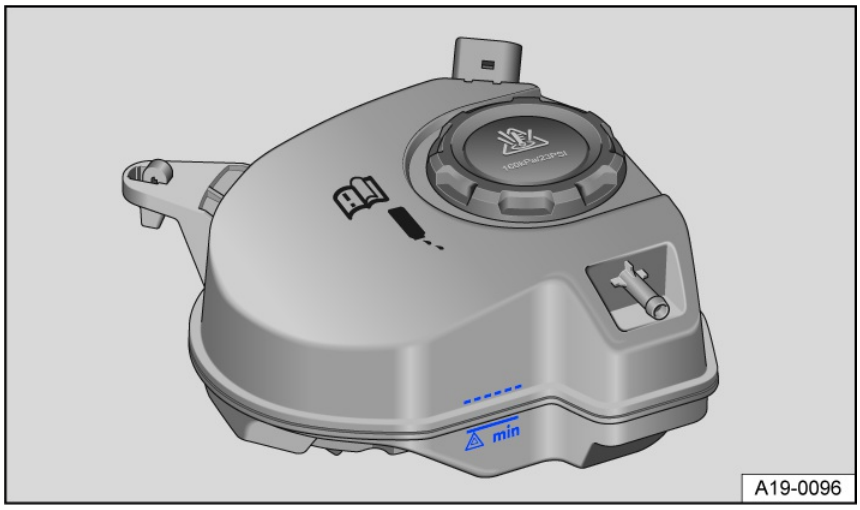


Fig. 169 In the engine compartment: markings on the engine coolant expansion tank.

When **new vehicles** are delivered, the coolant level may be above the marked area. This is normal. The engine coolant does not need to be extracted.

1. When the engine is cold, check the coolant level using the markings on the side of the engine coolant expansion tank *fig. 169*. The coolant level must be between the markings.
2. If the fluid level in the coolant expansion tank is below the minimum mark (“min”), have coolant added. When the engine is warm, the engine coolant level may be slightly above the upper marking.
3. If no coolant is visible in the coolant expansion tank, **do not** add coolant ⇒ .

Filling the coolant

1. Carefully unscrew the cap ⇒ .
2. Only add **new** coolant that conforms to the Volkswagen specification ⇒ *Engine coolant specifications*.
3. Top up the engine coolant to the upper fill level marker.

   After topping up the engine coolant, the coolant level must be between the markings on the coolant expansion tank *fig. 169*.
4. Install the cap securely.
5. Check the coolant level after one day.

   If the level drops below the “min” minimum marking **again**, contact suitably qualified professionals and have the cooling system checked. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
6. If there is no coolant available that conforms to the specification, do not use any other coolant in an emergency ⇒ .

NOTICE

- Do not refill the system with engine coolant **above the upper edge of the marked area** . If there is too much coolant, the engine cooling system will become pressurized when the coolant warms up, which can result in damage.

- If there is no coolant available that conforms to the required specification, initially only top up with **distilled water**. Then have the correct mixture ratio using the specified coolant additive restored as soon as possible by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
- Only use distilled water for refilling the system! The chemical components contained in all other types of water can cause considerable corrosion damage in the engine. This can cause engine malfunctions. If water that is not distilled is added, have the fluid in the cooling system changed immediately by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
- Do not add any engine coolant if there is no engine coolant left in the coolant expansion tank. Doing so could cause air to enter the cooling system. Do not continue driving. Contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility for assistance. Otherwise, the engine could be damaged. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
- When topping up fluids, make sure the correct fluids are added to the correct reservoirs. Using incorrect fluids can result in malfunctions and engine damage.

Troubleshooting

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ and *Safety precautions for working in the engine compartment*.

Engine coolant

The red warning light blinks.

Engine cooling system

Do not continue driving!

1. Stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
2. Check the engine coolant level on the **Coolant expansion tank** ⇒ *Checking and filling engine coolant*.
3. If the warning light does not turn off, do not continue driving or let the engine run, even if the engine coolant is at the correct level.
4. Contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility for assistance. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Brake fluid



Fig. 170 In the engine compartment: cap on the brake fluid reservoir (version 1).



Fig. 171 In the engine compartment: cap on the brake fluid reservoir (version 2).

Brake fluid absorbs moisture from the air over the course of time. Too much water in the brake fluid causes damage to the brake system. Water lowers the boiling point of the brake fluid. If the water content in the brake fluid is too high, vapor lock may form in the brake system during heavy braking and full braking. Vapor lock reduces the braking efficiency, increases the braking distance considerably, and can lead to a total failure of the brake system. Your own safety and the safety of others on the road depends on your brake system functioning correctly at all times ⇒ ⚠.

Brake fluid specifications

Volkswagen has developed a special brake fluid that is optimized for the vehicle's brake system. For optimum performance of the brake system, Volkswagen recommends only using brake fluid that complies with the **VW standard 501 14**.

Before using brake fluid, check that the brake fluid specification on the bottle matches the vehicle requirements.

Brake fluid that complies with the VW standard 501 14 can be obtained from an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

If brake fluid that meets this specification is not available and another high-quality brake fluid must therefore be used, brake fluid that complies with the specificatior DIN ISO 4925 or the US Standard FMVSS 116 DOT 4 CLASS 6 can be used.

Not all brake fluids that comply with the requirements of DIN ISO 4925 or US Standard FMVSS 116 DOT 4 CLASS 6 have the same chemical composition. Some of these brake fluids can contain chemicals that can destroy or damage components of the vehicle brake system over time.

To help ensure that the brake system functions correctly over the long term, Volkswagen recommends using a brake fluid that expressly conforms to the **VW standard 501 14**.

Brake fluid that complies with the VW standard 501 14 meets the requirements of DIN ISO 4925 or the US Standard FMVSS 116 DOT 4 CLASS 6.

Brake fluid level

The brake fluid level must always be between the MIN and MAX markings on the brake fluid reservoir ⇒ ⚠.

The brake fluid level cannot be checked precisely on all models because the hood or engine components may obstruct the view of the fluid level in the reservoir. If you cannot read the brake fluid level clearly, see an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility for assistance.

The brake fluid level decreases slightly when the vehicle is being used as the brake pads wear and the brakes automatically adjust themselves.

BRAKE Brake fluid level

The red warning light turns on.

Brake fluid level is too low.

1. **Do not continue driving!**
2. Check the brake fluid level.

If the brake fluid level is too low:

1. Inform a suitably qualified professional.
2. Have the brake system checked.

Changing brake fluid

Have the brake fluid changed by suitably qualified professionals. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Only use new brake fluid that meets the required specifications.

⚠ WARNING

Low brake fluid, brake fluid that is too old, or using an incorrect type of brake fluid can cause brake malfunctions or reduced braking efficiency. Hard braking when the brake fluid is old can cause vapor lock to form in the fluid due to absorbed moisture. Vapor lock reduces the braking efficiency, increases the braking distance considerably, and can lead to a total failure of the brake system.

- Have the brake system and brake fluid level checked or have the brake fluid changed regularly.
- Only have new brake fluid added.
- Be sure to use the correct brake fluid. Only use brake fluid that expressly complies with the VW standard 501 14. Any other brake fluid or brake fluid that is not high-quality can impair the braking function and reduce the braking efficiency.
- If brake fluid that complies with the VW standard 501 14 is not available and it is absolutely necessary to use a different brake fluid, only use a high-quality brake fluid that complies with DIN ISO 4925 CLASS 6 or US standard FMVSS 116 DOT 4.

⚠ WARNING

Brake fluid is poisonous.

- To reduce the risk of poisoning, never store brake fluid in beverage containers or other containers. A person could mistakenly drink from the container, even if the container is marked.
- Always store brake fluid in the sealed original container and keep it out of the reach of children.

NOTICE

Spilled or leaking brake fluid damages vehicle paint and tires.

- Immediately wipe up any spilled or leaking brake fluid that comes into contact with vehicle components.

Brake fluid can pollute the environment. Collect spilled brake fluid and dispose of it correctly.

12 V vehicle battery

Introduction

The 12 V vehicle battery is a component of the electrical system and supplies vehicle safety systems with energy. During maintenance procedures, the 12 V vehicle battery is checked and replaced if necessary.

You may only perform procedures on the electrical system yourself if you are familiar with the necessary procedures and the general safety precautions, and if the correct equipment and operating fluids and suitable tools are available. Work performed incorrectly can result in serious injuries ⇒ ⚠. Have all work performed by suitably qualified professionals. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Information about warning and indicator lights can be found in the troubleshooting section at the end of the chapter ⇒ *Troubleshooting*.

12 V vehicle battery location

The 12 V vehicle battery is located in the engine compartment.

Detailed warnings for the 12 V vehicle battery

Always wear eye protection. Battery acid is highly corrosive. Always wear protective gloves and eye protection. Fire, sparks, open flame, and smoking are forbidden. A highly explosive mixture of gases forms when charging the 12 V vehicle battery. Always keep children away from battery acid and the 12 V vehicle battery. Always heed the Owner's Manual.

Always read and heed the following warnings and safety precautions before performing any procedures:

⚠ WARNING

Performing work on the 12 V vehicle battery and the electrical system can cause serious injuries, fires, or electric shocks.

- Before performing any work on the 12 V vehicle battery, switch off the ignition and all electrical equipment and disconnect the 12 V battery negative cable.
- Always keep children away from battery electrolyte and the 12 V vehicle battery.
- Always wear eye protection and safety gloves.
- Battery acid is highly corrosive. It can burn skin and cause blindness. When handling 12 V vehicle batteries, always protect your hands, arms, and face from spraying battery acid.
- Do not smoke while working and never work near open flames or sparks.
- Avoid creating sparks when working with wires and electrical equipment or when discharging static electricity.

- Never short circuit the battery terminals.
- Never use a damaged 12 V vehicle battery. The 12 V vehicle battery may explode. Replace a damaged 12 V vehicle battery immediately.
- Never use a frozen 12 V vehicle battery. A drained 12 V vehicle battery can freeze at temperatures around 32 °F (0 °C). Replace the 12 V vehicle battery immediately.

NOTICE

UV rays can damage the battery housing.

- Do not expose the 12 V vehicle battery to direct sunlight for a long period of time.

NOTICE

The 12 V vehicle battery could “freeze” and be destroyed.

- Protect the 12 V vehicle battery against freezing temperatures if the vehicle is parked for long periods of time.

After starting the electric motor when the 12 V vehicle battery is severely drained or when it has been replaced or jump-started, the system settings, e.g. time, date, personal convenience settings and programming, and user profiles may be changed or erased. Check and correct the settings after the 12 V vehicle battery is sufficiently recharged.

Checking the 12 V vehicle battery acid level

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ and *Safety precautions for working in the engine compartment*.
Check the acid level of the 12 V vehicle battery regularly if mileage is high, in countries with warm climates, or if the 12 V vehicle battery is old. Otherwise, the 12 V vehicle battery is maintenance-free.

The acid level of 12 V vehicle batteries labeled **A G M** cannot be checked for technical reasons. Suitably qualified professionals can inspect the battery. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Preparations

1. Prepare the vehicle for work in the engine compartment ⇒ *In the engine compartment*.
2. Open the hood ⇒ *Opening and closing the hood*.

Checking the battery acid level (12 V vehicle batteries with window)

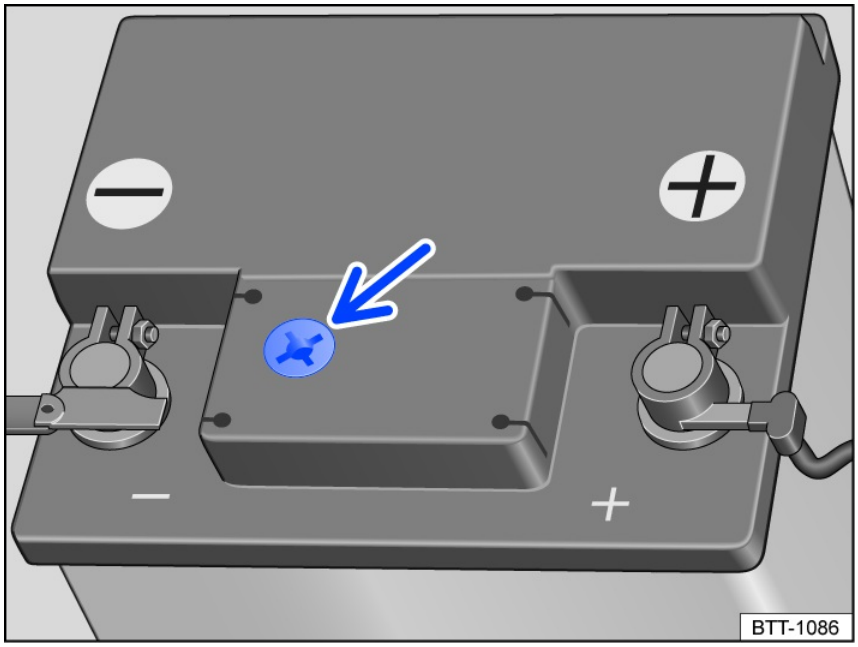


Fig. 172 Window on the top of the 12 V vehicle battery (general example).

1. Depending on the vehicle equipment, an additional bracket must be removed to see the viewing window. An additional tool that is not available in the vehicle tool kit is required to do this.
2. Make sure there is enough light to clearly see the color indicator in the circular window on the top of the 12 V vehicle battery (arrow) *fig. 172*. Never use oper flames or smoldering objects to provide light.

The color indicator in the circular window changes depending on the acid level in the 12 V vehicle battery.

Light yellow* or *colorless The 12 V vehicle battery acid level is too low. Have the 12 V vehicle battery checked and/or replaced by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen

Service Facility.

Black The 12 V vehicle battery acid level is OK.

⚠ WARNING

Performing work on the 12 V vehicle battery can cause serious injuries, explosions, or electric shocks.

- Always wear eye protection and safety gloves.
- Battery acid is highly corrosive. It can burn skin and cause blindness. When handling 12 V vehicle batteries, always protect your hands, arms, and face from spraying battery acid.
- Never tilt the 12 V vehicle battery. Acid can leak out of the vent openings and can cause chemical burns.
- Never open a 12 V vehicle battery.
- If battery acid comes into contact with the skin or eyes, rinse the affected area immediately with cold water for several minutes. Then consult a doctor immediately.
- Consult a doctor immediately if battery acid is swallowed.

Charging, replacing, disconnecting, or connecting the 12 V vehicle battery

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ ⚠ and ⓘ *Safety precautions for working in the engine compartment*.
If you suspect that the 12 V vehicle battery is damaged or malfunctioning, see suitably qualified professionals to have the 12 V vehicle battery checked. Volkswage recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Charging the 12 V vehicle battery

The 12 V vehicle battery should be charged by suitably qualified professionals because the 12 V vehicle battery that is installed at the factory requires a charging process where the voltage is limited ⇒ ⚠. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Replacing the 12 V vehicle battery

The 12 V vehicle battery is designed to fit the location where it is installed and is equipped with safety features. If a 12 V vehicle battery needs to be replaced, have the replacement part fitted by qualified professionals. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Check with qualified professionals to find out the component information regarding size and the required maintenance, performance, and safety features. They must possess the necessary technical documentation and equipment. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. The vent opening on the 12 V vehicle battery must always be located on the negative terminal. The vent opening on the positive terminal side must be sealed.

Only use a maintenance-free 12 V vehicle battery that conforms to the TL 825 06 and VW 7 50 73 standards. These standards must be from October 2014 or later.

Always have the 12 V vehicle battery replaced by qualified professionals because the vehicle electronics must be adapted as part of the replacement. In addition, the battery parameters for functional safety can only be determined with the OEM battery. Only qualified professionals have the necessary equipment to perform th adaptation and have access to the correct replacement batteries. Using unsuitable batteries may invalidate the operating license.

Disconnecting the 12 V vehicle battery

If the 12 V vehicle battery must be disconnected from the vehicle electrical system, note the following:

1. Switch off all electrical equipment and the ignition.
2. Unlock the vehicle before disconnecting the battery. Otherwise, the anti-theft alarm system will be triggered.
3. Disconnect the negative cable first, and then the positive cable ⇒ ⚠.

Connecting the 12 V vehicle battery

1. Switch off all electrical equipment and the ignition before reconnecting the 12 V vehicle battery.
2. Connect the positive cable first, and then the negative cable ⇒ ⚠.

Various indicator lights may turn on after connecting the 12 V vehicle battery and switching the ignition on. They will turn off after driving a short distance at a speed of approximately 10 - 12 mph (15 - 20 km/h). If the indicator lights do not turn off, see an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility t have the vehicle checked.

If the 12 V vehicle battery was disconnected for a long period of time, the next scheduled maintenance may not display correctly or it may not be calculated correctl ⇒ *Service interval display*. Follow the maximum permissible maintenance interval ⇒ *Maintenance*.

Vehicles with Keyless Access ⇒ *Keyless Access*: If the ignition cannot be switched on after connecting the 12 V vehicle battery.

1. Lock and unlock the vehicle from the outside.
2. Try to switch the ignition on again.
3. If the ignition will not switch on, contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Automatic equipment deactivation

If the 12 V vehicle battery is under a heavy load, the intelligent power management will automatically begin certain measures to prevent the 12 V vehicle battery from draining:

- The idle speed will be increased so that the alternator delivers more power.
- If necessary, equipment that uses a lot of power will have its performance limited or will be switched off.
- The power supply to the 12 V socket and the cigarette lighter will be interrupted temporarily when the engine is started.

The power management cannot always prevent the 12 V vehicle battery from being drained. For example, the battery could be drained if the ignition is left on for long periods of time when the engine is stopped or if the vehicle is parked for long periods of time with the parking lights on.

12 V vehicle battery draining

- If the vehicle is parked for long periods of time without running the engine, especially if the ignition is on.
- If electrical equipment is used when the engine is stopped.

⚠ WARNING

Securing the vehicle battery incorrectly or using the wrong 12 V vehicle battery can cause short circuits, fires, and serious injuries.

- Always use maintenance-free and leak-proof 12 V vehicle batteries that have the same characteristics, specifications, and dimensions as the 12 V vehicle battery that was installed at the factory.

⚠ WARNING

A highly explosive mixture of hydrogen gas can form when charging the 12 V vehicle battery.

- Only charge 12 V vehicle batteries in well-ventilated areas.
- Never charge a frozen or thawed 12 V vehicle battery. A drained 12 V vehicle battery can freeze at temperatures around 32 °F (0 °C).
- Always replace the 12 V vehicle battery if it freezes.

⚠ WARNING

Cables that are connected incorrectly can cause a short circuit.

- Connect the positive cable first and then the negative cable.

NOTICE

- Never connect or disconnect the 12 V vehicle batteries when the ignition is on or the engine is running. Never use a 12 V vehicle battery that does not conform to the vehicle specifications. The electrical system or electrical components could be damaged and electrical malfunctions could result.

12 V vehicle batteries can contain toxic substances such as sulfuric acid and lead. Dispose of 12 V vehicle batteries correctly.

Battery acid can pollute the environment. Collect spilled battery acid and dispose of it correctly.

Troubleshooting

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ ⚠ and ⓘ *Safety precautions for working in the engine compartment*.

12 V vehicle battery

The red warning light turns on. The following messages can be displayed: Error: 12 V battery is not charging. Safely park the vehicle.

The 12-volt vehicle battery is not being charged while driving.

There is a fault in the 12 V power supply.

STOP Do not continue driving!

1. Stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
2. Turn off electrical equipment that is not needed.
3. Inform a suitably qualified professional. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
4. Have the electrical system inspected.

The start-stop system cannot start the electric motor ⇒ *Start/Stop system*

12 V vehicle battery

The yellow indicator light turns on. The following message is displayed: Error: 12 V battery. Restart not possible. Service vehicle!

The connection between the 12 V vehicle electrical system and the 12 V vehicle battery is malfunctioning.

1. Contact a suitably qualified professional. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
2. Have the electrical system inspected.

If the engine is turned off in this situation, the engine cannot be restarted. Jump-start the vehicle if necessary ⇒ *Jump-starting* or contact an authorized Volkswage dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

12 V vehicle battery

The yellow indicator light turns on. The following messages can be displayed: Error: 12 V battery diagnosis. Please service the vehicle..

The system for monitoring the 12-volt vehicle battery is malfunctioning.

Or:

Error: 12 V power supply. Please contact workshop.

12 V power supply is malfunctioning.

1. Contact a suitably qualified professional. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
2. Have the electrical system inspected.

12 V vehicle battery

The yellow indicator light turns on. The following message is displayed: Please replace the 12 V battery. Service vehicle.

The 12-volt vehicle battery has almost reached the end of its service life.

1. Contact a suitably qualified professional. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
2. Check the 12-volt vehicle battery and have it replaced if necessary ⇒ *Charging, replacing, disconnecting, or connecting the 12 V vehicle battery* .

12 V vehicle battery

The yellow indicator light turns on. The following message is displayed: Please have the 12 V battery checked. Service vehicle..

The connection between the 12 V vehicle electrical system and the 12 V vehicle battery is malfunctioning.

1. Contact a suitably qualified professional. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
2. Have the electrical system checked.

12 V vehicle battery

The yellow indicator light turns on. The following message is displayed: 12 V power supply is currently limited. Please drive carefully.

Limited 12 V vehicle battery power supply, caused, for example, by a discharged 12 V vehicle battery.

1. Drive carefully until the warning light goes out.
2. If the warning light does not go out, contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
3. Have the electrical system inspected.

Wheels and tires

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

Introduction

The Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) warns the driver if tire pressures are too low.

The following Tire Pressure Monitoring Systems (TPMS) are available for this vehicle:

Tire Pressure Monitoring System

- Monitors various parameters, including rolling circumference, of all four tires using ABS sensors (indirect measurements) while the vehicle is in motion.

The reference pressure for the Tire Pressure Monitoring System is the recommended tire pressure for the tires installed at the factory when the tires are cold at maximum load. The reference pressure corresponds to the details on the tire pressure label ⇒ *Tire pressure*.

If the tire pressure has been correctly adjusted on all four tires, the Tire Pressure Monitoring System must be re-calibrated ⇒ *Tire Pressure Monitoring System*. Tl adapts the reference pressure to the current tire pressure.

The Tire Pressure Monitoring System may not react at first or may not react at all when you are driving in a sporty manner, or on snow-covered or unpaved roads, when you are driving with snow chains, or in certain other situations. A change in the tread circumference of a tire is signaled by the Tire Pressure Monitorin System indicator in the instrument cluster (telltale).

The tire pressure recommended for the tires originally installed on the vehicle is on a sticker on the driver door jamb.

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressu label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires).

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuous illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow tl TPMS to continue to function properly.

⚠ WARNING

The intelligent technology of the Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) cannot overcome the natural laws of physics and it can only operate within the limits of the system. Handling wheels and tires incorrectly can result in a sudden loss of tire pressure, tread separation, and ruptured tires.

- Check the tire pressure regularly and always maintain the specified values ⇒ *Tire pressure*. If the tire pressure is too low, the tire can heat up so much that the tread separates or the tire ruptures.
- Always inflate the tires to the correct tire pressure when the tires are cold according to the tire inflation pressure label ⇒ *Tire pressure*.
- Check the tire pressure regularly when the tires are cold. If necessary, adjust the tire pressure when the tires are cold so that it is suitable for the tires installed on your vehicle ⇒ *Tire pressure*.
- Check the tires regularly for signs of wear or damage.
- Never exceed the maximum permissible speed and tire load specified for the tires fitted to your vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

Different tire pressures or low tire pressure can cause tire damage, tire failure, loss of vehicle control, crashes, serious injuries, and death.

- If the warning light turns on, stop the vehicle immediately and check all of the tires ⇒ *Tire pressure*.
- Different tire pressures or low tire pressure can increase tire wear, decrease vehicle stability, and increase braking distance.
- The driver is responsible for maintaining the correct tire pressure in all tires on the vehicle. The recommended tire pressure can be found on a label ⇒ *Tire pressure*.

- The Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) can only function correctly when all tires are inflated to the correct pressure when they are cold.
- All tires must always be inflated to the correct pressure based on the load ⇒ *Tire pressure*.
- Inflate all tires to the correct tire pressure before every drive ⇒ *Tire pressure*.
- When the tire pressure is too low, the tire must flex more when driving. This could cause the tire to become so hot that the tread could separate, the tire could rupture, and you could lose control of the vehicle.
- Driving at high speeds and excessive vehicle load can cause a tire to become so hot that the tire could rupture and you could lose control of the vehicle.
- Tire pressure that is too high or too low shortens the service life of the tire and affects driving behavior.
- If the tire is not “flat” and the tire does not need to be replaced immediately, drive slowly to the nearest authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility to have the tire pressure checked and corrected ⇒ *Tire pressure*. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
- The Tire Pressure Monitoring System must always be correctly calibrated.

Low tire pressure increases fuel consumption and tire wear.

New tires may expand slightly the first time they are driven at high speeds, which can trigger a tire pressure warning.

Only replace old tires with tires that have been approved by Volkswagen for the vehicle model.

Do not rely on the Tire Pressure Monitoring System alone. Inspect the tires regularly to make sure the tire pressure is correct and check the tires for any signs of damage, such as punctures. Remove any objects stuck in the tire tread as long as they have not punctured the inside of the tire.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ *Introduction*.

Function description

Using the ABS sensors, the Tire Pressure Monitoring System compares the RPM and thus the rolling circumference of the individual tires.

The Tire Pressure Monitoring System will not work if the ESC or ABS is malfunctioning ⇒ *Troubleshooting*.

The rolling circumference can change if:

- The tire pressure has changed
- The tire pressure is too low
- The tire has structural damage
- One side of the vehicle has a heavier load than the other
- Snow chains are installed on the tires
- A compact spare wheel has been installed
- Only one wheel was replaced on each axle

The Tire Pressure Monitoring System may be delayed or not be displayed at all when driving with a sporty style, on winter or unpaved roads, or when driving with snow chains.

The Tire Pressure Monitoring System shows a change in the rolling circumference of the tires via the warning light in the instrument cluster.

The recommended tire pressure for the tires installed at the factory is specified on the tire pressure sticker on the driver door pillar ⇒ *Tire pressure*.

The tire pressure of all tires, including the spare wheel or temporary spare wheel, must be checked once a month when the tires are cold and must correspond to tl vehicle manufacturer's specifications on the tire pressure sticker. If the size of the tires installed at the factory differs from the details on the identification label or on the tire pressure label, the correct tire pressure must be determined.

The Tire Pressure Monitoring System is not intended to replace regular inspection and maintenance of the tires. The driver is responsible for ensuring that the correct tire pressure is used at all times, even if the Tire Pressure Monitoring System is not showing a warning that the tire pressure is too low.

The Tire Pressure Monitoring System also has a malfunction display that is accompanied by the warning light. In the event of a malfunction in the Tire Pressur Monitoring System, after switching on the ignition, the warning light blinks for around one minute and then stays on.

If the Tire Pressure Monitoring System displays a malfunction, the tire pressure cannot be monitored correctly. A malfunction in the Tire Pressure Monitoring Systen can have a number of causes, e.g. a wheel or a tire being replaced. After replacing a wheel or tire, you must check whether the warning light displays a system malfunction to make sure that the Tire Pressure Monitoring System is working properly ⇒ *Troubleshooting the Tire Pressure Monitoring System*.

Calibrating the Tire Pressure Monitoring System

The Tire Pressure Monitoring System must be recalibrated under the following conditions:

- If the tire pressures were adjusted.
- If one or more wheels were changed.

- If the wheels were rotated, for example from front to rear.

The Tire Pressure Monitoring System must only be recalibrated if all tires are inflated to the correct pressure when they are cold. In order to measure the tire pressure on cold tires, the vehicle must be left to stand for 3 hours or only be driven slowly over short distances during this time.

After being warned about a low tire pressure, switch the ignition off and back on. The Tire Pressure Monitoring System can only be recalibrated after this is done.

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. If necessary, switch on the Infotainment system.
3. Tap Vehicle in the Infotainment system.
4. Tap Vehicle (left-hand side).
5. Tap Tires.
6. Tap SET.
7. If all four tires meet the required tire pressure values, tap OK.

   After longer trips (at least 20 minutes) and different vehicle speeds, the system adapts to the new values and monitors them.

   Or: Tap Cancel to cancel the process.

   The current tire pressure is not saved and the system is not reprogrammed.

Troubleshooting the Tire Pressure Monitoring System

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ ***Introduction.***

Tire pressure low

The yellow indicator light turns on.

The tire pressure of one or more tires has decreased or the tire is structurally damaged.

1. **Do not continue driving!**
2. Check and correct all tire pressures ⇒ *Tire pressure*.
3. Replace damaged tires.
4. Recalibrate the Tire Pressure Monitoring System ⇒ *Tire Pressure Monitoring System*.
5. If the malfunction persists, contact a suitably qualified professional. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System malfunction

The yellow indicator light flashes for approximately one minute and then stays on.

There is a system malfunction.

1. **Do not continue driving!**
2. Switch the ignition off and back on again.
3. Recalibrate the Tire Pressure Monitoring System ⇒ *Tire Pressure Monitoring System*.
4. If the malfunction persists, contact a suitably qualified professional. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Driving on unpaved roads for a long period of time or sporty driving can deactivate the Tire Pressure Monitoring System temporarily. If there is a malfunction, the indicator light flashes for approximately one minute and then stays on. However, the indicator light will turn off if the road conditions or driving style changes.

Information about wheels and tires

Introduction

Tires are the part of the vehicle that are under the most demand yet are the most underestimated. Tires are extremely important, because the small running surface on the tires is the only point of contact that the vehicle has with the road.

The service life of the tire depends on the tire pressure, the driving style, the way the tires are handled, and correct mounting of the tire.

WARNING

New tires or tires that are old, worn, or damaged cannot provide the maximum vehicle control and braking effect.

- Handling wheels and tires incorrectly can reduce driving safety and cause accidents and serious injuries.
- For all four wheels, use only radial tires of the same design, size (rolling circumference), and tread pattern.

- You must break in new tires because they have reduced traction and braking efficiency when they are new. To reduce the risk of accidents and serious injuries, drive carefully during the first 370 miles (600 km).
- Regularly check the tire pressure when the tires are cold and always maintain the specified pressure. If the tire pressure is too low, the tire can heat up so much while driving that the tread separates or the tire ruptures.
- Check the tires regularly for damage and wear.
- Never drive with tires that are damaged (punctured, cut, cracked, or bulging) or worn. Driving with tires in this condition can cause tire blowouts, accidents, and serious injuries. Replace worn or damaged tires immediately.
- Never exceed the maximum permissible speed and tire load specified for the tires fitted to your vehicle.
- The effectiveness of the driver assistance systems and the braking assistance systems depends on tire traction.
- If there are unusual vibrations or if the vehicle pulls to one side while driving, stop immediately and check the wheels and tires for damage.
- To reduce the risk of loss of vehicle control, accidents, and serious injuries, never loosen the bolts on rims with a bolted rim ring.
- Do not use any wheels or tires if you do not know how they have been used in the past. Used wheels and tires may be damaged, even if this damage is not visible, and could lead to tire damage, tire failure or loss of vehicle control.
- Old tires can lose pressure suddenly at high speeds or fail and cause accidents and serious injuries. This is true even if the tires have not been used yet. Only use tires that are more than six years old if absolutely necessary and drive with extreme caution if doing so.

⚠ WARNING

If the wheel bolts are not tightened correctly or are missing, the wheels could become loose and lead to loss of vehicle control, accidents, and serious injuries.

- Never drive with missing or loose wheel bolts.
- Always use wheel bolts that are correct for the rim and the vehicle model.
- Always tighten the wheel bolts to the correct tightening torque. If you do not have a torque wrench, tighten the wheel bolts with the lug wrench and then have the tightening torque checked as soon as possible by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

⚠ WARNING

Improper installation of the tires on the rim can cause tires to suddenly lose air or go flat while driving and damage the rim. This can cause accidents and fatal injuries.

- Always have tires installed on the rim by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Handling wheels and tires

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ ⚠ *Introduction*.

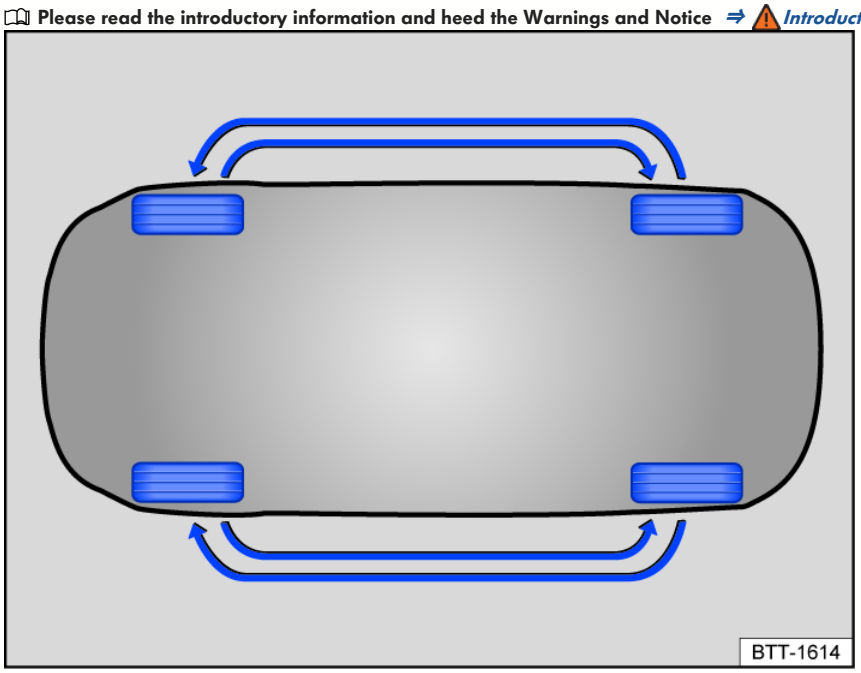


Fig. 173 General example: Diagram for rotating the wheels.

The tire and rim combinations approved by Volkswagen are specifically designed for each other.

Replacing tires

To ensure that the tires wear evenly, rotating the tires regularly according to the diagram is recommended *fig. 173*. This will allow the tires to have approximately t same length of service life.

Volkswagen recommends having the wheel replacement carried out by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Preventing damage to the rims and tires

- Always drive over curbs and other low obstacles slowly and at a right-angle so that both front wheels come into contact with the obstacle at the same time.
- Check the tire pressure regularly.
- Check tires regularly for damage, e.g. punctures.
- Never exceed the load index and maximum speed of the tire ⇒ *Tire labeling and terminology, glossary, handling new tires, UTQG classification* .
- Have damaged or worn rims replaced immediately ⇒ *Tire damage*.
- Protect tires from coming into contact with corrosive materials such as grease, oil, gasoline, and brake fluid → ⚠.
- Replace missing dust caps on the valves immediately.
- Remove any objects provided they have not punctured the inside of the tire ⇒ *Tire damage*.
- Pay attention to all warnings issued by the Tire Pressure Monitoring System ⇒ *Troubleshooting the Tire Pressure Monitoring System*.

Tires that are more than six years old

Tires age due to physical and chemical processes that affect their function. Tires that have been stored and unused for long periods of time age more quickly than tires that are used continuously.

Volkswagen recommends replacing tires that are more than six years old with new tires. This even applies to tires that may appear to be usable and whose tread depth is still greater than the minimum requirement → ⚠.

Winter and all season tires lose their characteristics to a large extent due to aging, regardless of the remaining tread depth.

The age of the tire can be determined based on the production date ⇒ *Tire pressure*.

Storing tires

- Only store tires in a cool, dry location that is as dark as possible.
- Do not stand tires that are mounted on rims up vertically.
- Protect tires that are not mounted on rims from dirt with suitable covers and store them standing on the tread surface.

New tires

- Drive particularly carefully during the first 370 miles (600 km) with new tires because they must be *broken in*. Tires that have not been broken in yet have reduced gripping abilities → ⚠ and braking efficiency → ⚠.
- Only use tires with the same design and as close to the same construction, size, and tread pattern as possible on all four wheels.

Volkswagen Genuine tires

At the factory, the vehicle can be equipped with Volkswagen Genuine tires. These tires are marked with the ⊕ symbol and are specially adapted for this vehicle. Volkswagen Genuine tires fulfill the highest standards of safety and driving characteristics when used appropriately.

Replacing tires

- At the factory, the vehicle can be equipped with reduced rolling resistance tires. The specified fuel consumption values can only be achieved using these tires. When purchasing new tires, always make sure the tires are optimized for rolling resistance ⇒ *Eco tips*.
- Before buying new reduced rolling resistance tires, seek advice from an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
- At a minimum, replace both tires on a single axle → ⚠.
- Only replace old tires with tires that have been approved by Volkswagen for your vehicle model.
- Never use tires whose size exceeds the measurement of tires that are approved by Volkswagen.

Recalibrating the Tire Pressure Monitoring System

The Tire Pressure Monitoring System must be recalibrated each time one or more wheels is replaced. This also applies if the tires are rotated, for example from fro to back ⇒ *Tire Pressure Monitoring System*.

⚠ WARNING

Corrosive fluids and materials can cause visible and invisible damage to the tires, which can cause the tires to fail.

- Always keep chemicals, oils, grease, fuel, brake fluid, and other corrosive materials away from the tires.

WARNING

Old tires can lose pressure suddenly at high speeds or fail and cause accidents and serious injuries. This is true even if the tires have not been used yet.

- Only use tires that are more than six years old if absolutely necessary and drive with extreme caution if doing so.

WARNING

New tires must be broken in because they have reduced traction and braking efficiency when they are new.

- To reduce the risk of accidents and serious injuries, drive carefully during the first 370 miles (600 km).

WARNING

Tires must have enough clearance from vehicle components. If there is not enough clearance, tires could rub against components of the suspension, the body, and the brake lines, which can cause the brake system to fail, the tread to separate, and the tire to fail.

- The actual dimensions of the tires must not exceed the dimensions of the tire manufacturers approved by Volkswagen, and the tires must not rub against other components of the vehicle.

NOTICE

Avoid strong impacts and drive around obstacles where possible. The risk of tire damage is especially great if driving over potholes and curbs. Damage to the tires and rims can result.

NOTICE

Do not damage the valves when replacing tires. Never drive without caps on the valves. The valves could be damaged.

Always dispose of old tires correctly and according to regulations.

If the spare wheel is different from the regular vehicle wheels, e.g. in the case of winter tires or a temporary spare wheel, only use the spare wheel temporarily and in the event of a breakdown, and drive especially carefully. Replace the compact spare wheel with a regular wheel as soon as possible.

Using tires approved by Volkswagen ensures that the dimensions will fit correctly on your vehicle. If other tires are used, the seller must provide a certificate from the tire manufacturer stating that the tires are suitable for the vehicle. Keep the certificate stored safely in the vehicle.

Rims and wheel bolts

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ *Introduction*.

Rims, tires, and wheel bolts are determined based on the vehicle model. Whenever another rim is installed, the wheel bolts to be used must have the correct length and bolt head shape. This ensures that the brakes can work correctly and that the vehicle drives smoothly and safely.

For technical reasons, standard rims from other vehicles cannot be used. Under certain circumstances, this may even apply to rims for the same vehicle model.

Wheel bolts

The correct wheel bolts must always be used for each vehicle model, and these bolts must always be tightened to the correct torque ⇒ *Wheel bolts*.

The wheel bolt tightening torque must be checked regularly with a functional torque wrench ⇒ *Wheel bolts*.

Rims with bolted rim ring or accent elements

Rims with a bolted rim ring or accent element consist of multiple pieces. These pieces are connected together with special bolts. Damaged rims must be replaced and may only be repaired by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Rim identification

In some countries, new rims must include information about certain properties. The following information may be on the rim:

- Seal of conformity
- Rim size
- Manufacturer or brand name
- Production date (month/year)
- Country of origin
- Serial number
- Raw material batch number

- Commodity code

⚠ WARNING

Using unsuitable or damaged rims can impair driving safety and cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Only use rims permitted for the vehicle.
- Check the rims regularly for damage and replace them if necessary.

⚠ WARNING

Loosening and tightening bolts incorrectly on rims with bolted rim rings can cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Never loosen the bolts on rims with a bolted rim ring.
- Have all procedures on rims with bolted rim rings performed by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Tire pressure

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ ⚠ *Introduction*.

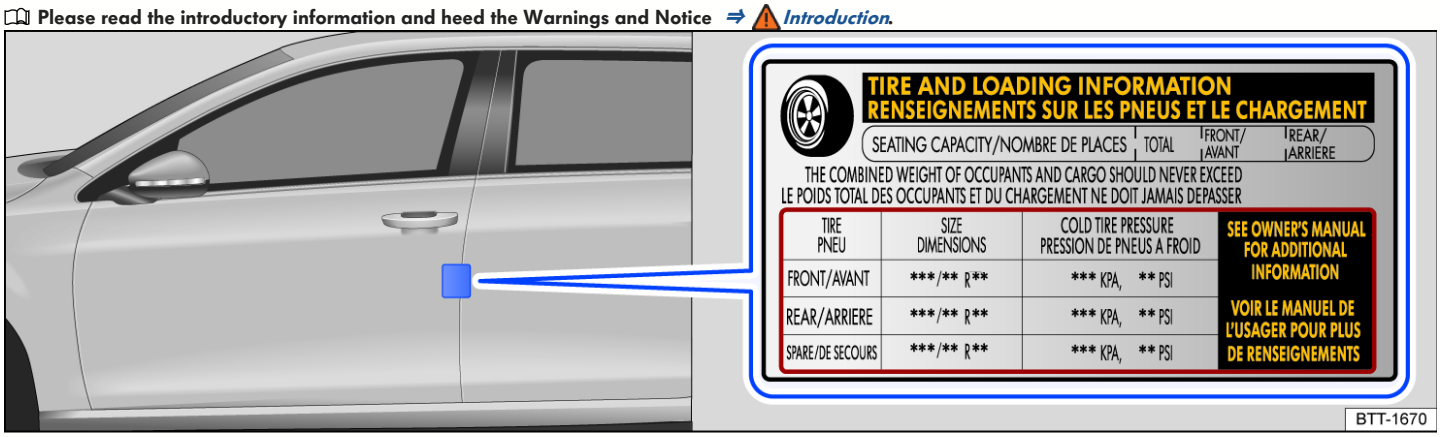


Fig. 174 On the driver door pillar: tire pressure sticker

The correct tire pressure for the tires fitted at the factory can be found on a label on the B-pillar of the driver door *fig. 174*. The factory-installed tires can be winter, summer or all-season tires.

An incorrect tire pressure can cause increased tire wear, negatively affect driving behavior and damage tires. Compliance with the correct tire pressure is very important, particularly when driving at high speeds.

The specified tire pressure is given for a cold tire. For warm tires, the pressure is higher.

1. Never reduce the pressure of a warm tire in order to reach the specified value.

   This will cause the actual pressure when the tire is cold to be too low.

Checking the tire pressure

- Check the tire pressure at least once a month.
- Check the tire pressure only when tires are cold. The specified tire pressure only applies to a cold tire. The tire pressure on warm tires is higher than on cold tires. Therefore, never release air from a warm tire to adjust the tire pressure.
- Always adjust the tire pressures to the vehicle load *fig. 174*.
- After adjusting tire pressures, always screw the caps on the valves and note the information about the Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS).
- Always use the tire pressures specified on the label. Never exceed the maximum tire pressure specified on the side of the tire.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect tire pressures can cause tires to suddenly lose air or go flat while driving. This can cause accidents and fatal injuries.

- If the tire pressure is too low, the tire can heat up so much while driving that the tread separates or the tire ruptures.
- Excessive speeds and vehicle loads can cause overheating, sudden tire damage (including tire blow-outs), and separation of the tread, which can then result in loss of vehicle control.
- An incorrect tire pressure shortens the service life of the tire and negatively affects driving behavior.
- Check the tire pressures regularly, at least once a month and also before driving long distances.
- All tires must always be inflated to the correct pressure based on the load.

- Never reduce the tire pressure when tires are warm.

NOTICE

- When positioning the tire pressure gage, make sure it is not tilted at the valve stem. If it is, it could damage the tire valve.
- Always make sure all valve caps are fully tightened when driving.

Tire pressures that are too low increase fuel consumption.

Tire inflation pressure for cold tires

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ *Introduction*.

Golf GTI			
Size designation	Tire pressure		
	psi	kPA	bar
225/45 R17 XL	36	250	2.5
225/40 R18 XL	39	270	2.7
235/35 R19 XL	39	270	2.7
T125/70 R18 99M	61	420	4.2

Golf R			
Size designation	Tire pressure		
	psi	kPA	bar
225/40 R18 XL	42	290	2.9
235/35 R19 XL	42	290	2.9

Details of the correct tire pressure are located on the tire pressure label on the driver's door pillar. If the details on the tire pressure label differ from the details in the Manual, the details on the tire pressure label apply.

[3] This data was not yet available at the time of printing.

Tread depth and wear indicator

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ *Introduction*.

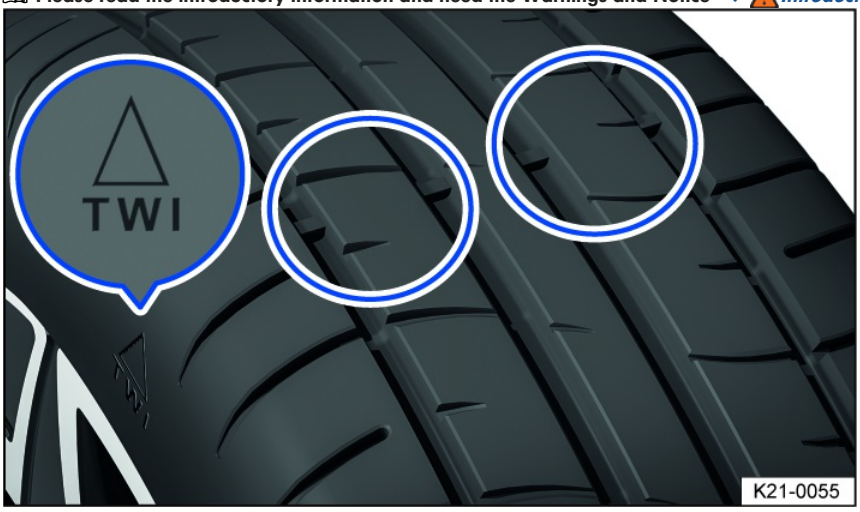


Fig. 175 Tire tread: tread wear indicator.

Tread depth

Most driving situations require a tire tread that is as deep as possible. All tires, or at least tires on the same axle, must have an even tread depth → ⚠. This app in particular to wet or wintry road conditions.

In most countries, the legal minimum tread depth is 1/16 of an inch (1.6 mm). This is measured in the tread grooves next to the wear indicators. Observe any other

legal regulations in force in the country in which you are driving.

Note the legal requirements in the applicable country for minimum tread depths on winter tires and all-season tires.

Tread wear indicator in tires

The tread wear indicator indicates if a tire is worn out. At the latest, the tire must be replaced if the tread depth is worn down to the tread wear indicator.

The wear indicator is 1/16 of an inch (1.6 mm) above the base of the tires *fig. 175*. Markings on the sides of the tire indicate the location of the tread wear indicato *fig. 175*.

⚠ WARNING

Worn tires are a safety risk and can cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle and lead to serious injuries.

- You must replace tires with new tires at the latest when the tires are worn down to the wear indicator.
- Worn tires have significantly less grip, especially on wet roads, and the vehicle is more likely to “hydroplane”.
- Worn tires reduce the driver’s ability to control the vehicle well in normal and difficult driving situations, and they increase the braking distance as well as the risk of skidding.

Tire damage

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ ⚠ *Introduction*.
Damage to tires and rims can often occur where it is not visible → ⚠.

1. If you suspect that a wheel is damaged, slow down and stop as soon as traffic allows and it is safe to do so.
2. Check the tires and rims for damage.
3. Do not continue driving if there is tire damage.
4. Replace the damaged wheel ⇒ *Introduction*. If necessary, contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Volkswage recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

   Or: seal the damaged tire using the tire mobility set and inflate it with air ⇒ *Introduction*.
5. If no exterior damage is visible, drive slowly and carefully to the nearest authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility to have the vehicle checked. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Objects embedded in tires

1. If an object has punctured through to the inside of a tire, leave the object in place. Objects stuck between the tire tread segments can be removed.
2. Replace the damaged wheel ⇒ *Introduction*. If necessary, contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Volkswage recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

   Or: seal the damaged tire using the tire mobility set and inflate it with air ⇒ *Introduction*.
3. Check and adjust the tire pressure.
4. Contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
5. *On vehicles with run-flat tires (AirStop® tires):* leave the object in the tire and contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Sealant that has been applied to the inside of the tire running surface will surround the object and seal the tire temporarily.

Tire wear

Tire wear depends on various factors:

- Driving style.
- Wheel balancing.
- Running gear alignment.

Driving quickly around curves, rapid acceleration, and heavy braking increase tire wear.

An imbalance can occur while driving, which can be noticed by uneven steering. Tire imbalances also affect tire wear. In these situations, have the wheels balance again.

Incorrect wheel alignment impairs driving safety and increases tire wear. If there is high degree of tire wear, have the wheel alignment checked by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

⚠ WARNING

Unusual vibrations or the vehicle pulling to one side while driving may indicate tire damage.

- Slow down immediately and stop the vehicle as soon as the traffic situation allows and it is safe to do so.

- Check the tires and rims for damage.
- Never continue driving with damaged tires or rims. Instead, seek assistance from an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
- If no exterior damage is visible, drive slowly and carefully to the nearest authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility to have the vehicle checked. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

New tires and replacement tires

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ *Introduction*.

New tires

- Drive particularly carefully during the first 370 miles (600 km) with new tires because they must be broken in. Tires that have not been broken in yet have reduced grip and braking efficiency ⇒ *Handling wheels and tires*.
- Only use tires with the same design and as close to the same construction, size, and tread pattern as possible on all four wheels.
- The tread depth of new tires may vary between tire models and manufacturers due to different design features and tread designs.

Replacing tires

- At the factory, the vehicle is equipped with tires designed to reduce the rolling resistance as much as possible. The specified fuel economy and range can only be achieved using these tires. When purchasing new tires, always make sure the tires are optimized for rolling resistance ⇒ *Eco tips*.
- Before buying new reduced rolling resistance tires, seek advice from an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
- At a minimum, replace both tires on a single axle ⇒ *Handling wheels and tires*.
- Only replace old tires with tires that have been approved by Volkswagen for your vehicle model.
- Only replace old tires with tires that have the same specifications – including width, diameter, bearing capacity and maximum speed – such as the tires approved for your vehicle and model by Volkswagen.
- Never use tires whose size exceeds the measurement of tires that are approved by Volkswagen.

Recalibrating the Tire Pressure Monitoring System

The Tire Pressure Monitoring System must be recalibrated each time one or more wheels is replaced. This also applies if the tires are rotated, for example from fro to back ⇒ *Tire Pressure Monitoring System*.

WARNING

Corrosive fluids and materials can cause visible and invisible damage to the tires, which can cause the tires to fail.

- Always keep chemicals, oils, grease, fuel, brake fluid, and other corrosive materials away from the tires.

WARNING

New tires must be broken in because they have reduced traction and braking efficiency when they are new.

- To reduce the risk of accidents and serious injuries, drive carefully during the first 370 miles (600 km).

WARNING

Tires must have enough clearance from vehicle components. If there is not enough clearance, tires could rub against components of the suspension, the body, and the brake lines, which can cause the brake system to fail, the tread to separate, and the tire to fail.

- The actual dimensions of the tires must not exceed the dimensions of the tire manufacturers approved by Volkswagen, and the tires must not rub against other components of the vehicle.

NOTICE

Do not damage the valves when replacing tires. Never drive without caps on the valves. The valves could be damaged.

Always dispose of old tires correctly and according to regulations.

If the spare wheel is different from the regular vehicle wheels, e.g. in the case of winter tires or a temporary spare wheel, only use the spare wheel temporarily and in the event of a breakdown, and drive especially carefully. Replace the compact spare wheel with a regular wheel as soon as possible.

The size specifications for new tires may vary significantly from the actual tire dimensions for different tire brands.

Tire labeling and terminology, glossary, handling new tires, UTQG classification

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ *Introduction*.

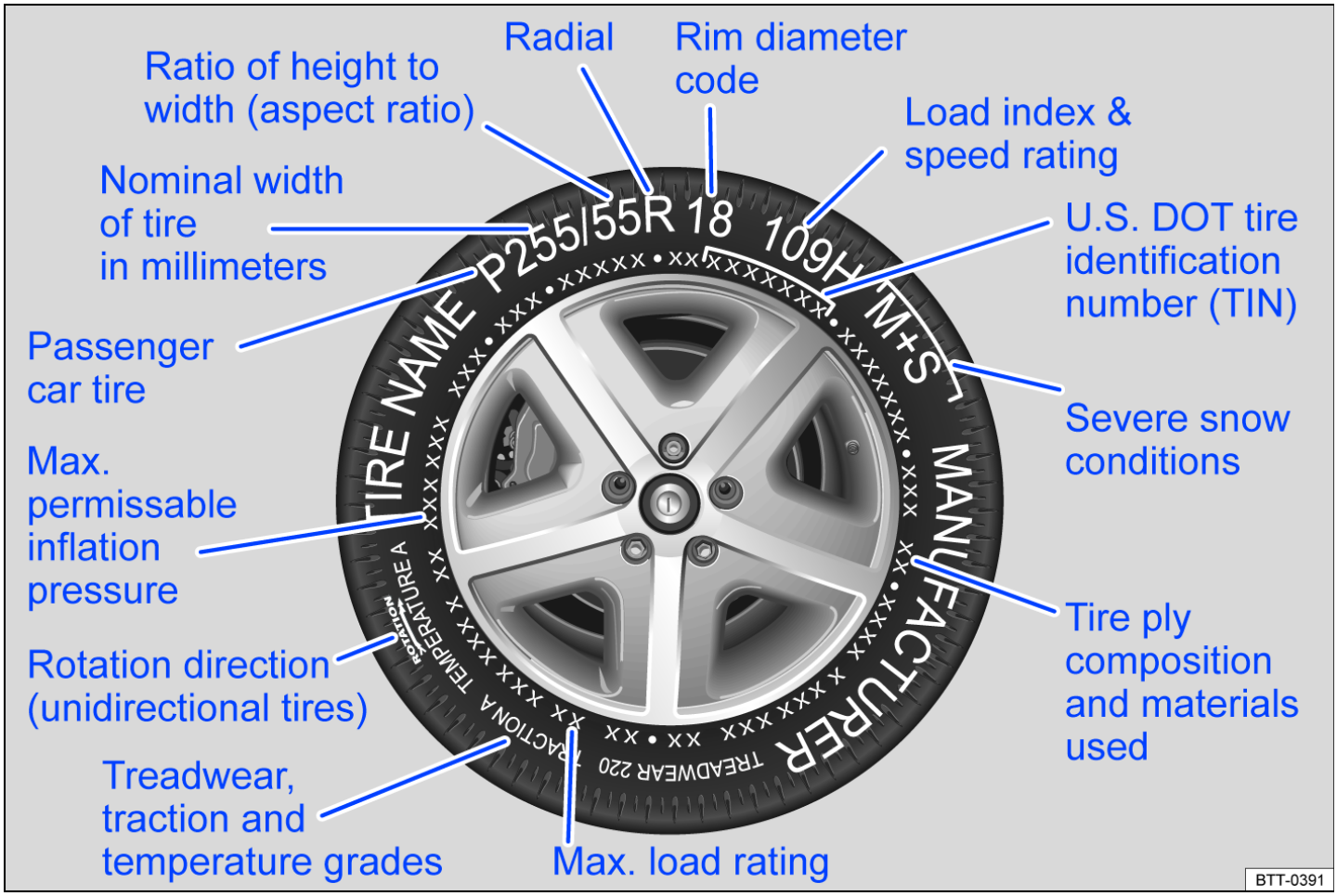


Fig. 176 International tire labeling.

Knowing about tire specifications makes it easier to choose the correct replacement tires. Radial tires have specifications marked on the sidewall.

Tire labeling (example)	Meaning	
Brand, Logo	*Manufacturer*	
Tire name	Individual tire designation of the manufacturer.	
P255 / 55 R 18	Dimensions:	
	P	Tire application: Passenger car
	255	Nominal sidewall-to-sidewall width of tire in millimeters.
	55	Ratio of height to width (aspect ratio)
	R	Tire belt design letter code for radial.
	18	Rim diameter (in inches)
109 H	Load rating code and speed rating code.	

<table>
<tr><th>Tire labeling (example)</th><th colspan="2">Meaning</th></tr>
<tr><td>XL</td><td colspan="2">Indicates “reinforced” tire (heavy-duty)</td></tr>
<tr><td>M+S or M/S</td><td colspan="2">Indicates Mud and Snow capability (also M/S).</td></tr>
<tr><td>RADIAL TUBELESS</td><td colspan="2">Tubeless radial tire.</td></tr>
<tr><td>E4 ...</td><td colspan="2">Labeling according to international regulations (E) including number of the approving country. The multi-digit approval number is listed next.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="6">DOT BT RA TY5 1709</td><td colspan="2">Tire identification number (TIN) – In some cases the manufacturing date is only on one side of the tire:</td></tr>
<tr><td>DOT</td><td>The tire complies with the requirements of the United States Department of Transportation, responsible for issuing safety standards.</td></tr>
<tr><td>BT</td><td>Identification letter of the manufacturing site.</td></tr>
<tr><td>RA</td><td>Manufacturer information regarding tire dimensions.</td></tr>
<tr><td>TY5</td><td>Tire characteristics provided by the manufacturer.</td></tr>
<tr><td>1709</td><td>Manufacturing date: 17th week in 2009.</td></tr>
<tr><td>TWI</td><td colspan="2">Marks the position of the treadwear indicator.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Made in Germany</td><td colspan="2">Country of manufacture.</td></tr>
<tr><td>MAX LOAD 615 KG (1356 LBS)</td><td colspan="2">United States maximum load rating per wheel.</td></tr>
<tr><td>MAX INFLATION 350 KPA (51 PSI)</td><td colspan="2">United States maximum permissible inflation pressure.</td></tr>
<tr><td>ROTATION</td><td colspan="2">Rotation direction (unidirectional tires)</td></tr>
<tr><td>SIDEWALL 1 PLY RAYON</td><td colspan="2">Tire ply composition and materials used:
1 layer of rayon.</td></tr>
<tr><td>TREAD 4 PLIES
1 RAYON + 2 STEEL + 1 NYLON</td><td colspan="2">Tire tread composition and materials used:
In this example there are 4 layers under the tread: 1 layer of rayon, 2 layers of steel belt and 1 layer of nylon.</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">Consumer information regarding comparison to specified base tires (standardized test procedure) :</td></tr>
<tr><td>TREADWEAR 220</td><td colspan="2">Relative service life expectancy of the tire referenced to a U.S.-specific standard test.</td></tr>
<tr><td>TRACTION A</td><td colspan="2">Traction rating under wet conditions (AA, A, B or C).</td></tr>
<tr><td>TEMPERATURE A</td><td colspan="2">Temperature stability of the tire at increased test bench speeds (A, B or C).</td></tr>
</table>

Tire labeling (example)	Meaning
Additional numbers found on the tire could either be tire manufacturer internal labels or country-specific labels (such as for Brazil and China).	

Unidirectional tires

Unidirectional tires are designed to rotate only in one direction. Unidirectional tires have arrows on the sidewalls that show the direction of rotation. Make sure you mount the tire so that it rotates in the proper direction. The tire's performance with regard to hydroplaning, traction, noise, and wear is worse if it is not mounted in th proper direction of rotation.

If you have to mount a tire opposite to its proper direction of rotation, you must drive more carefully, since the tire is no longer being used as designed. This is particularly important on wet roads. You must replace or remount the tire as soon as possible in order to restore the correct direction of rotation.

Load rating code

The load index indicates the maximum permissible load per individual tire in pounds (kilograms).

91 1356 lbs (615 kg)

92 1388 lbs (630 kg)

93 1433 lbs (650 kg)

95 1521 lbs (690 kg)

97 1609 lbs (730 kg)

98 1653 lbs (750 kg)

99 1709 lbs (775 kg)

100 1763 lbs (800 kg)

101 1819 lbs (825 kg)

102 1874 lbs (850 kg)

103 1929 lbs (875 kg)

104 1984 lbs (900 kg)

110 2337 lbs (1060 kg)

Speed rating code letter

The speed rating code letter indicates the maximum permissible road speed of the tires.

P up to 93 mph (150 km/h)

Q up to 99 mph (160 km/h)

R up to 106 mph (170 km/h)

S up to 112 mph (180 km/h)

T up to 118 mph (190 km/h)

U up to 124 mph (200 km/h)

H up to 130 mph (210 km/h)

V up to 149 mph (240 km/h)

W up to 168 mph (270 km/h)

Y up to 186 mph (300 km/h)

Z over 149 mph (240 km/h)

Some tire manufacturers label tires with a maximum permissible road speed above 149 mph (240 km/h) with the letter combination “ZR.”

⚠ WARNING

Using incorrect or unmatched tires and/or wheels or improper tire and wheel combinations can lead to loss of control, collision and serious personal injury.

- Always use tires, wheels and wheel bolts that meet the specifications of the original factory-installed tires or other combinations that have been specifically approved by the vehicle manufacturer.
- All 4 wheels must be fitted with radial tires of the same type, the same size (tread circumference), and the same tread pattern. Driving with different tires reduces vehicle handling and can lead to a loss of control.
- Never drive faster than the maximum speed for which the tires installed on your vehicle are rated because tires that are driven faster than their rated

speed can fail suddenly.

- Overloading tires can cause heat build-up, sudden tire failure, including a blowout and sudden deflation and loss of control.
- Temperature grades apply to tires that are properly inflated and not over- or underinflated.

Glossary of tire and loading terminology

Accessory weight: The combined weight (in excess of those standard items which may be replaced) of automatic transmission, electro-mechanical power steering power brakes, power windows, power seats, radio, and heater, to the extent that these items are available as factory-installed equipment (whether installed or not).

Aspect ratio: The ratio of sidewall height to tire width, expressed as a percentage. A number of 50 (0.5:1 or 50%) means that the cross-sectional height is 50% of the tread width. A shorter sidewall can improve steering response and provide better overall handling, for example, on dry pavement.

Bead: The part of a tire made of steel wires, wrapped or reinforced by ply cords, with the shape and structure to ensure proper fit to the wheel rim.

Bead separation:A breakdown of the bond between components in the bead.

Carcass: The tire structure, except tread and sidewall rubber which, when inflated, bears the load.

Chunking:he breaking away of pieces of the tread or sidewall.

Cord: The strands of material forming the plies in the tire.

Cord separation: The parting of cords from adjacent rubber compounds.

Cracking: Any parting within the tread, sidewall, or inner liner of the tire extending to cord material.

Cold tire inflation pressure: The tire pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer for a tire of a specified size that has not been driven for more than a couple of miles (kilometers) at low speeds in the 3 hour period before the tire pressure is measured or adjusted.

Curb weight: The weight of a motor vehicle with standard equipment including the maximum capacity of fuel, oil, and coolant, air conditioner, and additional weight of optional equipment.

Extra load tire: A tire designed to operate at higher loads and at higher inflation pressures than the corresponding standard tire.

Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR): The load-carrying capacity of a single axle system, measured where the tire contacts the ground.

Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR): The maximum loaded weight of the vehicle.

Groove: The space between 2 adjacent tread ribs.

Load rating code: The maximum load that a tire is rated to carry for a given inflation pressure. You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by law.

Maximum loaded vehicle weight: The total of:

- Curb weight.
- Accessory weight.
- Vehicle capacity weight.
- Production options weight.

Maximum (permissible) inflation pressure: The maximum cold inflation pressure to which a tire may be inflated. Also called “maximum inflation pressure.”

Normal occupant weight: Means 150 lbs (68 kilograms) times the number of occupants seated in the vehicle up to the total seating capacity of your vehicle.

Occupant distribution: The placement of passengers in a vehicle.

Outer diameter: The diameter of a new, properly inflated tire.

Overall width: Total width measured at the exterior sidewalls of an inflated tire, including the additional width of labeling, decorations, or protective bands or ribs.

Passenger car tire: A tire intended for use on passenger cars, multipurpose passenger vehicles, and trucks, that have a gross vehicle weight rating (GVWR) of 10,000 pounds or less.

Ply: A layer of rubber-coated parallel cords.

Ply separation: A parting of rubber compound between adjacent plies.

Pneumatic tire:A mechanical device made of rubber, chemicals, fabric, and steel or other materials, that, when mounted on an automotive wheel, provides the traction and contains the gas or fluid that sustains the load.

Production options weight: The combined weight of installed regular production options weighing over 5 lbs (2.3 kg) more than the standard items they replace, and not previously considered as curb weight or accessory weight. These include, for example, heavy-duty brakes, ride levelers, roof rack, heavy-duty battery, and special trim.

Radial ply tires: A pneumatic tire in which the ply cords that extend to the beads are laid at substantially 90 degrees to the centerline of the tread.

Recommended inflation pressure: The tire pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer for a tire of a specified size that has not been driven for more tha a couple of miles (kilometers) at low speeds in the 3 hour period before the tire pressure is measured or adjusted.

Reinforced tire: A tire designed to operate at higher loads and at higher inflation pressures than the corresponding standard tire.

Rim: The outer edge of a wheel upon which the tire beads are seated.

Rim diameter: The nominal diameter of the wheel's tire bead seating surface. If you change your wheel size, to wheels of a different diameter, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new wheels.

Rim size: Designation means rim diameter and width.

Rim type designation: The industry or manufacturer's designation for a rim by style or code.

Rim width: The nominal distance between wheel rim flanges.

Section width: The linear distance between the exteriors of the sidewalls of an inflated tire, excluding elevations due to labeling decoration, or protective bands.

Sidewall: The portion of a tire between the bead and the tread.

Sidewall separation: The parting of the rubber compound from the cord material in the sidewall.

Speed rating (letter code): A standardized letter code indicating the maximum speed at which a tire is designed to be driven for extended periods of time. The ratings range from 93 mph (150 km/h) “P” to 186 mph (300 km/h) “Y”. The speed rating letter code, where applicable, is molded on the tire sidewall. You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by law.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System: A system that detects when at least one of a vehicle's tires is underinflated and illuminates a low tire-pressure warning light.

Tread: The portion of a tire that normally touches the road.

Tread rib: A tread section running circumferentially around a tire.

Tread separation: Tire failure caused by the tread pulling away from the tire carcass.

Tread wear indicators (TWI): Raised areas within the main tread grooves that show, visually, when tires are worn and near the end of their useful life.

Uniform Tire Quality Grading (UTQG): A tire information system developed by the U.S. National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) that is designed to help buyers compare tires. UTQG is not a safety rating, nor is it a guarantee that a tire will last for a certain number of miles or perform a certain way. It gives tire buyers more information to compare with factors such as price, brand loyalty and dealer recommendations. Under UTQG, tires are graded by the tire manufacturer in 3 areas: tread wear, traction and temperature resistance. UTQG information is molded into the tire sidewalls.

U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number (TIN): A tire's serial number. It begins with the letters “DOT” (“Department of Transportation”) and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next 2 numbers or letters indicate the plant where the tire was manufactured. The last 4 numbers represent the week and year of manufacture. For example, the numbers 1709 mean that the tire was produced in the 17th week of 2009. Any other numbers are marketing codes used by the tire manufacturer. This information is used to help identify affected consumers if a tire defect requires a recall.

Vehicle capacity weight: The total rated cargo, luggage and passenger load. Passenger load is 150 lbs (68 kilograms) times the vehicle's total seating capacity (a listed on the label inside the driver door).

Vehicle maximum load on the tire: The load on an individual tire that is determined by taking each axle's share of the maximum loaded vehicle weight (GAWR) and dividing by 2.

Vehicle normal load on the tire: The load on an individual tire that is determined by taking each axle's share of the curb weight, accessory weight, and normal occupant weight (distributed according to the table below) and dividing by 2.

Wheel size designation: Wheel rim diameter and width.

Occupant loading and distribution for vehicle normal load for various designated seating capacities:

Designated seating capacity, number of occupants	Vehicle normal load, number of occupants	Occupant distribution in a normally loaded vehicle
2, 3, or 4	2	2 in front
5, 6, or 7	3	2 in front, 1 in back

New tires

- Drive a vehicle with new tires especially carefully for the first 350 miles (560 km) because the tires must first be *broken in*. Tires that are not broken in have reduced traction and braking performance.
- Install only radial tires of the same make, the same dimensions (tread circumference), and similar tread profile on all 4 wheels.
- The tread depth of new tires can differ between tire models and manufacturers because of different design features and tread design.

Replacing tires

- Tires should be replaced in pairs and not individually (both front tires or both rear tires at the same time).
- Replace tires only with tires that have the same specifications, including width and diameter, load and top speed rating as the tires approved by Volkswagen fo your vehicle and model.
- Never use tires that are larger or wider than the dimensions of the tires approved by Volkswagen for your vehicle and model. Larger tires could scrape and rub on the vehicle body or other parts of the vehicle.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) considerations: The Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) must be recalibrated whenever you remove and remount or change any wheel or tire on the vehicle, even if the reinstalled or replacement wheels and tires are identical to those that were removed and even if the tire pressure does not change

⚠ WARNING

New tires tend to be slippery and must be broken in.

- Always drive with special care for the first 350 miles (560 km) to help reduce the risk of losing control, a collision, and serious personal injuries.

⚠ WARNING

Tires must have the required clearance. Tires that do not have enough clearance can rub against parts of the vehicle body, suspension, and brake system, causing brake system failure, tread delamination, and sudden blowouts.

- Always make sure that new tires are not larger than the tires approved for your vehicle and that the new tires do not rub against parts of the vehicle.

NOTICE

- When switching to different tires, make certain the valves are not damaged.
- Never drive without valve stem caps. The valves could be damaged.
- If the sensor on the Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) must be replaced, the valve must be replaced at the same time.

Always dispose of old tires in accordance with legal requirements.

If the replacement wheel is different from the tires that you have mounted on your vehicle — for example, winter tires, wider, low-profile tires, or a compact spare — only use the replacement wheel for a short time and drive cautiously.

Although tire size specifications can be the same, the actual dimensions may differ from those nominal values for different tire makes, or the tire contours may be significantly different.

UTQG classification

Uniform Tire Quality Grading (UTQG): Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between the tread shoulder and maximum section width. Example:

- Treadwear (number)
- Traction: AA, A, B or C
- Temperature: A, B or C

For example: Treadwear 200, Traction AA, Temperature A.

All passenger car tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades.

Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course.

For example, a tire graded 150 (Treadwear-value 150) would wear one-and-one-half (1 1/2) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100.

The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Traction

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C. Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

Temperature

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B, and C representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat, and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure.

The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

⚠ WARNING

The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning or peak traction characteristics.

⚠ WARNING

The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation or excessive loading,

either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

[4] TIN represents the serial number of the tire.

Tire load and vehicle load, determining the correct load

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ *Introduction*.

Vehicles and tires have a limited load capacity. An overloaded vehicle is difficult to steer and brakes less effectively. Overloading your vehicle can also cause damage to the vehicle and tires, such as tire blowouts and sudden pressure losses.

To ensure your safety and the safety of your passengers, never exceed the maximum vehicle weight. This is specified as the **Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR)**.

The GVWR includes the weight of your vehicle including all additional equipment, a full fuel tank, all fluids and its maximum load. The maximum load includes the number of people that can travel in the vehicle (number of seats) with an average weight of 150 lbs (68 kg) per person, and also luggage. In trailer mode, the weigh of the trailer and the trailer tongue weight rating must be included in calculations.

The **Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR)** is the maximum axle load per axle. The GVWR and GAWR are listed on the safety certificate on the B-pillar on the driver's side.

Your vehicle has either 4 (2 front, 2 rear), 5 (2 front, 3 rear), 6 (2 front, 2 center, 2 rear) or 7 (2 front, 3 center, 2 rear) seats, depending on the type of vehicle. Each seat has a safety belt. As there is an upper limit to the GVWR, the maximum load also has an upper limit. Traveling with a full vehicle or with passengers heavier than 150 lbs (68 kg) per person will reduce the remaining possible load.

The tire inflation pressure label for your vehicle also specifies the maximum weight.

Determining the correct tire load

Never overload tires. The followingexample illustrates how to determinethe combined weight of all vehicleoccupants and luggage or othervehicle payloads. Never overload thevehicle!

Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit:	
1.	Locate the statement “The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs.” on your vehicle's placard.
2.	Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3.	Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lbs.
4.	The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the “XXX” amount equals 1400 lbs. and there will be five 150 lb passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs. (1400–750 (5 × 150) = 650 lbs.)
5.	Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.
6.	If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.
	Check the tire sidewall to determine the load index specified for thetire.

WARNING

Exceeding the maximum vehicle weight can cause you to lose control of the vehicle and cause accidents resulting in severe and/or fatal injuries.

- Never exceed the maximum load or the maximum vehicle weight as per the GVWR.

Winter tires

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ *Introduction*.

Summer tires offer very little holding force on icy or snowy roads. Winter or all-season tires improve vehicle handling and braking performance in winter road conditions. Volkswagen recommends using winter tires on the vehicle at temperatures below +45 °F (+7 °C) or in winter road conditions.

The effectiveness of winter or all-season tires is greatly reduced when the tire tread is worn down to a depth of 3/16 of an inch (4 mm).

The following applies when using winter tires:

- Follow all applicable laws in the country of operation.
- Use winter tires on all four wheels at the same time.
- Only use in winter road conditions.
- Only use the tire sizes permitted for the vehicle.
- Only use winter tires that have the same belt construction, size, and tread pattern.
- Follow the speed restriction based on the speed rating .

Speed restriction

Winter tires have a speed restriction based on their speed rating ⇒ *Tire labeling and terminology, glossary, handling new tires, UTQG classification* .

A speed warning can be set in the Vehicle settings menu in the Infotainment System under the Tires menu.

On V winter tires, the speed restriction and required tire pressure depend on the engine. Always ask an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility about the permitted speed and required tire pressure. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

All wheel drive (4MOTION)

With all wheel drive, the vehicle has good forward motion with standard tires in winter conditions. However, Volkswagen recommends using winter or all season tire on *all* four wheels in the winter, because this will also improve the *braking performance*.

Note the information about snow chains ⇒ *Snow chains*.

⚠ WARNING

Do not be tempted into taking safety risks due to the improved vehicle handling that the winter tires provide in winter conditions.

Exceeding the speed limit for the winter tires may lead to sudden tire failure and loss of vehicle control.

- Never ignore the speed limit for the winter tires fitted to your vehicle, even if the permissible maximum speed for the vehicle is higher.
- Never exceed the maximum load for the winter tires fitted to your vehicle.
- Adapt your speed and driving style to the visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.

When temperatures are above +45 °F (+7 °C), summer tires provide better vehicle handling. There is less road noise, the tires wear more slowly, and economy is better.

For vehicles with a tire pressure monitoring indicator, the system must be reprogrammed after wheel(s) are changed ⇒ *Tire Pressure Monitoring System*.

You can contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility for permitted winter tire sizes. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Snow chains

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ ⚠ *Introduction*.
Note the legal requirements and the permitted maximum speed when driving with snow chains.

Snow chains improve driving and braking handling when on roads covered with ice or snow.

Snow chains may **only be fit on the front wheels** .

If possible, use fine-mesh snow chains that include a chain lock no larger than 13.5 mm.

Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility for more information about wheel, tire, and snow chain sizes. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

If using snow chains, remove the wheel covers and rim accent rings before mounting the snow chains. However, the wheel bolts must be covered with caps for safety reasons. Caps can be obtained from an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility

Using snow chains on the compact spare tire or collapsible spare tire

Using snow chains on the compact spare tire or collapsible spare tire is not permitted for technical reasons.

1. If a front tire is flat, mount the compact spare tire or collapsible spare tire on the rear axle.
2. Replace the damaged front wheel with the removed rear wheel. Pay attention to the running direction when doing this.

Volkswagen recommends attaching the snow chains before mounting the wheel.

⚠ WARNING

Using unsuitable snow chains or installing snow chains incorrectly can cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Always use the correct snow chains.
- Follow the installation instructions provided by the snow chain manufacturer.
- Never drive faster than permitted when snow chains are mounted.

NOTICE

- Remove snow chains when driving on roads without snow. Otherwise, snow chains can impair handling and damage the tires, and the chains will quickly

be destroyed.

- Snow chains that come into contact with the rim directly can scratch or damage the rim. Volkswagen recommends using snow chains with integrated rim protection.

On vehicles with a Tire Pressure Monitoring System, the system must be reprogrammed after snow chains are mounted ⇒ *Tire Pressure Monitoring System*.

Wheel covers

Hubcap

Removing the hubcap



Fig. 177 Remove the hubcap.

The wheel center trim is for protecting the wheel bolts and must be reattached after a wheel change.

1. *Removing:* Take the extraction hook out of the vehicle toolkit ⇒ *Vehicle tool kit components* and insert in a hole (alloy wheel) or hook it to the edge (steel whee of the hubcap *fig. 177*.
2. Remove the trim in the direction of the arrow *fig. 177*.
3. *Installing:* press the hubcap centrally on the rim and press it against the rim until it you feel it engage.

⚠ WARNING

Unsuitable wheel covers and assembling wheel covers incorrectly can cause accidents and serious injuries.

Wheel covers that are installed incorrectly can loosen while driving and endanger other road users.

- Do not use damaged hubcaps.
- Always make sure that the air supply to cool the brakes is not blocked or reduced. This also applies when wheel covers are retrofitted. An insufficient air supply can cause the braking distance to increase significantly.

Wheel covers

Removing the wheel hub cover



Fig. 178 Remove the wheel hub cover.

The full wheel covers protect the wheel bolts and must be reattached after a wheel change.

1. Take the extraction hook out of the vehicle tool kit ⇒ *Vehicle tool kit components*.
2. Engage the extraction hook in one of the openings on the wheel hub cover.
3. Remove the wheel hub cover with extraction hook in the direction of the arrow. If necessary, use a lug wrench for removal *fig. 178*.

Installing the full wheel cover

1. Make sure the anti-theft wheel bolts are positioned correctly ⇒ *Wheel bolts*.
2. Press the full wheel cover onto the rim so that the opening for the valve aligns with the tire valve. Make sure that the entire outer edge of the cover is secured.

⚠ WARNING

Unsuitable wheel covers and assembling wheel covers incorrectly can cause accidents and serious injuries.

Wheel covers that are installed incorrectly can loosen while driving and endanger other road users.

- Do not use damaged hubcaps.
- Always make sure that the air supply to cool the brakes is not blocked or reduced. This also applies when wheel covers are retrofitted. An insufficient air supply can cause the braking distance to increase significantly.

NOTICE

The wheel cover may be screwed tightly and must not be removed with force.

Wheel bolt caps

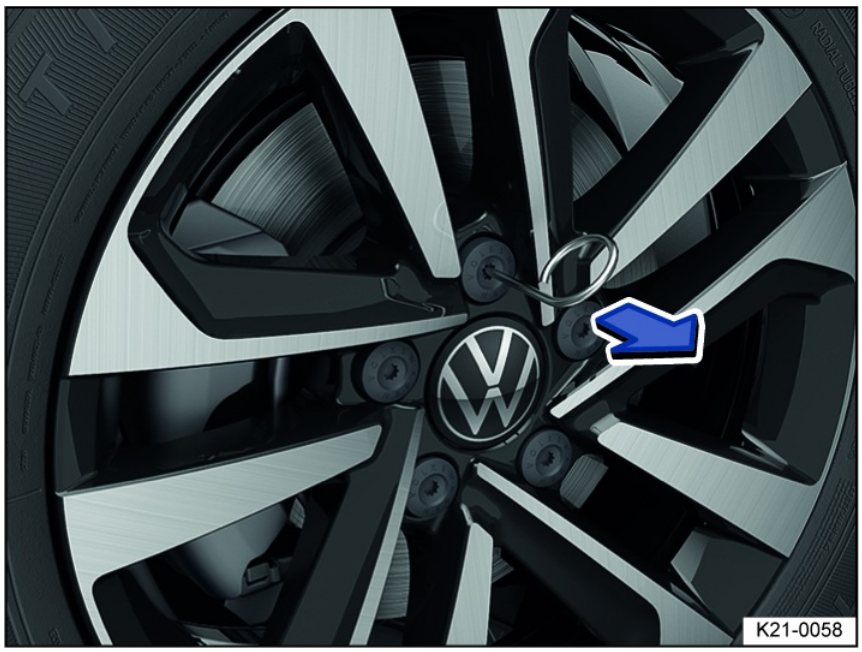


Fig. 179 Remove the caps from the wheel bolts.

The caps are for protecting the wheel bolts and must be completely reattached after a wheel change.

Removing and attaching caps

1. *Removing:* Take the extraction hook out of the vehicle tool kit ⇒ *Vehicle tool kit components*.
2. Insert the extraction hook through the opening in the cap *fig. 179* and pull in the direction of the arrow.
3. *Attaching:* push the cap all the way on the wheel bolts.

The **anti-theft wheel bolt** has a separate cap. This cap only fits on the anti-theft wheel bolt and not on conventional wheel bolts.

Wheel change

Introduction

Only change the wheel yourself if the vehicle is parked securely, you are familiar with the safety precautions and the necessary procedures and you have the necessary tools. Some vehicles are delivered from the factory without a vehicle jack and lug wrench. In such cases, have the wheel changed by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

The vehicle jack supplied by the factory is only designed for changing one wheel that has a damaged tire and must be replaced. If both tires on one side of the vehicle, both tires on one axle, or all tires are damaged, contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility for assistance. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

⚠ WARNING

Changing a wheel can be dangerous, especially when done on the side of the road. To reduce the risk of serious injuries, observe the following:

- Stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Park the vehicle a safe distance away from moving traffic to change the wheel.
- All passengers, especially children, must keep a safe distance and be outside of the work area when changing a wheel.
- Switch on the emergency flashers to warn other road users.
- Make sure the vehicle is on level and solid ground. If necessary, place a large, stable surface under the jack.
- Only carry out the wheel change yourself if you are familiar with the necessary steps. Instead, seek assistance from an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
- Only use suitable and undamaged tools for wheel changes.
- Always switch off the engine and move the selector lever to the **P** position to reduce the risk of the vehicle moving unintentionally.

  With a manual transmission, leave the vehicle in gear to reduce the risk of the vehicle moving unintentionally.
- Set the electronic parking brake.
- After changing a wheel, immediately check the tightening torque of the wheel bolts with an undamaged torque wrench that is functioning correctly.
- If your vehicle is equipped with a Tire Pressure Monitoring System, you must recalibrate the system immediately after a wheel is changed ⇒ *Tire Pressure Monitoring System*.

Preparations for changing a wheel

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ ⚠ *Introduction*.

Checklist

Always perform the following steps in the specified order to prepare for a wheel change ⇒ ⚠:

1. If the vehicle has a flat tire, park the vehicle a safe distance away from moving traffic on level and solid ground as soon as possible.
2. Set the electronic parking brake.
3. Automatic transmission: move the selector lever into the **P** position.
4. Stop the engine and switch the ignition off.
5. Manual transmission: engage a gear.
6. Have all vehicle occupants exit the vehicle on the side facing away from traffic and move to a safe area.
7. Turn on the emergency flashers and set up the warning triangle ⇒ *Securing yourself and the vehicle*. Follow any applicable laws.
8. Block the tire that is diagonal from the one you will be changing with a stone, chocks, or another suitable object.
9. If the luggage compartment is full: remove the contents from the luggage compartment.
10. Where applicable, remove the subwoofer ⇒ *Subwoofer*.
11. Remove the collapsible spare wheel, full-size spare wheel or compact spare wheel and the vehicle tool kit from the luggage compartment.
12. Remove the wheel covers ⇒ *Wheel covers*.

⚠ WARNING

Failing to heed this checklist that is provided for your own safety can cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Always follow the tasks in the checklist.
- Observe the general safety precautions.

Wheel bolts

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ ⚠ *Introduction*.

Loosening wheel bolts



Fig. 180 Changing a tire: loosening the wheel bolts.

Use a suitable lug wrench to loosen the wheel bolts.

Only loosen the wheel bolts a few turns while the vehicle is not raised with the vehicle jack.

1. Slide the lug wrench all the way onto the wheel bolt *fig. 180*.
2. Hold the end of the lug wrench and turn the wheel bolt about one turn counterclockwise ⇒ ⚠.

   Or: if a wheel bolt cannot be loosened, carefully press on the end of the lug wrench using your foot. Hold onto the vehicle firmly while doing this and make sure you have secure footing.

Loosening anti-theft wheel bolts

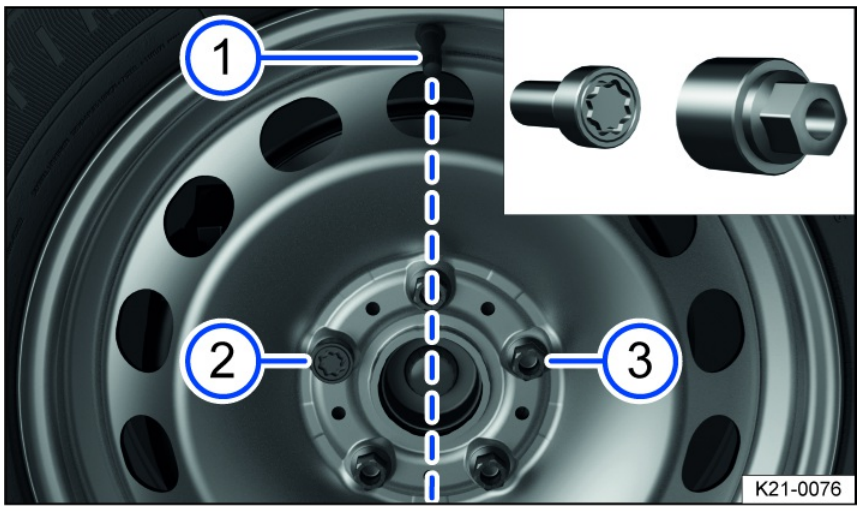


Fig. 181 Changing a tire: tire valve (1) and locations of the anti-theft wheel bolt (2) or (3).

1. Remove the adapter for anti-theft wheel bolts from the vehicle tool kit.
2. Slide the adapter all the way into the anti-theft wheel bolt.
3. Slide the lug wrench all the way onto the adapter.
4. Hold the end of the lug wrench and turn the wheel bolt about one turn counterclockwise ⇒ ⚠.

Installing anti-theft wheel bolts (full wheel covers)

On wheels with full wheel covers, the anti-theft wheel bolt must be fitted in position *fig. 181* (2) or (3), based on the position of the tire valve (1). Otherwise, it will not be possible to install the full wheel cover.

Wheel bolt tightening specification

Tightening specification for wheel bolts in steel and aluminum alloy rims:

- **103 ft-lbs (140 Nm)**.

Wheel bolts that are corroded and difficult to turn must be replaced and the threads in the wheel hub must be cleaned before checking the tightening torque.

Never grease or oil the wheel bolts and the threads in the wheel hub.

Check the tightening torque using a functioning torque wrench immediately after changing a wheel.

⚠ WARNING

Wheel bolts that are tightened incorrectly can loosen while driving and cause accidents, serious injuries, and loss of vehicle control.

- The wheel bolts and threads in the wheel hub must be clean, easy to move, and free of oil and grease.
- Always use only the lug wrench to loosen and secure the wheel bolts that have been attached to the vehicle at the factory.
- Only loosen the wheel bolts about one turn while the vehicle is not lifted with the jack.
- Never grease or oil the wheel bolts and the threads in the wheel hub. Even when tightened to the specification, they could become loose while driving.
- Never loosen the bolts on rims with a bolted rim ring.
- Check the tightening torque regularly with a torque wrench. If the wheel bolts are not tightened enough to meet the specification, the wheel bolts and rims could come loose while driving. Exceeding the tightening specification could damage the wheel bolts and threads.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect wheel bolts can loosen while driving and cause accidents, serious injuries, and loss of vehicle control.

- Only use wheel bolts that are intended to be used with the rim.
- Never use different wheel bolts.

Subwoofer

🕮 Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ ⚠ *Introduction*.

The subwoofer must be removed before the spare wheel can be removed.

Removing the subwoofer (version 1)

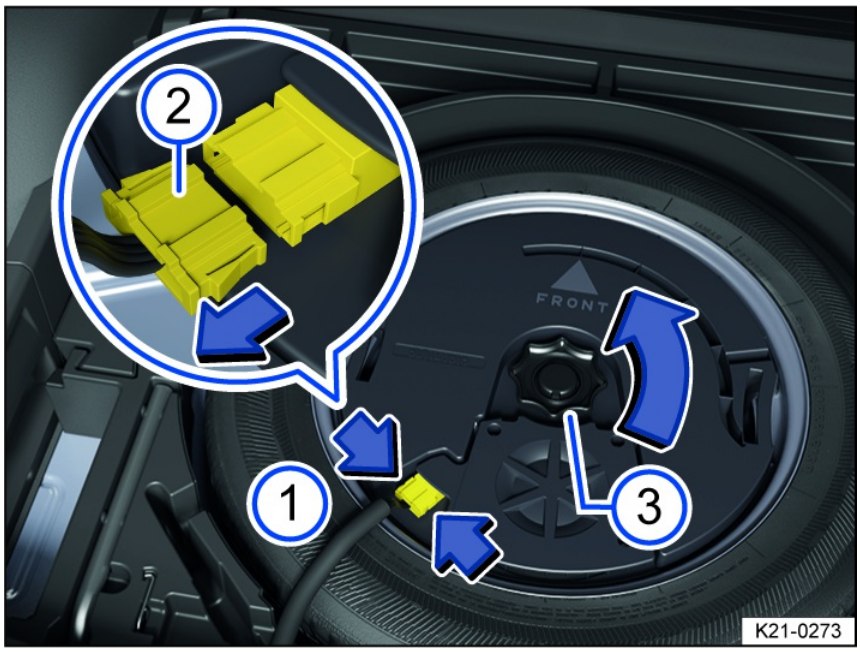


Fig. 182 In the luggage compartment: removing the subwoofer (version 1).

1. Lift up or remove the variable luggage compartment floor ⇒ *Variable luggage compartment floor*.
2. To release the connector, press the *fig. 182* lugs together (arrows ①).
3. Remove the connector *fig. 182* in the direction of the arrow and set the electrical wire that you have just removed to one side.
4. Unscrew the handwheel *fig. 182* in the direction of the arrow.
5. Lift the subwoofer out carefully.

Installing the subwoofer (version 1)

1. Place the subwoofer carefully in the rim well. The arrow symbol with the word “FRONT” on the subwoofer must point forward.
2. Push the connector *fig. 182* in until you hear it click into place.
3. Turn the handwheel *fig. 182* on the threaded pin in the opposite direction to the arrow until the subwoofer is securely fastened.
4. Place the variable luggage compartment floor on the floor cover.

Removing the subwoofer (version 2)

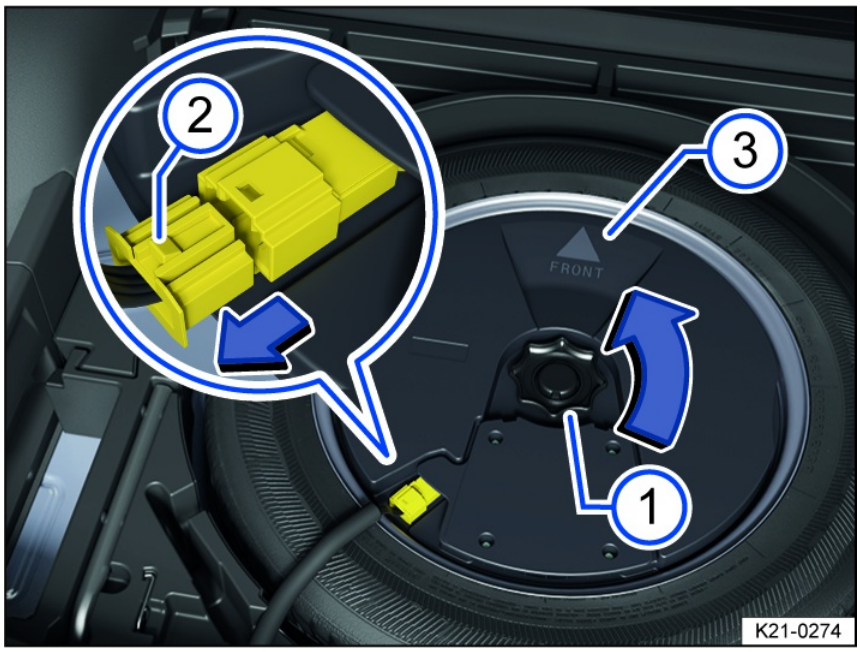


Fig. 183 In the luggage compartment: removing the subwoofer (version 2).

1. Lift the variable luggage compartment floor until it can be held by the side retainers.
2. Remove the handle *fig. 183* in the direction of the arrow.
3. To release the connector, press the locking mechanism on the end of the connector *fig. 183*.
4. Remove the connector in the direction of the arrow and set the removed wire to the side.
5. Lift the subwoofer out carefully.

Installing the subwoofer (version 2)

1. Place the subwoofer carefully in the rim well. The point of the “FRONT” *fig. 183* arrow symbol on the subwoofer must face forward
2. Connect the connector until the lock *fig. 183* latches into place.
3. Turn the handwheel *fig. 183* on the threaded pin in the opposite direction to the arrow until the subwoofer is securely fastened.
4. Place the variable luggage compartment floor on the floor cover.

Spare wheel or compact spare wheel

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ *Introduction*.



Fig. 184 In the luggage compartment: Handle to secure the spare wheel or compact spare wheel.

Removing the spare wheel, collapsible spare wheel or compact spare wheel

1. Open the trunk lid.
2. Lift up or remove the luggage compartment floor ⇒ *Luggage compartment floor*.
3. If necessary, lift up and remove the carpet.
4. Remove the vehicle tool kit with the container.
5. If necessary, remove the subwoofer ⇒ *Subwoofer*.
6. Turn the handwheel in the center of the spare wheel *fig. 184* all the way counterclockwise.
7. Remove the spare wheel, collapsible spare wheel, or compact spare wheel.

Stowing the removed tire

1. Open the trunk lid.
2. Lift up or remove the luggage compartment floor ⇒ *Luggage compartment floor*.
3. If necessary, lift up and remove the carpet.
4. Position the removed tire with the rim downward in the spare wheel well so that the center hole of the rim rests exactly over the hole or the threaded pin.
5. Turn the handwheel clockwise on the threaded pin until the removed wheel is securely fastened.
6. Place the vehicle tool kit back in the container and store it securely.
7. If necessary, place the carpet in the luggage compartment.
8. Reinsert the luggage compartment floor ⇒ *Luggage compartment floor*.
9. Close the trunk lid.

If the spare wheel is different from the regular tires

If the spare wheel is different from the regular wheels, then the spare wheel must only be used in the event of a vehicle breakdown and only for a short period of time .

Note the driver information:

- Do not drive faster than 50 mph (80 km/h).
- Avoid hard acceleration, heavy braking, and fast cornering.
- Do not use snow chains on the compact spare wheel ⇒ *Snow chains*.

- After installing the spare wheel or compact spare wheel, check the tire pressure as soon as possible ⇒ *Tire pressure*.

Installation of the compact spare wheel for R-models

The installation of the spare wheel on the front axle is not permitted for technical reasons. For a front-wheel tire:

1. Remove the rear wheel on the side of the damaged front wheel.
2. Install the compact spare wheel on the rear axle.
3. Replace the damaged front wheel with the removed rear wheel.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect handling of the spare wheel or compact spare wheel can result in loss of vehicle control, collisions, or other accidents, and serious injuries.

- Never use the spare wheel or compact spare wheel if it is damaged or if it is worn down to the wear indicator.
- Some vehicles may be equipped with a compact spare wheel instead of a spare wheel. The compact spare wheel can be identified by a label stating “80 km/h” or “50 mph”. This label indicates the permitted maximum speed at which the tire may be driven. Do not cover the sticker while the wheel is in use.
- Never drive faster than 50 mph (80 km/h).
- Never drive more than 125 miles (200 km) with a temporary spare wheel fitted to the drive axle.
- Avoid hard acceleration, hard braking, and driving fast around curves.
- Replace the compact spare wheel as soon as possible with a regular wheel. The spare wheel is only intended for short-term use.
- Always secure the compact spare wheel with the wheel bolts supplied by the factory.
- Never drive with more than one spare wheel that differs from the regular tires.
- After mounting the compact spare wheel,check the tire pressure as soon as possible ⇒ *Tire pressure*.
- Do not use snow chains on the compact spare wheel.
- For R-models: Only install the spare wheel on the rear axle.

Raising the vehicle with the vehicle jack

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ ⚠ *Introduction*.

Lift points

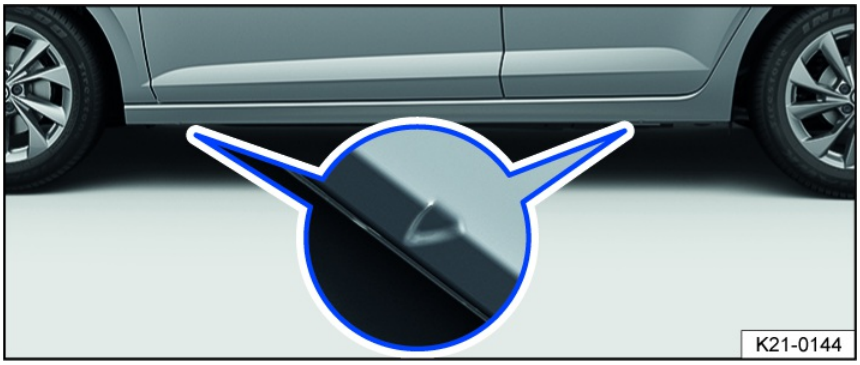


Fig. 185

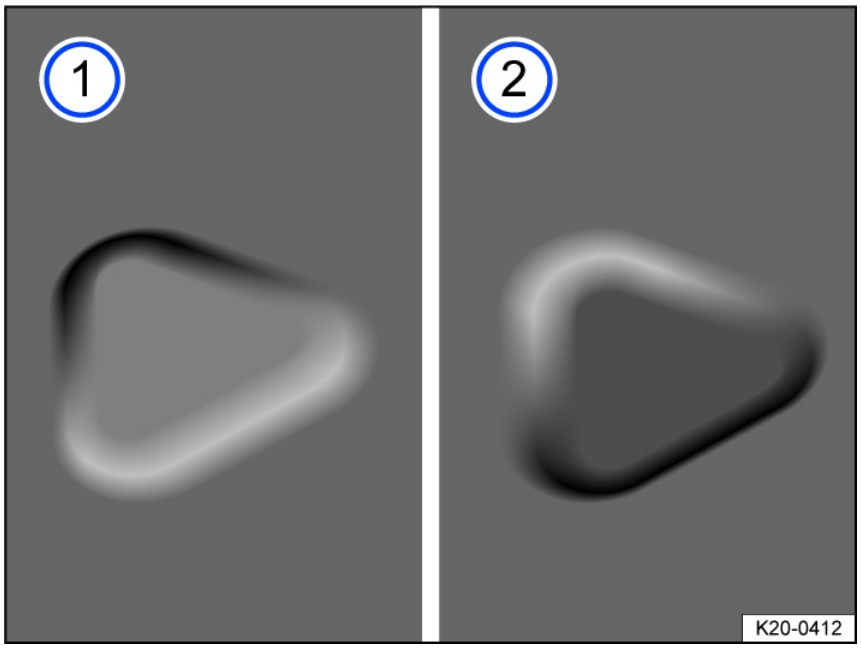


Fig. 186 Lift points for the jack: (1) Embossed marking, (2) protruding marking.

The vehicle jack must only be positioned at the reinforced areas on the underbody that are located behind the markings on the vehicle body *fig. 185*. The marking may be embossed *fig. 186* (1) or protruding (2). Do not mistake lift points for the jack for other components, e.g. fastening clips. The lift point that is nearest the affected tire should be used ⇒ ⚠.

Positioning the vehicle jack

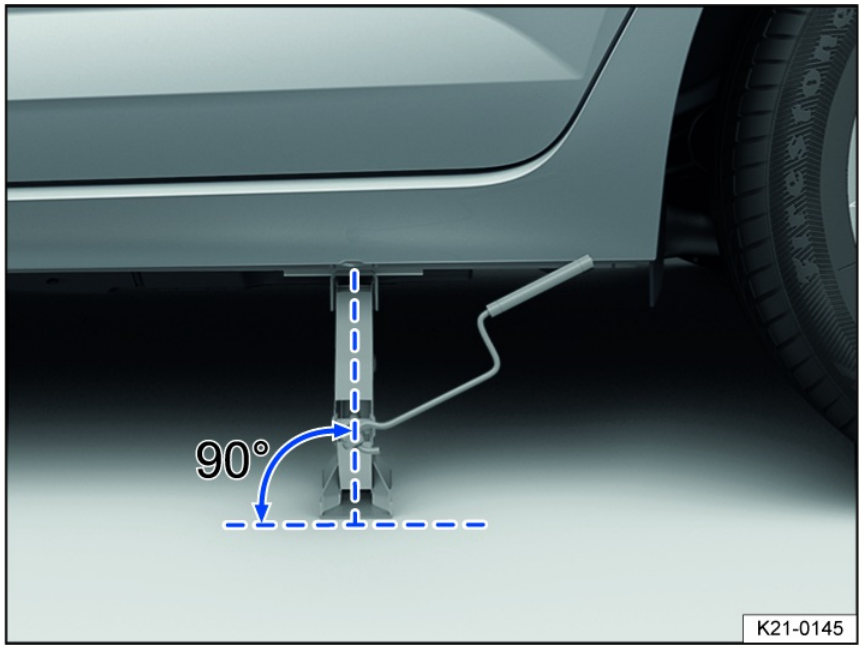


Fig. 187 Correct jack setup.

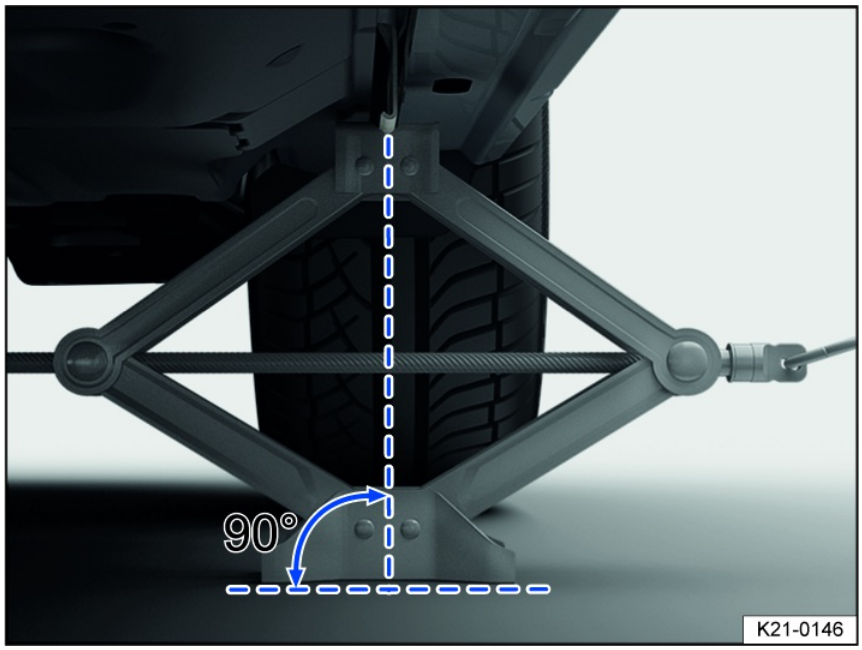


Fig. 188 Jack is positioned on the left side of the vehicle at the rear.

Checklist

For your own safety, follow the points below in the order they are given ⇒ ⚠:

1. Select an area where the ground is level and firm for raising the vehicle.
2. Adjust the steering wheel so that the wheels are not pointing straight forward.
3. Stop the engine.
4. Move the selector lever of the automatic transmission into the **P** position.

   Or: engage a gear on the manual transmission.
5. Set the electronic parking brake.
6. Block the tire that is diagonal from the one you will be changing with chocks or other suitable objects.
7. Loosen the wheel bolts ⇒ *Wheel bolts*.
8. Position the hand crank in the mount on the jack.
9. Find the vehicle lift point *fig. 185* under the vehicle that is closest to the wheel you will be changing.
10. Crank the jack upward so that it is still positioned under the vehicle lift point.
11. Make sure the entire base of the jack is seated securely on the ground and that the base of the jack is located exactly directly below the lift point *fig. 187* and *fig. 188*.
12. Straighten out the vehicle jack and continue raising the bracket on the top of the jack until the bracket is positioned on the brace under the vehicle *fig. 188*.
13. Continue raising the vehicle jack until the wheel is lifted off the ground.

⚠ WARNING

Using the vehicle jack incorrectly can result in the vehicle slipping from the jack and causing serious injuries. To reduce the risk of injuries, observe the following:

- Never raise the vehicle if more than one tire is damaged.
- Never raise the vehicle while the engine is running or while the vehicle is on ground that is tilted to the side or sloping.
- Never allow the engine to be started if the vehicle is raised. Engine vibrations could cause the vehicle to fall off the jack.
- Only place the vehicle jack at the lift points described. The bracket on the vehicle jack must firmly grip the sill *fig. 188*.
- Only use jacks that are approved by Volkswagen for the vehicle. Other vehicle jacks, including those approved for other Volkswagen models, could slip.
- The ground must be level and firm. Sloped or soft ground can cause the vehicle to slip off the jack. If necessary, place a large, stable surface under the jack.
- If you are on a smooth surface such as tile, place a non-slip underlay such as a rubber mat on the ground to prevent the jack from slipping.
- Never place any part of your body such as your arm or leg under the vehicle when it is supported only by the jack.
- If you must work underneath the vehicle, additionally support the vehicle securely with suitable stands.

⚠ WARNING

Failing to heed this checklist that is provided for your own safety can cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Always follow the activities in the checklist and follow the general safety precautions.

Changing a wheel

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ *Introduction*.

Removing a wheel



Fig. 189 Changing a tire: loosening the wheel bolts.

1. Follow the checklist ⇒ *Preparations for changing a wheel* .
2. Loosen the wheel bolts ⇒ *Wheel bolts*.
3. Raise the vehicle ⇒ *Raising the vehicle with the vehicle jack* .
4. Remove loose wheel bolts completely using the lug wrench *fig. 189* and place the bolts on a clean surface.
5. Remove the wheel.

Installing a spare wheel or compact spare wheel

1. Note the running direction of the tire ⇒ *Tire labeling and terminology, glossary, handling new tires, UTQG classification* .
2. For R-models: Only install the spare wheel on the rear axle ⇒ *Spare wheel or compact spare wheel* .
3. Position the wheel.
4. Install the anti-theft wheel bolt clockwise using the adapter in the correct position ⇒ *Wheel bolts* and lightly tighten.
5. Install all other bolts clockwise and lightly tighten.
6. Lower the vehicle with the vehicle jack.
7. Tighten all wheel bolts securely clockwise using the lug wrench ⇒ ⚠. Do not go in order around the wheel while doing this, but rather always switch to a wheel bolt on the opposite side.
8. Mount the caps, center wheel covers, or full wheel covers ⇒ *Wheel covers*.

After a wheel change

1. Clean the vehicle tool kit and place it back in the foam piece in the luggage compartment.
2. Stow the old wheel securely in the luggage compartment.
3. Always check the wheel bolt tightening torque ⇒ *Wheel bolts*.
4. Always have the damaged wheel replaced as soon as possible.

⚠ WARNING

An incorrect tightening torque or incorrectly treated wheel bolts can cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle and cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Always keep all wheel bolts and threads in the wheel hubs clean and free of oil and grease. The wheel bolts must be easy to move and tightened to the tightening specification.

The Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) indicator light may indicate a system malfunction after a wheel is changed ⇒ *Troubleshooting the Tire Pressure Monitoring System*.

Tire mobility set

Introduction

The tire mobility set can be used to temporarily, reliably seal damage to the tires which was caused by foreign objects or punctures up to a diameter of around **4 mm**. **The foreign object, such as a screw or nail, should not be removed from the tire!**

After the sealant has filled the tire, check and adjust the tire pressure again after a drive of approximately 10 minutes.

If more than one vehicle tired is damaged, seek assistance from an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. The tire mobility set is only designed to fill one tire.

Only use the tire mobility set when the vehicle is safely parked and you are confident of the necessaries skills and safety precautions! Instead, seek assistance fror an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Do not use the tire sealant:

- When the wheel rim is damaged.
- In outside temperatures of below -20 °C (-4 °F).
- When cuts or punctures to the tire are larger than 4 mm.
- If you have driven with a very low tire pressure or an empty tire.
- If the tire filler bottle is past its use-by date.
- If a foreign body has been removed from the tire.
- In combination with an AirStop® tire. You can tell if your vehicle is equipped with AirStop® tires by the lettering “Seal” on the outside of the tire.

⚠ WARNING

The use of tire mobility sets can be dangerous, especially when repairing tires on the side of the road. To reduce the risk of serious injuries, observe the following:

- Stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Park the vehicle at a safe distance from moving traffic to inflate the tires ⇒ *Securing yourself and the vehicle*.
- Make sure the vehicle is on level and solid ground.
- All passengers, especially children, must keep a safe distance and be clear of the work area.
- Switch on the emergency flashers to warn other road users.
- Only use the tire mobility set yourself if you are familiar with the necessary steps. Instead, seek assistance from an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
- The tire mobility set is only intended for emergency use in order to reach the nearest authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
- Tires repaired with the tire mobility set should be replaced immediately.
- If your skin comes into contact with the sealant, remove it immediately. The sealant is harmful to your health.
- Store the tire mobility set out of the reach of children.
- When using the tire mobility set, never raise the vehicle using a jack, even if the jack is approved for the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

A tire filled with sealant does not have the same driving characteristics as a normal tire.

- Never drive faster than 50 mph (80 km/h).
- Avoid hard acceleration, hard braking, and driving fast around curves.
- Drive at a maximum of 50 mph (80 km/h) for no more than 10 minutes and then check the tire.

Dispose of used or out-of-date sealant in accordance with statutory requirements.

Your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility can provide you with a new tire inflation bottle. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Read the separate operating instructions provided by the tire mobility set manufacturer.

Tire mobility set components

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ *Introduction*.

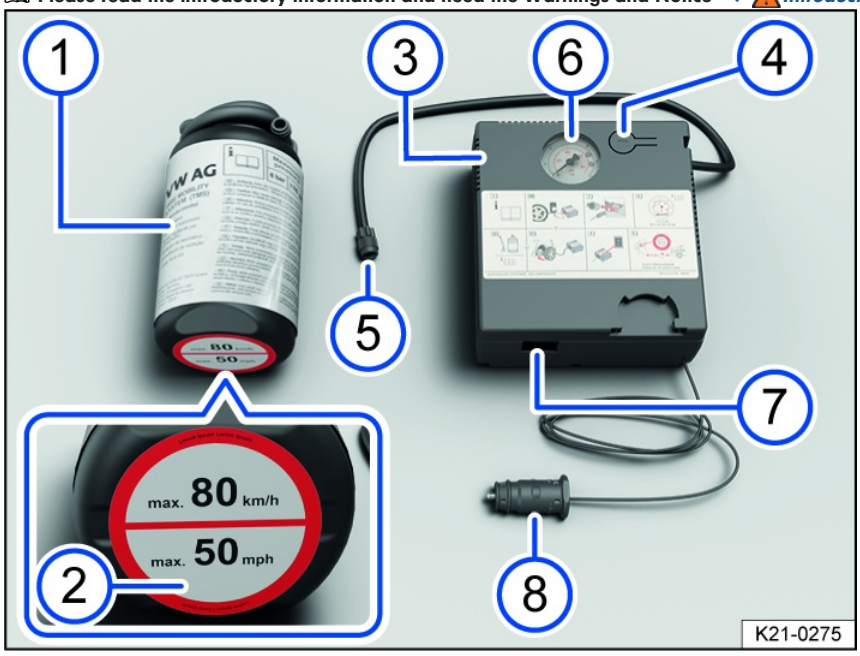


Fig. 190 General example: components of the tire mobility set.

(1) Tire inflation bottle with tire filler hose and sealant.

(2) Label with the speed specification “max. 50 mph” or “max. 80 km/h”.

(3) Air compressor

(4) Air drain plug

(5) Tire inflation hose

(6) Tire pressure gauge

(7) ON and OFF switch (may also be located on the side of the compressor).

(8) 12 V cable connector

The air compressor from the tire mobility set may be operated at the 12 V socket, even if the power specification on the air compressor label exceeds the maximum power draw of the socket.

Instead of the air drain plug, there may also be a button on the air compressor.

Preparations

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ *Introduction*.

Checklist

Always carry out the following tasks in the specified order →.

1. If the vehicle has a flat tire, park the vehicle a safe distance away from moving traffic on level, solid ground as soon as possible.
2. Set the electronic parking brake.
3. Automatic transmission: move the selector lever into the **P** position.
4. Stop the engine and switch the ignition off.
5. Manual transmission: engage a gear.
6. Have all vehicle occupants exit the vehicle on the side facing away from traffic and move to a safe area.
7. Turn on the emergency flashers and set up the warning triangle ⇒ *Securing yourself and the vehicle*. Follow any applicable laws.
8. Check whether a repair with the tire mobility set is possible ⇒ *Introduction*.
9. If the luggage compartment is full: remove the contents from the luggage compartment.
10. Remove the tire mobility set from the luggage compartment.
11. Stick the label from the tire mobility set ⇒ *Tire mobility set components* in the field of vision of the driver on the instrument panel.
12. Do not remove the foreign body, e.g. screw, from the tire.

WARNING

Failing to heed this checklist that is provided for your own safety can cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Always follow the activities in the checklist and follow the general safety precautions.

Sealing and pumping up tires

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ *Introduction*.

Sealing tires

1. Unscrew the valve cap from the tire valve.
2. Shake the tire inflation bottle *fig. 190* (1) vigorously back and forth a few times.
3. Screw the air compressor tire filler hose *fig. 190* (5) securely onto the tire filler bottle *fig. 190* (1) valve.
4. Screw the tire inflation hose of the tire inflation bottle *fig. 190* (1) securely onto the tire valve.
5. Hold the bottle upside down and fit the top of the tire filler bottle into the notch on the air compressor *fig. 190* (3).
6. Place the air compressor *fig. 190* (3) together with the tire filler bottle *fig. 190* (1) on an even surface.
7. Activate the vehicle's drive system.
8. Insert the 12-volt plug *fig. 190* (8) into a 12-volt-socket in the vehicle ⇒ *Sockets in the vehicle*.
9. Switch the air compressor on with the ON and OFF switch *fig. 190* (7).
10. Leave the air compressor running until 2.0 – 2.5 bar (29 – 36 psi/200 – 250 kPa) is reached. **Maximum run time: 8 minutes** ⇒ (!).
11. Switch off the air compressor.
12. **If a tire pressure of 2.0 – 2.5 bar (29 – 36 psi/200 – 250 kPa) has been achieved** , detach tire filler hose from the tire valve and drive on immediately at a maximum speed of 80 km/h (50 mph).
13. After driving for 10 minutes, park the vehicle at the next safe opportunity, for example, in a car park on even ground, and check the tire pressure ⇒ ⚠.

If a tire pressure of 2.0 – 2.5 bar (29 – 36 psi/200 – 250 kPa) cannot be reached

1. If a tire pressure of 2.0–2.5 bar (29–36 psi/200–250 kPa) cannot be reached, detach the tire inflation hose of the tire inflation bottle from the tire valve.
2. Drive the vehicle around 10 meters forward or backward so that the sealing agent is distributed in the tire.
3. Screw the air compressor tire filler hose directly onto the tire valve and repeat the inflation process.
4. If the required tire pressure still cannot be achieved, the tire is too badly damaged. The tire cannot be sealed with the tire mobility set. Do not continue driving ⚠. Seek assistance from an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
5. Disconnect the air compressor and unscrew the tire filler hose from the tire valve.
6. Immediately drive at a maximum of 80 km/h (50 mph), if a tire pressure of 2.0 – 2.5 bar (29 – 36 psi/200 – 250 kPa) has been reached.

Check after 10 minutes of driving

1. Park the vehicle on level and solid ground at the next safe opportunity, in a parking lot for example.
2. Connect the tire filler hose *fig. 190* (5) again and read the tire pressure off the tire pressure gauge *fig. 190* (3).

1.3 bar (19 psi/130 kPa) and less:

1. **Do not continue driving!** The tire cannot be adequately sealed with the tire mobility set ⇒ ⚠. Seek assistance from an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

20 psi/140 kPa (1.4 bar) and above:

1. Readjust the tire pressure to the correct value.
2. Carefully drive to the nearest authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility at a maximum of 50 mph (80 km/h). Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
3. Have the damaged tire replaced at an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

WARNING

The tire filler hose and the air compressor may become hot during pumping.

- Protect your hands and skin from hot parts.
- Do not place the hot tire inflation hose or air compressor on flammable materials.
- Allow the device to cool down substantially before stowing it.

⚠ WARNING

If the damaged tire cannot be adequately sealed with the tire mobility set, the tire will lose air while driving. This could cause tire failure, loss of vehicle control, accidents, and serious injuries and death.

- If the tire cannot be pumped to at least 2.0 bar (29 psi/200 kPa), the damage is too great. The sealing agent cannot seal the tire. Do not continue driving. Seek assistance from an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
- Do not continue driving if the tire pressure is 1.3 bar (19 psi/130 kPa) or less after 10 minutes of driving. Instead, seek assistance from an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

NOTICE

Switch off the air compressor after 8 minutes of operation at the latest so that it does not overheat.

- Allow the air compressor to cool down for several minutes before switching it on again.

Maintenance

Service

Information regarding the service schedule

Information regarding maintenance of your vehicle and the type and scope of service work can be found in your service schedule. The service schedule is included with your manual Service schedule.

Vehicle care

🕮 Vehicle care information

Regular, proper care helps to maintain your vehicle.

The longer dirt remains on the surfaces of vehicle components, the more difficult it may be to clean and care for them. Long-term exposure can make it impossible for dirt to be removed.

For questions regarding care products or for vehicle components that are not listed, consult a suitably qualified professional. Suitably qualified professionals can provide you with suitable accessories. Volkswagen recommends contacting your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Read and follow the usage instructions on the packaging.

⚠ WARNING

Improper care and cleaning of vehicle components could impair vehicle safety equipment and cause serious injuries.

- Clean and maintain vehicle components only according to the manufacturer's instructions.
- Always use approved or recommended cleaning solution.
- Never use cleaning solutions that contain solvents. Solvents can cause permanent damage to the airbag module.
- Protect your hands and arms against components with sharp edges, for example when cleaning the inside of the wheel housings.

⚠ WARNING

Dirty, foggy, or icy windows reduce visibility and increase the risk of accidents and serious injuries. The vehicle safety equipment could become impaired.

- Only drive when there is clear visibility through all windows.
- Do not use water-repellent window solutions on the windshield. This can cause intense glare under poor visual conditions.

⚠ WARNING

Care products can be poisonous and dangerous. Unsuitable care products and incorrect application of care products can cause accidents, serious injuries, burns, and poisoning.

- Only store care products in their sealed original containers.
- Read and follow the package leaflet.
- Keep children away from all care products.
- Only use care products outside or in well-ventilated areas so that no harmful vapors are inhaled.
- Never use turpentine, engine oil, nail polish remover, or other fluids with vapors that dissipate easily for vehicle care. They are poisonous and highly flammable.

ⓘ NOTICE

Cleaning dirt with aggressive and solvent-based products can cause permanent damage to vehicle equipment, even if only exposed to the vehicle component for a brief period, for example on seat cushions or decorative parts.

- Do not allow dirt to dry.
- Have stubborn spots removed by a suitably qualified, authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Washing the vehicle

🕮 **Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ ⚠ and ⓘ *Vehicle care information*.**

Washing your vehicle regularly prevents exposure to contamination, which may damage the paint.

Matte-finish vehicles require special care due to the particular properties of the paint.

To ensure that your vehicle is washed correctly and appropriately, note the following information ⇒ , ⇒ .

WARNING

After a car wash, the braking efficiency may be delayed due to damp or icy brake rotors and brake pads in the winter, and this can increase the braking distance.

- Perform careful braking maneuvers to “dry and remove ice” from the brakes. Do not endanger other road users while doing this.

NOTICE

Improper car washes can increase the risk of severe vehicle damage.

- Always follow the manufacturer's instructions.
- Do not wash the vehicle in direct sunlight.
- In cold weather, never direct a jet of water at locks, doors, or the trunk lid. Vehicle components could freeze.

Removing stubborn dirt on matte paint

- Soak insects or bird excrement that have adhered to the surface immediately with water and spray with a special cleaner for matte paint.
- Remove tar splashes on the paint surface with commercially available tar removers. Residue must not be removed by intensive rubbing.
- Remove tree resin and rust particles with special cleaner for matte paint and a cleaning clay bar. Slide the cleaning clay bar over the affected areas without pressing down on it.
- Spray grease and fingerprints with matte paint finish spray and rub with a soft microfiber cloth.
- Rinse gasoline residue immediately with plenty of water.

Automatic car washes

- If your vehicle has **matte paint**, never select a wash program with wax or drying aids.
- If your vehicle has **matte paint**, only use textile car washes, never brush car washes.
- For vehicle with decorative and protective decals, never use a wash package with hot wax.
- Choose car washes without brushes.
- Also ensure that the underside of the vehicle is washed regularly and thoroughly to remove any residue.
- Observe the information provided by the car wash operator, particularly with regard to attachments on the vehicle, e.g. spoilers ⇒ .

✓ The windows are closed and the outside mirrors are folded in.

✓ Vehicles with steering column lock: If the vehicle is mechanically towed in the car wash, the steering column must not be locked ⇒ *Steering information*.

✓ The windshield wiper ⇒ *Window wipers* and the rain/light sensor ⇒ *Rain/light sensor* are switched off.

✓ Auto Hold ⇒ *Auto Hold* is switched off.

✓ If applicable: the roof antenna has been removed.

NOTICE

Car washes which mechanically scan contours may damage the vehicle, e.g. spoiler.

Pressure washers

- Never use rotating nozzles. Observe the manufacturer's instructions.
- Only use water up to maximum +140 °F (+60 °C).
- Move the water jet evenly with a distance of at least 20 inches (50 cm) between the spray nozzle and all parts of the vehicle.
- Do not direct the water at the same spot for a long period of time.
- If possible, do not direct the water straight at sensitive vehicle components, e.g. rubber seals, side windows, glossy trims, tires, sensors, camera lenses, decorative and protective decals.
- Never clean icy or snow-covered door windows with a pressure washer.

Hand washing

Individual contaminations on the paint can be removed with a cleaning clay bar.

1. Clean dust and large dirt deposits from the vehicle with plenty of water.
2. If your vehicle has **matte paint**, remove insects, grease spots and fingerprints with a special cleaner for matte paint. Apply the product using a microfiber cloth with gentle pressure.
3. Clean the vehicle with a soft sponge, a washing glove, or a washing brush with light pressure. Start at the roof, and continue to work from the top down. Only

use a cleansing shampoo on stubborn dirt.

If your vehicle has **matte paint**, clean from top to bottom with a neutral cleansing shampoo and a microfiber cloth. Wash the microfiber cloth thoroughly at frequent intervals.

4. Clean the wheels and side members with a clean sponge.
5. Rinse with plenty of water.
6. Let the vehicle air dry. Remove water residue with a leather cloth.

NOTICE

Washing the vehicle incorrectly can destroy the matte paint finish.

- Never use washing programs with wax treatment.
- Generally, only cleaning agents free of solids and abrasives, such as cleansing shampoos or insect removers, can be used for cleaning purposes.
- Do not use insect sponges, rough kitchen sponges or similar. The surface may be damaged.

NOTICE

The plenum chamber drain can be blocked by leaves and dirt. Water that cannot drain may leak into the interior. Water introduced manually into the plenum chamber, for example with a pressure washer, can cause considerable vehicle damage.

- Remove leaves or other loose objects with a vacuum or by hand.
- Have the area under the perforated cover cleaned by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Only wash the vehicle in facilities specifically designed for that purpose. This will reduce the risk of water contaminated with oil from entering the sewer system.

Exterior care and cleaning

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ and *Vehicle care information*.
The following overview gives recommendations for cleaning and caring for individual vehicle components.

Door windows, glass surfaces

- Remove wax residue, for example from care products, with a suitable glass cleaner or the Volkswagen Genuine cleaning cloth.
- Remove snow with a hand brush.
- Remove ice with a plastic scraper. When doing so, scrape in one direction only.
- Defrost the ice with a suitable deicer or Volkswagen Genuine deicer.
- **Wiper blades:** ⇒ *Cleaning and changing wiper blades*.

Paint

Always treat surfaces with extreme care to prevent paint damage.

- Treat light contaminants, for example deposits, insects, and cosmetics, immediately with a clean soft towel and a mild soap solution of maximum two tablespoons of neutral soap in a liter of water, or with a cleaning clay bar.
- Clean spilled fuel or operating materials immediately.
- Dampen rust spots with soap solution. Then remove with a cleaning clay bar.
- Have corrosion removed by suitably qualified professionals. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
- In the event of paint damage, consult suitably qualified professionals and have the paint damage repaired. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

A preservation treatment protects the vehicle paint. When water no longer clearly beads up and drips off *clean* vehicle paint, the vehicle should be retreated with a wax protectant if not earlier.

- For **matte paint**, use a soft round sponge to apply a special wax for matte paint to the cleaned vehicle. Remove excess wax with a microfiber cloth.
- Even if a wax protectant is applied regularly in an automatic car wash, Volkswagen recommends protecting the vehicle paint at least twice a year with a suitable hard wax or Volkswagen Genuine hard wax.
- Polishing is only needed if the appearance of the vehicle paint is poor and a shiny finish can no longer be achieved using protectants.

  Never polish matte-finish surfaces. The surface will be permanently damaged by the paint shining.

Plenum chamber, engine compartment

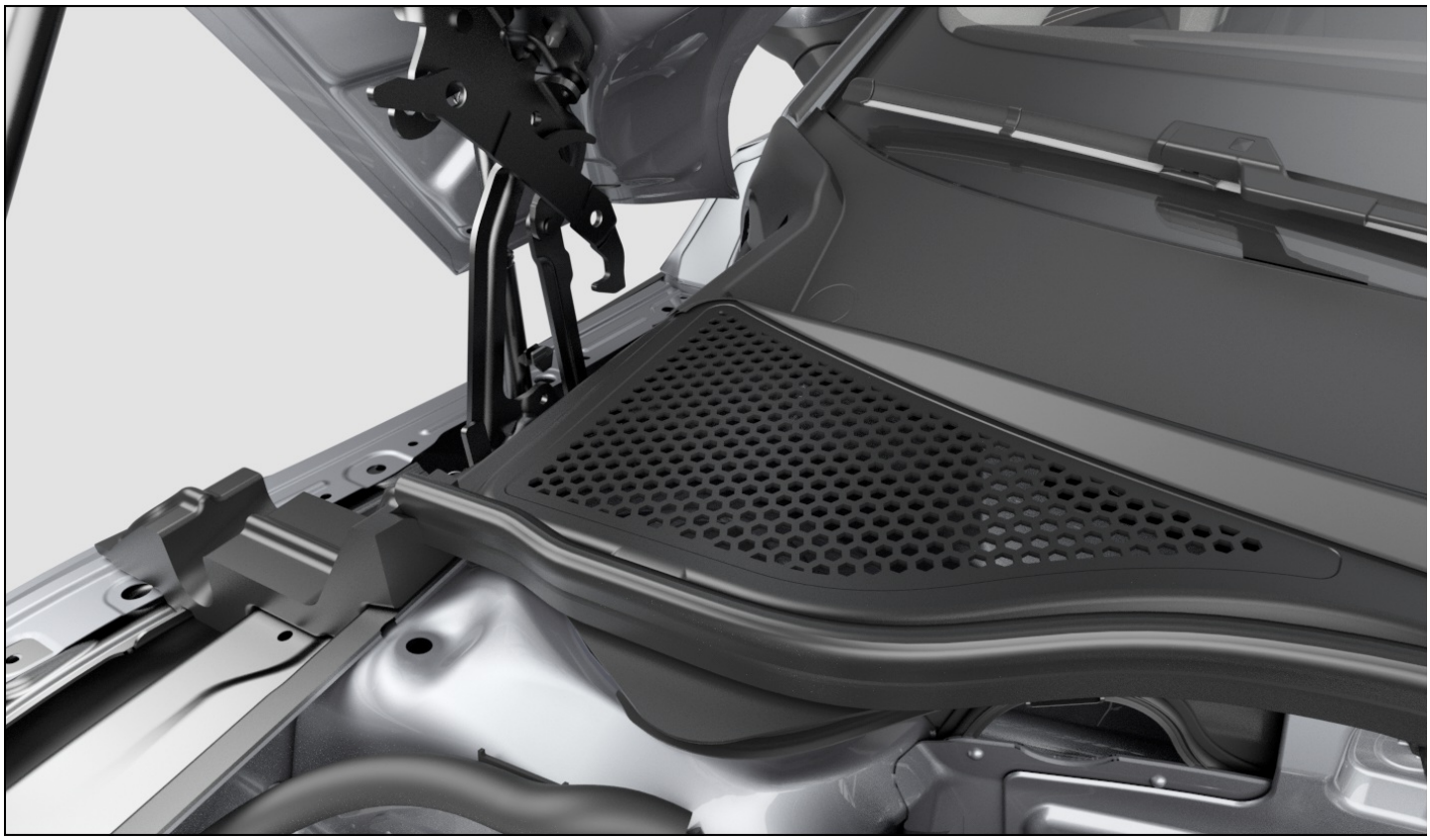


Fig. 191 Between the engine compartment and windshield: plenum chamber (general example).

- Remove leaves or other loose objects with a vacuum or by hand *fig. 191* , ⇒ ⓘ.
- Always have the engine compartment cleaned by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility qualified in this respect ⇒ ⚠. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Water introduced manually into the plenum chamber, for example with a pressure washer, can cause considerable vehicle damage.

ⓘ NOTICE

The plenum chamber drain can be blocked by leaves and dirt. Water that cannot drain may leak into the interior.

- Have the area under the perforated cover regularly cleaned by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility qualified in this respect. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Sensors, camera lenses



Fig. 192 In the rear of the vehicle: Rear View Camera system in the Volkswagen emblem (general example).

Clean the area in front of the sensors or the camera with a soft cloth and solvent-free cleaning solution.

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Engage the **R** selector lever position.
3. Set the electronic parking brake.
4. Clean the camera lens.

Clean sensitive surfaces of the rain/light sensor and the camera window on the windshield as you would **windows and glass surfaces** (depending on the equipment).

- Remove snow with a hand brush.
- Never use warm or hot water.
- Defrost the ice with a suitable deicer or Volkswagen Genuine deicer.

Decorative and protective decals

- Remove contaminants as described for **paint**. For matte decorative decals, use a suitable plastic cleaner or a Volkswagen Genuine plastic cleaner.
- Treat the vehicle every three months with liquid hard wax. The vehicle must be free of dirt and dust before treating. Apply using only clean, soft microfiber cloths. **Do not use hot wax**, even in a car wash.
- Hard contaminants: remove gently with ethyl alcohol and then wash with warm water.

The durability and coloring on decorative and protective decals can be affected by environment conditions, such as sunlight, moisture, air pollution, stone chips, etc. Decorative decals may show signs of wear and aging after approximately one to three years, and protective decals after approximately two to three years. In very hot climates, the decorative decals may fade slightly within one year and the protective decals within two years.

Trims made out of chrome-plated plastic, aluminum or stainless steel

- Clean surfaces with a suitable chrome and aluminum product or Volkswagen Genuine chrome and aluminum products.
- Chrome-plated trims can be protected with a suitable hard wax or Volkswagen Genuine hard wax.

Headlights, taillights

- Use a soft sponge saturated with a mild soap solution of maximum two tablespoons of neutral soap in a liter of water to remove dirt. Do not use cleaning solutions containing alcohol and/or solvents.
- Remove stubborn dirt with a suitable chrome and aluminum product or Volkswagen Genuine chrome and aluminum products.

Wheels

- Remove contaminants and road salt with plenty of water.
- Clean dirty alloy wheels with a suitable rim cleaner or with Volkswagen Genuine rim cleaner. Volkswagen recommends applying a suitable hard wax or Volkswagen Genuine hard wax to the rims every three months.
- Repair a damaged protective paint layer immediately with a paint pen. Contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility, if necessary.
- Remove brake dust with a suitable rim cleaner or Volkswagen Genuine rim cleaner.

Door lock cylinder

1. Defrost the door lock cylinder with a suitable door lock deicer or Volkswagen Genuine deicer.

   Do not use any door lock deicers with degreasing substances.

⚠ WARNING

The engine compartment is a dangerous area in any vehicle. There is a risk of injury, scalding, accidents, and burns when performing any work in the engine compartment.

- Always note the necessary handling guidelines and the safety precautions every time before working in the engine compartment ⇒ *Safety precautions for working in the engine compartment*.
- Have all the work performed by suitably qualified professionals. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

ⓘ NOTICE

Incorrect cleaning and care can cause vehicle damage.

- Always follow the manufacturer's instructions.
- Never use cleaning objects that are too hard or abrasive.

Interior care and cleaning

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⇒ ⚠ and ⓘ *Vehicle care information*.

The following overview gives recommendations for cleaning and caring for individual vehicle components.

NOTICE

Incorrect cleaning and care can cause vehicle damage.

- Never use steam cleaners, brushes, hard sponges, etc.
- Have tough spots removed by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Door windows

- Clean the door window with a glass cleaner.
- Wipe the door windows dry with a clean chamois or a lint-free cloth.

Textiles, microfiber, leatherette

- Regularly remove dirt particles that adhere to the surface with a vacuum cleaner so that the material is not permanently damaged by scrubbing.
- Remove contaminants with a suitable interior cleaner or Volkswagen Genuine interior cleaner.
- For grease-based contaminants such as oil, use a suitable interior cleaner or Volkswagen Genuine interior cleaner. Blot away the dissolved grease or dye with an absorbent towel. If necessary, treat afterwards with water.
- For contaminants, for example from pens or nail polish, use a suitable interior cleaner or Volkswagen Genuine interior cleaner. If necessary, treat afterward wit a mild soap solution of maximum two tablespoons of neutral soap in a liter of water.
- Never use leather cleaners, solvents, floor polish, shoe polish, paint remover, or other similar substances.
- Never use pressure washers, steam cleaners or cooling sprays.

Natural leather

- Remove fresh dirt with a cotton cloth and a mild soap solution of maximum two tablespoons of neutral soap in a liter of water. Do not let any fluids seep into th cracks.
- For contaminants, for example from pens or nail polish, use a suitable leather cleaner or Volkswagen Genuine leather cleaner.
- Treat dried spots with a suitable leather cleaner or with Volkswagen Genuine leather cleaner.
- Remove any fresh spots of grease such as oil with an absorbent cloth.
- Apply leather care to seats regularly and each time you clean. If leaving the vehicle parked for long periods of time, you should cover the leather to protect it from direct sunlight.

Never treat leather with solvents, floor polish, shoe polish, paint remover, or other similar substances.

Plastic parts

- Clean with a soft, damp cloth.
- If a mild soap solution of maximum two tablespoons of neutral soap in a liter of water cannot remove stubborn stains, use a solvent-free plastic cleaner or Volkswagen Genuine plastic cleaner, if necessary.

Trims, decorative trims made out of chrome, aluminum or stainless steel

- Clean using a clean, soft towel and mild soap solution of maximum two tablespoons of neutral soap in a liter of water, in a dust-free area.
- Treat anodized surfaces with a suitable chrome and aluminum product or Volkswagen Genuine chrome and aluminum products.

Controls

1. Use a soft brush to remove large dirt deposits as well as any dirt that is difficult to reach.
2. Use a clean, soft cloth and a fairly mild soap solution of maximum two tablespoons of neutral soap in a liter of water. Fluids must not enter into the controls.

Displays and screens

Do not clean the instrument cluster display and the Infotainment system screen when they are dry.

1. Turn off the Infotainment system temporarily to clean it.
2. Use a suitable cleaning cloth or Volkswagen Genuine cleaning cloth with some water, suitable glass cleaner, or an LCD cleaner.

Rubber seals

- Clean with a soft, lint-free cloth and plenty of water.
- Treat regularly with a suitable rubber care product or Volkswagen Genuine rubber care product.

Safety belts

1. Unreel the safety belt completely and leave the belt unreeled.
2. Remove large spots of dirt with a soft brush.

3. Clean the safety belt with a mild soap solution of maximum two tablespoons of neutral soap in a liter of water.
4. Let the belt webbing dry completely, then allow the belt to retract.

⚠ WARNING

Improper cleaning can cause damage to the safety belts, anchors, and the automatic safety belt retractors.

- Never attempt to modify or remove the safety belts to clean them.
- Never use chemical products to clean the safety belts and their components.
- Do no use any corrosive fluids, solvents, or sharp objects.
- Do not allow fluids and objects to enter the safety belt buckle.
- Let the safety belt dry after cleaning before allowing it to retract completely.

Wood trims

Clean with a soft cloth and fairly mild soap solution of maximum two tablespoons of neutral soap in a liter of water.

Cleaning the seat covers

If dye from clothing such as denim stains the seat cushion, this is not considered a defect in the vehicle upholstery. Airbag system components and connectors may be installed in the seat cushions. Damage, incorrect cleaning and handling, or moisture can also cause an airbag system malfunction as well as damage to the vehicle electrical system ⇒ ⚠.

Depending on the equipment, electrical components and connectors may be installed in the seat surface with seat heating, which can be damaged by incorrect cleaning or handling. This can also result in damage to other areas of the vehicle electrical system.

- Never use pressure washers, steam cleaners or cooling sprays.
- Never soak seat covers.
- Never switch on seat heating to dry the seats.
- Do not use detergent pastes or mild detergent solutions.
- If there is uncertainty, contact suitably qualified professionals for assistance. Volkswagen recommends contacting your Volkswagen dealership.

⚠ WARNING

Improper care and cleaning of vehicle components could impair vehicle safety equipment and cause serious injuries.

- Clean and maintain vehicle components only according to the manufacturer's instructions.

Needless to say, it is easier to see signs of wear and dirt caused by normal usage on bright materials in the vehicle interior. These signs of use are unavoidable and also indicate the unavoidable deterioration caused by normal usage. Please follow the corresponding care instructions.

Accessories, replacement parts, repairs, and modifications

Accessories and replacement parts

Consult qualified professionals before purchasing Genuine Volkswagen Accessories, replacement parts, or operating equipment, for example if you would like to retrofit the vehicle with Genuine Volkswagen Accessories or if parts need to be replaced. Qualified professionals are aware of legal regulations and factory recommendations for Genuine Volkswagen Accessories, replacement parts, and operating equipment. Volkswagen recommends contacting your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Volkswagen recommends using only approved **Volkswagen Accessories** and **Volkswagen Original Parts®**. Volkswagen has verified their reliability, safety, and suitability. Qualified professionals are also qualified to perform installations correctly. Volkswagen recommends contacting your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Products that are **not approved by Volkswagen** may not have been evaluated by Volkswagen regarding the reliability, safety, and suitability for the vehicle, despit ongoing market observation. Therefore, Volkswagen can also not be responsible in individual cases if approval is given by an officially-recognized technical inspection and control authority or clearance is given by a government agency.

Retrofitted devices that have a direct effect on vehicle control, must have an **e** symbol (the approval symbol for the European Union) and be approved by Volkswagen for the vehicle. Such devices could include a cruise control system or an electronically-controlled damping system.

Additional electrical devices that do not have a direct effect on vehicle control must have a symbol (manufacturer's Declaration of Compliance for the European Union). Such devices could include refrigerators, computers, or ventilators.

⚠ WARNING

Unsuitable accessory parts and replacement parts may cause vehicle damage, malfunctions, accidents and severe injuries.

- Volkswagen recommends using only approved Volkswagen Accessories and Volkswagen Genuine Parts ®. Volkswagen has verified their reliability,

safety, and suitability.

- Only install parts on the vehicle whose design and function are identical to the parts installed at the factory.
- Only use rim/tire combinations that are approved by Volkswagen for your vehicle model.

⚠ WARNING

Items in the deployment zone of the airbag may cause serious or fatal injuries if the airbags deploy.

- Never attach or position objects in the airbag deployment zone.

Repairs and technical modifications

Volkswagen guidelines must be followed when performing repairs and technical modifications ⇒ ⚠.

Interference with electronic components and their software can cause malfunctions. Because of the way electronic components are interconnected, such malfunctions can also impair systems that are not directly involved. This means that you risk both a substantial reduction in the operational safety of your vehicle and increased wear of vehicle components.

An authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility cannot assume any liability for damage resulting from repairs and technical modifications that were performed incorrectly.

An authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility is not responsible for damage resulting from repairs and technical modifications that were performed incorrectly. Such damages are also not covered by the Volkswagen warranty.

Have all repairs and technical modifications performed by suitably qualified professionals. Volkswagen recommends contacting your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility for **Volkswagen Genuine Parts®**.

Volkswagen repair information

Volkswagen service information and official Volkswagen repair information can be purchased.

Customers in Europe, Asia, Australia, Africa, Central and South America:

Contact suitably qualified professionals for assistance. Volkswagen recommends contacting your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Or register with the **erWin** (electronic repair and service information) web portal:

https://erwin.volkswagen.de
Customers in North America and Canada:

If you wish to order the printed service information, please contact:

Volkswagen Technical Literature Ordering Centerliterature.vw.com
You can also register for the **erWin** web portal:

https://erwin.vw.com

Diagnostic connection (on-board diagnosis)

In the vehicle interior, there is a diagnostic connection (OBD) to read event memories. Event memories document faults that have occurred and deviations from specified values from the control module ⇒ ⚠.

The diagnostic connection (OBD) is located in the footwell on the driver's side on the underside of the instrument panel or next to the hood release lever behind a cover.

Only have the event memory read out and reset by suitably qualified professionals. Additional information about the saved data can be obtained from suitably qualified professionals. Volkswagen recommends contacting your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

After a malfunction is fixed, the information about it will be deleted from the event memory. Other memory content is overwritten continuously.

Vehicles with special modifications and mountings

The attachment and mounting manufacturer should make sure that the applicable environmental laws and regulations are met for the attachments and mountings, especially the EU directive 2000/53/EG about old vehicle and EU directive 2003/11/EG about market introduction restrictions and the use of certain hazardous materials and compounds.

The installation instructions for any retrofitted equipment should be saved by the vehicle owner and provided to the removal facility if the vehicle is scrapped. This ensures that even vehicles with retrofitted equipment will be disposed of in a way that will not harm the environment.

Windshield repairs

To perform functions, some equipment requires an electric or electronic component that is secured to the inside of the windshield near the interior rearview mirror, for example. If the windshield is damaged within the area covered by the electrical or electronic component's visual field, for example with a stone chip, then the windshield must be replaced. Stone chip repairs can cause malfunctions in the equipment.

After a windshield is replaced, the camera and sensors must be adjusted and calibrated by suitably qualified professionals. Volkswagen recommends contacting your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Impairment or damage to sensors and cameras

The sensors or cameras could shift or become damaged as a result of incorrect repairs, structural changes to the vehicle (such as “lowering”), installation of after-market equipment, or changes to the trim panels. This can also be caused by collisions when parking and by minor damage, such as a stone hitting the windshield.

The area in front of and around the sensors and cameras must not be covered by stickers, auxiliary headlights, decorative license plate frames, or similar objects. Note the position of sensors and cameras on your vehicle ⇒ *Vehicle overviews*.

If ignored, important vehicle functions of driver assistance systems could be impaired and vehicle damage could result.

Have repairs or structural changes performed by suitably qualified professionals. Volkswagen recommends contacting your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Additional information:

- Painting near the sensors can impair the function of the system that uses those sensors.
- The Volkswagen emblem can impede the view of the radar sensors to the front on some vehicle versions. Therefore only operate the vehicle with the original Volkswagen emblem or an emblem approved by Volkswagen.

Engine/motor protection

Engine/motor protection can reduce the risk of damage to the vehicle underbody and the oil pan, for example if driving over curbs, entering driveways, or on unpaved roads.

Have the retrofitting work performed by suitable qualified professionals. Volkswagen recommends contacting your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Engine/motor protection may not be available in all countries.

⚠ WARNING

Repairs and modifications to the vehicle that are performed incorrectly can impair the effectiveness of the driver assistance systems and deploying airbags. This can cause malfunctions, accidents and fatal injuries.

- Only have suitably qualified professionals make repairs or modifications to a vehicle. Volkswagen recommends contacting your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

⚠ WARNING

Repairs and modifications to the vehicle that are performed incorrectly may cause vehicle damage, accidents and severe injuries.

- Volkswagen recommends using only approved Volkswagen Genuine Parts®. Volkswagen has verified their reliability, safety, and suitability.
- Only have suitably qualified professionals make repairs or modifications to a vehicle. Authorized Volkswagen dealers and authorized Volkswagen Service Facilities have the required tools, diagnostic devices, repair information, and qualified personnel. Volkswagen recommends contacting your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
- Only install parts on the vehicle whose design and function are identical to the parts installed at the factory.
- Only use rim/tire combinations that are approved by Volkswagen for your vehicle model.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect use of the diagnostic connection can cause malfunctions, which can then result in collisions and serious injuries.

- Never read out the event memory yourself using the diagnostic connection.
- Never load data yourself using the diagnostic connection in the vehicle.
- Only have the event memory read out with the diagnostic connection by suitably qualified professionals. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Airbag system repairs and situations that can affect the system function

Volkswagen guidelines must be followed when performing repairs and technical modifications ⇒ ⚠.

Only have modifications and repairs on the front bumper, doors, front seats, headliner, or body performed by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Airbag system components and sensors may be located on these vehicle components.

Airbag system components can be damaged during all procedures on the airbag system and when removing and installing system components while performing other repair procedures. This may prevent the airbags from deploying or cause them to deploy incorrectly in the event of an accident.

The instructions must be followed so that the effectiveness of the airbags is not impaired and removed components do not cause injuries and environmental pollution. An authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility is familiar with these instructions.

A modification to the vehicle suspension can impair the functionality of the airbag system during a collision. For example, using a rim/tire combination that is not approved by Volkswagen, lowering the vehicle, or changing the suspension stiffness including the springs, suspensions struts, shock absorbers, etc., can change the force that is measured by the airbag sensors and transmitted to the electronic control module. For example, some changes to the suspension can increase the

force measured by the systems and trigger the airbag system in accidents where the airbags would normally not be deployed if the modifications had not been made. Other modifications can reduce the force measured by the sensors and prevent the airbag from deploying when it should have deployed.

⚠ WARNING

Repairs and modifications that were done incorrectly can cause damage and malfunctions to the vehicle as well as impair the effectiveness of the airbag system. This can cause accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Only have an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility make vehicle repairs or modifications.
- The airbag module cannot be repaired; it must be replaced.
- Never install airbag components removed from old vehicles or from recycling.

⚠ WARNING

A modification to the vehicle suspension including using a rim/tire combination that is not permitted can change the functionality of the airbag and increase the risk of severe or fatal injuries in an accident.

- Never install suspension components that do not have the same properties as the original parts installed in the vehicle.
- Never use rim/tire combinations that are not approved by Volkswagen.

Mobile phone usage in the vehicle

Electromagnetic waves

When using a mobile phone or radio equipment without connecting to the exterior antenna, the electromagnetic waves will not be deflected outward in an optimum way. Increased waves in the vehicle interior can occur, especially when reception is poor, for example in rural areas. This could be a potential health risk ⇒ ⚠.

Depending on the equipment, it may be possible to use a suitable telephone interface to connect the mobile phone to the exterior antenna. This will improve the connection quality and increase the range.

Using a phone

In many countries, using a phone in the vehicle is only permitted if there is a hands-free connection, for example using a Bluetooth ® connection. Before using the phone, secure it in a suitable holder ⇒ ⚠ or store it in a storage compartment, such as in the center console, to prevent it from sliding around.

Radio

If operating radio devices, follow the legal regulations and the user guide from the manufacturer. The aftermarket installation of radio devices is subject to approval.

Contact qualified professionals for more information about installing radio equipment. Volkswagen recommends contacting your Volkswagen dealership.

⚠ WARNING

Mobile devices that are loose or not secured correctly can be thrown through the vehicle interior during sudden driving or braking maneuvers or in the event of a collision and cause injuries.

- Secure or store the mobile phone and accessories safely outside the deployment range of the airbags.

⚠ WARNING

Using a mobile device or radio equipment inside the vehicle without a connection to an exterior antenna may create electromagnetic energy that exceeds permissible limits. This may be dangerous to your health and that of your passengers. This also applies if the exterior antenna is not installed correctly.

- Maintain a distance of at least 8 inches (20 cm) between the device aerials and any active medical implants, such as pacemakers.
- Do not carry a mobile device that is turned on directly above or in the immediate vicinity of any active medical implants, for example by keeping a phone in a shirt pocket.
- Switch off the mobile device immediately if you suspect there is interference with an active medical implant or other medical device.

Customer information

Warranty

Warranty and guarantee information

You can find information on your warranty and guarantee rights in your service schedule. Your service schedule is supplied with your Manual. Service schedule.

Event data recorder (crash data recorder)

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder (EDR). The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an air bag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less. The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating;
- Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were buckled/fastened;
- How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal; and,
- How fast the vehicle was traveling.

These data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

In addition, data from the driver assistance systems is also collected. In addition to information about whether these systems were switched on or off, had limited availability, or were inactive, it can also be understood if these functions steered, accelerated, or braked the vehicle in the situations listed above. Depending on the vehicle equipment, systems may include:

- Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)
- Lane Assist
- Park Assist
- Parking systems
- Autonomous Emergency Braking Function (Front Assist)

NOTE: EDR data are recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data are recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data (e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location) are recorded. However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

Volkswagen will not access, read, or process the event data recorder data unless the vehicle owner (or lessee if leasing the vehicle) gives permission. This exclude contractual or legal regulations.

Due to the legal obligation to monitor products, Volkswagen is allowed to use data for field observation as well as for research purposes and quality improvement o vehicle safety systems. For research purposes, Volkswagen provides the data to third parties in an anonymous format. This means the data does not reference the individual vehicle, the vehicle owner, or the lessee.

Labels and signs

Factory labels and plates with important information regarding vehicle operation are located in the engine compartment and on several vehicle components.

- Never remove these labels and signs or make them illegible.
- If vehicle components equipped with labels and plates are replaced, suitably qualified professionals must place identical labels and plates correctly in the sam locations on the new components. Volkswagen recommends contacting your Volkswagen dealership.

Safety certificate

A safety certificate on the driver's door jamb specifies all necessary safety standards and guidelines of the traffic safety authorities in the applicable country at the time of manufacture. The month and year of production as well as the VIN may also be listed. Read the information in the Owner's Manual.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect vehicle handling increases the risk of accidents and injuries.

- Follow the legal regulations.
- Follow the Owner's Manual instructions.

NOTICE

Incorrect vehicle handling can cause vehicle damage.

- Follow the legal regulations.
- Perform service according to the specifications.

Fluids in the air conditioning system

Refrigerant in the air conditioning system

The label in the engine compartment provides information about the type and amount of refrigerant used in the vehicle air conditioning system. The label is in the front section of the engine compartment near the refrigerant filler tube.

Warning: the air conditioning system must only be serviced by qualified technicians. Refrigerant type. Type of refrigerant oil. See service information (only available for authorized Volkswagen dealers and authorized Volkswagen Service Facilities). The air conditioning system must only be serviced by qualified technicians. Flammable refrigerant. Make sure all components are disposed of correctly and never install components removed from old vehicles or from recycling in the vehicle.

Refrigerant oil in the air conditioner

The air conditioner is filled with refrigerant oil. The label on the air conditioner compressor provides information on the type and quantity of refrigerant oil used *⇒ Repairs and technical modifications*.

WARNING

To ensure safe operation, the air conditioner may only be serviced by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility qualified in this respect.

NOTICE

- Never repair the air conditioning system evaporator with replacement parts from old vehicles or from the recycling, or replace it with such replacement parts.
- A replacement part for the air conditioning system evaporator must be certified and marked in accordance with SAE standards J2842 HFO-1234y and R744.
- The air conditioner must only be serviced by qualified technicians who are trained according to SAE standard J2845 and certified according to SAE standard J2911.

Infotainment system and aerials

The aerials for the Infotainment system are fitted in various places in the vehicle:

- On the inside of the rear window.
- On the inside of the rear side windows
- On the inside of the windshield
- On the roof of the vehicle

Antennas on the inside of the window glass can be detected as thin wires.

NOTICE

Antennas that are located on the inside of the window glass can be damaged by abrasive objects or by corrosive and acidic materials.

- Never apply stickers over metal wires, for example on the rear window.
- Never clean the antennas with corrosive or acidic materials.

NOTICE

A retrofitted Infotainment system must be compatible with the antenna amplifier installed in the vehicle by the manufacturer. Otherwise, the antenna amplifier could become damaged.

Component protection

Some electronic components and control modules, such as the Infotainment system, are equipped with component protection at the factory.

The component protection allows suitably qualified professionals to legitimately install or replace components and control modules. Volkswagen recommends contacting your Volkswagen dealership.

In the following situations, component protection reduces the risk of components supplied by the factory being operated without restrictions outside the vehicle.

- Installation in other vehicles, for example the components have been stolen
- Operating components outside of the vehicle

If a message about component protection appears in the instrument cluster display or on the Infotainment system screen, contact a suitably qualified professional f assistance. Volkswagen recommends contacting your Volkswagen dealership.

Disposal of old batteries and electronic devices

Old batteries

As with electronic devices, old batteries must be collected and recycled separately by the end user. These batteries are indicated by the crossed-out wheeled garbage can symbol . You, as the end user, are legally obliged to return old batteries ⇒.

- In many federal states, old batteries can be handed in to an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
- You can obtain more information on return and recycling from your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Old electrical or electronic devices

Your vehicle contains old electrical/electronic devices, such as the navigation system SD card or remote controls. You can recognize these from the symbol of the crossed-out wheeled garbage can .

Old devices with this marking must be collected separately from normal household garbage and disposed of in accordance with legal requirements.

- Batteries within devices that are not permanently installed must be removed beforehand and disposed of separately as batteries.
- Any saved personal data must be erased before disposal of old devices.

You can obtain more information on return and recycling from your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

NOTICE

Batteries containing heavy metals are marked with the chemical symbols Hg (mercury), Cd (cadmium) and/or Pb (lead). Heavy metals can be harmful to the health of humans and animals and accumulate in the environment.

- In order to avoid these consequences, it is imperative to ensure you collect batteries separately and return them properly.

Batteries for the remote control vehicle key and remote controls may contain perchlorate. For information on how to handle these materials correctly, see the following website www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate. Follow all the legal specifications for dealing with and disposing of these batteries. Volkswagen recommends having these batteries replaced and disposed of by suitably qualified professionals. Volkswagen recommends contacting your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Declaration of conformity (Declaration of Compliance, Telecommunications and Electronic Systems)

Radio Frequency Devices and Radiocommunication Equipment User Manual Notice.

Radio equipment

- Provision for mobile telephone.
- Electronic immobilizer
- Remote start relay function
- Vehicle key
- Keyless locking and starting system Keyless Access.
- USA: VW Car-Net®.
- Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)
- Autonomous Emergency Braking (Front Assist).
- Rear Traffic Alert.

These devices comply with:

FCC Part 15.19

These devices comply with **Part 15 of the FCC Rules**. Operation is subject to the following 2 conditions:

(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and

(2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation

FCC Part 15.21

CAUTION:

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

These devices comply with **RSS-210 of Industry Canada**.

Operation is subject to the following 2 conditions:

(1) This device may not cause interference, and

(2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

The manufacturer is not responsible for any radio or TV interference caused by unauthorized modifications to this equipment.

Third Party Copyright Information

http://www.volkswagen.com/softwareinfo

Some products installed in this vehicle contain software components that are covered under Open Source licenses.

A list of the Open Source software components being used, including copyright information, the relevant Open Source license conditions, and those applicable license texts, are available at the website given above. The source code of specific Open Source software components can be requested from the vehicle manufacturer. The manufacturer will provide the source code in accordance with the relevant license conditions, whereby you will only be charged for the provision costs (for example, the costs for the data carrier and delivery). The required information can be obtained at the website given above.

Old vehicle return and scrap disposal

Old vehicle return

At the end of its life cycle, your vehicle should be recycled or disposed of in an environmentally friendly manner. This is why the last owners of vehicles in many states are legally obliged to hand their vehicles over to an authorized treatment facility.

Volkswagen has already made provision for this point: Recycling centers where you can hand over your vehicle are available throughout many federal states.

Find out more information about recycling centers from your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Scrap disposal

If scrapping the vehicle or its individual parts such as the airbag system and the safety belt pretensioners, the applicable safety regulations must always be followe Suitably qualified professionals will be familiar with these provisions. Volkswagen recommends contacting your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Reporting Safety Defects

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying Volkswagen of America, Inc. 3800 Hamlin Road, Auburn Hills, MI 48326.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or Volkswagen of America, Inc.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at:

Tel.: 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153)
go to:

http://www.nhtsa.gov
or write to:

Administrator, NHTSA, 1200 New Jersey Avenue, SE. Washington, D.C. 20590
You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from

http://www.safercar.gov

Declaration of conformity for radio equipment for the USA

With this document, the manufacturer declares that the radio equipment listed in the following is in compliance with the basic requirements and other relevant regulations and laws at the time of production:

The following radio equipment is not available in every market or every vehicle.

- Connection to the exterior antenna
- Antenna
- Antenna amplifier
- Bluetooth®.
- Remote control key (vehicle)
- HomeLink® Universal Transmitter.
- ID. Cockpit.
- Infotainment system

- Keyless Access
- Instrument cluster, electronic immobilizer
- Radar sensors for assistance systems
- Tire pressure sensors
- Mobile phone interface
- Volkswagen Car-Net control module
- Wi-Fi hotspot.
- Central control module

Approval numbers

FCC ID:

2AOUZ17101001, 2AOUZ17101002, 2AOUZ17101010,
2AOUZ17101022, 2AOUZ17101023, 2AOUZ17101031,
2AOUZ17101032, 2AOUZ17101033, 2AOUZ17101034,
2AOUZ17101041, 2AOUZ17101042, 2AOUZ17101043,
2AOUZ17101051, 2AOUZ17101052, 2AOUZ17101053,
2AOUZ17101054, 2AOUZ17101055, 2AOUZ17101056,
2AOUZ17101057, 2AOUZ17101071, 2AOUZ17101072,
2AOUZ18020531, 2AOUZ18020532, 2AOUZ18020533,
2AOUZ18020534, 2AOUZ18100931

2AVXWWSBRC001

2AAJCBR20, 2AA98, 2AA98A, 2AA98-COLOUR5C, 2AA98-MEDIUM5C, 2AHPN-WLC, 772C-LB1FD,

BEJLCW05-VWE5, BEJMIB2, BEJMIB2PQ, BEJ-MEBICAS3, BEJ-MIBPQMIN, BEJ-MIB3OI, BEJTLVM3IU-N, BEJTUVM01IU, BEJTLVHW3IU-E, CWTUGZZF1, CWTUGZZF2, IYZVK2, KR5-BCMEVOC, LTQR3TR, T8GA270, T8GA475, T8GA476

NBG011719A, NBG013854, NBG01RS4, NBGBCMEVO, NBGBCMEVO5, NBGBCM2R, NBGFS12PM, NBGFS12P01M, NBGFS125C, NBGFS125C1, NBGFS125C5, NBGFS173NP, NBGFS173NPM, NBGFS173NR, NBGFS1744M, NBGFS19, NBGFS191, NBGFS93N, NBGMQBBB, NBGMQBBH, NBGRSB19, NBG011719A, NBG013854, NF3-FR5CPEC, NF3-LRR3SCU, NF3-LRR4, NF3-MRR1PLUS, NF3-MRR1REAR, NF3MRREVO14F, NF3-LRR3SCU, NT8-VWMIBREGIO, NZLADHL5D, OAYARS4B, OAYARS5B, OYGTSSRE4UD, OYGTSSRE4UF, OYGTSSSG4G5, QIPALAS6A-US, RK7MBC-NAR, RX2BNFHL, RX2BNFLL, VPYLB1KD, WJLHT-5.

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:
(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and
(2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.
CAUTION TO USERS: Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user`s authority to operate the equipment.
Any changes or modifications to this device not explicitly approved by manufacturer could void your authority to operate this equipment.

This equipment complies with FCC RF Radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment. This device and its antenna must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter. This equipment should be installed and operated with a minimum distance of 20 cm between the radiator and your body.

This equipment (FCC ID: BEJLCW05-VWE5) has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference when the equipment is operated in a commercial environment. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instruction manual, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. Operation of this equipment in a residential area is likely to cause harmful interference in which case the user will be required to correct the interference at his own expense.
WARNING: Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the manufacturer (or party responsible) for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

FCC ID:

NT8-FPK8IMMO5D, RK7185-00, QZ9-KA3

CAUTION TO USERS: Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance may void the FCC authorization to operate the equipment.
This device complies with Part 15 and Part 18 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:
(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and
(2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 and to Part 18 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation.

If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:
- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

Radiation Exposure: This device has been tested for human exposure limits and found compliant at a minimum distance of 5 cm during operation. Thus during the operation of device a distance of 5 cm must be respected in every direction.

Technical data

Information on technical data

General information about specifications

As long as nothing else is specified or listed, the technical data applies to the base model. Different values may result due to optional equipment, different model versions, special equipment, and market-specific equipment. The specifications in the legal vehicle documents always take precedence.

The drive and power of the vehicle are listed in the official vehicle registration.

Weight

The values for the curb weight in the following tables apply to a vehicle ready for operation. This includes a driver weighing 75 kg (165 lbs), fluids (including a fuel tank that is 90% full) and, if necessary, tools and a replacement tire. Optional equipment and retrofitted equipment will increase the specified curb weight and reduce the possible load.

The load consists of the following weight:

- Passengers
- All luggage
- Attachments
- Roof load

The permitted total vehicle weight and the gross axle weight rating must never be exceeded. The permissible values are indicated on the safety compliance label o the B-pillar on the driver's side ⇒ *Safety certificate*.

Performance

The performance was determined without equipment that limits performance, such as add-on parts.

Due to technical or legal reasons, the performance specifications and mileage may vary.

On some engines with heavy duty suspension, the speed maximum speed may be limited and lower.

Incline angle

The incline angle is the specification up to which the vehicle is able to drive uphill on an angle with its own power. This can depend on the road conditions, the weather conditions, and the engine power, among other things. The values apply to a vehicle that is in motion and not to a vehicle that starts to drive form a stationary position.

A rising difference in altitude (incline) on a 100 m (300 ft) stretch is given in percentage or degrees (100% = 45 degrees).

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

Structure of the vehicle identification number (VIN)

The vehicle identification number (VIN, VIN) consists of 17 characters. These characters can be sorted into seven groups.

For instance, the basic structure of the vehicle identification number WVWZZZCBZLE400953 is explained as follows. This is just an example.

Group	①			②			③		④	⑤	⑥	⑦					
Position	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17
Example	W	V	W	Z	Z	Z	C	B	Z	M	E	4	0	0	9	5	3

① Vehicle manufacturer identification:

WVW Volkswagen Passenger Vehicles

WVG VW Touareg/Auto 5000 AMPV

1VW Volkswagen Group of America Inc., Volkswagen de México, S.A. de C.V

3VW Volkswagen de México, S.A. de C.V

XW8 LLC Volkswagen Group Rus (Volkswagen/Skoda Kaluga)

MFB Garuda Matraman Motor (Indonesia)

② Filler characters: The filler characters may vary depending on manufacturer, or contain information on the body shape and transmission type.

③ Vehicle class, depending on model:

3H Arteon

5T Touran

6R Polo

AC T-Roc convertible

BV Golf

CB Passat

CA Atlas

Depending on the manufacturer, digits 7 to 9 can also contain information on the fuel type (7) and vehicle class (8 and 9).

(4) Filler characters or check characters: The filler characters may vary depending on manufacturer.

(5) VIN index, depending on model year:

M 2021

N 2022

P 2023

R 2024

(6) Production location, plant where the vehicle was manufactured:

C Volkswagen plant in Chattanooga

D Volkswagen plant in Bratislava

E Volkswagen plant in Emden

G, K Volkswagen plant in Kaluga

M Volkswagen plant in Puebla

P Volkswagen plant in Zwickau

T Volkswagen plant in Pune

V, U Volkswagen plant in Palmela

W Volkswagen plant in Wolfsburg

Y Volkswagen plant in Pamplona

(7) Sequential production number for each model year.

Position of the vehicle identification number



Fig. 193 In the windshield: vehicle identification number (VIN)

The VIN can be read from the outside through the viewing window in the windshield. The viewing window is at the side of the lower section of the windshield.

In some models, it may be possible to display the VIN in the Service menu or in the vehicle settings, depending on the Infotainment system. The vehicle identification number may also be located on the identification label.

The VIN may also be stamped in the following locations, depending on the model, market, and engine:

- In the right water drain channel in the engine/motor compartment
- On the right suspension strut tower in the engine/motor compartment
- In the engine compartment near the hinge for the hood on the right side of the vehicle.
- Under the carpet behind the right front seat

Identification label

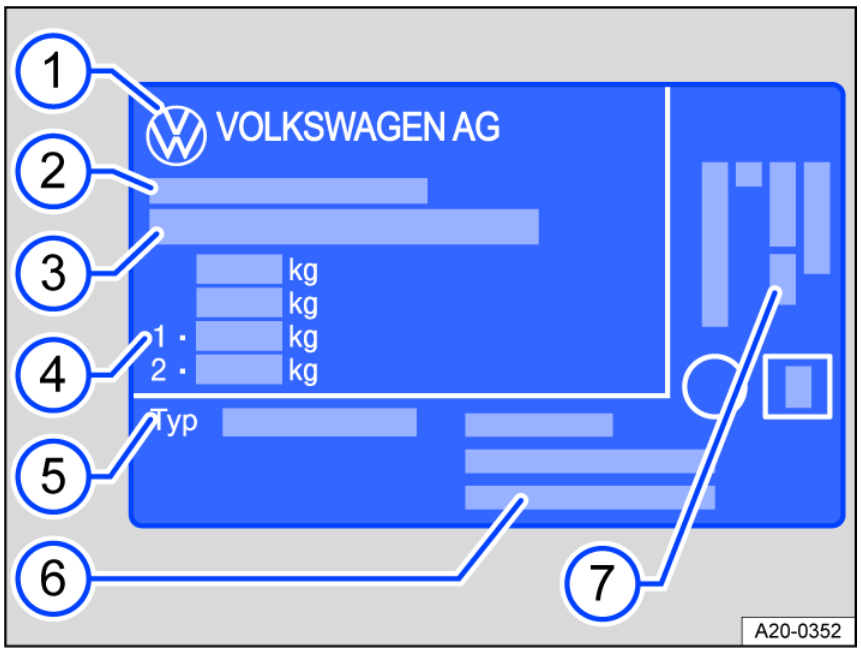


Fig. 194 Identification label (general example): version 1.

Depending on the country, the type approval number, such as the EU operating license, may be specified.

(1) Manufacturer code.

(2) Type approval.

(3) Vehicle Identification number.

(4) Gross Vehicle Weight Rating.
Gross combination weight rating (towing vehicle and trailer).

Front Gross Axle Weight Rating.

Rear Gross Axle Weight Rating.

(5) Vehicle model

(6) Manufacturer's address.

(7) Engine code.

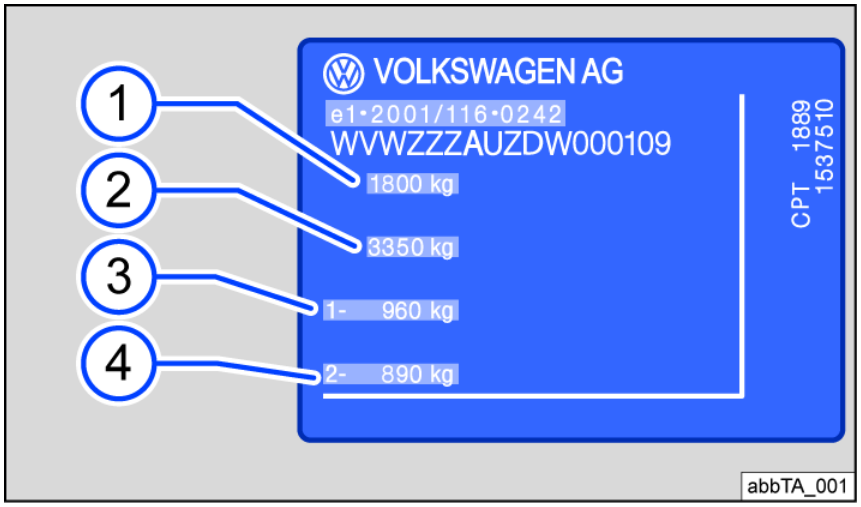


Fig. 195 Identification label (general example): version 2.

Depending on the country, the type approval number, such as the EU operating license, may be specified.

(1) Gross Vehicle Weight Rating.

(2) Gross combination weight rating (towing vehicle and trailer).

(3) Front Gross Axle Weight Rating.

(4) Rear Gross Axle Weight Rating.

Depending on the country and model, the model plate may be visible in the lower section of the door pillar when the driver's for front passenger door is open. Vehicles exported to some countries do not have a model plate.

Safety certificate

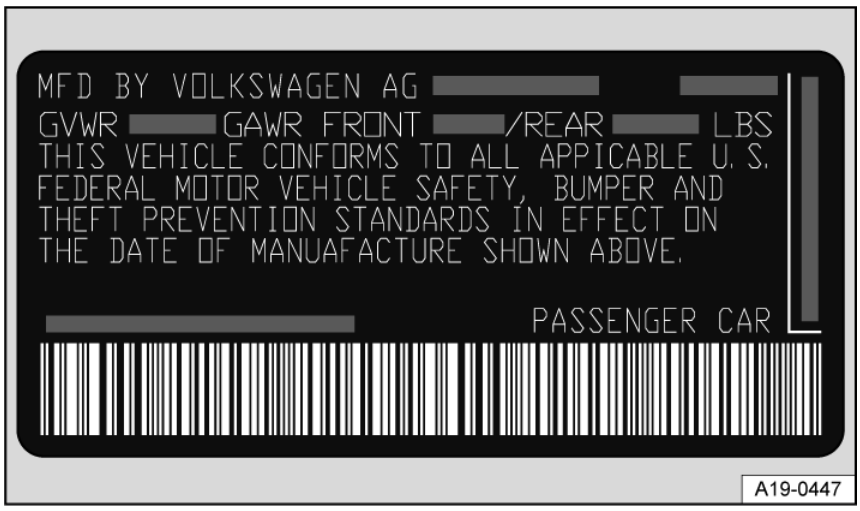


Fig. 196 Safety certificate (general example).



Fig. 197 Safety certificate (general example).

A safety certificate on the driver door pillar displays the following information:

- Manufacturer.
- Country of manufacture.
- Date of manufacture.
- Gross vehicle weight rating.
- Gross axle weight ratings.
- Tire size.
- Rim size
- Tire pressure.
- Vehicle Identification number.
- Type designation.

Dimensions

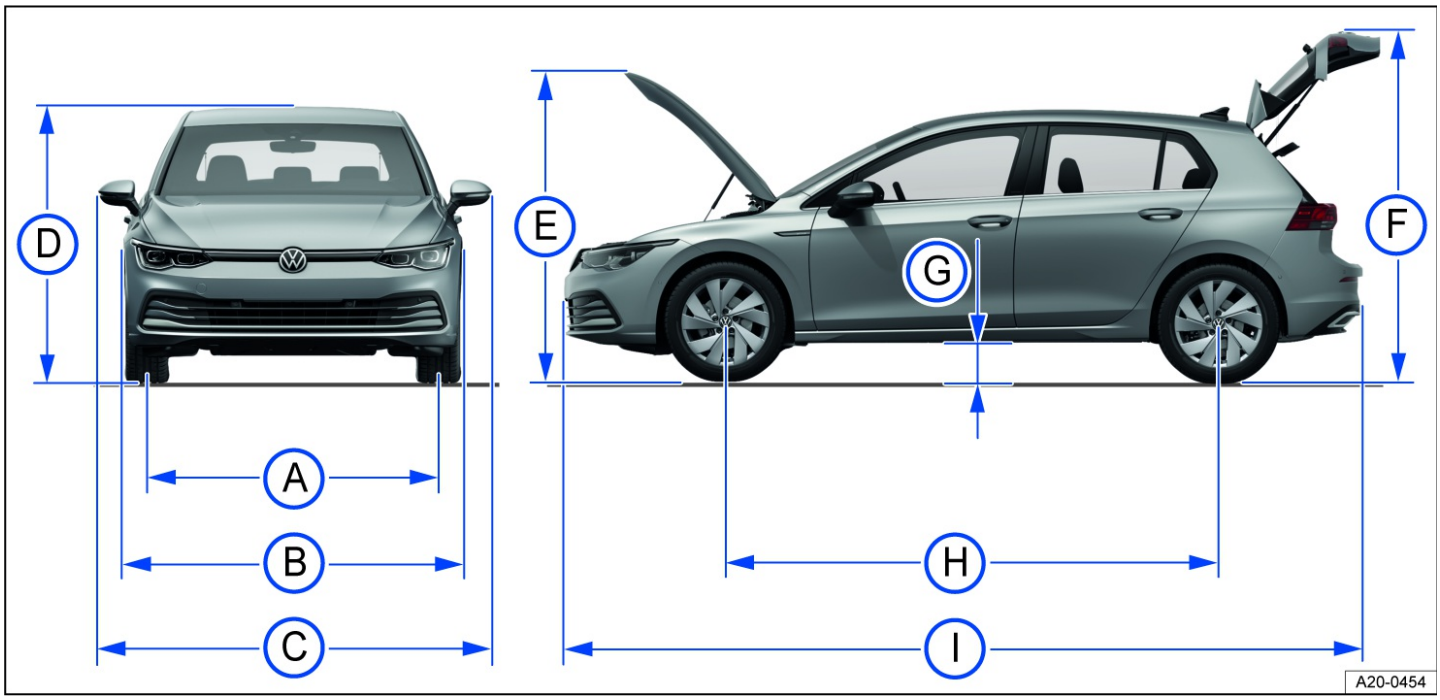


Fig. 198 Vehicle dimensions.

The information in the table applies for the standard model with standard equipment.

For other wheel rims, tire sizes, options, differing model designs and retrofitted accessories, as well as special vehicles and vehicles in other countries, these value can differ.

Curb weight is without driver and without payload.

Key for *fig. 198*:		Golf	GTI	GTD	Rmodel
Ⓐ	Front track	1533 – 1549 mm	1535 – 1545 mm	1535 – 1545 mm	1539 – 1541 mm
	Rear track	1503 – 1519 mm	1513 – 1523 mm	1513 – 1523 mm	1514 – 1516 mm
Ⓑ	Width	1789 mm	1789 mm	1789 mm	1789 mm

Key for *fig. 198*:		Golf	GTI	GTD	Rmodel
C	Width from outside mirror to outside mirror	2073 mm	2073 mm	2073 mm	2073mm
D	Height at curb weight to top of the roof	1456 mm	1444 – 1445 mm	1443 mm	1439mm
	Height with curb weight with navigation antenna	1476 mm	1463 – 1465 mm	1463 mm	1458mm
E	Height with open hood and curb weight	1745 mm	1734 – 1735 mm	1733 mm	1729mm
F	Height with open trunk lid and curb weight	2011 mm	1999 – 2001 mm	1998 mm	1993mm
G	Ground clearance at curb weight between the axles	134 mm	135 – 136 mm	131 mm	122mm
H	Wheelbase with curb weight	2636 mm	2631 mm	2631 mm	2628mm
–	Minimum turning circle diameter	10.9 m	10.9 m	10.9 m	11.9m
I	Length from bumper to bumper	4284 – 4286 mm	4287 – 4295 mm	4287 mm	4290mm

Tank capacities

The fuel tank has the following volume:

- **approximately 45 l (12 gallons)** for engines up to 140 kW and R-models
- **13.2 gallons (approximately 50 l)** for engines from 140 kW

The capacity of the fuel tank includes an indeterminate reserve quantity that remains in the fuel tank when the fuel gauge shows that the fuel tank is empty. The reserve quantity is variable and cannot reliably serve to increase the remaining range.

Gasoline engines

2.0 l, 4 cylinder, TFSI®, 180 kW (240 hp), gasoline engine

Engine overview

Output	kW	180 at 5000 – 6500 rpm	
	hp	240 at 5000 – 6500 rpm	
Engine code		DRNA	
Maximum torque	Nm	370 at 1600 – 4300 rpm	
	lb-ft	273 at 1600 – 4300 rpm	
Transmission		SG6	DSG® 7
Maximum speed	km/h	– [5]	[5]
	mph	– [5]	[5]

Weight specifications and axle loads

Transmission		SG6	DSG® 7
Curb weight	kg	1412	1447
	lbs	3113	31900
Gross Vehicle Weight Rating	kg	1930	19700
	lbs	4255	43433
Front Gross Axle Weight Rating	kg	1030	10700
	lbs	2271	23599

Rear Gross Axle Weight Rating	kg	950	950
	lbs	2094	2094

[5] This data was not available at the time of printing.

2.0 l, 4 cylinder, TFSI®, 235 kW (315 hp), gasoline engine

Engine overview

Output	kW	235 at 5600 – 6500 rpm
	hp	315 at 5600 – 6500 rpm
Engine code		DSFE
Maximum torque	Nm	400 at 2000 – 5600 rpm
	lb-ft	295 at 2000 – 5600 rpm
Transmission		DSG®7 4MOTION
Maximum speed	km/h	– [6]
	mph	– [6]

Weight specifications and axle loads

Curb weight	kg	1579
	lbs	3481
Gross Vehicle Weight Rating	kg	2050
	lbs	4519
Front Gross Axle Weight Rating	kg	1100
	lbs	2425
Rear Gross Axle Weight Rating	kg	1000
	lbs	2205

[6] This data was not available at the time of printing.

2.0 l, 4 cylinder, TFSI®, 235 kW (315 hp), gasoline engine

Engine overview

Output	kW	235 at 5900 – 6500 rpm
	hp	315 at 5900 – 6500 rpm
Engine code		DSFF
Maximum torque	Nm	380 at 2000 – 5900 rpm
	lb-ft	280 at 2000 – 5900 rpm
Transmission		SG6 4MOTION
Maximum speed	km/h	– [7]
	mph	– [7]

Weight specifications and axle loads

Curb weight	kg	1550
	lbs	3417
Gross Vehicle Weight Rating	kg	2020
	lbs	4453
Front Gross Axle Weight Rating	kg	1060
	lbs	2337
Rear Gross Axle Weight Rating	kg	1010
	lbs	2227

[7)] This data was not available at the time of printing.

Abbreviations used

Abbreviation	Meaning